This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

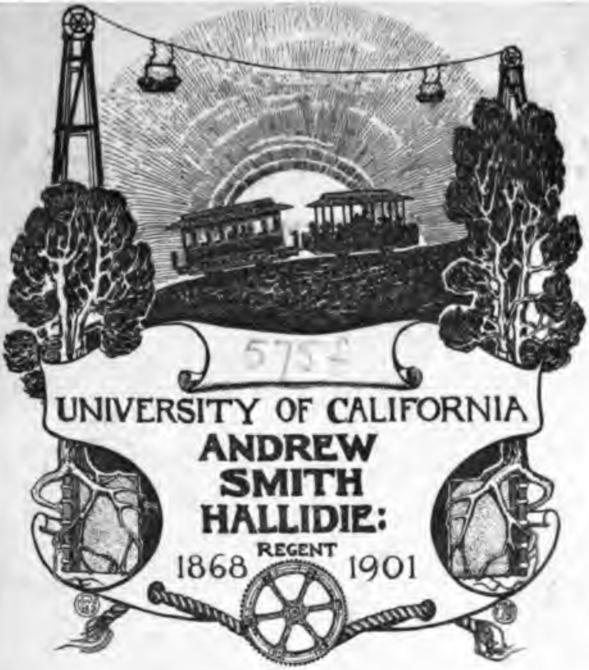
+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`



575 L

UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA
ANDREW
SMITH
HALLIDIE:
REGENT
1868 1901

NOTICE

It is intended that this book shall be sold to the Public at the advertised price, NET, *and the terms on which it is supplied to the Trade will not allow of discount.*

CROSBY LOCKWOOD AND SON.

PATTERN-MAKING.

WORKS BY THE SAME AUTHOR.

(Uniform with the Present Volume.)

Lockwood's Dictionary of Terms Used in the Practice of Mechanical Engineering, embracing those current in the Drawing Office, Pattern Shop, Foundry, Fitting, Turning, Smiths', and Boiler Shops, &c., &c. Comprising upwards of 6,000 definitions. Third Edition, Revised, with Additions. Crown 8vo, cloth, 7s. 6d. net.

"One of the most useful books which can be presented to a mechanic or student."—*English Mechanic.*

"Not merely a dictionary, but, to a certain extent, also a most valuable guide. It strikes us as a happy idea to combine with a definition of the phrase useful information on the subject of which it treats."—*Machinery Market.*

Toothed Gearing: A Practical Handbook for Offices and Workshops. With 184 Illustrations. Crown 8vo, 6s., cloth.

"We must give the book our unqualified praise for its thoroughness of treatment, and we can heartily recommend it to all interested as the most practical book on the subject yet written."—*Mechanical World.*

Plating and Boiler Making: A Practical Handbook for Workshop Operations. By JOSEPH G. HORNER, A.M.I.M.E. 380 pp., with 338 Illustrations. Crown 8vo, cloth, 7s. 6d.

This work is characterised by that evidence of close acquaintance with workshop methods which will render the book exceedingly acceptable to the practical hand. We have no hesitation in commending the work as a serviceable and practical handbook on a subject which has not hitherto received much attention from those qualified to deal with it in a satisfactory manner."—*Mechanical World.*

Sheet Metal Worker's Instructor: Comprising a Selection of Geometrical Problems and Practical Rules for Describing the Various Patterns Required by Zinc, Sheet-Iron, Copper and Tin-Plate Workers. By REUBEN HENRY WARN, Practical Tin-Plate Worker. New Edition. Revised and greatly Enlarged by JOSEPH G. HORNER, A.M.I.M.E. Crown 8vo, 254 pages, with 430 Illustrations, cloth, 7s. 6d.

LONDON: CROSBY LOCKWOOD & SON,
7, STATIONERS' HALL COURT, E.C.

PATTERN MAKING

A Practical Treatise

EMBRACING THE

MAIN TYPES OF ENGINEERING CONSTRUCTION

TOGETHER WITH THE

Methods of Estimating the Weight of Castings

AND

AN APPENDIX OF TABLES FOR WORKSHOP REFERENCE

BY

JOSEPH G. HORNER, A.M.I.M.E.

AUTHOR OF "LOCKWOOD'S DICTIONARY OF MECHANICAL ENGINEERING TERMS," "TOOTHED GEARING," "PLATING AND BOILER MAKING," "SHEET METAL WORKERS' INSTRUCTOR," ETC.

Third Edition, thoroughly revised and much enlarged

WITH FOUR HUNDRED AND EIGHTY-SIX ILLUSTRATIONS

Capio Lumen

LIBR
OF THE

LONDON
CROSBY LOCKWOOD AND SON
7, STATIONERS' HALL COURT, LUDGATE HILL
1902

TS240
H6

HALLIDIE

LONDON:
PRINTED BY H. VIRTUE AND COMPANY, LIMITED,
CITY ROAD.

PREFACE TO FIRST EDITION

THE contents of this volume are in the main a reprint of articles which have already had a world-wide circulation in the pages of the *English Mechanic.*

Some two years since I observed the frequent questions which appeared in that journal in reference to the present subject, and the idea occurred to me to throw some of the results of my own experience into the form of short articles for its columns. The editor kindly approved of my suggestion, leaving me free to take my own course as to the scope of the articles and the method of illustration.

The favourable reception accorded to those papers led me to think that they might form the basis of a book which might fill a useful place amongst our technical literature.

These articles, therefore, are now thoroughly revised and corrected, and expanded by the incorporation of new matter, additional sketches, and useful tables. A serviceable syllabus of contents and appropriate chapter headings, together with a copious index, will render the subject matter readily accessible to the reader.

109254

The book in its present form, it is hoped, will be found a *vade mecum* of that trade in which I have been engaged, as apprentice, journeyman, and foreman, for the last five-and-twenty years of my life. To my fellow-workmen, to those draughtsmen who have lacked a training in the shops, to pupils pursuing their practical studies in our factories, to employers and managers in engineering works, to all, in short, who seek more than a mere smattering of knowledge relative to this, the first and most important branch of engineeering construction, I respectfully dedicate this volume.

PREFACE TO SECOND EDITION.

THE first edition of this book having been exhausted, I have availed myself of the opportunity of extending and improving the work for the new edition. New chapters have been written on helical wheels, on screw or angle wheels, and on pattern-shop machinery. The chapters on spur and on bevel gearing, on machine-moulded gears, on engine cylinders, on engine-beds, on miscellaneous engine work, on foundry requisites, and on workshop matters, have been much extended. Many entirely new illustrations have been added, and several of the original ones replaced by better. This edition contains sixty-two pages more than the first, and eighty more illustrations. A good many of these have been drawn specially for this edition, but some are reproduced from articles of mine which have appeared in the *English Mechanic* and the *Practical Engineer*. The double cylinder, p. 87, and the road wheel, p. 126, appeared in the first-named journal; the engine-bed on p. 109, sundry slide-valves, on pp. 135, 137, and the remarks on checking patterns, p. 286, appeared in the second. I am also indebted to Messrs. Robinson, of Rochdale, and to Messrs. J. B. Stone & Co., Finsbury Pavement, London, E.C., for the loan of the electros of the machines described in the chapter on pattern-shop machinery.

The work having been, therefore, greatly extended and improved, it should, I think, possess an increased and permanent value to my fellow-craftsmen.

J. H.

PREFACE TO THIRD EDITION.

This edition is enlarged by thirty-six new pages relating to patterns for foundry requisites, patterns for plate moulding, and the storage of patterns. Thirty-six new illustrations have been included in these, and more than a dozen new and better blocks have been substituted for some of those in the earlier editions. New and reduced blocks of machines have also taken the place of those printed on the inconvenient folding plates in the Second Edition.

The growing importance of plate moulding renders the inclusion of a chapter on that subject imperative, and this alone should give the present edition a special value, apart from the fund of various practical information which is comprised in the remainder of the work.

The author tenders his thanks to those who have hitherto shown their appreciation of his efforts, and trusts that the demand for the present edition will be continuous.

Joseph Horner.

CONTENTS.

CHAPTER I.

INTRODUCTORY.

PAGE

Pattern-making a Trade of recent Growth.—Advantages of Division of Labour.—Tools used in Pattern-making.—Contraction-rules.—Timber.—Proposed Treatment of the Subject . . . 1

CHAPTER II.

ON DESIGNING TOOTHED WHEELS.

Shop Drawing Boards.—Importance of shaping Wheel Teeth correctly.—Typical Forms.—Definitions.—Cycloidal Teeth.—Willis's Odontograph.—Involute Teeth.—Proportion Scales for Cycloidal Teeth—Rolling the Tooth Curves.—Choice of Circles.—Proportions of Arms, Rim, and Boss.—Building-up of Patterns.—Ring Segments.—Jointing.—Pegging.—Remarks on Turning Tools.—Mode of Use 5

CHAPTER III.

SPUR GEARING.

Taper in a Wheel Rim.—The Use of Varnish.—Methods of making Teeth.—Working Teeth in place.—Dovetailed Teeth.—Block Templets.—Their comparative Merits.—Glasspapering.—Locking together of Wheel Arms.—Boss and Ribs.—The Use of Hollows in Castings 21

CHAPTER IV.

BEVEL-WHEELS.

Principle of Bevel-wheels.—Mode of Striking out.—Wheels in Section.—Projection of Teeth.—Building-up of the Rim.—Turning with Templets.—Getting Centres for the Teeth . . 28

CHAPTER V.

WORMS AND WORM-WHEELS.

PAGE

How to Strike out.—With Circles.—With the Odontograph.—Pattern of Worm.—Templet of Diagonal Lines.—Mode of cutting Worm.—Building the Wheel.—Jointing.—The Teeth . . 34

CHAPTER VI.

MACHINE-MOULDED WHEELS.

The Change effected by the Introduction of Wheel Machines.—Parts necessary for Machine Use.—The Teeth.—How Moulded.—H-shaped Arm Cores.—Form of Core-box.—The use of Striking Boards.—Advantages of their Use.—Various Types, with Illustrations.—Bevel-wheels.—Striking Boards.—Top.—Bottom.—Arm Core-box.—Disc or Plate Wheels.—The Tooth Block.—Making.—Teeth, Methods of Fitting.—Various Striking Boards, with Illustrations.—Tooth Blocks for Worm Wheels.—For Twist Wheels 39

CHAPTER VII.

MORTISE-WHEELS, &c.

Mortise-wheels.—Why used.—Metal in Rim.—Thickness of Cogs.—Taper in Mortises.—Prints and Cores.—Wood used in Gearing.—Sawing Cogs.—Driving.—Fastening.—Splitting of Wheels.—Shrouding.—Breaking Strength.—Basis of Calculations.—Ratios of Wheels 53

CHAPTER VIII.

HELICAL-WHEELS.

Helical-wheels.—Their Purpose.—Conditions of Accuracy.—Block for Helical Spur.—Methods of Division.—How Made.—Obtaining the Screw Forms.—Block for Helical Bevel.—Methods of Division.—How Made.—Tooth Curves.—How Obtained and Worked 61

CHAPTER IX.

ANGLE OR TWIST WHEELS.

Pitch.—Obtaining Same.—Conditions of Mutual Gear.—The Wheel Blank.—Marking out.—Working 68

CHAPTER X.

ON CORE PRINTS.

PAGE

Prints not always required.—Typical Forms of Prints.—Taper.—Depth.—Modifications of Prints.—"Stopping-off."—Boxes.—Coring various kinds of Holes.—Top Prints.—Wrought-iron Pieces cast in.—Chain-wheel Cores.—Importance of Venting Cores.—Decomposition of Water in a Mould 71

CHAPTER XI.

ENGINE CYLINDERS.

Striking out.—Views required.—"Lagging up."—Head Metal.—Turning.—Passage Block.—Steam Chest Flange.—Prints.—Exhaust.—Feet.—Passage Core-Box.—Exhaust Core-box.—Double Cylinder.—Pattern.—Board for Body Core.—Steam Chest Core-box.—Passage Core-box.—Exhaust ditto.—Steam Inlet ditto 78

CHAPTER XII.

ENGINE CYLINDERS STRUCK IN LOAM.

The Use of Loam.—Foundation-plate for striking on.—Bottom Board.—Body Board.—Attachments of Cylinder.—Loam Bricks.—Top Board.—Head.—Central Core.—Closing the Mould.—Variety of Design in Cylinders 97

CHAPTER XIII.

ON ENGINE BEDS AND BASE-PLATES IN GENERAL.

Definition of a Bedplate.—Horizontal Engine Bed.—Methods of Moulding.—Way of Casting.—"Boxing up" of Patterns.—By two Methods.—Attachments of Bed.—Types of Bedplates.—Core-boxes.—Bedplate for overhanging Cylinder.—Pattern.—Core-box for Piston-rod Guide.—Other Boxes.—Buckling of Castings.—Theory at Fault 102

CHAPTER XIV.

FLYWHEELS.

Pattern Wheels.—Wheels struck up.—Wheels with Cast-iron Arms.—Striking the Core-bed.—Size of Cores.—Form of Core-box.—Laying Cores in Position.—Top Part of Mould.—Wheels with Wrought-iron Arms.—Sweeping up the Ring.—Core-box for the Arm Bosses—Casting of Central Boss 114

THE

CHAPTER XV.

PAGE

STRAP PULLEYS—METAL PATTERNS.

Curving of Pulley Arms.—Necessity of due Proportioning of Parts. —Rim.—Arms.—Boss.—Wood Patterns.—Iron Patterns: (I.) Made by Board and Core-box; (II.) By Sweep and Arm; (III.) By Ring and Set of Arms.—Split Pulleys.—Metal Patterns.—Why used.—Their Preparation.—Range of their Utility.—Road Wheel with Strutted Arms.—Pattern.—Core-boxes . . . 120

CHAPTER XVI.

MISCELLANEOUS ENGINE-WORK.

Eccentric Sheaves.— Straps.— Slide-valves. — D-valve.—Double-ported Valve.—Main Valve.—Guides.—Cross-heads . . 132

CHAPTER XVII.

SHEAVE-WHEELS.

Modified Provisions for the Reception of the Chain.—Patterns.—Mode of Jointing.—Built-up Patterns.—Templets.—Sheave-wheels with Cast-Arms.—With Wrought-iron Arms.—Core-box for Rim Cores.—Central Boss.—Sheave-wheels made entirely with Cores. — Their Boxes.— Recessed Chain-wheels.—Rope-wheels.—Wave-wheels.—Projection of the "Wave"—Sprocket-wheels.—Wrought and Cast Sprockets 141

CHAPTER XVIII.

COLUMNS AND PIPES.

Jointing of Columns and Pipes.—Lagging up.—Turning.—The Use of a Steady.—End Flanges.— Body Flanges.—Socket-pipes.—Putting Holes in Flanges.—Loam-pipes.—Fitting Branches.—Throat Core-boxes 151

CHAPTER XIX.

MISCELLANEOUS PIPE-WORK.

Turning Quick Bends in the Lathe.—Working Flat Bends.—Dovetailing Bends.— S-Pipes. —Striking up in Loam.—Guide-line. —Guide-iron.—Strickles.—Sockets.—Pipes of Irregular Shape 157

CHAPTER XX.

FLUTED AND ORNAMENTAL COLUMNS

PAGE

Apparent Difficulty of Moulding.—Number of Joints.—Central Foundation or Base.—Mouldings.—Flanges.—Working the Flutes.—Loam-board.—Square Core.—How attached.—Lines of Jointure.—Danger of Undercutting 164

CHAPTER XXI.

ESTIMATING WEIGHTS OF CASTINGS FROM THEIR PATTERNS.

Reducing to Feet and Inches.—Multipliers.—Sources of Error.—Specific Gravities.—Practical Example in Calculation.—Approximate Formulæ.—Bevel-wheels.—Mortise-wheels.—Pipes and Columns.—Decimals.—Useful Notes 172

CHAPTER XXII.

ON THE USE OF CORES AND DRAWBACKS.

Different Methods of Moulding.—Value of Experience.—Gasholder Bracket.—Drawbacks.—Grid.—Travelling Girders.—Cylinder.—Drawbacks.—Joints.—Lathe-bed. . 179

CHAPTER XXIII.

LOAM PATTERNS, &c.

Why used.—Methods of Making.—Capstan.—Bar Cores.—Boards.—Core-box.—Remarks on Wooden Patterns.—Loose Pieces.—Stopping-off.—Pipes.—Wheels.—Brackets.—Skeleton Patterns.—Rings.—Levelling-block.—Crane-centre.—Tank-plate . 190

CHAPTER XXIV.

SPECIALITIES—SPECIAL TOOLS.

Dowels.—Difference between those of the Cabinet and Pattern-maker.—Wood Dowels.—Metal Dowels.—Peg and Cup and Plate Dowels.—Methods of putting in.—Rapping Plates—Lifting-straps.—Centre Plates.—Modes of securing Jointed Patterns in the Lathe.—Long-toothed Gauge.—Radius Finder.—Flange Templet 201

CHAPTER XXV.

CHAIN BARRELS.

PAGE
Various Kinds of Barrels.—Plain and Spiral.—Barrels made from Loam Patterns.—Mode of Striking-up.—Barrels made from Loam Moulds.—Striking-up.—Right and Left-handed Spirals 210

CHAPTER XXVI.

CHILLED WORK

Theory of Chilling.—Trolley-wheels.—Curve of Disc.—Chill.—Top Box.—Roller.—Jointing of Chill.—Wheel Naves.—Clips . 217

CHAPTER XXVII.

SCREWS.

Principle of the Screw.—Diameter.—Pitch.—Striking out.—Entire Patterns.—Fitting the Segments.—Working to Shape.—Pile Screws.—Propeller Screws.—Marking out.—Pattern Blades.—Loam Screws 221

CHAPTER XXVIII.

FOUNDRY REQUISITES.

Moulding Boxes.—Their Proportions.—Details of Parts.—Variations in Type.—Box Parts.—Dimensions.—Bars.—Pattern Work for.—Swivels.—Lugs.—Grids.—Back Plates.—Core Rings.—Gaggers 229

CHAPTER XXIX.

HEAVY MACHINE WORK.

Variety of Types.—Hollow Framing.—Planing Machine Bed.—Loose Strips.—Cored Portions.—Taper.—Standard of Machine.—Chaplet Blocks for Cores.—Travelling Table.—Open Joints.—Wall Drilling Machine.—Radial Drilling Machine.—Boxing up.—Core-box 237

CHAPTER XXX.

LATHE MATTERS.

PAGE

Lathe Beds.— Advantages of Coring Beds.—Boxing up.—Attachments.—Core-boxes.—Saddle for Slide-rest.—Transverse Slide. —Standard.—Headstocks 245

CHAPTER XXXI.

PUMPS, COCKS, AND VALVES.

Three-throw Pumps.—Suction-box.—Delivery-box.— Jointing.— Barrel.— Its Core.— Bucket.—Air-vessel.—Strainer-pipes.— Their Cores.—Sluice-cocks.—How moulded.—Gunmetal Faces Cast and Turned in.—Plug.—Nut.—Force-pumps and Core-boxes.—Small Brasswork.—Globe-valve.—Methods of making Cores 255

CHAPTER XXXII.

WATER-WHEELS AND TURBINES.

Water-wheels.—Their Bosses.—For Flat Arms.—For Round Rods. —Shrouding.—Toothed Ring.—Building it up.—Marking out. —The Teeth.—Turbines.—Core-box for Buckets.—Mode of Forming the Shrouding.—Core-box for Guides.—The Discs.— Greensand and Loam Moulds —Turbine Steps.—Lignum Vitæ Strips.—Directions for fitting in— Governor-ring . . . 265

CHAPTER XXXIII.

BOILER FITTINGS AND MOUNTINGS.

Dead-plate.—Marking and Fitting.—Fire-bar.—Allowance for Play. —Bearer.—Door Frame.—Building up of the Pattern.—Door. —Valve Seatings.—Safety-valve Shell.—Valves.— Sweeped Fire-bars.—Mud-hole Door Frames.—Man-hole Frames . . 276

CHAPTER XXXIV.

WORKSHOP NOTES.

Allowances for Turning and Planing.—Variable in Amount.—Name-plates.—Lead Letters.—Curved Name-plates.—Chequering of Foot-plates.—Stock Core-boxes.—Glue.—How to Make.—How to Joint.—Shellac Varnish.—Paint.—Faced and Unfaced Por-

PAGE

tions of Patterns.—Prints and Bosses.—Pattern Register.—Makeshift Work.—Lead.—Plaster of Paris.—Shop Tools.—Stamping of Patterns.—Checking Patterns.—Taking Dimensions.—Prints and Core-boxes.—Winding Faces.—Faces at Right Angles.—Taper.—Shrinkage.—Measurement.—Old Patterns 280

CHAPTER XXXV.

PATTERN SHOP MACHINERY.

Lathes.—For Light and for Heavy Work.—Characteristics Requisite.—Chucks.—Saws.—Circular.—Framing.—Sizes of Saws.—Fences.—Other Apparatus.—Band Saws.—Framing.—Pulleys.—Other Parts.—Planing Machines.—For Surfacing.—For Panel Planing.—Mitre-cutting Machine.—Motor for Pattern Shop.—Gas Engine.—Shafting.—Speeds of Machines.—Care of Machinery 291

CHAPTER XXXVI.

THE QUALIFICATIONS OF A PATTERN-MAKER.

Specialisation of Work.—Woolwich Arsenal.—Mental Loss suffered by Machine Hands.—Variety in Pattern Work.—Book Knowledge.—Need of Technical Education.—The Relation of Study to Work.—Principles and Practice.—Projection.—Arithmetic.—Experience.—Antiquity of Pattern-making.—Its Prospects . 308

CHAPTER XXXVII.

PATTERNS FOR PLATE MOULDING.

Turn-over Boards.—Various Types.—Plate Moulding.—Odd-side.—Wooden Plates.—Metal Plates.—Details of Fitting same.—Casting Plates.—Economies of Plating.—Examples.—Moulding Machines 315

CHAPTER XXXVIII.

THE STORAGE OF PATTERNS.

Storage in Sets.—Or by Classes of Work.—Shelving.—Registration.—Checking Patterns 341

APPENDIX.

I. Table of Diameters, Circumferences, and Areas of Circles . 347
II. Table of Squares, Cubes, Square Roots, and Cube Roots . 353
III. Table of the Weight of Cast-Iron Balls 356
IV. Table of Dimensions for Pipe Flanges and Sockets . . 356
V. Table of Decimal Equivalents, One Inch the Integer . . 357
VI. Table of Decimal Equivalents, One Foot the Integer . . 357
VII. Table of the Weight of Solid Cylinders in Cast Iron, One Foot long 357
VIII. Table of Pitches, Pitch Diameters, and Number of Teeth of Wheels 358
INDEX 363

PATTERN-MAKING.

CHAPTER I.

INTRODUCTORY.

Pattern-making a trade of recent growth.—Advantages of Division of Labour.—Tools used in Pattern-making.—Contraction-rules.—Timber.—Proposed treatment of the Subject.

In that excessive specialisation of trades and industries—that necessary breaking up of many of the older and more typical handicrafts—which has been going on during the present century, pattern-making has become a distinct occupation. Fifty years since, the old race of millwrights were "all-round" men in the engineering firms. They could fit up a mill throughout, design its arrangements, both general and in detail, make the patterns of the cast-iron work, gear the mortise-wheels, chip and file the iron-toothed ones, weld a shaft, turn it in the lathe, forge levers, fit up the pedestals and bearings, line the shafting, and, in fact, do all the work that is now divided among half-a-dozen separate and distinct trades. Necessarily this meant the sacrifice of some special skill, the absence of a certain mechanical facility which results from the division of labour. But, taken as a body, they were better craftsmen, because more complete, than the mechanics who now do one thing, and one thing only. They were men of a strong representative character, skilful in the use of a few rough and ready tools, and equal to contingencies as they arose. The race, except in some isolated localities, has nearly died out. Now, the pattern-maker constructs the wooden models and gears the mortise-wheels; the fitter chips, files, and fastens different parts together; the planer, slotter, and shaper save the fitter's muscles, and the iron-turner prepares his shafts and bores his wheels. The fitter again and the erecter occupy distinct positions, while each individual workman besides usually excels only in some special branch of work.

But this division of labour has its advantages. Machinery has been cheapened, there is more beauty and finish about it, and it is capable of being turned out of hand much more rapidly than was possible under the old *régime*. More and more yet the tendency of the time is to division—specialisation of labour. Men doing one class of work alone acquire a skill, a facility in that particular branch, which can be acquired and preserved in no other way. And in this we are only borne along by the tendencies of the age in which we live. Science and the wide fields of knowledge yield no exception to this rule. Men in any and every walk of life can only acquire great distinction by moving in one groove. The boundless universe is fair and inviting; but each must be content to plough his own little furrow, glad if he accomplish worthy work before the night comes on.

Enough of preface—now to our art and trade of pattern-making. Tools and timber, two essentials, may be disposed of briefly. Speaking generally, carpenters' tools are suitable for pattern work, but mortise-chisels are not wanted, neither are the plough and irons, nor the various bead and moulding-planes. And instead of a number of firmer chisels and gouges, long chisels and gouges, called paring-tools, are requisite. The average kit of a pattern-maker should consist of the following articles, though many workmen add largely to these: hand-saw, tenon, dovetail, bow, compass, and keyhole saws; jack-plane, trying and smoothing planes; about eight round planes, ranging from Nos. 4 to 18; three rebate-planes of various widths; thumb-plane, bull-nose and compass planes; half-a-dozen paring chisels of various widths, ten or twelve paring-gouges of various widths and sweeps, half-a-dozen firmer-chisels from $\frac{1}{16}$th to $1\frac{1}{2}$ inches; two short marking-gauges and a panel-gauge, a brace and set of thirty-six bits, two pairs of trammels, large and small respectively, wing compasses and dividers, calipers (inside and outside); axe, turning-gouges and chisels, round nose and side tools (about three of each); a six-inch and a twelve-inch trying-square, to which may be added a twenty-inch or twenty-four-inch one of wood; a bevel, sundry set squares, hammer, pincers, pliers, two spoke-shaves, brad-punches, gimlets, bradawls, oilstone, gouge-slips, mallet, screw-drivers, large and small, scriber, a few files, scales, and a standard and contraction-rule. Special mention must be made of this last tool, which is used only by pattern-makers. As its name implies, it is a rule which is made longer than the standard measure by the amount which cast iron contracts in cooling from the molten state to the ordinary temperature of the atmosphere. Though a standard rule is required for the measurement of castings, it would be obviously inconvenient to use it in pattern-making, because the workman would be perpetually making approximate allowances for contraction in fractional parts of a foot. So the contraction-rule economises his time and insures something more accurate than approximations. A two feet contraction-rule is nearly a ¼ inch longer than a common rule—strictly speaking, ¼ inch in 2 feet 6 inches. This represents nearly the maximum amount of contraction for iron, and is fairly correct for general work. But an experienced pattern-maker knows that he must not trust too much to his rule, but that special allowances are required for special classes of work, and for different qualities of metal as well as for different kinds of metal. Thus, while iron contracts an eighth in. in 15 inches, brass contracts an eighth in. in 10 inches, steel a quarter in. in 12 inches. A heavy casting will contract less than a light one, while a small casting will often come out as large, or even larger than the pattern. Hard white iron will contract much more than soft grey iron, and the presence of large dried cores in the mould will diminish the amount of contraction. A plate with large superficies will almost invariably come out *thicker* than the pattern, owing to the fluid pressure exercised by the *head* of the runner, and also to the top-part box not being entirely rigid. Experience alone can guide in these matters; and some element of uncertainty will always be present, for different mixtures of metal will show different contractions, as also will rapid or steady lowering of the temperature in the cooling of castings. But in general, for castings of moderate size, the contraction-rule is practically correct. Few men provide themselves with a contraction-rule specially for gunmetal and brass. Rules are sometimes made having the divisions for iron contraction upon one edge and those for brass upon the other. But one is apt to make blunders in measurement where this is the case, and the safer way is to have a rule giving contraction for iron only, and to make the additional allowance for gunmetal when necessary—very approximately one and a half times that of iron, or ⅛ inch in 10 inches.

The timber used for ordinary patterns is yellow pine. It is light, soft, easy to work, comparatively free from liability to warp and twist, and it is cheap. Red deal and pitch-pine are unsuitable, since in the foundry sand they absorb moisture, and become ridged and rough, causing the mould to tear up when the pattern is withdrawn. They are, besides, not so pleasant to work up as the yellow pine. For small patterns mahogany is an excellent wood, hard, strong, and not liable to warp. Its price precludes its use except for small patterns, or patterns which have to be moulded repeatedly. Other woods are occasionally used, but these are the best, and are the ones in commonest demand.

Obviously the scope of such a work as this will not allow that much space should be occupied in the discussion of those matters which are learned by the apprentice during the first year or two of his time, and which in most cases could not be imparted except in the workshop. We are at least bound to assume that the readers of these pages are able to use their tools, and that they possess some little acquaintance with the internal arrangements of an engineer's factory.

Of glueing, varnishing, the allowances for fitting and machining, the taper on patterns for delivery in the sand, the use of cores and drawbacks, special tools, patterns for loam moulding, and so forth, we shall speak as occasion arises, thinking it better for the sake of variety to intersperse our remarks concerning these and other kindred matters amongst the articles themselves. It would be clearly impossible in the compass of a volume to instance every class of work and every contingency that might arise. What we purpose to do is, to take individual patterns of representative types, and while describing these in detail, to discuss, as occasion offers, the general principles to be borne in mind in the construction of each class of work. By bearing these first principles in mind no real difficulty need be experienced in dealing with exceptional cases, modified forms, and so on.

CHAPTER II.

ON DESIGNING TOOTHED WHEELS.

Shop Drawing-boards.—Importance of shaping Wheel Teeth correctly.—Typical Forms.—Definitions.—Cycloidal Teeth.—Willis's Odontograph.—Involute Teeth.—Proportion Scales for Cycloidal Teeth.—Rolling the Tooth Curves.—Choice of Circles.—Proportions of Arms, Rim, and Boss.—Building-up of Patterns.—Ring Segments.—Jointing.—Pegging.—Remarks on Turning Tools.—Mode of Use.

We suppose we have to make a pair of cog-wheels which shall work correctly and smoothly into one another, and which shall neither look clumsy on the one hand nor break at the first occasion of stress on the other. Before attempting to make the pattern, then, we should draw the wheels out to full size. In the case of large wheels this is done on a drawing-board—not the board of the office draughtsman, but the workman's board, made by laying several very dry pieces of stuff together edge to edge, and retaining them in place with battens screwed on the back. The face is then planed nicely over with a smoothing-plane, and whitened with chalk. The edges are shot straight and at right-angles with each other, so that a T-square may be used from either edge. There are dozens of these boards of various sizes in every well-appointed pattern shop, it being frequently desirable to retain drawings for reference until after the castings are made. It is usually the foreman's duty to strike out the work on the boards. Of course, perspective drawings cannot be available for measurement; hence working drawings must be projections, consisting of plans, elevations, and vertical and horizontal sections. All save the simplest jobs should be struck out thus. This practice will frequently prevent mistakes, and enable the workman, by a clearer understanding of the details and relationships of mutual parts, to economise both time and timber.

Given the drawing-board, there comes the important question how to design the wheels. Sometimes this is done in the drawing-office, sometimes by the foreman of pattern-makers, Yet every workman should be able to design his own wheels in a proper fashion. He will naturally also and properly regard the teeth as meriting the first attention. On the shape of these depends the smooth working of the wheels and in general their durability also. Teeth of almost any shape will manifestly work together if sufficient clearance or space between their contiguous flanks be allowed. Teeth may work together by a succession of jerks, or they may glide smoothly over each other's flanks in constant contact. Teeth of large pitch may be relatively weak, while teeth of small pitch may be relatively strong; each according to design. Also a form of tooth suited for one class of work will not always be so suitable for another class. Hence the propriety of devoting to the forms and proportions of teeth a considerable amount of attention and care.

There are two typical forms in use for the teeth of wheels, viz. epicycloidal and involute. There is also that close approximation to the true epicycloidal form known as the odontograph. The involute is chiefly suitable for use where the wheel-shafts have varying centres, as in rolling mills. In general engineering, the epicycloidal is the best and most durable form of tooth, far preferable to any mere rule-of-thumb design. It is strong, elegant, works easily, and lasts good for a long time—that is if it be struck out carefully and with proper judgment. Now, it is the simplest thing in the world to strike out an approximate epicycloidal tooth that shall work with those of any other wheel, or any number of wheels, if one clearly understands the process. Before entering, therefore, into the description of the construction of their patterns, it will be well to explain the methods of the designing of cycloidal and involute teeth.

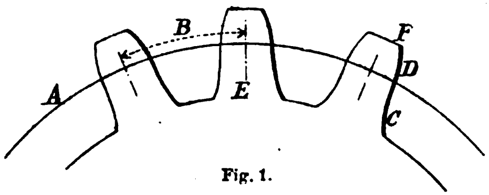


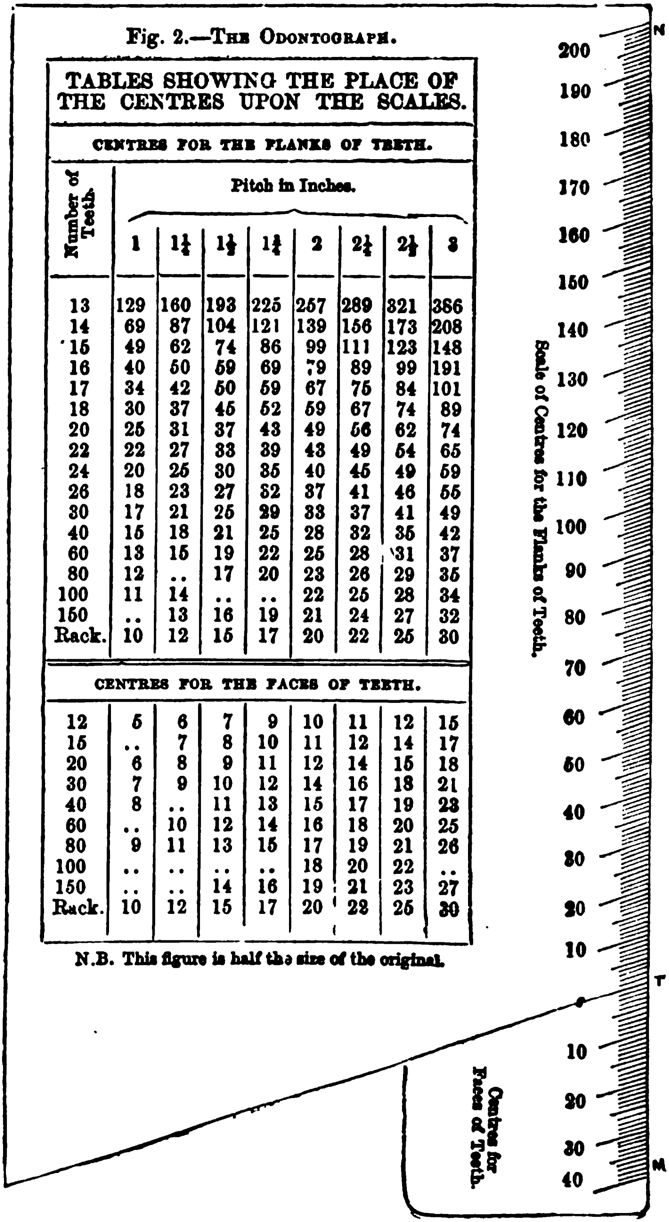
Fig. 1.

As a matter of course, in a technical work no apology will be necessary for explaining the meaning of terms and things which are perfectly well understood by experienced workmen. There are, therefore, a few terms which I must explain before going further. "Pitch-line" (Fig. 1, A) of a wheel is its circumferential line of teeth centres, which is in contact with, but does not intersect, the pitch-line of the wheel into which its teeth work. Theoretically, the teeth are only an accident of the wheel, a form of construction necessitated by circumstances; the ideal wheels are supposed to work by the friction of their smooth peripheries, those peripheries being considered as coincident with the pitch-lines. "Pitch" (Fig. 1, B) of a wheel is the distance from the centre of one tooth to the centre of its fellow measured on the pitch-line, which distance must be constant all round; "flanks" (Fig. 1, C) are the sides of the teeth lying below the pitch-line; "faces" (Fig. 1, D) extend from the pitch-line outwards; "root" (Fig. 1, E) is that portion of the tooth which meets the periphery of the rim; "point" (Fig. 1, F) is the opposite or extreme end of the tooth; "cycloid" is a curve drawn by a point in the circumference of a circle rolling on a base line; "epi-cycloid" is the curve formed without, "hypo-cycloid" that formed within, the fundamental line or circle. "Cycloidal" is, however, the general term applied to the teeth formed by a generating circle rolling without and within the pitch-lines of wheels and racks. The one essential condition in order that any two or more wheels of a set shall gear smoothly together, is that a single describing circle be used both for points and roots of each of the wheels in the set. Where two wheels only are designed to work together, we may select a describing circle with a view to strength alone, a small circle spreading the flanks and making a broad root. But where a whole train of gearing is wanted, or where "stock" wheels are of necessity required interchangeable, the circle must be chosen with reference to the smallest wheel in the set, and must never exceed the radius of its pitch circle. Where this radius is taken as the basis (usually that of an eleven or twelve-toothed pinion) the tooth flanks become radial from the centre and the roots are weakened thereby. Still, as the roots can in most instances be strengthened by shrouding, the inconvenience is not so serious as it appears at first sight.

In striking special pairs of wheels, of course it is not necessary to use the same describing circle throughout. It is in those cases only essential to bear in mind that the same circle which strikes the roots of the wheel must strike the points of the pinion, and conversely.

The working out of the curves necessary for every separate

Fig. 2.—The Odontograph.


N
200
190
180
170
160
150
140
130
120
110
100
90
80
70
60
50
40
30
20
10
T
10
20
30
40
M
Scale of Centres for the Flanks of Teeth.
Centres for Faces of Teeth.

TABLES SHOWING THE PLACE OF THE CENTRES UPON THE SCALES.

CENTRES FOR THE FLANKS OF TEETH.

Number of Teeth.	Pitch in Inches.							
	1	1¼	1½	1¾	2	2¼	2½	3
13	129	160	193	225	257	289	321	386
14	69	87	104	121	139	156	173	208
15	49	62	74	86	99	111	123	148
16	40	50	59	69	79	89	99	191
17	34	42	50	59	67	75	84	101
18	30	37	45	52	59	67	74	89
20	25	31	37	43	49	56	62	74
22	22	27	33	39	43	49	54	65
24	20	25	30	35	40	45	49	59
26	18	23	27	32	37	41	46	55
30	17	21	25	29	33	37	41	49
40	15	18	21	25	28	32	35	42
60	13	15	19	22	25	28	31	37
80	12	..	17	20	23	26	29	35
100	11	14	..	..	22	25	28	34
150	..	13	16	19	21	24	27	32
Rack.	10	12	15	17	20	22	25	30

CENTRES FOR THE FACES OF TEETH.

12	5	6	7	9	10	11	12	15
15	..	7	8	10	11	12	14	17
20	6	8	9	11	12	14	15	18
30	7	9	10	12	14	16	18	21
40	8	..	11	13	15	17	19	23
60	..	10	12	14	16	18	20	25
80	9	11	13	15	17	19	21	26
100	..	..	..	..	18	20	22	..
150	..	..	14	16	19	21	23	27
Rack.	10	12	15	17	20	22	25	30

N.B. This figure is half the size of the original.

wheel involves some little trouble and care; and in order to lessen this, and to ensure more perfect uniformity of results, the late Professor Willis, of Cambridge, invented the odontograph scale. This instrument furnishes the workman with approximate radii and centres for striking the faces and flanks of teeth. The annexed diagram, Fig. 2, represents the scale drawn to half full size, with some columns of small pitches omitted, and the method of its use is as follows:—

Say, for instance, we have a wheel of 24 teeth, 1½-inch pitch. We strike out the pitch-line, and the lines representing the points and roots of the teeth, Fig. 3. Then laying down a distance equal to the pitch, viz. 1½ inch, upon the pitch-line, we bisect this; which bisecting line will represent the side of a tooth. Draw lines from the points which represent the pitch centres to the centre of the wheel; call these lines A and B, and the line of bisection C. Now lay the slant edge of the scale against the line A, allowing the graduated edge at T (see Fig. 2) to cut the pitch-line there. Looking down the "scale of centres for the flanks of the teeth," we find opposite 1½-inch pitch and 24 teeth the number 30. So we place one leg of the compass against 30 on the graduated edge, for the flanks of the teeth, and set the other to the point of bisection, C, on the pitch-line, and strike our flank, *f*, with the radius so obtained. We then remove the slant edge of the scale to the line B, allowing the graduated edge at T, Fig. 2, to cut the pitch-line once more. Looking down the 1½-inch column of "centres for the faces of the teeth," and along the row marked 20 (that being the nearest to 24), we find the figure 9. The division 9, therefore, along the scale of centres for the faces of the teeth is the point whereon we set our compasses for striking that portion of the tooth above pitch-line, *g*, and the radius is taken as before to the point of bisection in C.

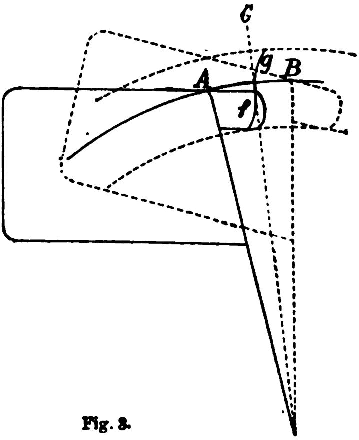


Fig. 3.

This scale is very useful, and a comparatively unskilful workman may be intrusted with its employment. When radii are required for wheels not in the list, it will be sufficient to take those intermediate between numbers given. The instrument is sold both in card and brass at the price of a few shillings.

We said that the involute form of tooth was chiefly suitable for shafts with varying centres. Hence the pattern-maker is seldom required to construct this type of wheel. In these the path of contact of the teeth is always in the line of tangent to the base circle, and the outline of the tooth is, as its name implies, that developed by the unwinding of a cord from a base circle.

Assuming the pitch-circles of a pair of wheels to be given approximately (though we may say there is no pitch-circle in the sense in which the term is used in cycloidal wheels) the way to proceed in setting out is as follows:—Assume a working depth of tooth below pitch-line, Fig. 4, *a*, and strike a circle, *b*, concentric with the pitch-line on the larger wheel; draw a tangent, *c*, to that circle, cutting the pitch-line at *d*, and prolong it to about an equal distance beyond. From the centre of the smaller wheel strike a circle, *e*, cutting this tangent on the prolonged line, and this circle will give the

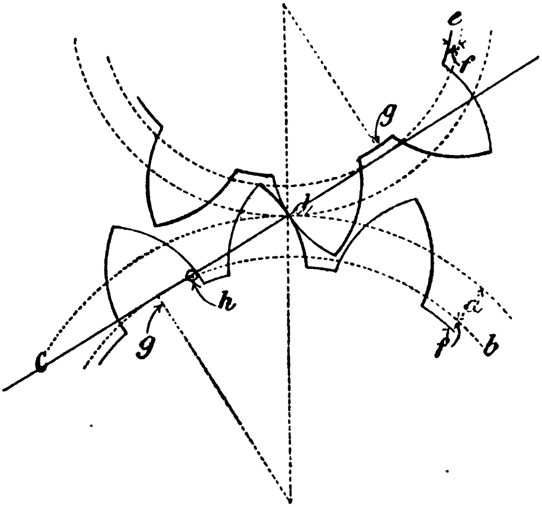


Fig. 4.

working depth of the cogs of the smaller wheel. Bottom clearance, *f*, *f*, must be given below these base-lines.

The tooth flanks may be marked by a needle point stuck in the edge of a strip of wood, the latter being rolled around the base circle, just as a piece of string might be unwound from a cylinder. The curve being thus found, an approximate radius might be taken, and all the flanks struck from a line of centres. The centre for such a radius will be found at about one-fourth of the distance from *g* to *d* on the tangent line, or at *h* in the larger wheel.

If we find on trial that the points of the teeth of the wheel fall short of the base-line on the pinion, we must bring the base-line of the wheel nearer to the pitch circle, thus giving a higher angle to the tangent line, and in consequence producing a shorter tooth. The length of tooth is thus confined within certain narrow limits, and we may have to make two or three trials before we strike a fair average shape.

Returning to our cycloidal teeth, in which the interest of the pattern-maker chiefly centres, we require a fixed and uniform scale for their length. To some extent this is arbitrary—or perhaps we should say, experience has indicated the proportions which now obtain among engineers. The longer the tooth the weaker it becomes; but a short tooth, on the other hand, has less wearing surface.

The dimensions of wheel-teeth are invariably given in proportions of the pitch. These proportions embody the results of practical experience. Though different tables vary slightly, it is preferable, when a scale has been once adopted, to adhere uniformly to it. A scale can be constructed with a little care, and if preserved will save the trouble of marking out fresh proportions whenever a wheel requires to be made. Take a piece of paper and glue it on a board about 16 inches by 4 inches. When dry, line it out as in the diagram (Fig. 5). Divide one end into 15 equal parts; let lines from these divisions converge to a point 12 or 15 inches away. Now draw lines across of certain fixed lengths—½ inch, ¾ inch, 1 inch, and so on—and also lines for the odd eighths, ⅝ inch, ⅞ inch, &c., intermediate in position. These lines will represent the various pitches that may be required. Let them advance thus from ½ inch up to 3 or 4 inches. Now, on this scale the whole depth of tooth is represented by 12 divisions, the depth from pitch-line to root by 6½ divisions, and as a consequence the depth from pitch-line to point by 5½ parts. It is obvious that if the teeth were equidistant above and below the pitch-line, the points of one wheel would grind in the roots of the other. Hence the reason of bottom clearance. The thickness of the teeth is taken as equal to 7 parts. That leaves one part for flank clearance between contiguous teeth. These divisions may be indicated by deeper lines on the scale. This is a con-

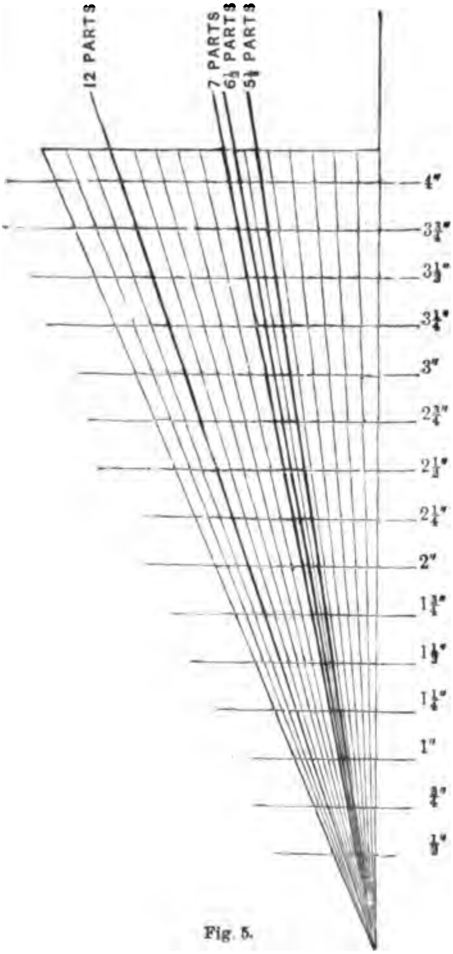


Fig. 5.

venient and handy form of scale, and the proportions are good. Some authorities give rather more, some rather less, others give ratios varying slightly in the case of large and small wheels. A comparison of the proportions given in the works of Box, Unwin, Molesworth, and D. K. Clark will show some slight variations. It is of no consequence, however, which be adopted, so that the same proportions are always adhered to.

For the sake of clearer illustration, let us assume that we have to make a wheel of 75 teeth and 1¼ inch pitch, to gear into a pinion of 23 teeth. Our wheel will then be 2 feet 5⅞ inches, or for convenience say 2 feet 6 inches diameter upon the "pitch-line," and its pinion 9⅛ inches. Divide out the pitch circles struck in contact on the drawing-board into corresponding numbers of points—namely, 75 and 23—by means of the "spring dividers," the screw on the dividers permitting of more delicate adjustment than the ordinary quadrant compasses.

Now apply the proportions of the tooth scale to the wheel and pinion alike. Take 7 parts where the 1¼-inch line cuts the scale; that will be the thickness of our teeth. Take 5⅛ divisions on the same line; that will give the length of the flanks of teeth. Take 6⅛ parts, also upon the same line, and that will give the depth from the pitch-line to the root.

Having thus obtained length and thickness, we will proceed to strike out the teeth, and having already explained how to use the odontograph, we will now instead find our own cycloidal curves. Get two bits of wood an eighth thick, cut the edges of one to an inside and outside curve respectively, of the same radius as the pitch diameter of one wheel (Fig. 6); cut the other piece in like fashion to the pitch diameter of the other wheel, and lay one edge of each sweeped piece on its respective pitch-line. Now make a number of discs ranging from 1 inch up to 6 inches, advancing by a ¼ inch in diameter. Drive a needle into the edge of each at an angle of about 45° (Fig. 6), allowing the point to project beyond the edge sufficiently to make a scratch. These are the rolling or generating circles, for the formation of the epi- and hypo-cycloidal curves. Take one of the discs,

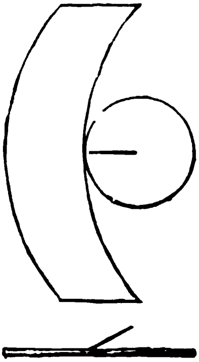


Fig 6.

bearing in mind the remarks made in the last chapter relative to the choice of the generating circle, place the point of the needle against the inner edge of the sweep, and roll the disc along, exerting a gentle pressure downwards at the same time. The needle point will describe the flank of the tooth below pitch-line (Fig. 7, *a*). Obviously the diameter of the disc will regulate the breadth of the tooth below the pitch-line: a small disc will spread the flanks, making the root very broad; a large disc will make them inconveniently narrow and weak. For this wheel a 2⅜ or 2½-inch disc will give an elegant and strong root, and a disc of this size will be suitable for a constant describing circle for wheels of this pitch, taking a pinion of twelve teeth as the smallest of a set. Having now got the curve for the flanks of the teeth lying *below* the pitch-line in the large wheel, use the disc which generated them to strike the faces of the pinion teeth lying *without* the pitch-line. For that purpose lay the outer pinion sweep on its pitch-line, and roll the disc as before. The edges of the templets will now be reversed, and the faces of the wheels (Fig. 7, *b*) and the flanks of the pinion will be generated by the same circle. It may be noted that these curves, thus generated, are not perfect arcs of circles, but so infinitesimal is the deviation, that they are in practice struck with a compass. For having found, by trial, a centre for the best approximate radius, the flanks of all the teeth are struck uniformly with that radius. To insure accuracy in these centres, a line is struck from the centre of the wheel, passing through the centres of all the radii.

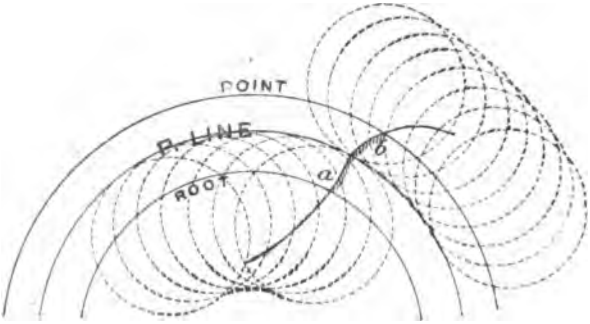


Fig. 7.

Wheels marked out thus are in constant contact, the flanks of the teeth roll smoothly one over the other, and a very small amount of clearance is necessary. Working easily, and being free from shock, they will last much longer than wheels made by rule-of-thumb practice, and will also produce less noise. We have considered our wheels as a portion of a set, and have therefore used the 2⅜-inch circle for faces and flanks alike. But in making special pairs of wheels we can use two circles with advantage. Thus, if we wanted a very strong pinion, we might take a describing circle much smaller than the pinion radius, and so spread its roots. In making bevel wheels, which can gear only in pairs, we can adopt this expedient very well. Also in making a new wheel to gear with an old and perhaps badly shaped one, we shall discover first by trial what circles will strike the flanks and faces of the old one, and make our new one to correspond.

With respect to thickness of arms, rim, boss, &c., rules are somewhat arbitrary. A good deal will also depend on the special work the wheel has to do. But commonly these are also given in terms of the pitch, modified by diameter, breadth, diameter of shaft, &c. The number of arms in a wheel between 10 or 12 inches and 2 feet in diameter may be four; under 10 or 12 inches the wheel will be a plated or disc wheel. But this also will depend on pitch, for a 2-feet wheel of fine pitch should have half-a-dozen arms, while a wheel may be plated up to 2 feet in diameter if it be of a 3 or 4-inch pitch, and is carried by a large shaft. From 2 feet to 6 or 7 feet in diameter a wheel should have six arms; but if of larger diameter than that it should have eight or ten. The width of the arms measured nearest the rim may be roughly taken at twice the pitch; but the following formula from Box on "Mill-Gearing" is preferable:

$$\frac{7{\cdot}34 \times P \times W \times \sqrt{N}}{A} = B^2$$

Where

7·34 is a constant multiplier,
P = pitch,
W = width of wheel,
N = number of pinions which wheel has to drive,
A = number of arms.

The arms taper from the boss towards the rim about ⅜ inch in width for every foot of length. The thickness of the arms, as also of the rim, should be the same as that of the teeth. The ribs, or cross-arms, should be half this thickness, and be slightly tapered towards their outer ends. The boss in small wheels should be twice the diameter of the bore; but beyond a bore of 3 or 3½ inches this would make the metal excessive. Then this formula may be used:

$$\delta = \tfrac{1}{4}'' + \tfrac{1}{3}d.$$

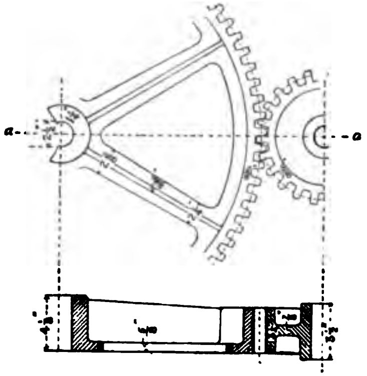
Where δ = thickness of metal in boss,
$\tfrac{1}{4}''$ = a constant,
d = the bore of the wheel.

The length of boss should be greater than the breadth of the wheel to ensure steadiness on the shaft, and may be obtained thus:—

$$L = B + 0{\cdot}06\,R.$$

Where L = length of boss,
B = breadth of wheel,
R = radius of wheel.

The breadth of tooth is purely arbitrary, but it frequently bears some relation to the pitch, from three to three and a half times that measurement being the commonest proportion. We will plate the smaller wheel of the two with a disc having a thickness of one-fourth the breadth of tooth. Our wheels will therefore have the accompanying dimensions (Fig. 8), to which dimensions we now proceed to make the patterns.



Section *a*—*a*
Fig. 8.

Anyone who has had the least experience in woodworking knows how stuff which is even moderately dry will shrink and warp out of truth after having been opened out to the air. In a newly-cut surface, either desiccation or absorption of moisture will occur, depending upon the condition of the timber and the state of the atmosphere. And when wood warps, curvature in the direction of its breadth always takes place. Further, wood is only strong to resist transverse and tensile strain in the transverse section of its fibres; hence "short grain" must be avoided, as well as wide unstayed superficies in patterns. For these reasons many patterns are, in workshop parlance, "built up," and so the rim of our wheel will be built up in courses, or layers of segments. In this case the rim being 3¼ inches wide, there may be four courses of ¹³⁄₁₆ inch thick, or five courses of full ⅝ inch each. Let it be noted that the greater the number of courses, the less liable is the pattern to warp or to become disjointed by rough usage. A ring built up with a large number of these segments is like the old man's bundle of sticks in the fable.

Where the wheel is marked out in "section," take the inner and outer diameters off the drawing with a pair of beam compasses, more commonly called "trammels," and describe a template segment on a thin piece of board, allowing ¼ inch both inside and outside for turning off, and ⅛ inch at each end for jointing. In wheels of less than four or five feet in diameter let six such segments go to the circle; if larger than that, have eight or ten. Now mark out the necessary number of segments from the one thus obtained, and saw these roughly to shape with a bow, compass, or band saw. The next matter is to face up a wooden chuck true, and glue the first set of segments upon it. This first set must not be glued directly on the chuck, but to strips of paper glued, one side to the chuck, the other side to the segments. This prevents the wood from splitting away when the finished pattern is lifted from the plate, for the paper, though strong enough to retain the ring in place while being turned, splits through the middle when the pattern is lifted with a chisel.

Allow this first course of segments to become properly dry and set; then, with a turning-gouge, just skim off the rough surface of the wood. Then take a firmer-chisel, and scrape the surface smooth and level, This is most essential, as the beginner will learn when trying to joint the next course. A wooden straightedge must be chalked and passed over the surface from time to time, the projecting parts of the work being reduced as indicated by the chalk. When a straight unbroken line of chalk becomes transferred from the straightedge to the face of the ring, the surface is true, and ready for the next layer. Chalk over this faced portion, and fit to it the next course of sweeps, using a trying-plane, finely set. Plane the ends of the segments from the edge of a shooting board, or saw them with a fine tenon-saw. Glue them down, taking care, as in all glued joints, to work out all superfluous glue by rubbing and pressure combined; and have the glue newly made and rather thin. The end joints must overlap—that is, they must come one over the other alternately, like bricks in a wall (Fig. 9). The further security of the joints may be insured by fastening them either with nails or pegs, the latter mode being preferable. Nails have an unpleasant way of bending aside, and appearing just where they are not wanted. Pegs will hold as well as nails and cannot damage a sharp tool. The pegs should be *split*, not sawn, out of pine, and tapered and driven tightly into the segments through bradawl-holes bored for their reception, and they may be touched with glue to increase their adhesion.

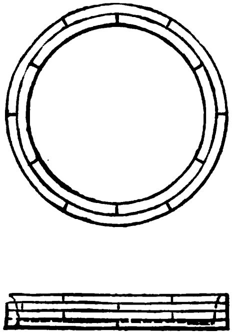


Fig. 9.

Having completed the building-up process, now turn the ring, roughing with a turning-gouge, and finishing with a firmer-chisel, diamond-point, and round-nose.

A word about these turning-tools. The multitude of tools used by amateurs and ornamental turners have no place in the pattern-maker's kit. Gouges, side-chisels, firmer-chisels, round-nosed tools, and diamond-points, each in two or three different sizes—these are all which are ever required. Beyond a plain moulding, anything artistic in the pattern-shop is seldom wanted.

The gouge used by turners is a stout tool, ranging from ¼ inch to 1¼ inch in width. The ½-inch and the ¾-inch are the most useful in general pattern-turning. In common with all turner's tools, its handle should be long, say, a couple or three inches longer than the tool itself. Much depends on the way in which it is ground. A gouge ground like Fig. 10 will do very well for quickly roughing down a long parallel surface; but for a moulding, or even for our wheel, it would be utterly unsuitable, because of the readiness with which its corners would catch in the work. What more trying to temper and patience than to see a piece of work, when all but finished, disfigured by a "kick" of the gouge at the last cut, or knocked out of truth by the force of the sudden arrest? But by grinding the gouge as shown in the second figure (Fig. 11), and holding it slightly sideways, round and hollow portions of work, and small corners, may be turned safely and quickly in half the time that would be occupied by an unskilful workman in *scraping* to shape with round-nose and chisel. Note also the double-bevelled obliquely-ground chisel (Fig. 12). The obliquity need not be very great. It is used as a shaping and parting tool; but it should be ground thin, and be held very firmly in the hand when in use as a shaping instrument. Gripping the handle in the right hand, place the forefinger of the left hand underneath the rest of the lathe, and clasping the tool between the last three fingers and the thumb of the same, turn, with the edge inclined at an angle with the axis of the work,

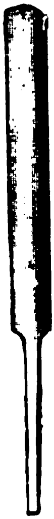


Fig. 10.

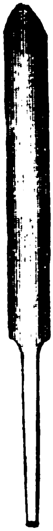


Fig. 11.

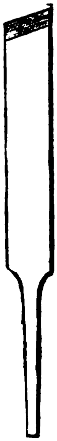


Fig. 12.

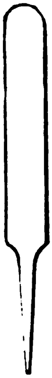


Fig. 13.

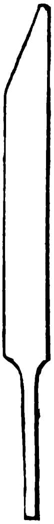


Fig. 14.

cutting nearer to the obtuse than to the acute-angled end of the chisel. For work of less than 3 inches diameter, a side chisel is a clean and easily used tool; but work of larger dimensions had better be scraped with the firmer-chisel, which must be ground to a more obtuse angle than is required for common paring purposes.

For working hollow radii, the round-nose in Fig. 13 is useful either to clean and finish what the gouge has roughed out, or to work a hollow where it would be inconvenient or unsafe to attempt a gouge cut. This should also be ground somewhat obtusely. A stiff ⅝-inch coachmaker's or a mortise-chisel makes a capital round-nose, the superiority of each over a firmer-chisel consisting in their greater rigidity. For finishing holes, or for cleaning up the inner parts of small cylindrical work, where a square-ground chisel would not enter, the diamond-point or side-tool is used (Fig. 14). This is ground to any angle, but a very acute one is preferable, because it will then embrace a very wide range of holes.

All these tools should be kept sharp. It is a mistake to suppose that turning-tools do not not need so much care in this particular as bench tools. Certainly a dull instrument, which would be useless on the bench, can be made to scrape in the lathe. But no amount of scraping and glasspapering will compensate for the evil of badly sharpened tools. The time spent in keeping them in good order is more than saved by the workman.

Lastly, hold all turning-tools very firmly in the hands. A feeble or unsteady grasp will produce mischievous results, as the tyro early learns by woful experience. Wood-turning is a beautiful art, and although there is no scope in the pattern-maker's occupation for its higher developments, it should be every workman's aim to render himself an adept at the lathe, and to turn out his work with a finish that would yield credit to a professional turner.

CHAPTER III.

SPUR GEARING.

Taper in a Wheel Rim.—The use of Varnish.—Methods of making Teeth.—Working Teeth in place.—Dovetailed Teeth.—Block Templets.—Their comparative Merits.—Glasspapering.—Locking together of Wheel Arms.—Boss and Ribs.—The use of Hollows in Castings.

We will allow the slightest possible amount of taper on the outside of our ring, where the teeth are to be fastened—not more than $\frac{1}{32}$ inch in the diameter. If we give an excessive amount of taper here, the teeth of the wheel will be working on their corners, and the stresses will be concentrated there instead of being distributed equally along the entire flanks. But on the inside of the ring we can give as much taper as we choose, without weakening the efficiency of the wheel. So there we will give $\frac{1}{4}$ inch in the diameter. The correct way to check the outside is, after having "faced" the ring, to hold a straightedge to that face, and take that as a base from which to test the accuracy of the rim by means of a set square slid against it. If the square be true, the amount by which the periphery of the wheel ring deviates from contact with it will indicate the amount of taper in the ring. The taper of the internal diameter can afterwards be measured by calipers.

The better class of patterns are varnished with shellac varnish, made by dissolving shellac in methylated spirit or in naphtha. Two or three successive layers are applied with a brush, each layer on drying being glasspapered down before the application of the next. This varnish answers two very useful purposes. To a great extent it prevents the moisture in the foundry sand from penetrating into and swelling the pattern out of proper shape; and also, by coating its surface with a smooth and glossy skin of shellac, facilitates its withdrawal from the mould, which process, in a roughly finished pattern, often breaks away or tears up the sand in patches, thereby entailing extra work upon the moulder. Therefore our ring will be varnished all over except on the periphery, where the teeth are to be fastened.

There are three principal methods of making the teeth. One is as follows:—Blocks of wood are sawn out, rather larger each way than the teeth, and glued round the periphery of the ring, the centres of the blocks coinciding with the intended centres of the teeth. When thoroughly set these are turned off flush with the faces of the ring, and to the same diameter as the points of the teeth. Sometimes wedge-shaped slips are fitted between the tooth blocks before they are turned, but a careful workman can dispense with these safeguards. The teeth are then pitched, and struck out in position on one face of the wheel (Fig. 15). A few pitch centres are then prolonged to the edge, and squared over to the other face, which is also pitched out in like manner. The teeth are worked through with gouge and chisel.

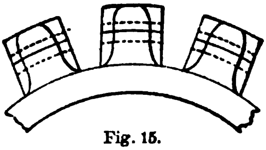


Fig. 15.

Another method is to cut a number of dovetail-shaped grooves round the ring, coincident with the intended centres of teeth, to fit dovetailed slips into these, then to glue and brad these slips on the rough blocks intended for the teeth (the slips, of course, being temporarily removed for that purpose). These blocks, then, held in position by the dovetails, are turned and marked out in position in the usual way, but being attached to the movable dovetails are afterwards readily knocked out, and worked to shape with planes, instead of with gouge and chisel. They are returned when finished to their places, and glued in finally (Fig. 16).

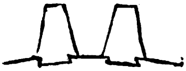


Fig. 16.

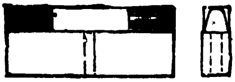


Fig. 17.

The third method is to make a block of hard wood, with one edge worked to the shape of the tooth, and notched out in the middle to just its required length and width. Into this templet the blocks intended for the teeth are driven and there planed to shape, the plane being guided accurately by the contour of the hard wood (Fig. 17). These teeth are then set to the centres pitched out on the ring, either by one of their edges or by a centre line marked on each of their ends, and while the glue is still wet they are adjusted more minutely by means of calipers and square.

Another method useful where only a few teeth are required, as for a pinion of from ten to twenty cogs, is the following (Fig. 18):—Get a piece of wood long enough to embrace the radius of the pinion, strike a single tooth upon it near one end, with the necessary centres, then cut out a notch sufficiently wide to embrace the root of the tooth. Plane the stuff intended for the teeth quite parallel to the width of this notch, square one edge, and cut to length. Drop each end of each tooth block in succession into the notch in the board, and mark out. The rigidity of the centres will ensure their being all marked alike, and they can be worked to shape with planes.

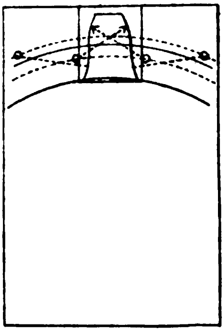


Fig. 18

Of these four methods, the first is very accurate, owing to the teeth being pitched out in place; but there is the serious disadvantage involved in the use of gouge and chisel instead of the plane. Very much time is occupied, and in the hands of a clumsy workman the teeth will become hollowed and rounded, and will show angularites which will interfere more or less with their easy moulding and their even working. The second system is undoubtedly the best, as it combines complete precision in marking out with perfect accuracy in shaping, and the time occupied in dovetailing is saved, or very nearly saved, in the operation of working to shape with the plane instead of with the gouge and chisel. Still, it is an expensive method, and except in the case of wheels requiring great perfection, or in standard patterns which are to be constantly in use, is an unnecessary expense. The third and fourth plans are the cheapest, and are sufficiently good for ordinary work. The teeth having been worked in the block, are, as before mentioned, glued on the centre lines marked across the rim of the wheel, and checked with square and calipers before the glue is set. The square is tried along the flanks of the teeth, to see that they are at right-angles with the faces of the wheel, and the calipers are tried across from one tooth to its next fellow on the pitch-line, to insure uniformity in their pitch throughout. When the teeth are set firmly, clear away the superfluous glue with a chisel; secure them permanently by driving a couple of brads through each into the rim; punch in the heads of the brads, and fill up their heads with a mixture of chalk and shellac-varnish, or of putty. Then proceed to glasspaper. This requires to be carefully done. Make a rubber shaped on one side like that portion of the flank of the tooth below pitch-line, but the reverse way, and let the other side be flat. Laying the glasspaper on this, rub the flanks across the grain, and take care that the rubber beds firmly against the teeth whilst in use, else the glasspaper will injure their shape by making them rounding. The teeth should be tapered slightly for delivery, but so slightly that bearing a trifle harder on the down side than on the top with the glasspaper will make sufficient taper in a shallow wheel. In a deep wheel the teeth should be marked out a little larger on the top than on the bottom side, only, however, by the thickness of two or three shavings. When glasspapered, apply varnish, rubbing down each coating before applying its successor.

Now take the arms. Plane up three strips of wood, each as long as the diameter of the wheel, as thick as the arms are intended to be, and wide enough to include the radii by which they curve into the rim. Next set a bevel to 60°, and with this bevel laid against the edge of one of the strips, describe two lines the width of a strip apart, and equidistant from the centre of the piece. Divide the thickness into three parts, and gauge and cut out two such parts from the central space included between the bevelled lines just marked. This recess may be roughed out with a paring-gouge and chisel, and finished with a rebate-plane (Fig. 19, A). Now take the second of the three strips, mark two bevelled lines as before, but gauge and cut out one-third only of the thickness of the strips (Fig. 19, B). Drop the two pieces together, and they will be flush top and bottom. Take the third piece, and mark four instead of two bevelled lines upon it, crossing one another, which lines will of course meet in the longitudinal centre of the strip. Gauge and cut out two-thirds thickness between these lines (Fig. 19, C), it will then drop over the edges of the other two pieces. Place this arm in position, and mark two lines coincident with its edges upon the two arms previously locked together. Then cut away the wood between these two lines (Fig. 19, D and E, E) a third deep, and drop piece C in place. On the stuff thus framed together now mark out the six arms (Fig. 20), take apart and work, and glue

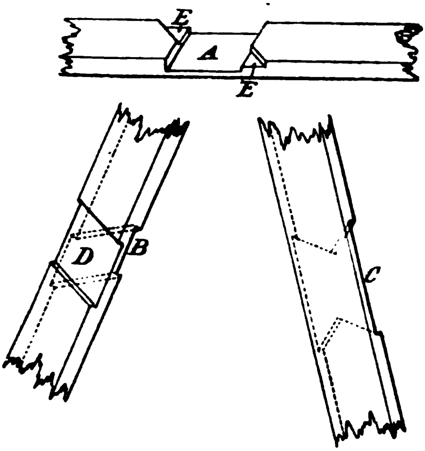


Fig. 19.

together finally, then let into rim. Cut the ends of the arms, say, ½ inch shorter than the diameter of the rim; lay them

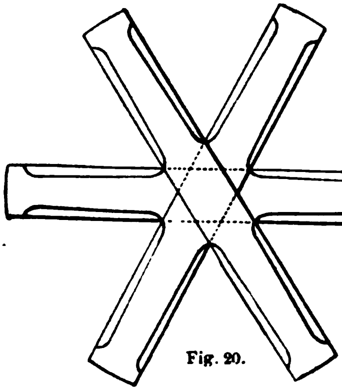
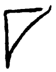


Fig. 20.

on the back of the wheel, and mark, from their ends and adjacent sides, half-a-dozen recesses on the rim, to be cut out to a depth equalling the thickness of the arms. Into these they will be dropped, glued, and screwed.

Now turn a boss for the wheel-centre, and screw it in place, Fit the half-dozen ribs between the boss and the interior of the rim, screwing them through the arms from the back. Or these ribs may be locked together similarly to the arms, and the boss fitted over and between them. This would give greater rigidity to the wheel-centre.

Our wheel might now be considered finished but for one little matter, which is of more importance than it might seem at first sight. A good engineer will always endeavour to avoid sharp corners, therefore it is customary to put what are termed "hollows" in the best patterns. These are strips of wood worked out to the annexed section. Where they are not actually put in the pattern, the moulder cuts them in the sand with a special tool. The reason why sharp corners are avoided is this:—Cast-iron always crystallises at right-angles to the surface against which it is cooled. Hence a ring will be the strongest form of casting, because the crystals will all radiate symmetrically (Fig. 21). But take a right-angled figure (Fig. 22): obviously there will be a break of the crystals just in the angle of the casting, forming a permanent source of weakness. Invariably, other conditions being equal, the casting will give way here before anywhere else. Put a hollow, however, in the angle, and the crystals will form without any line of separation (Fig. 23).



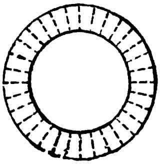


Fig. 21.

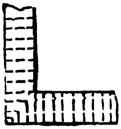


Fig. 22.

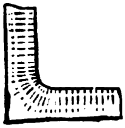
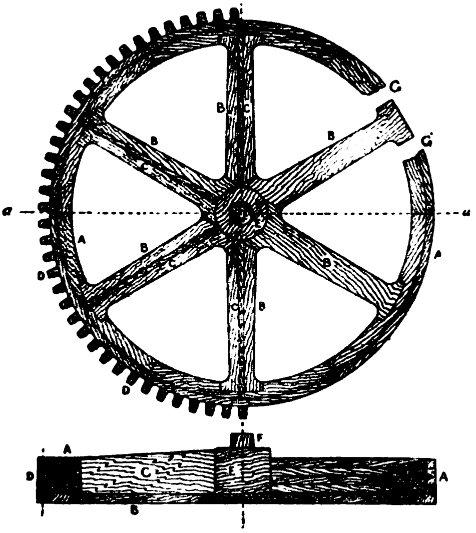


Fig. 23.

For this reason many of the best wheels are made with hollows at the roots of the teeth, for here the action of leverage on the tooth induces the greatest stress. And it should be laid down as a rule that sharp corners in all castings subject to much stress should be avoided. In the case of a wheel, we shall put the hollows in the pattern. Plane up some strips of wood, say ¾ inch square and two or three feet long, lay them on an angle-board, and with a round plane, about No. 10, hollow them out in a diagonal direction, then cut them off to required lengths, and glue and brad in position.

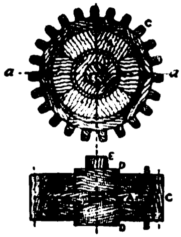
All that now remains to be done is to fill up all screw and brad-holes with a mixture of chalk and varnish, or putty; glasspaper and varnish; put on a core-print in the centre of the boss on the down side, and a rapping plate or two on the top side of the pattern.



Section *a* – *a*.
Fig. 23*a*.

Fig. 23*a* illustrates the pattern, certain portions of which are broken away and removed, the better to show the details of its construction. The pattern is shown complete on the half view to the left hand, but the teeth and vertical ribs are removed in the half view to the right hand. The arrangement of the segments is clearly shown in, and the timber shading illustrates the disposition of the grain in segments, arms, and teeth. In this figure A is the rim, B the flat arms, C the vertical arms or ribs, D the teeth, E the central boss, F its print. The ribs C are not shown on the right-hand side, and the rim is also broken away at G to show the end of an arm cut ready for fitting into the rim. The small hollows noticed on p. 26, are not drawn in, because the figure is too small to admit of their neat insertion with correct timber shading.

The complete pattern for the plated pinion is illustrated in Fig. 23*b*. As already mentioned the plated portion should not properly be made of a single solid piece of stuff. It should either be made with open joints as in Fig. 23*c*, or with radiating segments as shown in Fig. 23*b*. Ring segments are built upon each side of the plate, as shown, to form the rim B. The teeth C are fitted and worked by one or other of the methods already described. The bosses D D are turned with studs fitting into a hole bored in the centre of the plate, and are not glued. This is a good method often adopted in wheels and pulleys in preference to making the bosses an integral portion of the pattern, whereby the advantage of inter-changeability to suit shafts of different sizes is secured. The bottom boss may be screwed to the plate, but the top one should be left loose to come up in the cope. E is the print for the centre core.



Section *a*—*a*.
Fig. 23*b*.

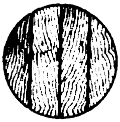


Fig. 23*c*.

CHAPTER IV.

BEVEL WHEELS.

Principle of Bevel-wheels.—Mode of striking out.—Wheels in Section.—Projection of Teeth.—Building-up of the Rim.—Turning with Templets.—Getting Centres for the Teeth.

THE making of a bevel-wheel involves the exercise of rather more skill than the making of a spur-wheel. In the case of the former there are two diameters, a larger and outer, and a smaller and inner diameter. The pitch and pitch diameters are reckoned on the outer or larger diameters of these wheels. The size of the inner or smaller diameter, and the pitch-centres on that diameter, will be controlled entirely by the breadth of the wheel, a wide tooth manifestly making the inner circle smaller than a narrow tooth would do. The same remark of course applies to mitre-wheels, which are simply bevels of equal diameter set at an angle of 90°. The one essential point to remember in these wheels is that all lines representing tooth-flanks, thicknesses, lengths of radii for striking curves of teeth, &c., *converge to the common centre of the wheels.*

For the working drawing we strike out a sectional view (Fig. 24). Mark the pitch-diameters, A and B, on the drawing-board at right-angles with each other if the wheels are to work at right-angles; at the proper bevel if at any other angle. Where the axes of these pitch-diameters intersect, C, will be the common centre of the wheels towards which all lines converge. Project, therefore, these pitch-lines from the pitch-point, *a*, to the common centre, C; upon them mark off the breadth of the tooth, *b*, and there draw lines at right-angles to the pitch-plane, *a*—C, cutting the projected centre line at *c*, *d*, *e*, *f*. Now measure off the distances above and below pitch-line on the larger diameter of wheel, thence draw lines towards the centre as far as the inner diameter of the teeth, *g*. The distance between these lines there projected will represent the length of the tooth on the small diameter. In like manner, indicate the *thickness* of the tooth on the outer circle; that dimension similarly projected will give its thickness on the inner circle. And when afterwards the radii are found by which the flanks of the teeth are to be struck, the lengths of these radii projected to the inner circle will be those used for striking the small ends of the teeth.

Fig. 24.

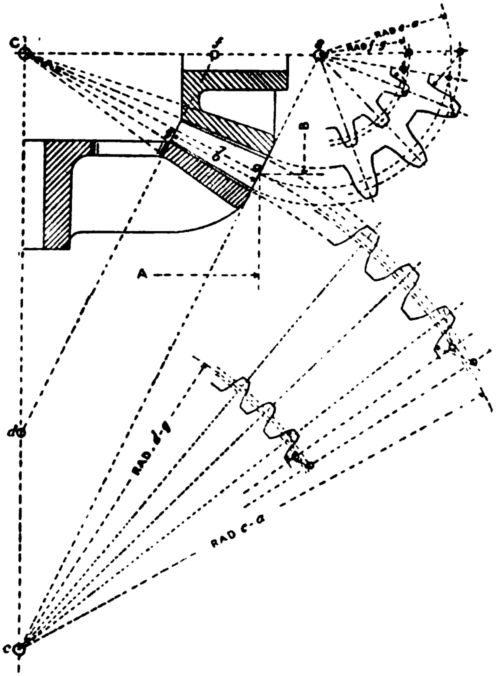


Fig. 25.

Figs. 24 and 25.

The correct way to strike out the teeth is as follows:—

Project the line (Fig. 25) which represents the axis of the wheel to a considerable distance outwards, then draw a line at right-angles with the pitch-line, and coincident with the outside faces of the teeth, prolonging it until it cuts the projected centre-line, *c*. The distance from this intersection to the pitch-line on the outer diameter will give the projected radius of the larger diameter of the wheel. The same method adopted in the case of the smaller diameter will give the proper radius for that also. On the arcs struck by these radii use rolling circles exactly as in a spur-wheel. The same rules also will apply to the general proportions of bevel as to those of spur-wheels.

Having struck out our wheels in section, the next care will be to build up the ring. Evidently the segments of which it is composed will not be built vertically one above another. They will overlap as shown in sketch (Fig. 26), and should be pencilled in that position on the sectional drawing to guide the workman when sawing out. The ring being built up, according to the instructions given in Chapter II., the turning becomes a matter requiring care. In this case we must make templets (Fig. 27). We shall turn the outer face on which the teeth are to be fastened first. Face the wheel and strike the diameter A first, taking it with compass or trammel from the board. Make templet B by the board also; then putting a straightedge across the level face, turn the outer bevel of the rim until the templet is coincident with the face of the straightedge on one edge and with the bevelled wheel face on the other, as shown in diagram. Then turn the narrow edges with a bevel set to their respective angles. If it is intended that the teeth shall be turned and pitched out in position, they should be glued on at this stage, before the

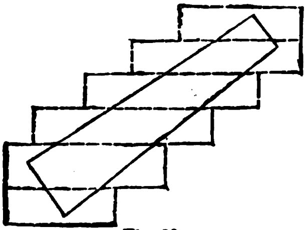


Fig. 26.

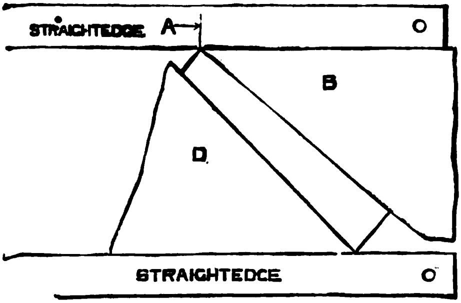


Fig. 27.

ring is taken off the chuck; but if not, it will now require to be chucked for the purpose of turning the other side. This will be done by running a shallow groove, say ⅛ inch deep, in the face-plate, into which the portion of the rim marked A will fit, and screwing the rim into this groove from the back of the plate. The back, or inner face, will then be turned with straightedge and templet, as indicated at D. Here the advantage of pegs over brads will be apparent, for they will come through the bevelled segments everywhere, without being detrimental to the tool edges.

The arms may now be locked together, as in the spur-wheel pattern; but we shall not be able to recess the ring for their reception, so must simply fit them to its internal diameter, and secure with glue and screws. The hollow sweeps coming into the angles, being fitted afterwards, will give them additional support. The boss and the cross ribs will be made also as in a spur-wheel; but it will be more favourable for moulding if they are left loosely dowelled on the arms, instead of being screwed permanently. The reason is that while in the spur-wheel the ribs are downward in the mould, in the bevel-wheel they are uppermost, in order that the teeth, where the soundest metal is wanted, shall be cast downwards.

Fastening the teeth on the rim is a trifle more difficult than in the case of a spur-wheel, because the square cannot be brought into requisition. Proceed as follows:—Having pitched the outer circumference of the wheel for the proposed number of teeth, raise a perpendicular line with compasses as shown in diagram (Fig. 28). This being normal to the circumference will be radial with the centre, and as the teeth converge to the centre will be a starting-point from which to pitch out the inner circumference. Four or five of these perpendiculars should be raised at regular intervals, so that the liability to error in marking out may be reduced to a minimum, and almost neutralised by taking the average of the whole series. The inner circumference pitched out, it only remains to work the teeth in a block, to mark centre lines upon their ends, glue and secure them in place, clean and varnish.

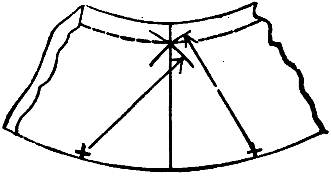


Fig. 28.

Fig. 28*a* shows a segment of the bevel wheel pattern complete in part plan, and section. The arrangements of the timber in the segments A, flat arms B, vertical arms C, boss D, and teeth E are rendered clear by the shading. F is the print for the central hole. In such a wheel the question of taper scarcely arises, because the bevel form imparts ample taper to teeth and rim. The only taper specially imparted is that given to arms and boss. The edges of the flat arms B are tapered downwards, that is in the same direction as the print F, and the vertical arms C and the boss D are tapered in the opposite direction, or upwards. From $\frac{1}{32}$ to $\frac{1}{16}$ inch of taper on each side, dependent on the depth of wheel, will suffice.

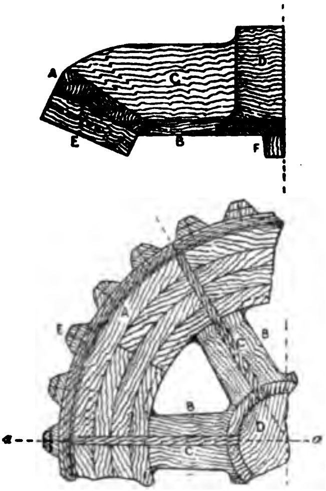


Fig. 28a.

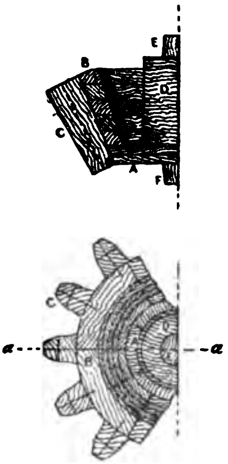


Fig. 28b.

A segment of the pinion pattern is shown in Fig. 28b. The plate A is made with radiating segments, the method alternative with that of open joints noticed in connection with Fig. 23b on p. 28. The rim segments B are glued upon this, and the rim turned by means of templets. The teeth C are made and fastened on similarly to the wheel teeth. The boss D is left loose, being fitted with a central stud, and prints E and F are put on for the central core. Sometimes one central print only is used, that on the bottom side, as in the previous figure; sometimes two. The only advantage of using two is that the core is centred in the top and secured in a vertical position without any trouble of measurement, and without risk of its becoming washed to one side.

CHAPTER V.

WORMS AND WORM-WHEELS.

How to strike out.—With Circles.—With the Odontograph.—Pattern of Worm.—Templet of Diagonal Lines.—Mode of cutting Worm.—Building the Wheel.—Jointing.—The Teeth.

It is not an easy task to make wheels of this class so that there shall be continuous contact between the teeth in every portion of their flanks in succession. Comparatively few are found to fulfil this condition, most worm-wheels touching only round their central portion. But continuous contact is not of so much importance in these as in spur-wheels, for almost any worm-wheel will work smoothly, simply because there are several points of contact between the worm and its wheel in gear simultaneously, while in spur-wheels we have seldom more than two, frequently only one tooth, in actual gear all the time.

To strike out a worm and its wheel proceed thus. We require, we suppose, a worm-wheel of 12-inch pitch-diameter, of 25 teeth, by 2 inches wide, to be driven by a worm of 3-inch diameter. The pitch will be 1½ inch. Draw then a straight line 9⅜ inches long (the circumference of 3 inches), 1½ inch out of perpendicular (Fig 29). This will represent the bevel of the wheel-teeth, and a length of 2 inches measured on this line will give the amount of inclination of the centre lines of these teeth. Draw out the teeth in section. Two sections of the pair must be drawn, one horizontal (Fig. 30), cutting the teeth across the centre, the other vertical, taking them lengthwise (Fig. 31). The teeth in the horizontal section will be struck out as in an ordinary wheel and rack, the worm itself answering to the rack in this respect, that the base-line for the generating circle will be straight instead of curved, and if struck with the odontograph scale the slant edges will be placed against lines drawn at *right angles* with the pitch line.

The involute form of tooth is the most suitable for these gears, as shown in the illustration.

The outline of the vertical section will be decided by the diameter of the worm. Strike the 3-inch pitch-circle from the worm-centre—that circle will also give the proper vertical curve to the pitch-line of the worm-wheel. Set off the depths of the teeth above and below pitch-line, as explained in Chapter II., and strike the lines representing these, both in wheel and worm, from the worm-centre.

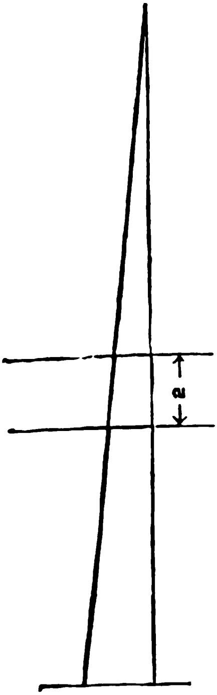


Fig. 29.

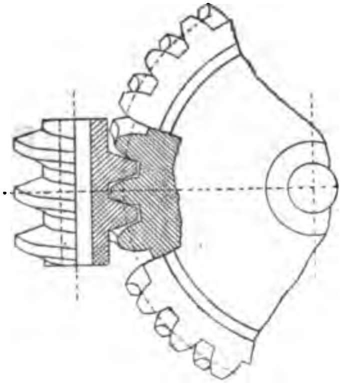


Fig. 30.

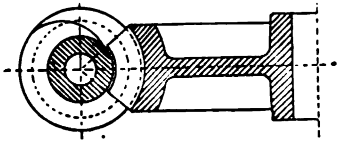


Fig. 31.

Making the pattern of the worm first, joint two pieces of stuff together with dowells, of such a size that when turned with the joint exactly in the centre they will hold up to the diameter of the points of the thread. Secure them while in the lathe, either with a screw at each end (see page 206) or by a couple of the centre-plates which are in common use in pattern-shops. Now turn to the required size in diameter and length, not forgetting the prints at the ends, which in this case will not require taper at all, because they will not mould vertically, but in a horizontal plane.

There are two methods of marking out a screw or worm upon the plain turned body; one—of which we will speak when we come to talk about large screws—is by the projection of equally divided lines; the other is by means of a number of diagonal lines marked on paper, and fastened round the wood to be cut out screw-shape. This latter is the one we will adopt for our worm, as being readier of application in so small a pattern.

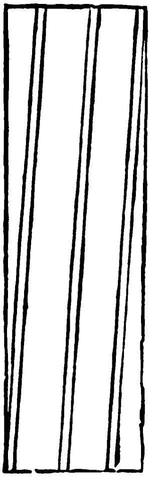


Fig. 32.

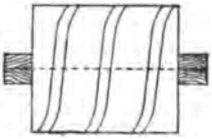


Fig. 33.

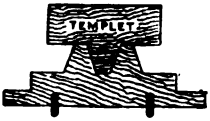


Fig. 34.

The diameter of the worm outside the teeth is 4⅛ inches; its length, say, 4½ inches. Get a piece of paper 13 × 4½ = circumference and length; on this mark diagonal lines 1½ inch out of perpendicular and 1½ inch apart = the pitch of the worm. Then another set of diagonals parallel with these, and at a distance from them equal to the thickness of the teeth at the point (Fig. 32). Glue this paper round the periphery of the turned block, and the inclined planes will develop the outline of the worm (Fig. 33). It only remains to make a templet fitting between the teeth we have marked on the board, and to use this templet as our guide in working out the space between the screw points (Fig. 34). That portion of the templet which corresponds with the points of the spiral must be kept parallel with the points in working, since, if it is suffered to slope, the shape of the tooth will be affected thereby, and we shall get it unsymmetrical. It is best worked in the lathe between centres, the inter-tooth space being cut away with saw, chisel, and paring-gouge.

The wheel will be built up in the usual way, but it must be made in two halves, parted horizontally, and dowelled together. The reason of this is obvious. A pattern with projecting edges could not be drawn from the sand, therefore we must make it in two parts, jointed in the narrowest portion of the diameter. The moulder then uses a three-parted box, so that while the two end faces of the teeth are in the top and the bottom boxes, the teeth themselves are contained in a middle ring of sand.

The worm-wheel being rather small, a plated centre will be more suitable than arms. It is not advisable to make the centre plate of solid stuff, which will almost certainly shrink in the course of time. It should be built up in at least two thicknesses of segments for each half. Or the plate might be built up to its entire thickness, and the ring only be parted through the centre, the shouldered portion acting as a dowel to keep the two halves steady in the mould (Fig. 35). Or the plate might be made of one thickness of stuff with "open joints"—that is, joints $\frac{1}{16}$ inch or $\frac{1}{8}$ inch open, to allow of the partial swelling of the pattern in the sand without affecting its proper diameter. The rings are glued up in segments, each on separate face chucks, and jointed before their peripheries are turned. The edges of the two halves of the wheel must be turned by templet, marked from the sectional drawing (Fig. 31), and the teeth must be fitted and glued on in rough blocks, then turned to outline by templet and worked to shape afterwards. They must be struck on the two outer faces and in the joint; the pitch on the outer faces, of course, will not

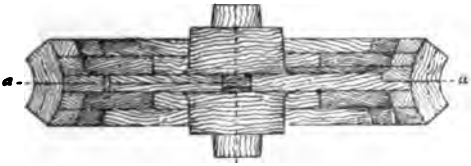


Fig. 35.

be the actual pitch of the wheel, but the larger diameter will be divided equally between the number of teeth. Work them with gouge and chisel, using a templet, and trying the worm round from time to time. The getting the correct shape on the outer faces is difficult, though quite practicable; but the best way is to put the worm in the lathe, red lead it, and cut the worm-wheel teeth until the lead shows contact everywhere. They must be glasspapered by hand, the use of a rubber not being practicable.

Fig. 35 illustrates the pattern of the worm wheel in vertical section. The alternative methods of jointing the plated portion are shown to right and left hand respectively. On the right-hand side the plate is shown in a single piece, and the top half of the rim is checked into it in annular fashion. On the left-hand side the plate is shown in two pieces, divided through the centre and dowelled. The teeth are seen jointed along the plane *a—a*. The bosses are checked into the plate with studs, and the top one should be left loose.

One of my reviewers took exception to this rule-of-thumb method. But I know from actual practice that there is no better method. A way by which correct forms can be drawn is, however, illustrated in my "Toothed Gearing," p. 101.

CHAPTER VI.

MACHINE-MOULDED WHEELS.

The Change effected by the Introduction of Wheel Machines.—Parts necessary for Machine use.—The Teeth.—How moulded.—H-shaped Arm Cores.—Form of Core-box.—Bevel-wheels.—Striking Boards. —Top.—Bottom.—Arm Core-box.—Disc or Plate Wheels.

Of late years the use of wheel castings made by a moulding machine has become very common. The writer often mentally contrasts the revolution which the wheel machines have effected in this particular section of workshop practice, as he remembers what makeshifts were resorted to in order to economise the pattern-maker's time before the wheel machines were introduced. Wheel patterns are expensive to make, and, once made, they were used over and over again, and that even for jobs for which they were not wholly suitable, and for which a new machine-made wheel would now be ordered. Wheels were "drawn," "stopped-off," lined, and thickened up in various ways. And where a new one was absolutely necessary, the rim would be made in cores—about half-a-dozen teeth in a box, and the arms in a core-box also, or sometimes by a single arm, or a couple of arms " bedded in." All these makeshifts are now abolished, in the larger shops at least, by the introduction of the wheel machines, and the smaller shops find it cheaper to buy their wheels of the firms who make them a speciality rather than turn out inaccurate castings by the old roundabout processes. For the new wheels have the double advantage of accuracy as well as cheapness, since if the machine parts are kept in good order, and no "slop" exists, each tooth will be an exact counterpart of its fellow. The use of these wheels has become so general that while engaged on the subject of gearing something ought to be said about the essential parts which the pattern-maker has to prepare for machine use. For plain spur-wheels they are—block (Fig. 36), core-box (Fig. 37), diameter-strip, and finger-bit.

The block is made of a convenient length and width for the carrier of the machine, of the desired shape, size, and pitch (Fig 36), and the moulding proceeds as follows:—

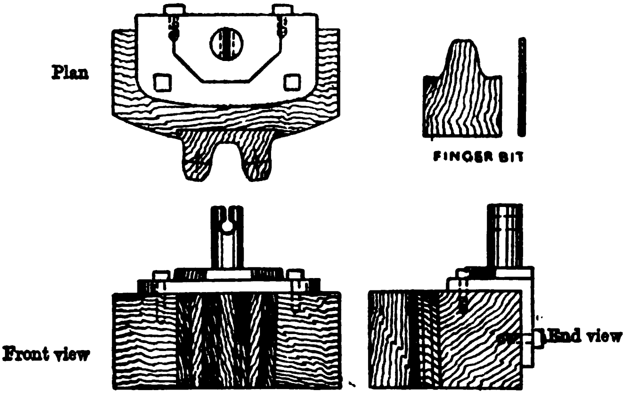


Fig. 36.

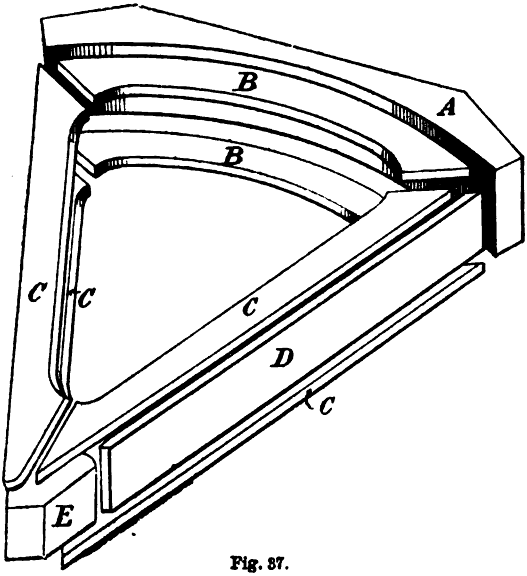


Fig. 37.

The tooth-block is screwed to the carrier attached to the arm of the machine. Its distance from the centre of the machine—equal to the radius of the wheel—is given by a strip of wood, the diameter-strip, which reaches from the central pillar to some part of the tooth—either root or point. The proper change wheels being put on, the *space between* the two teeth is rammed up with sand, and the block is then lifted out of the mould by means of the hand-wheel actuating the vertical arm to which the carrier is attached. The sand is prevented from coming up with the block by a thin piece of wood—finger or hold-down bit—cut out to the same shape as the space between the teeth, and kept pressed on the included sand during the process of withdrawal of the block. When the block is clear of the sand, the requisite number of turns is given to the slewing-handle to carry it round a distance equal to the pitch, when the process of ramming up and withdrawal is again repeated. In order that the tooth block when in the act of being lowered shall not scrape away the sand already rammed to shape, the outer flanks of the teeth are reduced below the correct size. This, of course, is not detrimental to the form of the moulded teeth, the space alone *between* those on the block being used by the moulder. Each time the block is moved another tooth interval is rammed up, until the ring is complete. If the block is properly made, and the sand rammed sufficiently hard, and sprigged, the mould will not tear up at all, notwithstanding that the teeth are without taper, but will be ready for blacking at once.

The arms of machine-moulded wheels are made with cores, for which a special box will be necessary. They are usually H-shaped in cross section. To make the core-box (Fig. 37), in which the parts are represented as drawn slightly apart for the sake of clearness of illustration, the pieces necessary are a sweep, A, representing the inner portion of the rim, and as long as the space included between two contiguous arms—a fourth, sixth, or eighth part of a circle as the case may be; two sweeps fitting within this, B, B, one top, the other bottom, which are the ribs or flanges strengthening the rim; four half-width arms, C, C, fitting with the ribs and with each other; two half cross ribs, D, and a boss piece, E. These pieces are all rammed up loosely, that is, the parts are merely abutted, not screwed together, and taken from the sand one by one. They are rammed in an outer frame—not shown—consisting of two pieces screwed at the requisite angles, and of the same depth as the wheel. If there are four arms, the core-box will be made at the angle of 90°; if six, of 60°; if eight, of 45° Sometimes an outer frame of iron is used as a permanent core-box for any sized wheel. Where that is the case the loose pieces only will be wanted.

These cores, either green or dried, usually green, are placed in position in the space included by the ring of teeth; a centre core for the wheel shaft is then fixed by measurement, completing the mould for a plain wheel.

But there are comparatively few wheels in which the moulding is quite so simple as this. Many wheels comprise some special details in the way of bosses, shroudings, arms, and so forth: so that if I were to attempt to describe these *in extenso,* I might occupy half of the present volume therewith. A few brief notes, thereon therefore, is all that I can attempt.

In nearly all such cases the use of striking boards and core boxes is involved. Also when a board is used it is generally made to strike off the precise depth of the mould, equivalent to the width of face of the wheel. Also the board for the cope may be made to strike the cope face direct in loam, as in a loam mould; or it may be made to strike a reverse greensand bed upon which a greensand cope will be rammed. In some cases also the central arm cores will be set in the mould by measurement; in others they will be set in a print impression.

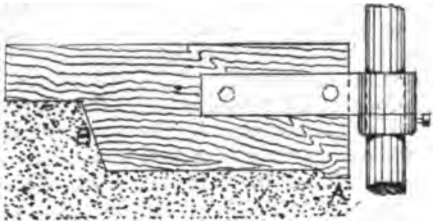


Fig. 37*a*.

Thus in a perfectly plain spur wheel no striking board at all is necessary; but in many cases a striking board or boards are quite essential. Even, however, in the case of a plain spur a board is often used like that in Fig. 37*a*. The chief advanage of using such a board is that it strikes off the joint face of the mould and gives the correct depth of the face of the wheel. Even if such a board is not used a level bed must be struck in any case, with a plain strip fastened to the machine bar. Also when there is a boss A on the lower face, as there is in most cases, that can be struck by the board, so saving the trouble of bedding in a pattern boss. The reason why the front edge B of the board is cut sloping, is to prevent the sand from tumbling down, which would occur if the edge were cut vertically. The bottom of the sloping edge will coincide with the points of the wheel teeth. There will therefore be a clear space above right away to the top, between the tooth points and the sloping wall of sand struck by the board, which will be filled up along with the tooth spaces in ramming. This, in my opinion, makes a better job than when the edge of the board is cut vertically, exactly coincident with the points of the teeth, as is frequently done. When there is a boss in the top, that also may be struck with a board, or a pattern boss may be measured in. Fig. 37*b* illustrates the wheel casting in half section, the edges of the striking boards being indicated by the fine shading.

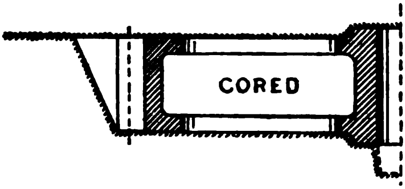


Fig. 37*b*.

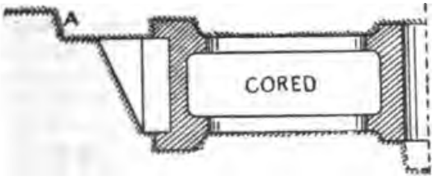


Fig 37*c*.

Though I cannot here give detailed descriptions and illustrations of the various striking boards and core boxes that would be used in various types of wheels, the following views will enable a pattern-maker to gain a good idea of the ways in which these are made.

Fig. 37*c* represents a half-shrouded wheel. The shading shows the profiles of the edges of the bottom and the top boards, the distinction between the two boards being indicated by the difference in the direction of the shading. In this and in the subsequent illustrations the edge of the top board may be cut to strike a cope direct, as in loam, or it may be cut to form a reverse mould upon which the cope will be rammed in place, the surface of the reverse mould being strewn with parting sand to permit of the clean separation of the cope from it. In the figure the cope is struck direct, with a check, as in loam work, seen at A.

During the ramming of the teeth it is necessary to fill up the bottom shroud space with a swept piece, otherwise the overlying sand would fall down and fill that up. The sweep is a short length of a few inches, and is withdrawn from time to time as the ramming of the ring of teeth proceeds.

The next figure (Fig. 37*d*) represents a wheel of the same type as the larger wheel shown in Fig. 8, page 16, with T-shaped arms. This class of wheel is not often made by machine, those with arms of H section being more easily made with cores. To make a wheel with T-shaped arms, the boards may be cut as indicated by the fine shading in Fig. 37*d*. The bottom bed there is made to slope coincidently with the edges of the vertical arms. Made in this way, the cores do not abut, and the edges of the vertical arms will come out flat, not convex. If they are required convex, then the bed must be struck an inch or two below their edges, A, and the cores must be made to abut down the centres of the vertical arms.

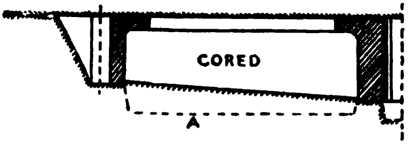


Fig. 37*d*.

Fig. 37*e* illustrates a plated wheel like the pinion in Fig. 8, page 16. The fine shading shows the shapes of the top and bottom boards. The faces of the plated portions, the inner part of the rim, and those portions of the bosses which lie within the faces of the rim are formed with annular cores, made from a core box.

Fig. 37*f* shows a mortise-wheel. The boards might be cut as shown by the shaded lines, or they might be cut to follow the lines of the edges A of the vertical arms, or to the dotted lines B. In either case corresponding outlines must be given to the top and bottom faces of the cores. The flat arms in this wheel are in a central position, because they interfere less with the driving in and pinning of the cogs than arms of H section would do. Both flat and vertical arms may be included in a single segmental core box, the vertical joints of the cores coinciding with the centre lines of the arms. So that on each side of the box, half the width of a flat arm, and half the thickness of a vertical arm, will be screwed.

With bevel-wheels the process is not exactly the same as with spurs. Here striking-boards are always necessary. They are two in number—one for striking out the bed for the arms and the points of the teeth, the other for the top portions of the wheel. The boards are screwed to the bar shown in the figures, which fits over and turns round the central post. The striking edges are chamfered similarly to those of a loam board.

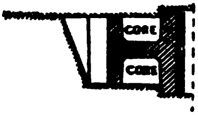


Fig. 37e.

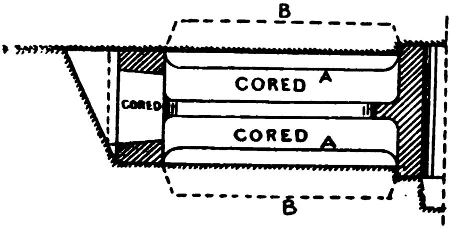


Fig. 37f.

The moulder proceeds as follows with the top board, which being for greensand, as is commonly the case, is often cut the reverse way to one intended for a loam mould, as shown in sketch (Fig. 38).* He strikes over a bed of hard rammed sand representing the top of the boss, the edges of the vertical arms A, and of the rim, and the outer or larger faces of the teeth, finishing off in a horizontal direction B, at their points to form the joint of the mould. A moulding-box or flask large enough to cover the bed thus struck, is set in position and rammed up on it—a layer of parting sand alone intervening. This is the top of the wheel mould, which is now removed. The sand in the temporary bed is now dug away for the purpose of striking the lower part of the mould. The bottom board (Fig. 39) is set in position by means of the horizontal joint of sand already made C, and strikes the flat faces of the arms A, the inner edge of the rim, the smaller faces of the teeth, and their points B, with boss D. The tooth block is then screwed on the carrier of the machine, and the moulding proceeds as in a spur-wheel, with the exception that no finger bit is required. The arm-cores are also made and set in the mould in a similar way. For bevel-wheels, however, the arms are of the same shape as those in an ordinary pattern, so that the remarks we have made about

---

* See also Chapter XXXII., p. 273, for the difference between boards for loam and greensand.

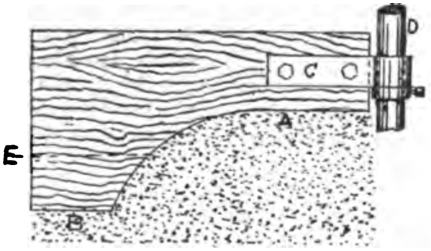


Fig. 38.

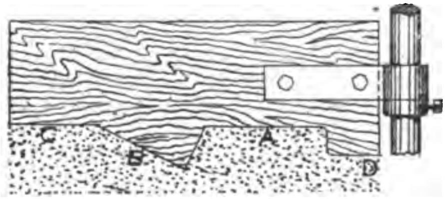


Fig. 39.

H arms will not apply here. The outer sweep of the core-box represents the inner side of the rim, and the way to make it can be seen by a glance at the sketch (Fig. 40), where the rectangular figure represents the rough block from which the bevelled inner portion of the rim, shown shaded, is cut. The tops of the cores, being curved, must be worked off by means of a strickle, similar in shape to the top board, Fig. 38. So that we require sweep (Fig. 41), two half arms, two half ribs, A A—that is, each rib is of half the casting thickness—boss, loose for withdrawal as before, strickle, and guide B for the strickle.

The tooth blocks of bevel-wheels, consisting only of a short segment and therefore lying without the range of lathe work, have to be cut to shape by a method of intersecting planes.

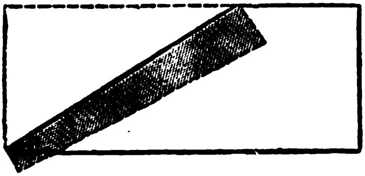


Fig. 40.

Looking at the section of a bevel-wheel rim in Fig. 42, the working faces of the tooth block must correspond with the faces *a*, *b*, *c*, in the figure. The interior of the rim, and the top faces of the arms, being formed with cores, have no corresponding parts in the tooth block. By comparing the tooth block (Fig. 43), with the section of the rim (Fig. 42) it will be seen that there are certain vertical and horizontal lines similarly lettered. If these lines in the first figure are reproduced accurately on the second figure, and the block worked

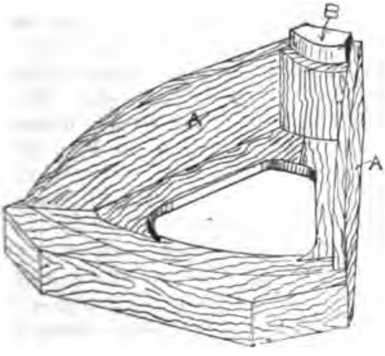


Fig. 41.

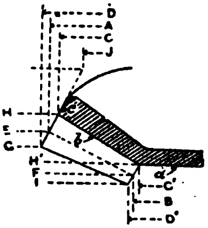


Fig 42.

thereby, then it is evident that the latter figure will have identically the same sectional form as the first figure. The way to make the block is to prepare that portion which forms the backing for the teeth first, and fit the teeth on afterwards. The backing itself is shown outlined in Fig. 43*a*. It is first squared to the cubical dimensions *a*, *b*, *c*, to suit the size of the wheel and the carrier of the machine. The dimensions *b* and *c* are, however, arbitrary within the limits of an inch or so. The centre line *x* is struck upon the block, and the extreme sweep C—compare with C, Fig. 42—is struck on opposite faces of the block, and worked through. The sweeps J and C′ also are struck, corresponding with J and C′ in Fig. 42. When the sweep C has been worked through, the line H is gauged round the swept face, corresponding with the line H in Fig. 42, at a definite distance, K, above the face *a*, which face corresponds with the face *a* in Fig. 42. Then the two bevelled faces, *h* and *i*, corresponding with *b* and *c* in Fig. 42, are worked across from C to H, and from H to J.

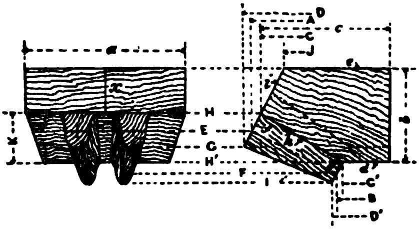


Fig. 43.

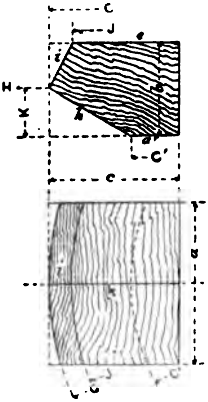


Fig. 43*a*.

In reference to the intersection of the line J with the top face, *e*, of the block at the distance *b* from the bottom face *a*, that, of course, has no existence in the casting. The point of intersection is one obtained on the drawing (see previous figure) only as a convenient method of getting the correct bevel of the face *i*.

The backing block is now ready for the teeth, which are fitted round it as a rough block and marked in place. The latter block should be held temporarily with screws, while the lengths for the ends of the teeth are scribed from the faces of the backing block. The tooth block had better be removed by the withdrawal of the screws, for the working of the ends of the teeth to correct curves and bevels. It will then be replaced, the pitch-lines and point-lines struck with trammels, the tooth shapes marked out, and the teeth worked either away from the main block with planes, or on the block with gouge and chisel.

In reference to the methods of fitting the teeth on their backings, there are two or three matters to be borne in mind. The grain must be arranged for strength, which is secured by making it run longitudinally. There is then no rough end grain to tear up the sand, but only smooth surfaces—plank way. Also as hollows or radii are usually worked in the roots of the teeth, the longitudinal direction of the grain is favourable to working these. Often also, instead of merely fitting the teeth around the backing, I have let them in with a dovetail (see Fig. 36, p. 40), by which arrangement the thin edges of the hollows are prevented from curling up, as they would do if the glue became moistened in the damp sand. In some cases I have seen the teeth and their backing worked in a single piece, the grain running perpendicularly, or with the teeth throughout.

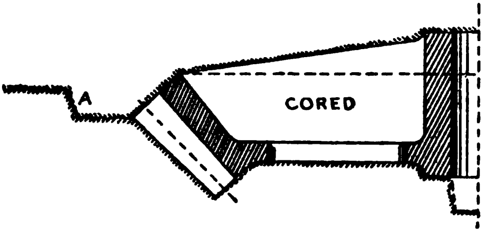


Fig. 43*b*.

As I did just now in spurs, so now I will briefly indicate the methods of making bevel wheels of various types by machine. Fig. 43*b* is an ordinary bevel made, as in loam, with a checked joint.

Fig. 43*c* is a bevel half shrouded. The bottom part of the mould terminates at the plane A, continuous with the teeth points on the major diameter. The top part terminates on the plane B, coincident with the outermost edge of the half shroud. The space between A and B is filled up with segmental cores of thickness C, having the cross-section indicated by the shading. Note that the front edge of the board is cut to the same bevel as the points of the teeth, and not, as in the case of a spur-wheel, to slope off at a little distance away therefrom. Of course, in a bevel the necessity for this sloping off does not exist. The mould in this case is not checked, but the cope is rammed on a reverse bed. The arms of the wheel are formed with segmental cores, their bottom faces resting on the face D, and their top sloping faces, E, meeting the cope similarly sloped.

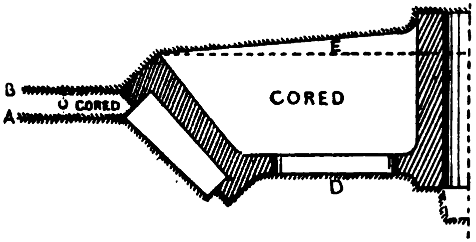


Fig. 43c.

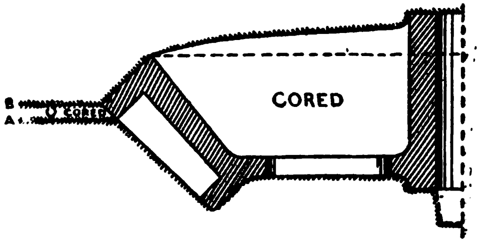


Fig. 43d.

Fig. 43*d* shows a bevel-wheel full shrouded to the points of the teeth. Here the bottom board strikes off to the plane A, and the top board to the plane B, and the thickness C is filled round with segmental cores. The arms are formed with cores, as in the last example.

Fig. 43*e* shows a plated wheel with checked mould, and the shading indicates the profiles of the bottom and of the top boards. The latter takes out the interior of the wheel and the whole of the boss.

Fig. 43*f* indicates the striking of a bevel mortice, the arms being formed in cores. The dotted lines at A indicate the prints for the mortice cores. The mould is checked also.

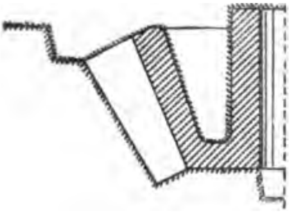


Fig. 43*e*.

Worm-wheels are frequently moulded by machine. Fig. 43*g* shows the best form of tooth block. Note that the teeth C, with their block B, are divided from the backing A, and held temporarily during ramming with a dovetail *a*. The advantage of this arrangement is, as in the case of helicals (see p. 62), that the backing can be lifted vertically with the carrier of the machine, and the teeth afterwards withdrawn horizontally with the fingers. Without the division the entire block would have to be withdrawn horizontally, an awkward operation in the case of most machines. Of course, there is no necessity to divide the teeth through the horizontal central plane, as in the case of a pattern-wheel (see Fig. 35, p. 37), the manner of withdrawal being different.

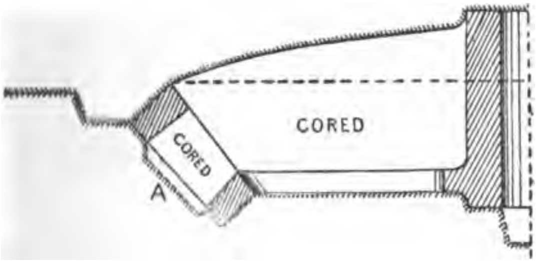


Fig. 43*f*.

Toothed blocks are also made for twist-wheels. These, like worm-wheel blocks, have two teeth, made distinct from the backing and attached to it with sliding dovetails. But there is another joint in addition, one between the two teeth, as in the case of small helical pinions (see p. 63). This is necessitated by the undercutting of the outer flanks in relation to each other, due to their long twist embracing so much of the circumference of the wheel, and which, if the two teeth were drawn at once, would pull down the sand. Being drawn separately they do not pull down.

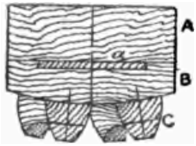


Fig. 43g.

CHAPTER VII.

MORTISE-WHEELS, &c.

Mortise-wheels.—Why used.—Metal in Rim.—Thickness of Cogs.—Taper in Mortices.—Prints and Cores.—Wood used in Gearing.—Sawing Cogs.—Driving.—Fastening.—Splitting of Wheels.—Shrouding.—Breaking Strength.—Basis of Calculations.—Ratios of Wheels.

MORTISE-wheels are those which are geared with wooden cogs, instead of with iron teeth. In a large mill or factory where many pairs of wheels are constantly at work, and running at high speeds, the noise and the shock would be unendurable if iron-toothed wheels alone were used. To prevent this nuisance, wheels with wooden cogs are made to gear with iron fellows. They answer admirably, but are very expensive, involving not only the cost of the wooden teeth, in addition to the casting, but the chipping and filing to a smooth surface of the flanks of the iron teeth (scarcely necessary, though, in the case of machine-moulded wheels), without which precaution the wooden teeth would become rapidly abraded.

In making the mortise-wheel pattern, proceed generally as for an iron wheel. But bear in mind that the thickness of the rim here should be equal, not to the thickness of the teeth, but to their *pitch*—a deep mortise being essential to the steadiness of the tooth-shank. Also that a thickness of metal must be left beyond the ends of the shank, equal to about four-tenths of the pitch. The cogs, moreover, are a third thicker than those of the iron wheel into which they work, and *no clearance* is allowed between the two. Core-prints must be used for the mortises, whether the wheel be made by pattern or by machine, and a core-box containing the requisite amount of taper must be made. The taper given to these mortise cores should not be more than ⅛ inch on a side for each 1½ inch of depth, for if it becomes excessive the teeth will have a tendency to spring when being driven into their places, and so, possibly, by setting up too much vibration in the wheel the rim will become broken. And further, largely tapered teeth will work loose earlier than those tapered to only a moderate extent. In a spur-wheel the prints will come to the top edge of the rim (Fig. 44), and the portions of the prints which reach above the mortises will be "stopped" up after the cores are placed in. The best way is to make the core-box to "stop itself off"*—that is, to take out the mortise and fill up the entire print besides. Fig. 45 represents a core thus made. In a mortised bevel it is not necessary that the prints should come to the top edge; but their upper ends must be chamfered off, so that they may not drag the mould (Fig. 46). The core-box will be made to correspond.

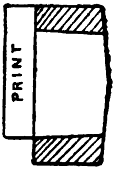


Fig. 44.

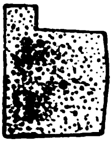


Fig. 45.

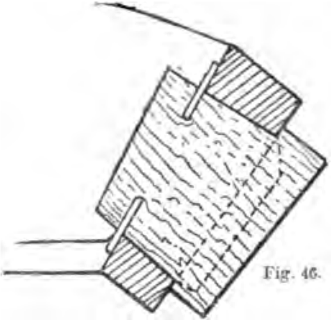


Fig. 46.

Having the wheel castings, next comes the fitting in of the teeth, or the "gearing it," as it is termed. This was formerly a speciality of the millwright, but now the pattern-maker looks upon it as his legitimate work. We suppose, then, that the rim, both on face and edges, has been turned, as in good work it should be, and delivered into the pattern-maker's hands to be geared. First, regarding the selection of the wood for that purpose. Hornbeam, apple-tree, oak, acacia, beech, are commonly used. On the whole, I think apple-tree and hornbeam are the best, but beech and oak are also very good. One essential is that the wood be the driest procurable. Unless the mortise-wheel is to go into a damp situation, as in the pit of a mill-wheel, its teeth are certain to shrink in time, and the rattling of a number of wooden cogs in their sockets is quite as intolerable as the rattle of iron and iron wheels would be.

Saw the blocks out so that the points of the teeth shall cut across the *end* grain, that is, the grain fibres will radiate from the centre of the wheel; let them be cut of such a length that their shanks shall project about an inch from the inside of the rim, and leave also sufficient allowance on their faces and points for turning. Shank them with a hand saw, using a templet to insure uniformity throughout, and leave a little, say $\frac{1}{32}$, on each side for accurate fitting with a rebate plane. If a circular saw is available, the labour of handsawing may be avoided by making a block or carrier to slide along the saw bench, holding the tooth in it in such a position that the shoulder of the shank shall coincide with the *top of the teeth* of the saw. Or in shops where a general joiner is kept the tenoning apparatus may be utilised.

---

* See Chapter X., on Core Prints, p. 71.

Fit the teeth in carefully, driving them tightly with a fitter's hammer or a light sledge, until their shoulders are within $\frac{1}{4}$ inch of the rim. With a pair of compasses scribe the shoulders of the shank or tenon parallel with the rim, then knock out and cut with a chisel to those scribed lines. Get some oil paint, thickly smear it over the tenon, and drive the tooth block finally home. There is some knack required in driving these cogs, for though they will bear, and indeed ought to have, hard driving, yet it is possible just to exceed the limit, and to burst the rim of the wheel. The ends just past the tenon are also apt to fly off with the final blows. To prevent this they must not be undercut, and the strokes should be given just over the shank, not *beyond* it, and should be dead and firm, not elastic in character.

The teeth, although fitted carefully and driven home firmly, would yet work loose in time if no further support were afforded them. One mode of securing is to drill holes through the metal at the ends of the mortise, and to drive wood screws or pins through these into the tenon (Fig. 47). This is strong and neat, but it requires a large amount of drilling. Another way is to cut out dovetailed grooves in that portion of the tenons projecting inside the rim, and to drive in wooden wedges between the contiguous teeth (Fig. 48). This also has the merit of security, but necessitates labour which is superfluous.

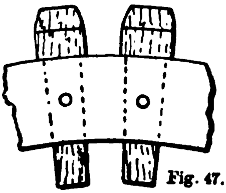


Fig. 47.

A third method is to prepare a number of wedges of sheet iron or steel not more than $\frac{1}{8}$ inch thick, and about $\frac{3}{16}$ inch wider than the space between the shanks. Their edges must be ground sharp and bevelled, and they are then driven tightly between the shanks (Fig. 49). But the same end may be accomplished by a fourth method simpler than the other three. Bore holes at the ends of the tenons within the rim, but close against it. Drive pins, which may be either lengths of pointed wire, about ⅛ inch in diameter, or clout nails with the heads cut off, into these holes, allowing about ½ inch of pin to stand out from the wood (Fig. 50). This is as firm and lasting as any other fixing, and has the merit besides of being expeditious.

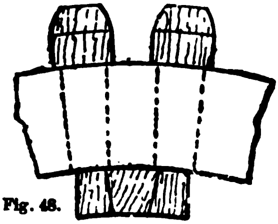


Fig. 48.

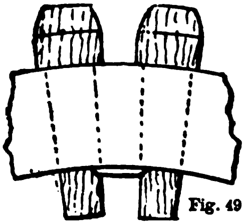


Fig. 49.

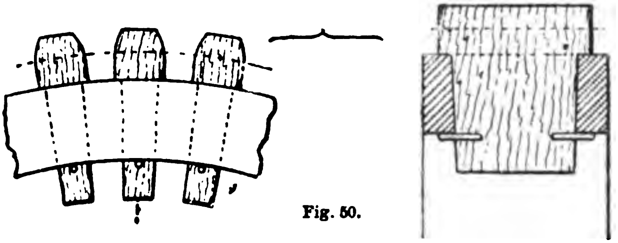


Fig. 50.

Having secured the cogs, the wheel must now be put in the lathe again, and their faces and points be turned. The pitch-lines and the striking lines for the radii of the tooth flanks are to be run round, and the teeth divided and marked out, and cut through with gouge, chisel, and straightedge. They are not glasspapered, but simply wiped over with oil. The wheel is then fit to be put in its place.

A few remarks of a general character, having reference to the subject of gearing, may fitly close this chapter.

Splitting of Wheels.—This means the casting of a wheel in halves, necessary when, from its intended position in the middle of a shaft, or between other wheels, it could not be driven on endways in the usual method. Being made in two, provision must be given for securing the parts together when in place. This is done by casting lugs or ears on opposite sides of the boss, and in corresponding positions within the rim. Holes are cast through these to receive the bolts (Fig. 51). Sometimes—and this is the neatest way—the wheel is split through the centre of an arm. In small castings this has a less unsightly appearance than the lugs. Each half arm, however, must be made of the same width and thickness as an entire arm, else the splitting would become a source of weakness (Fig. 52).

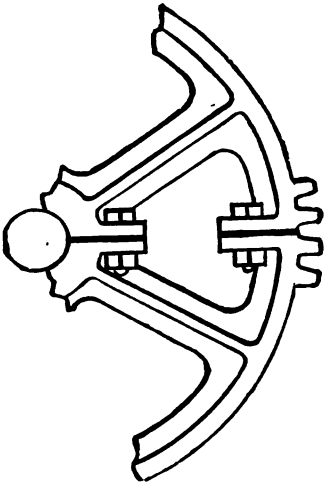


Fig. 51.

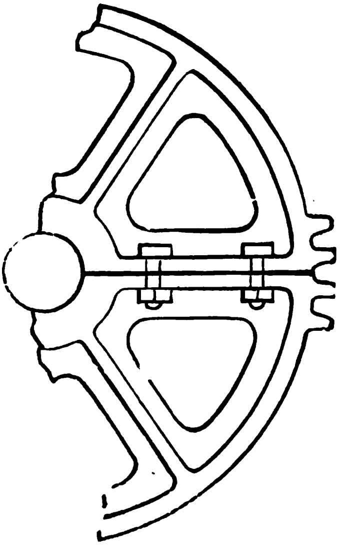


Fig. 52.

The details of the process of splitting are the same, both in pattern and machine wheels. Make the lugs and fasten them on each side of a core print, sufficiently deep and wide to support the core in a vertical direction, and of the proper thickness—from $\frac{1}{4}$ inch in small wheels to $\frac{1}{2}$ inch in large ones (Fig. 53). Secure these lugs in position. Then make a templet

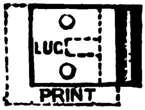


Fig. 53.

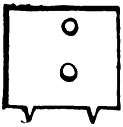


Fig. 54.

of the splitting plate for the moulder, following both the outline of the print and also that of the portion of the wheel it is intended to split. Cut in it holes of the intended size for the bolts, and in the proper centres. From this templet wrought or cast iron plates will be made. They will then be covered over on each side with a thickness of loam or of tar, and will be dried. Round cores of the same length as the thickness of the double lugs will be thrust through the holes, projecting equally from each side to form the bolt-holes in the casting. These plates thus prepared (Fig. 54) will be dropped into the prints dividing the lugs, and will part the casting in two.

Shrouding.—This term, as applied to wheel gearing, signifies the supporting of the teeth at their faces with a flange or annular ring, and may be either half or whole shrouding, according as it extends to the pitch-line (Fig. 55), or to the points of the teeth (Fig. 56). It is of especial value in small pinions having weak roots, and is commonly believed to increase their strength by 40 to 50 per cent.

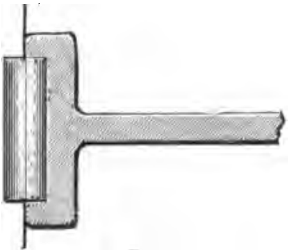


Fig. 55.

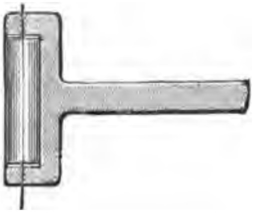


Fig. 56.

When the shroud comes in the bottom of the mould, it is essential that it be left loose from the body of the pattern, being simply dowelled on to prevent it from becoming rammed away from its proper position. In the top of a mould it is also desirable that it should be left loose, though not so absolutely necessary. In the case of a machine-made wheel, shrouds will be struck by the boards, and the broken edges of the mould will be mended up afterwards, with a sweep similar in section to the shroud. *See* Chap. XXXII. p. 273.

Breaking Strength of Teeth.—A wheel-tooth must be regarded as a loaded beam or cantilever, its length being the distance from root to point, its depth the thickness of the root at its base, its breadth the breadth of the wheel.

To ascertain the strength of a cantilever the rule is: "Square the depth, multiply by the breadth and strength of material, and divide by the length." A cantilever of good cast iron, 1 inch square and 1 inch long, will sustain a dead load of 6,000 lbs. before it breaks. Applying this to the tooth of a wheel of 1½ inch pitch, 3½ inches on face (Fig. 57), we find that it will sustain a dead load of—

$$\frac{1\tfrac{1}{8}^2 \times 3\tfrac{1}{2} \times 6000}{1\tfrac{1}{4}} = 22212 \text{ lbs.}$$

before breaking. Dividing this by a factor of safety, say 10, (it should be large for gearing), we get 20 cwts. nearly, as a perfectly safe load for such a tooth.*

But it is usually assumed that two teeth are always in gear at once, which assumption would, if correct, double the effective value of our calculation. And it is quite true of a pair of large wheels not very disproportionate in relative diameter, and properly marked out. Two teeth are always in gear at the same time, and sometimes three; but in a large wheel and small pinion working together such is not the case. It is only possible to obtain such a result in the latter instance by using a rolling circle so large that the roots of the pinion would be greatly undercut and weakened thereby. Let it be understood that my assertion is not that two teeth are *never* in gear at once, for they are, but that at regular intervals, just when one tooth is entering into and the next one leaving contact, there is a moment when the strain is all concentrated on the flanks of one. For this reason it is prudent to reckon only on the contact of single teeth.

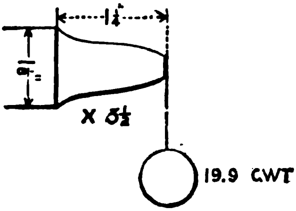


Fig. 57.

It is sometimes considered safer not to estimate the strength of a tooth on the supposition that the strain is distributed along the entire flank, but to imagine that it is concentrated on one corner only (Fig. 58). This will not affect the method of our calculation, since the triangular piece is a cantilever still, but only the dimensions upon which our

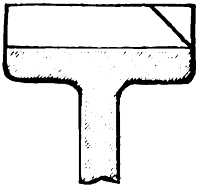


Fig. 58

---

* In a bevel-wheel we must base our calculations on the *mean* dimensions of the tooth.

estimate is to be formed. For badly made wheels this is undoubtedly the safer plan; but if the wheels are struck out and made properly, and the strain is calculated for one tooth only of each wheel in gear at once, there is no need to base our estimate of their strength on this assumption.

Ratio of Wheels.—Wheels are levers, in which the mechanical advantage is in inverse ratio to the radii of their arms. Also, circumferences and their radii being always proportional, it matters not whether in calculating the power or the velocity ratios of wheels we take their radii, circumferences, or number of teeth. Further, in calculating the power gained by a train of wheels, the geometrical and not the arithmetical product of the whole must be taken. Hence the rule for calculating the power of gearing is: Divide the *product* of all the wheels (either their radii, diameters, circumferences, or number of teeth) by the product of all the pinions; the quotient (friction disregarded) is the gain in power. Thus, in a train of gearing, let W, W′, W″ represent wheels of 60, 90, 140 teeth respectively, and P, P′, P″ pinions of 10, 12, 16 teeth, then, the pinions driving, the mechanical gain is—

$$\frac{W \times W' \times W''}{P \times P' \times P''} = \frac{60 \times 90 \times 140}{10 \times 12 \times 16} = 393{\cdot}7.$$

Lastly, having two proportional factors of a wheel given—to find the third

Let π = ratio of circumference to diameter = 3·14159
n = number of teeth
d = p. diameter in inches
p = pitch of teeth.

Then (1) The diameter and pitch being given, to find the number of teeth—

$$n = \frac{\pi \times d}{p}$$

(2) The number of teeth and diameter being given, to find the pitch—

$$p = \frac{\pi \times d}{n}$$

(3) The number of teeth and pitch being given, to find the diameter—

$$d = \frac{n \times p}{\pi}$$

CHAPTER VIII.

HELICAL WHEELS.

Helical wheels—Their Purpose—Conditions of Accuracy—Block for Helical Spur—Methods of Division—How Made—Obtaining the Screw Forms—Block for Helical Bevel—Methods of Division—How Made—Tooth Curves—How Obtained and Worked.

SINCE the first edition of this work appeared the employment of helical gears has developed to a large extent, so that I am now devoting a chapter to the subject. These wheels are mostly made by machine instead of from whole patterns. It is better to make them thus, even though it were not cheaper to do so, because greater accuracy is assured in machine-moulded than in pattern-moulded wheels, and inaccurate helical gears are more unsatisfactory than inaccurate spur gears.

The object in using helical wheels is to avoid the friction due to the sliding and rubbing of the surfaces of the teeth in contact, which unavoidably takes place in all cycloidal gears. In helical wheels formed on correct principles no sliding at all will occur, but rolling of surfaces only. It is because these wheels are often badly formed that they do not always yield the results expected of and claimed for them. To be accurate, each tooth must form a portion of a true screw of extremely long longitudinal or axial pitch. Yet this dimension is not considered at all in practice, the angle of the teeth being settled only with regard to the conditions of contact, that one pair of teeth shall not quit contact until the next pair are beginning contact. This will obviously be regulated by the diameters and the breadths of particular wheels. As regards pitch the circumferential pitch alone is considered; that is the pitch measured in the plane of rotation of the wheels, just as in ordinary gearing. Then again, in practice, wheels are almost invariably made of double helical type, each half-tooth forming a short section of a screw of long axial pitch, but of opposite hands. In this way the stresses upon the teeth are balanced on each side of the median line of the wheels, and there is no resultant end-long pressure on the shafts.

Since the teeth of a helical wheel are sections of screws, it follows that in any such wheel the teeth must possess some amount of helical twist. In wheels of large diameter and little width this twist will be scarcely, or not at all, perceptible to the eye. In pinions of small diameter and considerable width it will be very obvious. The reason is that, in the first case, the length of the tooth bears an extremely small proportion to the total length of the entire screw of which it is a section; in the second case, the tooth length bears a much larger proportion to the total length of its screw. Such being the case, it is permissible in the extreme case of large wheels with narrow faces to make straight teeth, and fasten them on the rim diagonally, because the almost imperceptible twist due to the screw form is not so great as the inaccuracy inseparable from a moulded casting. But in no other case is it permissible to use straight teeth if the advantage due to the helical form of tooth is to be secured, but the teeth must be formed as portions of true screws.

To impart this outline it is necessary to mark out and work the teeth in their proper positions on the tooth block. Also it is desirable in all cases, and necessary in others, to make certain joints in the tooth blocks for helical wheels which do not occur in the blocks for spur gearing. I will, therefore, now describe the method of construction of a helical spur, and also of a helical bevel, noting these points.

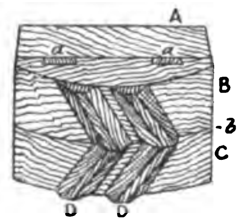


Fig. 58*a*.

Fig. 58*a* illustrates a typical helical spur tooth block. It consists of three portions, the backing, A, to which the carrier of the wheel moulding machine is screwed; the body portion, B, C, the face of which is worked to the same curvature as the rim of the wheel; and the teeth, D, two in number, as in ordinary tooth blocks. The backing, A, is made separately from the other portions for this reason :—

Except where a special attachment is rigged up for the purpose, wheel machines lift the tooth blocks vertically. It is obvious that a helical block cannot be lifted vertically because of the sloping of the teeth from the perpendicular. Hence the backing, A, is attached to the block by dovetailing, *a*, and is the only portion lifted vertically along with the carrier, leaving the teeth behind in the sand. These are then withdrawn backwards in the horizontal direction with the fingers of the moulder. The dovetail form of union is used because it is at the same time the most secure form of temporary attachment, and the most easily released.

Frequently, also, though not invariably, the teeth are divided along the middle plane, *b*, which corresponds with the apex of the teeth. This is done to facilitate the ramming of the teeth, the moulder being better able to use the pegging rammer in the lower halves of the teeth when the top halves are removed, than if the top halves were in place and interfering with the action of the rammer. This division is, however, of less importance in the case of large, shallow wheels with teeth of coarse pitch and flat angle than in the case of smaller, deep wheels with teeth of fine pitch.

Further, the blocks for small pinions have to be divided yet again between the teeth, the line of jointure following the angles of the teeth. This is necessary because of the undercutting which is present on the outer flanks of the teeth of such pinions, and which would render it impossible to withdraw the pair of teeth together without breaking down the mould. Forming a joint between the teeth, they can each be withdrawn separately without any injury to the mould.

I cannot in this chapter devote much space to the description of the various alternative methods adopted in the construction of the blocks themselves. Methods vary slightly in different shops, but the essential principles are illustrated in the figure, and that method is as good as any other. And even when not required for convenience of moulding, it is always desirable to joint the teeth and their backings along the median plane, *b*, in order to have faces there whereon to mark the tooth shapes, as we shall note presently.

Such a block as this is first prepared in the rough by dovetailing the front and back portions together, planing them while together to the correct parallel thickness—equal to the breadth of face of the wheel, and squaring the back face therewith. The centre line is then carried round with a square, and the sweep of the front face, corresponding with the rim of the wheel, struck and worked round. Upon this face a block is fitted for the teeth, the grain running in a different direction from that of the backing, as indicated by the timber shading. This block is screwed on, the ends dressed off, and the centre line of the pitch struck over them. The shapes of the teeth are then marked upon the outer faces, and also upon the joint face obtained by dividing the blocks along the median line *b*, as just now noted. The forms of the teeth are similar to those used in ordinary gearing.

Now the question of screw-twist comes in, and how best to work it. Having the tooth shapes struck on three faces, it is usually good enough to work the positions intermediate with a templet fitting into, and of the same shape as, the tooth spaces. Before using the templet, the face corresponding with the tooth points is worked round, and the lines where the tooth faces meet the points are struck with a narrow thin strip of wood, or strip of steel, curved round the outer face, that is, of the tooth points, from the outer to the middle planes of the wheel. These lines become the guides to the templet, the shoulders of which also rest upon the outer face at the completion of the work. This is accurate enough for almost any job. The only thing is that, in a small pinion, the teeth of which will have very much twist, some inaccuracy is bound to result unless the templet is held and tried quite correctly during working. Hence there is an advantage in such cases in unscrewing the teeth, and marking the twist from outer to middle faces upon the backs or roots of the teeth, as well as upon the points. The root lines can then be set in a little way with the chisel, and the teeth re-screwed in place, when the lines thus set in will become a guide to the correct testing by the templet at the bottom of the teeth.

The working of the tooth block for a helical bevel is more troublesome, and, as with the spur blocks, methods are modified in different shops, and under different conditions of bevel, breadth, and pitch. Many flat bevels are quite unjointed, lifting vertically. Many are unjointed because some machines are provided with an appliance for lifting them away from the mould at any required angle; some are drawn back horizontally. But I will illustrate a typical class of block (Fig. 58*b*), and the best and most conveniently made in my opinion, which can be withdrawn in any machine without any special appliance, by the same method as the spur block; that is, by withdrawing the backing vertically along with the carrier, and the teeth horizontally with the fingers. Made thus, too, it is more readily struck out than as if made solid, for the same reasons given in connection with the spur toothed block (Fig. 58*a*).

The bevel tooth block (Fig. 58*b*) consists of backing, A, body, B, C, in two portions jointed from the centre of the teeth at the root, and the teeth, D, also in two portions. A, B, and C are dovetailed to one another as in the case of the spur-wheel. These parts have to be prepared very carefully to dimensions, based on the intersections of certain vertical and horizontal dimensions taken from the full-sized sectional drawing of the wheel, precisely as in the case of a common bevel wheel; compare Figs. 42, 43, 43*a*, pp. 47 and 48. In the sectional view of the wheel rim and teeth (Fig. 58*c*) the horizontal and the vertical lines, variously lettered there, correspond with the pitch-lines, points, and roots of the teeth upon the major, minor, and middle diameters. These dimensions are transferred to the helical tooth block already prepared with dovetails, and squared up, and having centre line marked on. Horizontal lines will be marked with long toothed gauge from one of the faces of the block, and the vertical or sweeped lines will be struck with trammels. The illustrations will render this clear, I think, without going into the tedious and minute details of the striking of each individual line. So far there is no difference except in the jointings, in

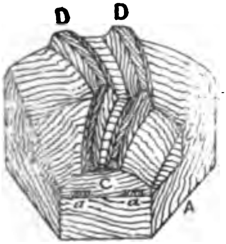


Fig. 58*b*.

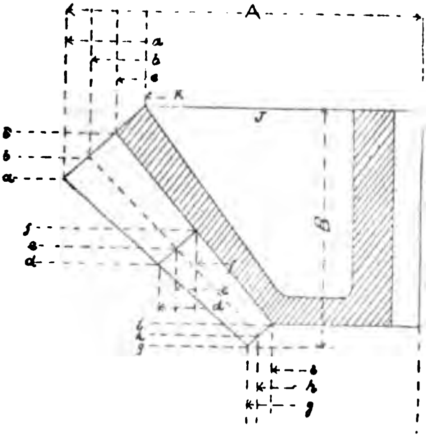


Fig. 58*c*.

the preparation of the backing for a common bevel and the backing for a helical bevel.

But the longitudinal twist of the teeth, due to the screw formation of the wheel, demands some notice. They are not quite so simple of construction as the teeth of helical spurs. The development of a helix on a cone, which is the basis of the tooth forms on helical bevels, results in forms different from those in the development of a helix on a cylinder, which is the basis of helical spurs. Thus the tooth of a helical bevel will have the double form seen in Fig. 58*b*, obtained by dividing the pitch and the width into an equal number of parts, and drawing the curves through the intersecting points. Only by this method can constant contact between pairs of teeth be assured. From this also it will be seen how abominably bad must so-called helical bevels work when straight teeth are put on diagonally.

Let Fig. 58*d* represent a small segment of the rim of a helical bevel wheel; let A be the outer, B the inner diameters, and C the middle plane, corresponding with the apices of the teeth, and D the extreme positions of the centre line of a tooth. Now, if the teeth were simply straight teeth set at a bevel, in the manner indicated by the dotted lines, *a*—*b*, *b*—*c*, which is a frequent practice, it would be impossible for them to gear properly, as the following construction will show.

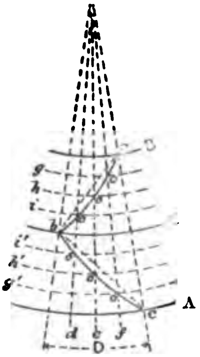


Fig. 58*d*.

Divide D into any number of equal parts, *d*, *e*, *f*, and A—C, C—B likewise into the same number of equal parts, *g*, *h*, *i*, *i′*, *h′*, *g′*. A moment's consideration will show that the points of contact of the helical teeth in mutual gear must pass successively through the points of intersection of these divisions. Then, and then only, will the teeth be in mutual contact at equal distances on each side of the middle plane C. If their contact took place along the straight lines *a*—*b*, *b*—*c*, neither half of the teeth would be in contact at the same time equidistantly from C, and the gear would, therefore, not only be bad, but the resulting pressure would be of an end-long character. Only at the points *a* and *c* could the pressures be exercised equidistantly from C at the same time. This figure, therefore, shows how, in practice, the curves of helical bevels should be obtained, and also the reason why the curves should be in opposite directions on opposite sides of the middle plane, c.

The helical curves ought to be marked out by means of intersecting lines on the drawing-board for point, pitch-line, and root, since they vary on each plane. In the case of large wheels the variation would be almost inappreciable, but in small pinions the curves would vary very much on the three planes.

The shapes of the teeth will be marked out upon the major, minor, and middle diameters. Then the portions intermediate will be worked carefully with gouge and chisel, the eye chiefly judging of their accuracy. Templets may be made for intermediate sections, as one, for instance, midway between each face and the middle plane, or two, if the width of face is considerable. But the accurate forms of the portions intermediate between these will still have to be estimated by the eye, because the shapes alter in every section. In the case of some small pinions of wide face it is better to adopt the plan mentioned in connection with helical spurs, that is, to unscrew the teeth and mark their curves upon the back or root plane, then set these curves in with the chisel, and screw the teeth back upon the block. In this way we can obtain correct curves upon root as well as point, which will be of material assistance in subsequent working. Yet another division may be made, one around the pitch plane, and the curves on the pitch plane may be marked on that. These divisions do not involve so much extra work as they may seem to do, for most of the extra time spent in jointing is saved in the increased facility in working out, because the wood can be cut away at once with confidence to these lines scribed on the different faces and ends, which is better than tentative and doubtful working by the eye chiefly. After the several sections are worked, the joints on the several planes can be finally glued and screwed.

For more detailed information respecting the primary design and the construction of these wheels, I beg to refer my readers to my works on "Toothed Gearing," and on "Helical Gears."

CHAPTER IX.

ANGLE, OR TWIST WHEELS.

Pitch—Obtaining same—Conditions of Mutual Gear—The Wheel Blank —Marking-out—Working.

THESE wheels, being usually of small size, and machine cut, do not come within the range of the pattern-maker's work so often as the other types of gears already described. Still, as the pattern-maker is sometimes required to make patterns for them, I think it desirable to devote a short chapter to a description of the methods to be adopted in their correct construction.

I cannot in this connection go into the fundamental relationships of these wheels. The subject is treated very fully in my work on "Toothed Gearing." Like helical wheels they are true screw gears, each tooth being a short section of a helix of very long axial pitch. The angle at which the axes of the wheels cross is equal to the sum of the angles of the spirals. So that by altering these angles, screw wheels can be made to transmit power between shafts situated at right or at other angles. Also velocity ratios can be varied by varying the number of teeth in pairs of wheels. The normal pitch, that is the distance between tooth centres, measured at right angles to a pair of teeth—in other words, the shortest dimension between the teeth, must be equal in any pair of wheels which have to gear together. But it is necessary to mark out the working pitch on the circumferential pitch, that is the pitch measured in the plane of rotation of the wheel. Having laid down these essential facts, I will now show how a pattern for a screw-wheel is best made.

Though the normal pitch of a screw-wheel is given as the basis upon which the relationships of wheels in mutual gear must be based, yet it is necessary to deduce from this the circumferential pitch before the wheel can be struck out. This can be done by a trigonometrical calculation, but in a workshop it is always safer to make a diagram like Fig. 58*e*. On the horizontal line A—B, erect a perpendicular, C—D. Draw the hypotenuse D—*c*, making the angle which has to be imparted to the teeth on the *pitch-line*. Then let fall a perpendicular, *a*—*b*, on the hypotenuse, whose length, *a*—*b*, is equal to the normal pitch. Then the length, *a*—*c*, will be equal to the circumferential pitch, which will be divided out on the faces of the wheel. The circumferential pitch multiplied by the number of teeth will give the circumference of the working pitch circle.

This construction will apply to all wheels, whether they are of equal or of unequal diameters. In wheels that have to gear together, the normal pitch, *a*—*b*, must always be alike. But only in wheels of equal diameter will the circumferential pitch, *a*—*c*, be alike. In wheels of unequal diameter the dimensions of *a*—*c* will differ in the pair.

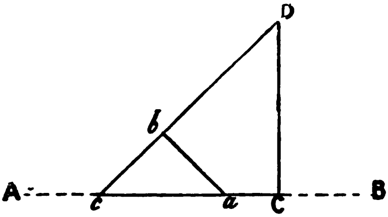


Fig. 58*e*.

The succeeding two figures show how the correct angles are transferred to the wheel blank. Obviously there will be three separate sets of angles to be borne in mind in a screw gear—one at the pitch-line, which is the one obtained in Fig. 58*e*, the primary angle; one at the root, less than that at the pitch plane; and one at the point, greater than that at the pitch plane. We require the latter for marking out, because the blank is turned to the diameter of the wheel at the tooth points. To obtain the angles, therefore, of the tooth points, proceed as in Fig. 58*f*. Let A represent the total axial pitch of a wheel tooth, and B the total circumferential pitch. That is, the dotted diagonal drawn between the extreme points of A and B would make a complete revolution of its cylinder in the length A. But the actual wheel is only a short section of such a cylinder, equal to the length F in this figure, cut off by the line D—D. The total lengths A, B, are therefore divided out into as many parts as there are teeth—in other words, short sections of screws in the wheel, and the divisions on the line B are the divided circumferential pitches *on the pitch-line*, each identical with *a*—*c* in the previous figure. Now prolong the base line to length C, equal to the circumference of the tooth points and divide that into the same number of equal parts as B, and draw the full lines shown in the diagram to the divisions on A. These full lines will represent the divided tooth centres on the *tooth points*. All we have to do now is to mark these full lines enclosed in the parallelogram *a*, *b*, *c*, *d*, on a slip of paper of length C, and width F; mark other lines parallel therewith to give the width of the tooth points, and glue them round the tooth blank and we have the angles of the teeth at once on the points.

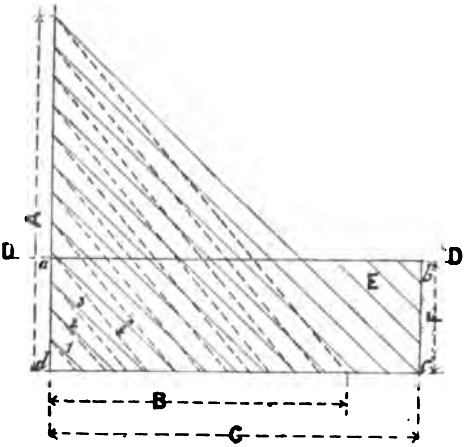


Fig. 58f

The shapes of the teeth are mostly worked by templet fitted to the shape of the inter-tooth spaces and guided by the lines on the paper. The involute is the best form for these wheels. The shapes of the teeth on the wheel faces will not be like the shapes taken normally to the tooth curves.

CHAPTER X.

ON CORE PRINTS.

Prints not always required.—Typical forms of Prints.—Taper.—Depth.—Modifications of Prints.—"Stopping-off."—Boxes —Coring various kinds of holes.—Top Prints.—Wrought-iron pieces cast in.—Chain Wheel Cores.—Importance of Venting Cores.—Decomposition of Water in a Mould.

AGREEABLY with the purpose stated at the commencement of this volume—that the study of general principles should be our object—we shall revert occasionally to the discussion of those matters which lie at the foundation of the pattern-maker's art, but which we can only mention incidentally in the articles devoted to set subjects. In pursuance of this intention, the present article is devoted to the subject of core prints. To treat this wide matter fully would occupy three or four such chapters, but by taking it simply in its widest bearings we shall compress our remarks into a few paragraphs.

Firstly, then, core prints are not always necessary. When the cores are large and rest flat on the bottom of the mould, they can be set in position by measurement, and their own weight, or the pressure of the top box, or both combined, will maintain them in position. But usually cores are set in their places by means of prints.

The simplest form of print is the common round or square kind, on which the apprentice makes his first essays. Then, of course, all prints which draw from the bottom of the mould are simply modifications of these, possessing taper, and varying with the shape of the holes they are indicative of. The next form is the pocket or drop print, used for casting holes in the vertical sides of a mould where a common round print could not be drawn up with the pattern. Here, when the core is placed in position, the upper part of the print is filled in with sand flush with the edge of the mould. All prints, however they may vary in appearance, belong either to one or the other of these two types.

Common round prints are tapered in the direction of their depth, the amount varying from 1/16 inch to 1/8 inch in their diameter, smaller prints having less, larger ones more, taper. The only object in tapering them is to facilitate their withdrawal from the sand. Their depth varies also, a print small in diameter requiring greater depth than a large one, to steady its core in position, so that while a 1-inch print may be 1 inch long, a print with a broad base, say of 8 inches or 10 inches

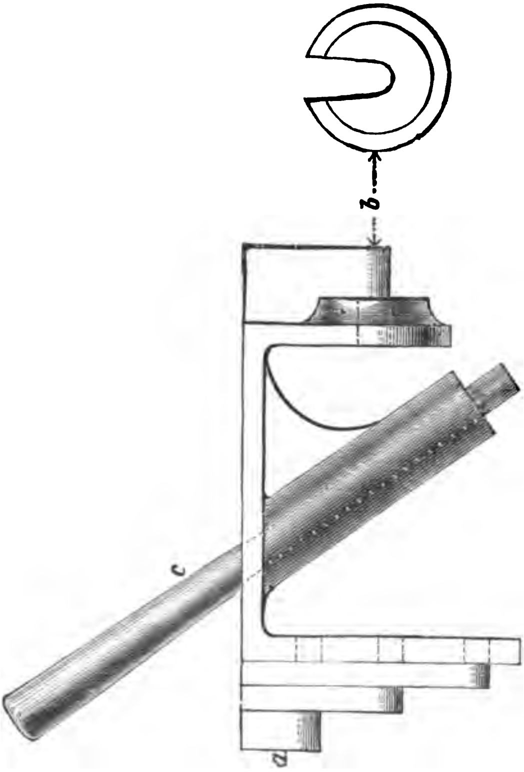


Fig. 59.

in diameter, need not be more than ½ inch thick. The thickness of pocket prints depends upon the thickness of metal through which their cores have to be carried. If we had to cast a hole through an inch of metal, the print should be made 1¼ inch thick, to counterbalance the weight of the unsupported portion of the core. But if the thickness becomes very great we ought to have prints on each side of the pattern, in order that the core might be bridged across the mould. If, however, the core does not go right through the metal, but only a portion of the way, and the unsupported length is too great for an ordinary print to counterbalance, we simply put a print thick enough to resist the crushing of its sand out of shape by the weight of the core, and sustain the opposite end of the core by chaplets. The partly closed box, which sometimes carries a front crane roll, or the cylinder or the plunger for a large hydraulic ram, having one end closed, will illustrate my meaning.

Again, we may have three or four holes in the same vertical plane (Fig. 59, *a*). Here we should place pocket prints one over the other, the outer ones being thicker than those within, because of the greater length of core they have to carry. We should scarcely be able to make these outer ones thick enough to entirely counterbalance their cores, but should expect the moulder to hold them in place until they were securely stopped over. "Stopping over" means filling up the upper portion of the print level with the face of the mould, after the core has been placed in position. Where cores of the same size are used repeatedly in one pattern, we make a special box to fill up the print as well as to core the hole out, or, in brief, to "stop itself off" (Fig. 60; see also Figs. 44 and 45, p. 54). It is easily seen what shape the core-box must be in order to fill up the print and take out the hole; the difficulty sometimes is how best to joint it. However, this need offer no real obstacle if we remember that the only object in parting the box is to allow freedom of delivery to the core. So that the various portions of an intricate box can be removed without tearing the core, it matters little in what particular way it is parted.

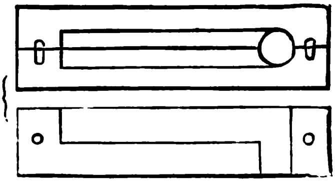


Fig. 60.

Where a print has to be stopped up over a boss, the boss must invariably be cut out to slip over the print, and not the print cut to fit over the boss (Fig. 59, *b*). This is apparent in an instant in the sand, for then a solid boss is seen to occupy the portion of the print which the moulder desires to fill up.

When a long round core has to stand at an angle in a mould, it is customary to have, in addition to the bottom print, a long tapered one in the top coming right through the top sand (Fig. 59, *c*). Here the core is thrust in through the top after the boxes are put together, and the proper bevel is thereby secured. But the danger is lest some of the top sand should be pushed into the mould by the descent of the core, and, remaining there, destroy the casting. The mould being finally closed, the workman can only rely on his sense of touch. This danger is partly guarded against by making the long taper print at its smaller end ⅛ inch larger than the core, or more effectually by bending a piece of hoop iron around the smaller end of the print, and letting that remain *in situ* to protect the sand. But some moulders will rather sustain the core at its bevel by chaplets, and only use the long print where chaplets are not available.

Where cores are carried in a line through two or more contiguous ribs of a shallow casting, pocket prints are often discarded for a round parallel print placed between the ribs. This involves no stopping over, for the joint of the mould is brought down to the centre of the print, and a long round core insures greater parallelism in the holes than two or more shorter ones would do. The advantage of this is still more obvious where there are deep bosses, projecting inwards, for increasing the length of bearing. These would have to be stopped over were pocket prints used, whereas with a round print the bosses remain intact. But if the sides are too deep to allow of jointing down to the centre of the print, and moreover too thin to allow of the bosses being drawn in, and for some reason or other it is not advisable to joint the pattern itself in the centre of the bosses, the neatest way is to take out the upper half of both boss and print with a core (Fig. 61). A block print stretching from side to side, with its ends well tapered, and a core-box of corresponding size, with half bosses and half print fastened on its bottom board, will then answer our purpose admirably.

In the case of a vertical core disproportionately long in comparison with its diameter, a bottom print is not usually sufficient to carry it steadily in the vertical position. Then we put a top print on the pattern in addition to that on the bottom. Yet this is usually only essential where it is not easy to check the upper part of the core by measurement. In a common brass bush, even if it be 10 inches or 12 inches long, the moulder can centre his core by measurement, and the top box will keep it in position afterwards. So the core in the boss of a spur-wheel can be checked accurately from the points of the teeth. But a bevel-wheel with a deep boss on the back, or a sheave-wheel one half of which is in the top box, do not afford the same facilities for measurement. So in these and similar cases it is advisable to put prints both on top and bottom.

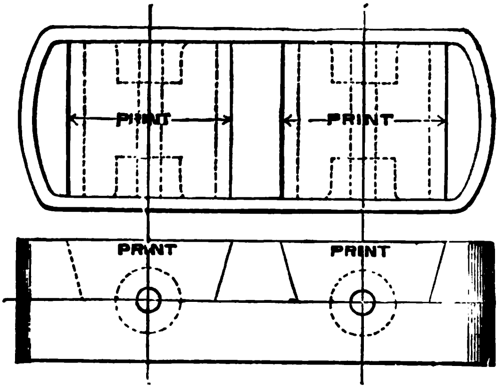


Fig 61.

We have frequently to cast a wrought-iron eye, handle, pin, or such like, in a piece of work. Here a print precisely similar to a core print will be used, its shape following the outline of the handle, pin, or eye to be cast in (Fig. 62). The spaces. *a*, *a*, left by the withdrawal of the print, are of course filled up with sand before the mould is closed for casting.

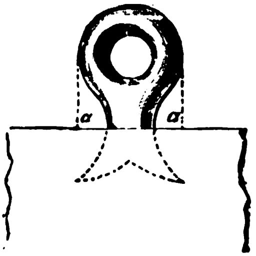


Fig. 62.

Sometimes a hole has to be cast through a thick lug or bracket in such a position that a print on each side is necessary. Yet something else in the way, a bracket, perhaps, or boss, would render the "stopping-off" of the pocket print on one side a troublesome job. The difficulty is avoided by having a common round print on this side loosely wired on, and by making the pocket print on the clear side about twice as thick as usual (Fig. 63). The core is then dropped into the pocket print, and thrust along into the round print. The vacant space behind and over the core in the pocket print is stopped up with sand as usual.

The rim of a large chain-wheel is usually taken out with cores to save the labour of cutting out a large number of link recesses in the pattern. Here, and in all jobs where the prints should well support their cores without assistance from chaplet nails, the print should be plenty wide enough.

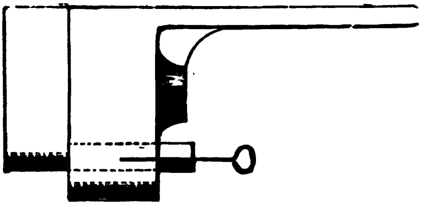


Fig. 63.

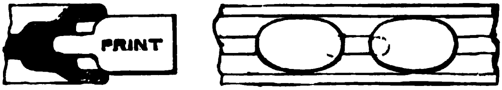


Fig. 64.

Give it, say, half as much again of bearing as is necessary to just counterbalance the cores (Fig. 64). Of the core-boxes for these wheels we shall speak in due course.*

Lastly, a core without communication with the outer air is an impossibility; no casting could be made with a core inclosed on all sides, for the gas generated by the heat of the molten iron would then be confined in the interior of the mould and form cavities in the casting—in other words, make it honeycombed or "spongy," or blow up altogether.

The theory is this: a mould is always more or less damp—that is, it contains water in a finely divided state. Water is composed of oxygen and hydrogen, H_2O. At the temperature of molten iron this becomes decomposed into the two gases, so that within a few minutes after the metal has been poured into a mould all the moisture within its influence becomes gaseous oxygen and hydrogen. occupying, say, 12,000 *times the original volume of the liquid.* Of these two, the oxygen enters into chemical combination of some kind or another within the mould, either with the carbon (the plumbago or the charcoal used for facing), to form one of the oxides of carbon, CO or CO_2, or with the surface of the iron to form a skin of oxide, or with the sand to form a silicated oxide of iron (parting sand). The hydrogen escapes to the vent holes, and rushing out ignites with a loud report, burning with the blue flame characteristic of that gas. Hence it is apparent why not only the mould must be vented, but why all cores must communicate with the outer air. This, though properly belonging to the founder's craft, is mentioned in order to warn the pattern-maker never to entertain the idea of making a core without allowing an exit for the gas proportional to the bulk of the core itself.* As a matter of fact, in workshop practice holes are often cast in work in positions not indicated by the draughtsman, solely for the purpose of providing sufficient area of egress for the liberated gas, the intuition of experience being the best guide in such matters.

---

* Chap. XVII., p. 144.

---

* The student of chemistry will readily understand why the outrush of gas from even a small mould is so great.

A c.c. of water weighs 1 gramme.

The combining weights are $\left.\begin{matrix} H_2 & 2 \\ O & 16 \end{matrix}\right\} = 18$

$$\begin{array}{rl} & \text{c.c.} \\ \text{18 grammes decomposed become} & 22{,}400 \text{ of H} \\ & 11{,}200 \text{ — O} \\ \hline & 33{,}600 \end{array}$$

that is supposing the gases were measured at 0° C.

$\therefore$ 1 gramme $=$ 1 c.c. of water becomes—

$$\frac{33{,}600}{18} = 1866 \text{ c.c. at } 0^\circ \text{ C.}$$

But as the temperature of molten iron equals at least 1,500° C., this would expand the gases to—

$$\frac{1866 \times (273 + 1500)}{273} = 12{,}118 \text{ c.c.}$$

or 1 c.c. of water becomes 12,118 c.c. of mixed gas.

CHAPTER XI.

ENGINE CYLINDERS

Striking out.—Views required.—"Lagging up."—Head Metal.—Turning.—Passage Block.—Steam-chest · Flange.—Prints.—Exhaust.—Feet.—Passage Core-box.—Exhaust Core-box.

ENGINE cylinders are of all sizes—from 2 or 3 inches to 8 or 9 feet in bore, and of most varied types. The smaller ones are cast from patterns, the larger from loam moulds. We will take a simple illustration of a high-pressure cylinder of moderate size, and describe the making of its pattern before we pass on to the loam cylinders. This, like most of our work, must be struck out on the drawing-board. We want a longitudinal section, cutting through the steam ports and valve face (Fig. 65), and a transverse section through the same face and the exhaust port (Fig. 66), also a plan of the cylinder looking into the ports (Fig. 67). Make the drawing to the sizes of the finished casting, adding the due allowance afterwards for turning and boring. Taking a cylinder of 6-inch bore and 10-inch stroke, let us give it certain definite proportions for convenience of illustration, and not as fast dimensions.

	in.
Length of cylinder	14½
Thickness of metal in body . .	9/16
,, flanges	¾
Length of port	3½
Width ,, ...	7/16
,, exhaust	13/16
Metal round ports	9/16
Length of valve face . . .	7
Width ,, ,, ...	4¾
Length of steam-chest flange . .	10
Width ,, ,, . .	7¼
Thickness of ditto	⅝
Distance between ports . . .	[illegible]

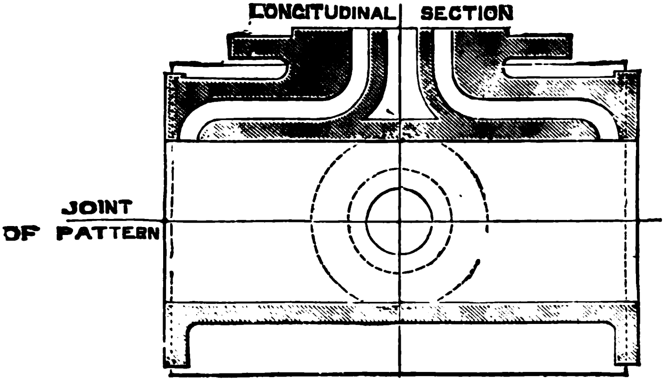


Fig. 65.

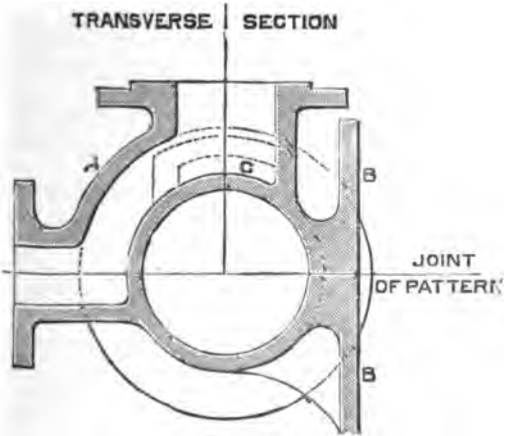


Fig. 66.

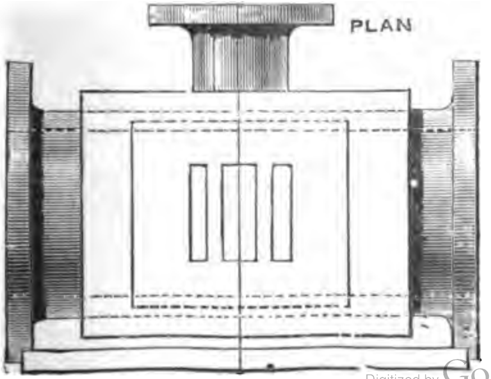


Fig. 67.

A foot or a pair of feet will be required for the purpose of bolting the cylinder on to its bedplate or framing, and their shape and position will be determined by the shape and position of the part to which they are to be attached.

When about to make the pattern, commence with the circular body. In order to mould well, this must be jointed longitudinally with dowels; and unless a piece of very dry timber is available, it is not customary or wise in a standard pattern to make it in the solid. The proper way to make cylinders, as well as large pipes, is to "*lag them up.*" Longitudinal strips are glued and secured with nails or screws to transverse ends which have been planed hexagon, octagon, or polygonal in form, the size across the flats being determined by the thickness of the stuff in the *lagging*. Dowel the end blocks in their joints, mark out into flats, and saw and plane perfectly square across the thickness of the stuff (Fig. 68, section).

Now lay the joints of those halves which contain the dowel *holes* on the bench or on a true joint board, at the distance over all which coincides with the extreme ends of the pattern. In this instance this will be 14½ inches = length of cylinder + say 3 inches at each end for prints + 2 inches for "head metal" = in all to 22½ inches, and this will be the length of the lagging also. The object of head is this :—When metal is poured into a mould, dirt and scurf, being light, float on the surface, and along with entangled air bubbles rise to the top, making the upper part of a casting spongy and unsound. In an engine cylinder this porosity would be a fatal evil, diminishing its strength and permitting escape of steam. So these lighter matters are allowed to float into a ring of "head metal" of the same diameter as the cylinder, and of sufficient height to contain them all. It is scarcely necessary to remark that this is turned off the casting and thrown away.

Sometimes the pattern proper finishes with the head metal, and the prints are turned separately and screwed on the ends. This is a matter of no importance; but if our stuff is long enough to turn prints as well as body (and we will suppose this to be the case) our angular transverse ends will occupy the "out and out" position. Now take one of the pieces of lagging, plane up the face quite true, and bevel both edges. The width on the face will be the same as the flats on the transverse ends, and both edges will be bevelled so that if projected they would meet at the central axis of the cylinder. Glue and screw this first piece in place with one edge resting on the joint board or bench; chalk its upper edge, and fit the second piece against it, until the chalk shows a fit everywhere; plane the next edge to the same bevel at the proper width, and then glue both the face and the chalked joint, and screw. In this way carry the lagging round the first half of the pattern. Now turn over this first half, lay the dowel ends in place, and build up the second half in the same fashion. Allow the glue time to set hard, and then chuck in the lathe with centre plates, which are simply square pieces of sheet iron or brass with screwholes at the corners, and made—one of them to receive the lathe-fork, the other counter-sunk to run on the back centre (see Figs. 210, 211, pages 205, 6). When screwed in place, they form the temporary centres of the pattern, and retain the two halves securely together while being turned. The screws which hold them on should be put in firmly in order to prevent the work flying asunder while in rapid rotation.

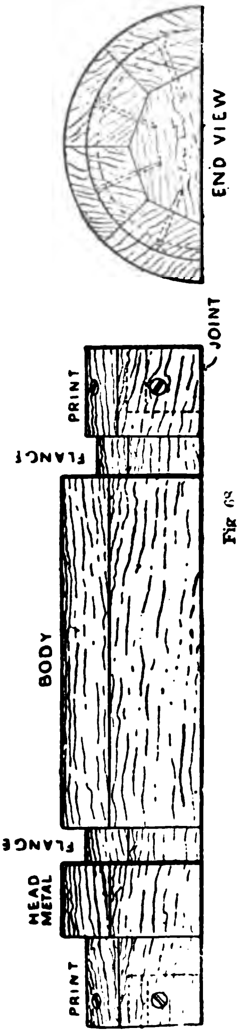


Fig 63

Now, having our cylinder in the lathe, and being assured that everything is well secured, rough it down to within ⅛ inch of the body size with a sharp gouge. If belts are desired, the pattern must be roughed to the size of the belts first, and afterwards turned between the belts to the body size. Finish the body by scraping with a firmer-chisel. Mark on the body so turned a line at the distance of one print from either end, equal to 3 inches, then another line at a distance from the first equal to the length of cylinder, + the allowance for facing on flanges, — ⅛ inch. on each flange, equal to 14¾ inches in all. From these two lines strike two others equal to the thickness of the flanges with their hollows, allowing, say, ½ inch for hollow. Turn out grooves for the flanges in the spaces thus marked; measure off 2 inches, the length of the head metal, and that will leave 3 inches for the length of the second print. Turn these prints down to 5¾ inches diameter, parallel, no taper being required—the cylinder moulding on its side; 5¾ inches diameter will give the proper allowance for boring out on a small cylinder, but in larger ones we should have rather more, from 5⁄16 inch to 7⁄16 inch. Glass-paper and varnish the body, take it from the lathe, and remove the centre plates. Fig. 68 will represent one half the pattern at this stage. Turn the flanges in halves on the face-plate to fit the grooves, not forgetting the additional ⅛ inch in thickness for facing. They may be screwed on the body or left loose—it is of no consequence which.

The ports and valve face will claim our next attention. Get a block of wood, wide enough and thick enough to include the ports and the metal inclosing them, and fit it between the flanges and round the curve of the cylinder body (Fig. 69). Having hollowed the inner face, plane the outside rounding and concentric with the cylinder body (Fig. 69, A), making the thickness equal to the width of port and of the metal bounding it (Fig. 69, B). Recess this across the centre to receive the block through which the ports curve upwards into the valve face (Fig. 69, C). This last piece should extend as far as the termination of the hollow on the under side of the steam-chest flange. Be careful to have the top of this block

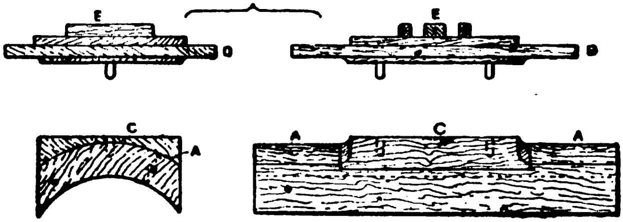


Fig. 69.

parallel with the joint of the pattern. Laying the half pattern on a true board, rest a straightedge over the block, and, measuring near its extremities, adjust its edge until it shows the block parallel with the board. Then screw in place. Next, prepare the flange for the attachment of the steam-chest (Fig. 69, D). Make it sufficiently thick to allow for facing, and also for working the hollow on its under side; dowel it on the port block, keeping it parallel up and down the cylinder. Work out the hollow on the back, using rebate, and carpenter's round planes; make the valve face and nail it on, and on that again nail, screw, or dowel the prints for ports and exhaust (Fig. 69, E). Leave these prints barely ⅛ inch narrower than the finished ports, so that the fitter may chip and file their edges accurately for the cut-off of the steam.

Now fit a block of wood for the exhaust, the D-shaped piece of pipe which comes from underneath the steam-chest flange downwards to the joint of the pattern (Fig. 66, A). Work the portion which fits the body of the pattern with a gouge, and the outer part with a chisel, using a templet struck semicircular in shape (Fig. 70). A distinct half-round block will be fitted on the other half of the cylinder body, forming a continuation and termination of the D-shaped pipe (Fig. 70, A). Make the exhaust flange and print in halves, and screw one half on each portion of the exhaust pipe, the joint of the flange coinciding with the joint of the pattern (Fig. 70, B, B).

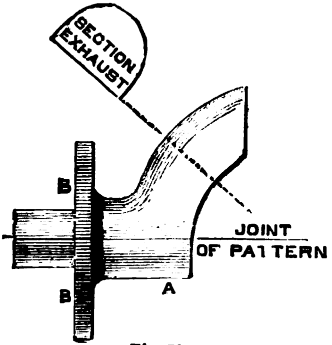


Fig. 70.

The feet in our pattern are at right-angles with the steam-chest face (Fig. 66), and can be fastened on permanently to draw with the pattern; but had they been on the side opposite to the valve face, they and their bracketings must have been held in place with temporary screws only, put in from the inside of the lagging. Put hollows behind these feet, and allow for planing on their faces, B, B.

We now consider the core-boxes. They are two in number, the steam passage and the exhaust. No box is requisite for the centre core, for the core maker strikes that against the edge of a loam board. In this case it is simply a board a few inches longer than the cylinder and prints, having one edge planed straight and *chamfered.* The core-boxes, however, are not easily made by an inexperienced hand. By adhering to the following directions, and exercising a little "insight," no great difficulty need be experienced :—

Take the passage box first (Fig. 71). We have the curved part drawn in section (Fig. 66, C, and Fig. 65). Prepare, therefore, two pieces of wood, just the width of the port =3½ inches, and exceeding its extreme length by about 4 inches, and sufficiently thick to allow of planing out the curves, and giving an inch of wood in the thinnest part besides. For the outer curve of the port (Fig. 71, A) *hollow* one of the pieces, using a templet struck from the drawing, and for the inner curve *round* the other piece (Fig. 71, B).

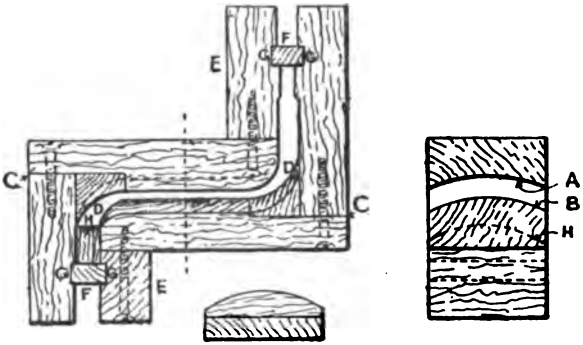


Fig. 71.

We now want to form the ends and their curves. Evidently the longitudinal central lines of the pieces just worked correspond with the port lines on the longitudinal section we have drawn upon our board. So we set the *central* line of each piece in turn over its corresponding line on the board, using a set-square for the purpose, and we see at a glance that we must block up at the ends of our straight pieces in order to form the terminations of the box, and we also see the amount of blocking that is necessary. Rebate out across the curved faces for the reception of these blocks, and glue and screw them in place, C, C. Fit and glue in like manner the bits which are to form the hollows, D, D. and work them in place. Screw on the blocks, E, E; connect the two portions of core-box with transverse ends, F, F, letting them into shallow grooves, G, G, G, G, in the usual way, to prevent their ramming out of position. It will be remembered that our prints were made narrower than the finished ports to allow for exact adjustment of the valve. In that end of the core box, which corresponds with the print, thin strips of wood will be glued to diminish the opening to the width of the print. These strips may be ½ inch wider than the thickness of the print, giving ½ inch for depth of chipping strip in the casting. The planing will take ⅛ inch out of this, and the wear of the valve will reduce its thickness further in course of time.

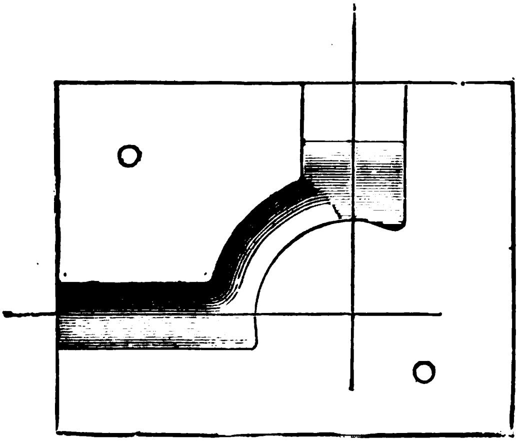


Fig. 72.

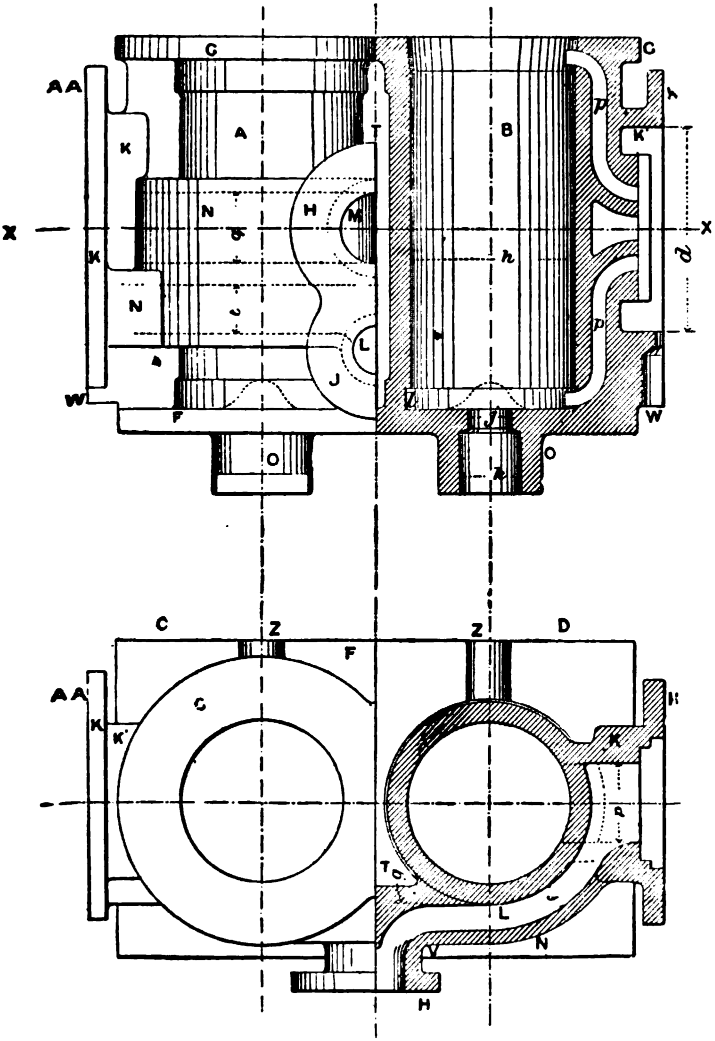
The other end of the core will fit the body core of the cylinder, and must, therefore, be hollowed to that curve. Fit a piece in that end, and with its rounding face H towards the *core space;* this will impart to the core the hollow form required.

Lastly, there is the exhaust (Fig. 66, A). The joint of this box will correspond with the transverse section of the cylinder, cutting the exhaust passage along the centre. Two pieces of wood are required, sufficiently long and wide to include the whole course of the exhaust with its prints, with about a couple of inches of timber besides (Fig. 72). They should be about an inch thicker than the semidiameter of the passage. Face both pieces truly, dowel together, and square one side and one end. To these corresponding faces transfer, by means of square and compasses, the sectional view of the exhaust port from the drawing board, extending that view to include the prints. The ends of the prints will coincide with the side and end we have squared. Gauge half the depth of the oblong portion of the port on each half of the box, and similarly strike on each half the circular portion of the port. Cut inwards with chisel and gouge, using templets to insure accuracy away from the immediate vicinity of the ends. Be careful that the halves of the box correspond, so that the core shall show no overlapping edges in the joint, and fasten the chipping strips against the valve face as in the inlet core-box. Fig. 72 shows one half of this box thus worked out.

This is an example of a simple type of cylinder. The following one involves a good deal more work.

Figs. 72*a*, 72*b*, 72*c* illustrate the casting of a double cylinder used for a pair of high-pressure inverted-cylinder engines of good type, and selected as a good example of neat pattern construction, and study in cored work. Fig. 72*a* is an outside elevation, A, and sectional elevation, B, of the cylinder. Fig. 72*b* is a plan, C, and a cross-section, D, the latter taken on the line X—X in Fig. 72*a*. Fig. 72*c* is an elevation looking against the face, A A, of Fig. 72*a*. In these figures the principal parts are as follows:—F is a square flange, by which the cylinders are bolted to the engine standards; G G are circular flanges, which receive the top covers; H is the exhaust flange, J the steam-inlet flange; K K are the steam-chest flanges, K′ K′ the steam-chests; L is the steam inlet, M the exhaust outlet; N is the block through which the steam and exhaust passages pass from L and M to the steam-chest in Fig. 72*c*, N gives metal round the steam passages just where they enter into the steam-chest; O O are stuffing-boxes for the piston-rod glands. Other minor parts which are lettered will be noted when describing the pattern and core-boxes.

Figs. 72*d* to 72*f* give different views of the pattern. Fig. 72*d* is an outside elevation, corresponding with the similar elevation of the casting A in Fig. 72*a*. Fig. 72*e*, left hand, is an outside view looking against the flange G in Fig. 72*b*, and the right hand is a section taken on the line X—X in Fig. 72*d*. Fig. 72*f* is taken against the steam-chest face A A in Figs. 72*a*—72*c*, and Fig. 72*g* is a view of the *joint-face* of one-half the pattern, to show clearly the way in which it is constructed.



Figs. 72a, 72b.

The cylinder bodies, A and B in the figures, are made by lagging up. This is shown in Fig. 72*e* in end view, and in section. Transverse blocks, *a*, *b* (compare Figs. 72*e* and 72*g*) are dowelled together, and the lagging strips *c* are fitted upon these with the edges jointed radially, and glued. The strips are made long enough to include the head metal, P, and the prints Q for the cylinder bores. Grooves are turned to receive the double flange G (compare with Figs. 72*a* — 72*c*). These grooves are seen in Fig. 72*g*. At the other end the bodies are secured by means of the oblong flange F, screwed against the ends of the bodies. Upon this flange the stuffing-boxes O are screwed, with gland-shaped flanges and prints, R.

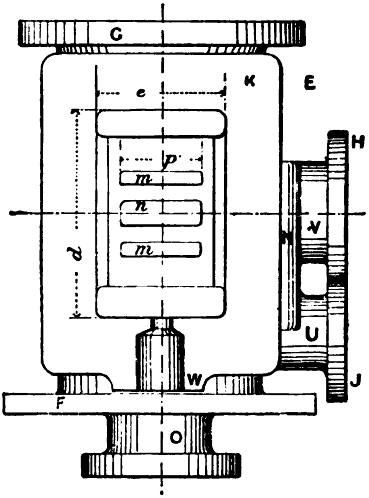


Fig. 72*c*.

Upon the bodies the steam-chests and their flanges are now fitted. K′ is the body, K the flange. The body blocks are fitted round the curves of the cylinders, and the flanges screwed against them. Prints, S, are screwed against the flanges to carry the steam-chest cores, of length and width *d* and *e* respectively, corresponding with *d* and *e* in Figs. 72*a* and 72*c*. These prints must be made wide, as shown, in order that the cores shall not overbalance themselves.

The block N for the steam passages will be the next fitting. It reaches across, and partly encircles, the two cylinder bodies, and is of the thickness *f*, corresponding with the thickness *f* of passage and metal in Fig. 72*b*. A narrow piece, N′, is

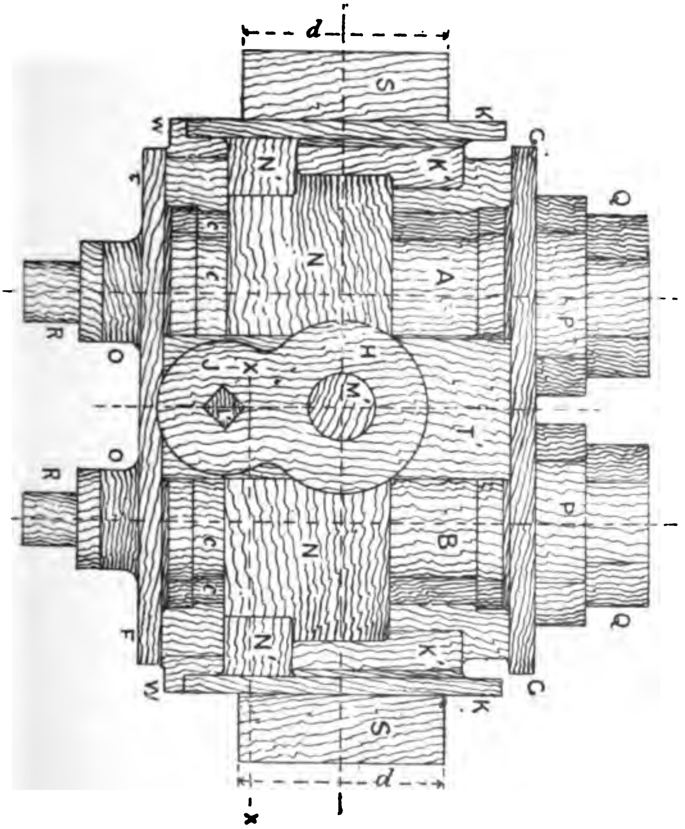


Fig. 72d.

added at each end where the steam-passage core enters the steam-chest. Since there is an open space, T, between the cylinders (Fig. 72*b*), it is clear that the sand forming that space in the mould would not deliver above the area covered by the block N. The only alternatives, therefore, are either to put solid metal there, or to core out the space. To put a lump of solid metal there would be a barbarous alternative, and, besides looking unsightly, would cause a "draw" in the casting. Coring is easily done. The print for the core is shown at T′ in Figs. 72*d* and 72*e*. It is fitted between the

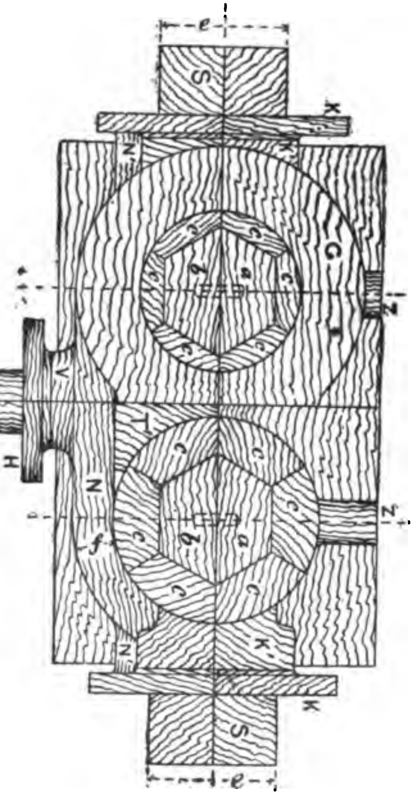


Fig. 72*e*.

cylinders, extending between flanges G and F, and meets the bottom of the passage block N. This leaves a thickness of metal, *g* in Fig. 72*b*, which must be put in the core-box, as will be shown presently. On the passage block N the bosses U V, for steam and exhaust respectively, are screwed, and the flanges H J dowelled on in one piece. Prints L′ M′ are fastened upon the flange for the steam and exhaust openings respectively. It will be noted that L is a square print, although the hole is round. This was done to keep the core from becoming shifted round slightly in the mould, as it does not fit into any prints at the steam-chest end, whereas the exhaust cores that fit into print M′ also fit into prints at the opposite end in the steam-chest cores. Pieces fitted at W for the steam-chest stuffing-box, and at Z for the pet-cock bosses, complete the pattern.

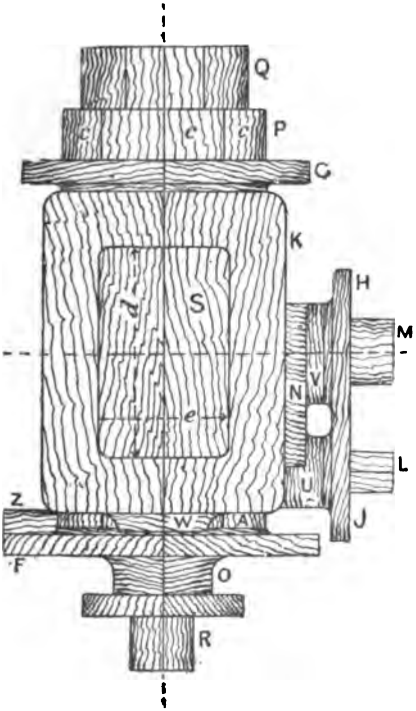


Fig. 72*f*.

The timber shading illustrates the best disposition of the grain throughout. The hollows or fillets are also shown. Boring allowances are made in the cylinders and stuffing-boxes, and facing on all the flanges and on the port faces, of $\frac{1}{8}$-inch in amount.

The provisions for making the cores are shown in Figs. 72*h* to 72*n*. Fig. 72*h* is the board used for striking the central core. The portions *h*, *j*, *k* strike the bore, the neck, and the stuffing-box respectively, similarly lettered in Fig. 72*a*. The recess *l* is for the arboring *l* in Fig. 72*a*. The portions corresponding with prints Q, R, and head P in Figs. 72*d* and 72*f* are also similarly lettered in Fig. 72*h*.

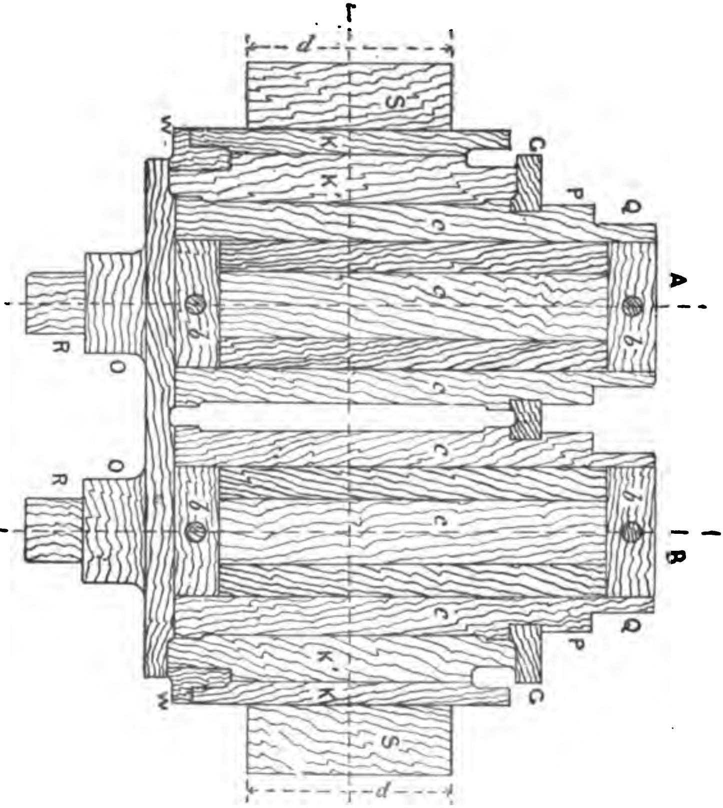


Fig. 72*a*.

Fig. 72*i* is the steam-chest core-box, fitting the print S in

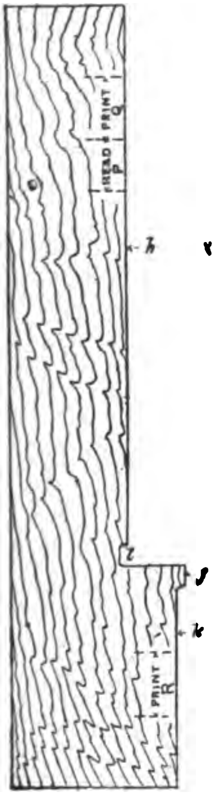


Fig. 72h.

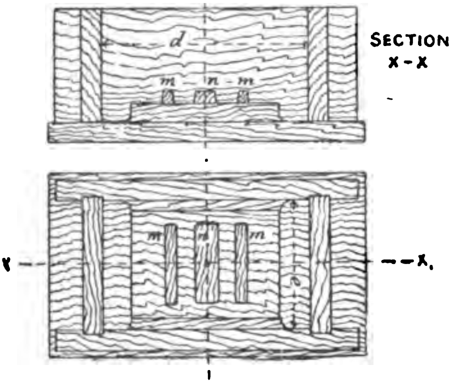


Fig. 72i.

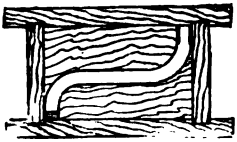


Fig. 72k.

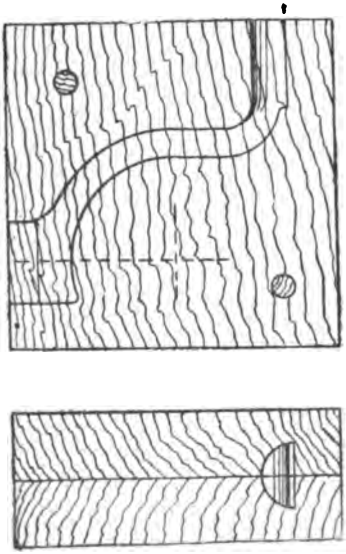


Fig. 72l.

Figs. 72*d* — 72*f*, the length *d* and width *e* corresponding in each case. A comparison of the two views of the box with the section of the steam-chest recess in the right hand of Fig. 72*a*, and its face view in Fig. 72*c*, will render the relationship of the parts of the box thereto apparent. The steam-ports *m m*, and the exhaust port *n*, in Figs. 72*a* and 72*c*, are represented by the prints similarly lettered in Fig. 72*i*. The box is framed together with grooved sides and ends, and a bottom board is dowelled on to carry the port facing and prints.

Fig. 72*k* is the steam-passage box. Its coincidence with the passages *p* in Fig. 72*a* is apparent at once. Its width is the same as *p*′ in Figs. 72*b* and 72*c*.

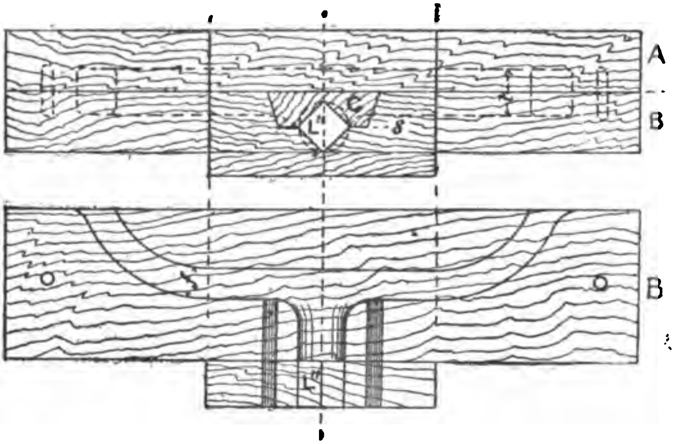


Fig. 72*m*.

Fig. 72*l* shows an edge view, and also one-half the exhaust core-box in plan. Its outline is seen at the right of Fig. 72*b*, and the width of the core is seen in plan at *q* in Fig. 72*a*, left hand. The end M″ fits into the impression of the print M′ in Figs. 72*d* — 72*f*, and the end *n*′ into the impression of the print *n* in Fig. 72*i*. There are two cores jointed at *o*, the centre of the print. The two passages could, however, be made in one core just as is done alternatively in the next box, Fig. 72*m*, for the steam inlet to the steam-chests. The two halves of this box A B are shown dowelled above in plan; the half B is shown below open in the joint-face. Comparing the box with

Fig. 72*a*, L″ is the square opening, corresponding with the print L′ in Fig. 72*d*, and the reason why this opening is not in the same plane with the passage itself is clear on a comparison with the left hand of Fig. 72*a*. This necessitates a jointing along the plane *r*, and along the plane *s* in the core-box. The half B is shown open on both planes, the half C that fits on the plane *s* being removed. The curvature and width of the passages coincide with the curvature and width of the exhaust passage L in the right hand of Fig. 72*b*, and the width of the passage in the other direction is *t* on the right hand of Fig. 72*a*. The timber shading explains the arrangement of grain.

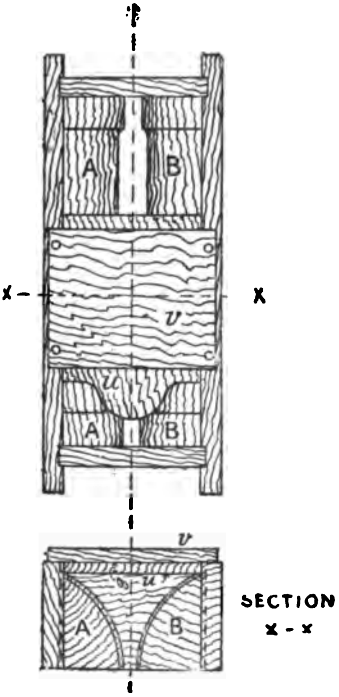


Fig. 72*n*.

Fig. 72*n* is the box for taking out the space T in Fig. 72*b*, with the print T in Figs. 72*d* and 72*e*. A framed outer box is made of the same length as the pattern between flanges F and G, and of the width of the print T′; and blocks A B are put in corresponding in section with the cylinder bodies A and B in Fig. 72*a*. A piece, *u*, is fitted within, corresponding in area and in position with the portion of the passage block N in Fig. 72*a* that covers the space T, and this is held in correct position with a batten V screwed or dowelled upon the box-edges. The thickness, *g*, of the piece *u* is equal to *g* in Fig. 72*b*, and forms the metal below the passages.

CHAPTER XII.

ENGINE CYLINDERS STRUCK IN LOAM.

The use of Loam.—Foundation-plate for striking on.—Bottom-board.—Body-board.—Attachments of Cylinder.—Loam Bricks.—Top-board.—Head.—Central Core.—Closing the Mould.—Variety of Design in Cylinders.

A MOULD taken from a wooden pattern is the most convenient and economical method of making a small cylinder, but it would obviously be too expensive in one of large diameter, say, ranging from 3 feet to 8 or 9 feet. If, then, we had to make a cylinder so large in diameter, and perhaps 6 feet, 8 feet, or 9 feet long, we should "strike it up" in a loam mould Foundry loam is a mixture of various sands and horsedung, which mixture, unlike the common sand, has the property of hardening when dried. Being plastic when in the wet state, it can be "struck up," or made to assume any shape that may be required. The necessary outline is imparted to the mould by a board having a "chamfered" edge, which board swivels on a bar set upright, and working in a step. Portions of work, not circular, as valve faces, feet, passage blocks, &c., must have their corresponding patterns made separately, just as in the case of an entire wood pattern, and embedded in the loam, there to remain until it is dry, when they are drawn out as from ordinary sand.

In our large cylinders we begin with the bottom flange. Make a rough cast-iron plate, 5 inches or 6 inches larger than the diameter of the flange, and about 3 inches thick; cast four projecting lugs on its circumference, and let its upper surface (Fig. 73, A) be studded over with points or "jaggers" to hold the loam. A hole in the centre is necessary, to allow the central striking bar to pass down to its socketed footstep. This plate will be placed on any convenient support, usually wooden blocking B, B, and daubed over with thick loam. The first striking board, C, notched to correspond to the semidiameter of the flange, minus half the diameter of the striking bar, D, also shouldered back to the thickness of the flange, and carried out parallel a few inches beyond its edge, will be swept over this surface. By repeated strikings, and the final application of thinner loam, the shape of the edge and face of the bottom flange, together with a joint surface, will be obtained. This will then be lifted by the projecting lugs which are cast on the foundation-plate, taken to the stove, and dried. When dry, it will be sufficiently hard and firm to sustain the body of the cylinder which will be built upon it (the latter might, however, be built on a separate plate, and then transferred). The outer board for striking the body, framed together with half-lap

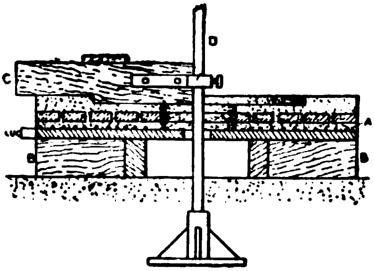


Fig. 73.

joints, cut at the top to form the flange and the upper joint, and chamfered, will be screwed to the bar, with its bottom end level with the face of the flange (Fig. 74). The flange itself will be temporarily filled with sand. On the flange joint already made the moulder will build up the body of the cylinder. Outside, and about an inch away from the edge of the board, he will build courses of bricks, bedding each successive course on a thin layer of loam, until the proper height is attained. Within this wall of bricks loam will be laid, and struck truly circular by means of the board. The upper portion of the board will strike the top joint, coinciding with the face of the top flange, and that joint will have a "check" about 1½ inch deep, and standing about 4 inches away from the edge of the flange, which check becomes a guide for the concentric setting of the top mould. Passages, valve faces, and flanges, of one type or another, will be required. These, as we said before, will be made as patterns, and embedded in the loam, and, of course, where they come the bricks must be left out. Portions of these may require to be loose for convenience of drawing in, and while some pieces will be drawn *into* the mould, others perhaps, as steam-chest flanges, will have to be drawn from the *outside*. Where a flange is drawn from the outside, its face will be made by a flat cake of loam laid against the outside after the mould is finished. Where there are wide flanges or brackets in close proximity to the body of the cylinder, there is a

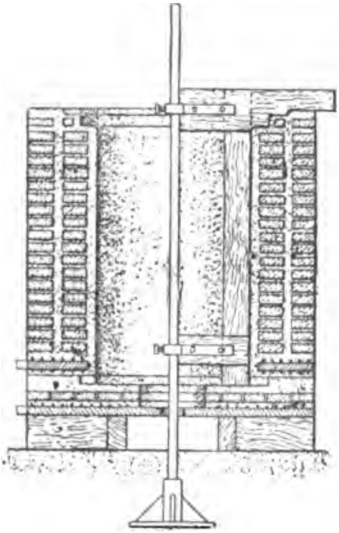


Fig. 74.

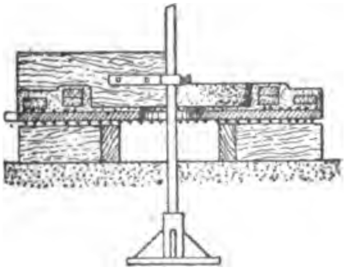


Fig. 75.

danger of their breaking off during the contraction of the metal, owing to the unyielding nature of the bricks. In such cases "loam bricks" are used, *i.e.* bricks made of loam and dried. These will crush and give more readily to the shrinking of the metal.

The face of the top flange will be made by a board showing a joint exactly the counterpart of that on the body-board, having its "check" cut the reverse way to that shown in Fig. 74. A tongue must be screwed upon it to give the proper head metal, say six or eight inches (Fig. 75). The flange face will be struck on an iron plate similar to that which was used for the bottom.

Meanwhile the outside of the cylinder will have become sufficiently set for removal to the stove. It will be detached from the bottom plate for this purpose, and while it is drying the centre core, representing the bore of the cylinder, will be struck up. Here also a board in a vertical position will be used, striking a coating of loam on a body of bricks (Fig. 76). This, too, will be dried and removed.

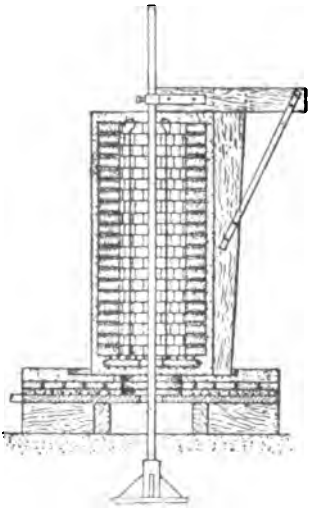


Fig. 76.

All the parts having been struck and dried, the moulder then blacks their surfaces and puts them together. Fig. 77 shows the mould in section. The passage cores, not shown, for which core-boxes must be made in the usual way, as described in the last chapter, will be fixed, and the top and bottom parts of the mould will be secured by bolts, embracing the lugs on the top and bottom plates. The whole will then be placed in the foundry pit, due provision having been made for the bringing off the gas from the mould, and the entire affair is rammed round with sand previous to casting.

Cylinders vary very widely in general design; consequently a detailed description of one pattern will not apply to another. In this, as in many other classes of work, a pattern-maker will seldom get two jobs exactly alike. He must, therefore, find safe and sufficient guide in the general principles of his trade, assisted by the teachings and warnings of experience. Thus he must not only foresee whether or no his pattern, when constructed, will deliver from the sand, but whether the cores, as well as the mould, can be put together in detail, and so securely that nothing shall be washed out of place by the rush of metal. He will also consider where core prints can be used with best advantage, since sometimes prints will be dispensed with and "chaplets" used instead; frequently also prints in cores will form the supports for other cores.

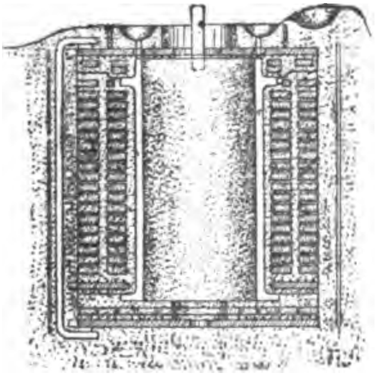


Fig. 77.

Cylinders are sometimes cast double; frequently they are jacketed; often the steam-chest forms a part of the cylinder casting. The feet are sometimes in awkward positions and of queer shapes. Of late years engines have come into common use in which cylinder, bedplate, and guide-bars are cast all in one. In these matters of detail the general principles we have laid down, coupled with the knowledge to be gained by experience, are sufficient guide to the workman who may never have seen a piece of work precisely similar to that which he may at any moment have to take in hand.

CHAPTER XIII.

ON ENGINE BEDS AND BASE-PLATES IN GENERAL.

Definition of a Bedplate.—Horizontal Engine Bed.—Methods of Moulding.—Way of Casting.—"Boxing-up" of Patterns.—By two Methods.—Attachments of Bed.—Types of Bedplates.—Core-boxes.—Buckling of Castings.—Theory at Fault.

THERE is no limit to the forms which bedplates may assume. But however their details may vary, a bedplate is a bedplate after all. Any piece of casting which becomes the foundation for machinery may be termed a bedplate or baseplate.

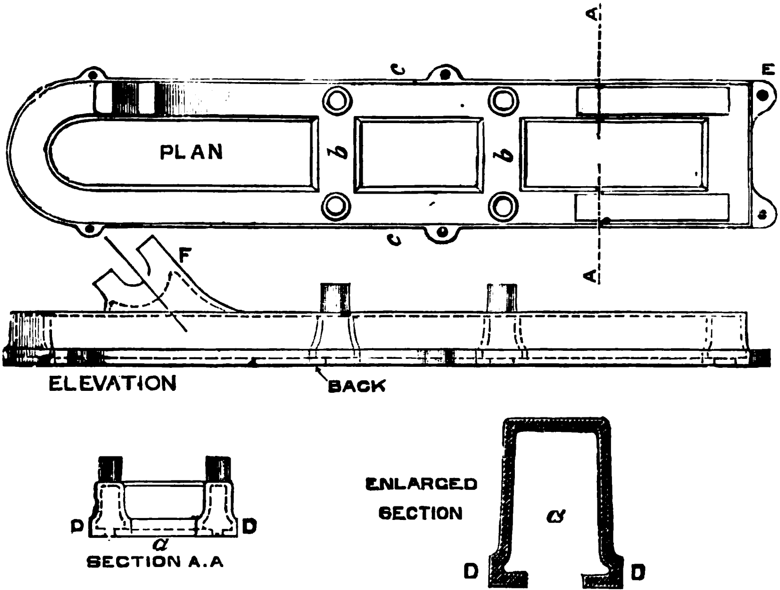


Fig. 78.

In a general way we should define it as a plate of metal rendered rigid by means of ribs or flanges. There may be bearings, brackets, facings, lugs, bosses, recesses, mouldings also, which will complicate the pattern in a greater or less degree; but the remarks following will apply in a general way to all castings of this class.

We will, first of all, give detailed directions for the making of a common type of engine bed, and afterwards pass on to observations of a more general scope. Say, then, we have to make a bedplate for an engine of the ordinary horizontal type. The bed is of a type which in these days of compact and cheap engines is becoming somewhat antiquated; but it is purposely chosen because it illustrates well the method of "boxing up," and affords a good medium for the remarks we wish to make on beds in general. It is a plain bed shown in Fig. 78. Two ways of constructing it would occur to the pattern-maker. One would be to make the pattern like the casting, allowing everything to deliver itself; the other would be to take out the space between the ribs with dried cores. Selecting a bed having a section like Fig. 79, the first method would answer very well; but taking one with a section like Fig. 78, the second plan would be preferable. Where the pattern delivers itself, the sides (Fig. 79, *a*, *a*) must be tapered, or set out of perpendicular, say $\frac{1}{8}$ inch or $\frac{1}{4}$ inch, depending on the depth of the bed; and the flat ribs or flanges, *b*, *b*, must be held only temporarily with wires or "skewers," so that after the pattern is rammed up they may come away loosely along with the body of sand which forms the hollow portion of the bed, to be subsequently withdrawn sideways. But where the hollow portion is taken out with cores, as in Fig. 78, the pattern will be made just as though the casting were not to be hollowed out at all, and core prints on the back (enlarged section) will give the only indication that the bed is not intended to be solid. Let us premise that when we mention the back of a pattern we mean that portion in the top of the mould—in the case of our bed, that portion which bolts on the foundation-stone.

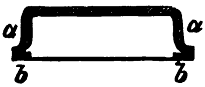


Fig. 79.

Now, it would always be more convenient to lay cores in the bottom part of a mould than to hang and screw them in the top. But as we have already mentioned, when speaking of cylinders, the bad metal always rises uppermost, and it would be highly detrimental both to the strength and appearance of a bedplate to have a quantity of scurf and air bubbles spread over its surface, where facings, bearings, bosses, &c., require to be faced bright, and where a sound plate is necessary to sustain the complicated strains and stresses of moving parts. Hence it is usual to cast beds with the plate downwards, and to hang the cores in the top.

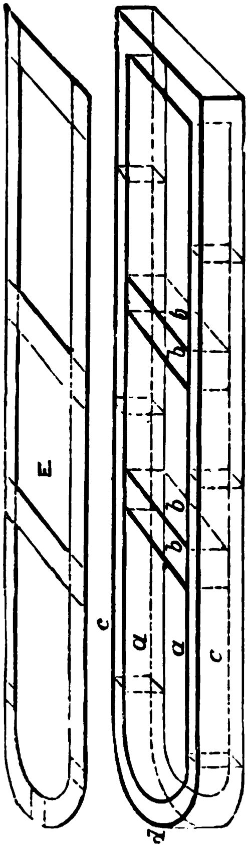


Fig. 80.

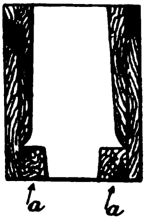
If we had to make a small bed-plate for a four or six H.P. engine, we should plane up solid stuff and mortise the crossbars (Fig. 78, *b*, *b*) into the sides, *c*, *c*, a process sufficiently simple to need no descriptive detail. But if the bed were a large one, say ten or twelve feet in length, we should "box it up." In illustration, suppose we had a plain rectangular piece to box up, 12 feet long, with a 9-inch by 6-inch cross section, and had 1-inch stuff available for the purpose, we should get out the two sides 9 inches wide, and the top and bottom each 4 inches wide by the 12 feet in length, drop the top and bottom between the sides, and nail together. Internal support would be given to the "box" by cross-bars or blocking pieces placed at intervals of about a foot. By building up pieces of heavy section in this manner a saving of timber is effected, and the liability of the pattern to warp and twist out of truth is lessened.

We can apply this method to our bed in one of two ways. The sides and cross-bars may be each boxed up separately—squared off to their respective lengths, and fastened together by tightly fitting dowels, assisted by screws driven in obliquely. The better method, however, is to frame the top and bottom plates of the pattern together with half-lap joints (Fig. 80). Then to take the pieces intended for the sides and screw them on separately through one plate, first remembering to screw the inner sides, *a*, *a*, of the bed to the ends of the cross ribs, *b, b, b, b,* before the outer sides, *c, c,* are put in place. The sweeped or curved end, *d,* may be built up with an outer and inner course of circular segments, or simply of circular arcs. Then, when the sides are all complete, place internal cross-bars, to insure the necessary rigidity during ramming up, and screw on the top plate, E.

Proceed to dress off all overlapping joints, and to mark out all centres. Dowel prints ½ inch or ¾ inch thick on the back to carry the lightening cores, for if screwed fast, the top sand, on being lifted, will be torn away; if dowelled they come up with the top, and can be taken out one by one. A moulding, D, D, will be carried round the lower edge of the casting; plane this to required shape in strips, and screw on. Round the semicircular end it will be "saw kerfed" after carpenters' fashion, or it may be worked in short sweeps with gouge and chisel, which is the better way of the two. Lugs or ears for bolting down, E, will likewise be made, and screwed to the outside of the moulding. A bearing, F, will be cast on to carry the crank-shaft. It will be at an angle of 45° or thereabouts with the face of the bed, and will require to be drawn from the sand *parallel with its own centre line.* Therefore it will be dowelled, and left loosely in the mould. This also will be lightened with a core, and the recess for the reception of its brass bearing will be either taken out with a core or cut in the block, it is immaterial which. Bosses for the guide-bars are turned and pinned on. Facings for the cylinder will complete the bed.

I cannot recall to mind any type of bed casting which cannot be made in one or other of the ways which I have indicated in this chapter. Broadly, then, they may be divided into beds either solid or boxed up, and beds the counterparts in shape of the castings; in the latter case leaving their own cores, in the former hollowed by dry sand cores. In one or other of these methods, or by a combination of both, all bedplates can be made. In some classes of work drawbacks are useful; but as a chapter (XXII.) is devoted to this and kindred subjects, we will not enter into it here.

The core-boxes remain. They are readily made. The sides, including the depth of the core together with its print, are grooved out for the reception of their ends. Flanges are dropped within the box like the internal flanges in the casting, but *thicker* than those by the added thickness of the *print* (Fig. 81, *a, a*). As the cores are sometimes of different lengths, though of the same section, one box is made to do duty for them all, their various lengths being given by an adjustable sliding end, screwed where required. The lightening core in the bearing will require its special box, and will be adjusted by chaplets—a print on the bottom not being available; or it may be screwed through one of the long cores into the top. A special box may also be made for the semicircular end, or, if economy is to be studied, the end core may easily be strickled. All that is necessary then is a strickle about an inch thick, cut to the shape of the core section, and a thin cast plate of iron to strike and dry it upon.



SECTION OF CORE BOX
Fig. 81.

Figs. 81*a* and 81*b* illustrate an engine bed plate, with crosshead guide and crank bearing cast in one piece. The bed is for a cylinder of overhanging type. In the figures, A is the plate of the bed, B the sides, C the circular guide, D its oil cup, E the stuffing box for the cylinder, F the crank bearing, G lugs for bolting the bed down, H the fillet or beading. There are other minor parts besides, lettered in the figure, which will be referred to presently.

There is only one really practicable method of moulding this bed, and that is in the reverse way to that which it occupies when fitted up. Nearly all the outside portion will deliver freely. The facing J, however, which receives the cylinder flange, must be left loose. The bearing F must be dowelled on, to be drawn after the bed in a diagonal direction, that, namely, of its own centre line. The facings *a* must be skewered on, and the seating *b* for the brasses must be cored out. But the most troublesome portion is the circular guide C. There are three points about this guide that have to be considered. First, it is hollow; next, there are side openings *c c*; lastly, there is a portion *d d*, seen in Fig. 81*b* to be undercut. Without discussing possible methods of getting over these points in moulding, I will simply say that the only practicable way of doing so is to core out the hollow part, the side openings *c c*, and the undercut portion *d d*, in a single core. How this is done will be shown presently. At present I will consider the pattern work only.

Figs. 81*c* to 81*e* give various views of the pattern, made in the best fashion. First, it is boxed up. Top and bottom pieces of board A A are cut to the plan outline of the bed, and the sides B planed to parallel width, are fitted between, and the whole is nailed or screwed together. Those portions of the sides which are curved are sawn out with band saw, or cut with gouge and chisel to the required curves. To avoid short grain, they are made in two or three separate lengths, and abut simply at the ends like the similarly curved portion of the fillets c, seen in plan. Taper is put in the sides. In a shallow bed like this, ⅛-inch on each side is ample. The lugs G are worked separately and screwed upon the fillets. Core prints *g*, for the holes that receive the hold-down bolts, are nailed upon the lugs.

The crank bearing F is cut to outline and dowelled on the

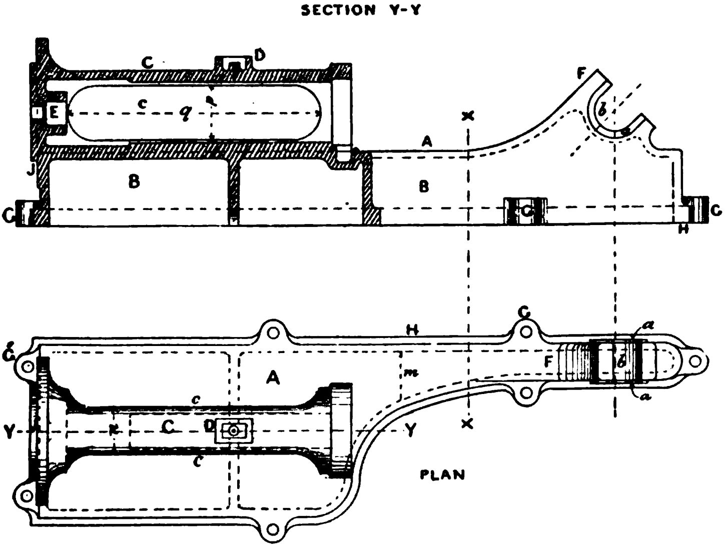


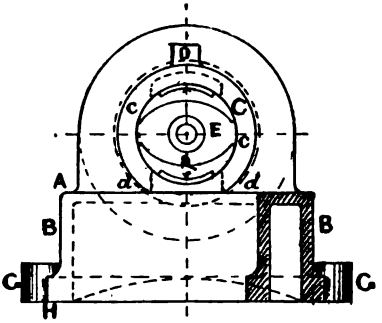
Fig. 81*a*.

plate A. A deep bearing like this should be secured temporarily with cramps while being rammed in the sand. The dowels will keep it in central position, but will not be a security against its being rammed aside.

The print *f* carries the core for the recess *b* in Fig. 81*a*; *a a* are the facings that receive the shoulders of the brasses. These facings are skewered on because they have to be left in the mould, to be withdrawn subsequently to the block F.

The guide C in Fig. 81*a*, being cored out, is blocked up in the pattern in any convenient way. In Figs. 81*c*, 81*d*, and

81*e*, the method shown, which, however, may be modified, is this: A block K, which may either be solid or boxed up, is screwed upon the plate A and cut to the outline of the upper half of the openings *c* in Fig. 81*a*. Upon the block is fitted the pattern parts, cut to correspond with that outside portion of the curved guide C which stands above the print K. The way in which this is made is rendered clear by the timber shading. The flanged end L is cut "plank way," to avoid short grain. The facing J for the cylinder is a separate turned piece skewered on. The oil cup D is screwed as a separate piece upon the guide, and has a print *d*. The underside of the bed is cored out, and M is the print. Being of large area, it is thin, ¾-inch only, and is dowelled on.



SECTION X–X

Fig. 81*b*.

The core boxes for the bed, shown in Figs. 81*g* to 81*i*, will now occupy our attention. The only intricate box in the lot is that which takes out the circular guide. This is shown in Fig. 81*g*. The total length *k* of the core made in this box is the same as the length *k* of the print K in Fig. 81*c*, and the width *k'* as that *k* of the print K in Fig. 81*c*. Its depth *k''* is not important, but is sufficient to give room for a thickness of timber above the upper and hollow part of the crown of the guide. The box is made with bottom board D, sides E E, and ends F F, the latter rebated into the sides.

A rather close examination and comparison of the figures will be necessary to make clear the relationships between it and the drawings of the bed casting, and of its pattern. The hollow part of the guide is formed of several sectional portions. Of these one moiety is put upon the bottom board; the other is carried with the battens *e e*, *m m*. The lower half of the parallel bored portion of the guide is formed by the piece *n*, the upper half by the piece *o*. The width of the pieces *n o* corresponds with the width *n* in Figs. 81*a* and 81*c*. The diameter *p* of the bore corresponds with the diameter *p* in Fig. 81*a*, with, of course, allowance for machining. The length *q* of the openings corresponds with the length *q* in Figs. 81*a* and 81*c*. The length *r* in Fig. 81*g* terminates the parallel portion of the guide, and the pieces *n o* at top and bottom terminate there for convenience sake. Comparing the blocks *s*, *t*, *u*, and *v* with the corresponding parts of Figs. 81*a* and 81*c*, particularly the plan view in these figures, their coincidence will be more clear than any laboured verbal description can make them. In the plan view of Fig. 81*g* the top blocks *u v* are removed, so that we are looking into the lower half of the box on the line x—x. The upper half *o* of the straight portion of the guide, with its battens *m m*, is, however, left in

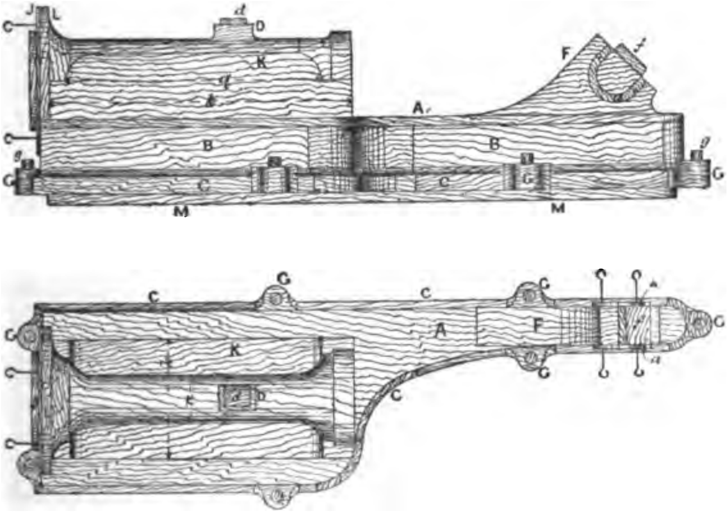
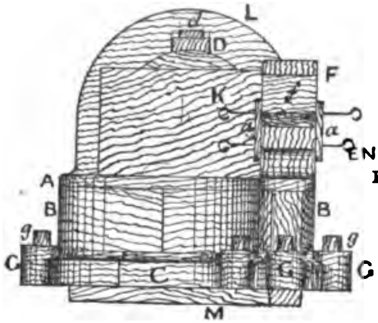
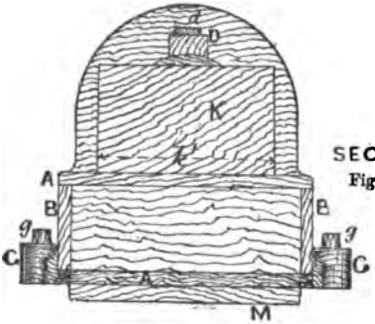


Fig. 81*c*.



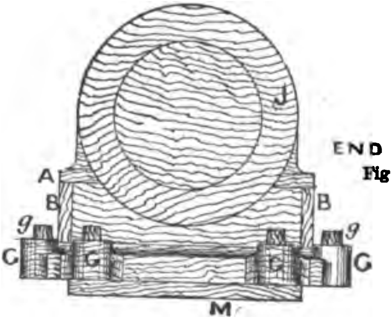
ENDVIEW
Fig. 81c.

Fig. 81d.



SECTION
Fig. 81c.

Fig. 81e.



END VIEW
Fig. 81c.

Fig. 81f.

position. One of the upper blocks *v*, removed, is seen at the top right hand corner. At *w* is seen the stuffing box, shown at E in Fig. 81*a*. It is provided with a print for coring out the stuffing box, which core is inserted in the main guide core. When this guide core is made and placed in the mould, it not only fills up the print K in Figs. 81*c*, 81*d*, and 81*e*, but also takes out the whole of the circular portion of the guide, the side openings *c c*, and the undercut portions *d d* in Fig. 81*b*.

The remainder of the core-box work is simple. Figs. 81*h* and 81*i* show the boxes used for coring out the underside of the bed. The cores are parted at the line *m* in Fig. 81*a*, and

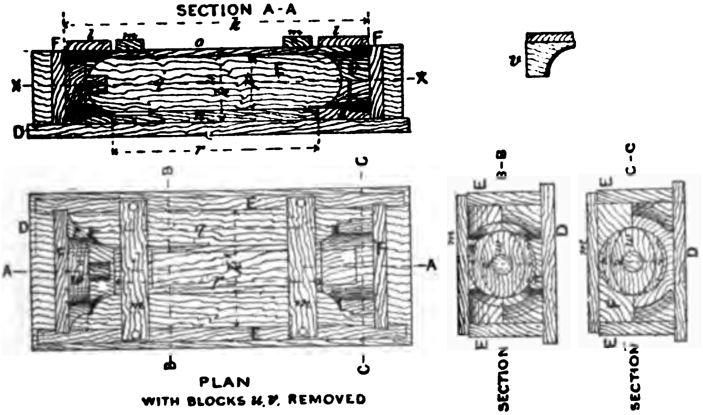


Fig. 81*g*.

their correspondence with the outlines seen dotted in plan and in section in Fig. 81*a* is so obvious as to need no comment. Sometimes the main core is made of the full length, and the lightening core for the bearing made separately; but this is of no consequence. I am showing these just as they occur in the example from which they are taken.

The conclusion of this chapter will be a fitting occasion to say a word or two upon the "buckling" of castings, and of the measures to be adopted in order to guard against the evil of castings coming out crooked when they ought to be straight. The moulder may, by judicious cooling, do much to minimise this evil; but the issue depends chiefly on the relative proportions given to the patterns. Yet proper proportions once attained, slight departures from these will so modify the conditions of regular cooling that it is very difficult, almost impossible, to lay down any reliable rules in these matters, or to say beforehand how much a casting in which the proportions of metal are unequally distributed will curve in cooling. The only

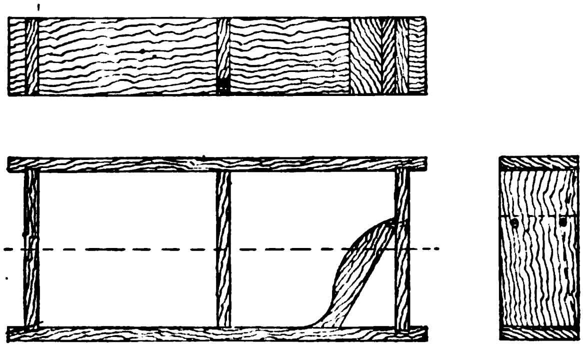


Fig. 81*h*.

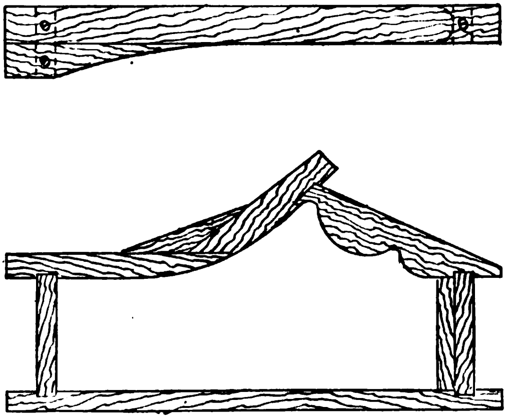


Fig. 81*i*.

useful guide in these things is that afforded by the constant habit of observation and a long experience. The engine bed in Fig. 78, p. 102, will certainly curve in cooling, so that if the pattern were made straight the plated portion of the casting would be hollow when cold. To what extent it would curve it would be impossible to say without previous experience. It may be ¼-inch, ⅜-inch, or ⅛-inch, according as the moulding and inner rib are thick enough to compensate in a greater or less degree for the larger extent of metal in the top plate, We therefore *round* the pattern to the same extent that we expect the casting to go *hollow*, and in the *opposite* direction.

Yet, although a long narrow bed will curve to a considerable extent, a broad plate made double for a pair of engines will be found to remain very much like the pattern. And the rule appears to hold good that the narrower the casting the more liable it is to warp. Breadth apparently gives rigidity, since on a long narrow casting a very slight excess of metal will cause a curve in the direction of that excess, while on a broad casting it would have no ill effect. Other conditions being equal also, a light casting will always "go" more than a heavy one, and will be influenced by slight modifications that would not affect the heavier one. The quality of metal, too, is not without its influence, hard iron being more liable to curve than the softer kinds. Every now and again, however, things crop up in foundry practice which appear to invalidate one's pet theories on this subject.

CHAPTER XIV.

FLYWHEELS.

Pattern Wheels.—Wheels struck up.—Wheels with Cast-iron Arms.—Striking the Core-bed.—Size of Cores.—Form of Core-box.—Laying Cores in position.—Top part of Mould.—Wheels with Wrought-iron Arms.—Sweeping up the Ring.—Core-box for the Arm Bosses.—Casting of Central Boss.

FLYWHEELS permit of very little variation in design. We may divide them into two classes—those with cast and those with wrought-iron arms. The former are the more rigid, the latter are the safer.

Except in the case of standard wheels made for engines which are a speciality, and which, therefore, require a repetition of castings all exactly alike, very few flywheels are made from patterns, but are struck up. If, however, we had to make a pattern for one of these standard wheels, or one for a small engine, we should proceed as follows:—

Build up the rim in courses of segments, as in the case of a toothed wheel (p. 18), and lock the arms together, according to directions also previously given (p. 25). When the rim is built up to half its full thickness *plus* half the thickness of an arm, turn its inner portion to the correct diameter, and notch out recesses to receive the ends of the arms. Glue these in, and above them glue on the remaining courses of segments. Then complete the turning of the rim, and work the arms to shape (Fig. 82). If the wheel were large it would be more convenient to work the arms before glueing them in place, leaving only the radii which merge into the rim to be finished in position. Suitable bosses will then be turned and screwed on the

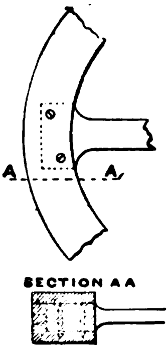


Fig. 82.

centre of the wheel, and the core print put on the centre of the boss which is in the down side of the mould.

But suppose we have to make a large wheel, ranging anywhere between 4 feet and 12 feet in diameter, without a pattern. We should proceed in this way. We should make a board chamfered like a loam board, and, like it, fastened to a centre bar (Fig. 83), to strike a ring of sand of the same diameter as the periphery of the wheel, the top edge of which ring would be struck off level by the board to form the joint for the top of the mould. The disc inclosed by this ring would be struck to a true plane of sand at a depth below the joint equal to the thickness of the wheel rim. During the process of striking, the sand forming the outside of the rim will break away and fall down to a certain extent. A sweeped piece, worked to the proper radius and depth, will therefore be necessary to mend this up smooth and sharp (Fig. 84).

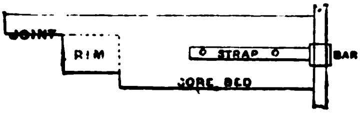


Fig. 83.

Fig. 84.

Further, if the flywheel be shallow, the striking board must be modified a little. From the inner diameter of the ring right away to the centre it must be cut deeper by 2 inches or 3 inches, thus recessing the bed below the edge of the rim by that amount (Fig. 83), where the core-bed is seen to be below the face of the rim. The object of this is to get sufficient depth of sand and grid room in the cores which are to form the arms. There should not be less than 1½ inch or 2 inches for sand, and 1 inch for grid allowed over the thickest part of the arm.

Two cores, placed face to face, make up an arm. They are jointed in the circular plane of the wheel, and extend from the inner diameter of the rim to the central boss. If, then, our bed were level with the edge of the rim, our core-box would be just half the depth of the rim. If the core-bed were sunk lower than that edge, the core-box would be thicker than half the depth of the rim by that amount.

The box must be sufficiently wide to give 3 inches or 4 inches in breadth of sand for radial jointing where the cores abut against each other around the boss. There should also be enough sand to include the radii or hollows where the arms sweep into the rim. It will be framed together in the usual fashion of rectangular core-boxes, with two sides (Fig. 85), having their two ends kept in position by shallow grooves. The end which represents the inner diameter of the wheel will be hollowed to the same sweep as that diameter. At the opposite or boss end, two symmetrically shaped joint blocks, *a*, *a*, will be fitted, including between them an angle of 60°, that being the angle which the cores will occupy in relation to each other in the mould for a six-armed wheel. On one edge of the box so made a bottom board will be dowelled.

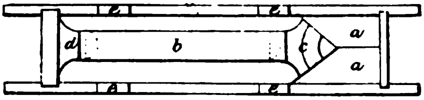


Fig. 85.

We have now our box in outline, requiring the arm to complete it. As the cores are to be jointed in the centre, both top and bottom cores must evidently be alike, and our arm will represent only a *half* section.

Prepare, therefore, three pieces of wood, representing respectively the straight portion of the arm, *b*, the sixth part of the boss, including the hollow by which it sweeps into the straight arm, *c*, and the sweep curving into the rim, *d*, each in half section. Dowel or screw these in the centre of the core-box and upon its bottom board. A sixth part also of the central core print may be put on the boss segment, if the box is deep enough to allow of this, or the core may be centred in the mould after the arm cores are laid in place. Notches, *e*, *e*, will be cut out on the top edges of the core-box to take the grids (Fig 86). A grid is a cast-iron frame of latticework, which the moulder uses for the same purpose as the bricks and plates in a loam mould, viz. to give rigidity to the core. Those portions of the grid which project beyond the core are in this case also used for the purpose of screwing the top and bottom cores together before casting.

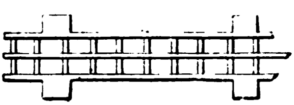


Fig 86.

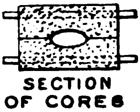


Fig. 87.

The cores, when made, are dried, blacked, jointed (Fig. 87).

and laid in the mould, as indicated by the dotted lines in Figs. 88, 89. There will then be open spaces, *a*, between each double core, which must be filled up to form that portion of the rim not already formed by the sweeped ends of the arm cores. These intervals may be filled up either by distinct cores, involving a box, or by a sweep, against which the moulder will ram green sand, similar to the one used for mending up the outer sand, but cut in the opposite way, viz. hollow, and of the same radius as that of the inner part of the rim.

Then there remains the top of the mould. This is struck by a board, and generally in loam—sometimes, however, in green sand, viz. ordinary moulding sand. If in loam, it is struck on a circular cast-iron plate, roughened over as usual to hold the loam; if in green sand, a top-part box will be used. If the cores are deeper than the rim, as in Figs. 83, 89, the board will be shouldered as in the bottom. This completes the wheel as far as the pattern-maker's work is concerned.

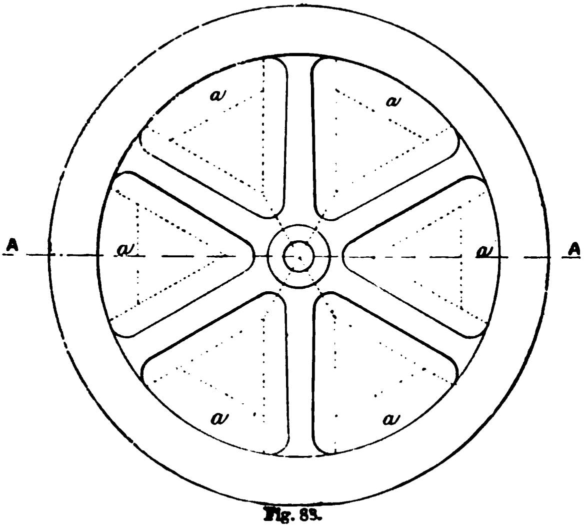


Fig. 88.

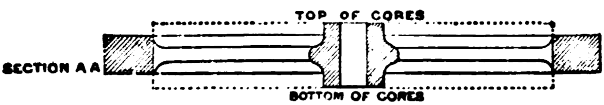


Fig. 89.

But in wheels running at high speeds, and especially in wheels badly proportioned, people have learned to distrust cast-iron, and though the massive rim is retained, it is in many cases considered preferable to make the arms of wrought-iron. In wheels made entirely of cast-iron the disproportion often existing between the heavy rim and the comparatively slight arms sets up initial strains within the casting at the time of cooling, which become a perpetual source of insecurity. Hence reason and experience have decided against the use of such wheels for quick-running and heavy machinery, and in favour of those with wrought-iron arms. The strength of these wrought-iron arms also must bear a proper relation to the momentum of the wheel, else they will twist off close to the boss, as I have seen in more than one instance.

To make such a wheel, quite a different mode of procedure must be adopted from that just described. In the first place we shall make the rim in another way, though still without a complete pattern. We shall have no board, but a sweep of exactly the same section as the wheel rim, and a foot or two longer (according to the size of the wheel) than the sixth part of its circumference (Fig. 90). Exactly one-sixth part of the inner circumference of the wheel (= its radius) will be marked on the inner edge of the sweep, and on the centres so marked prints and half bosses for the reception of the arms will be fastened (Figs. 90, 91).

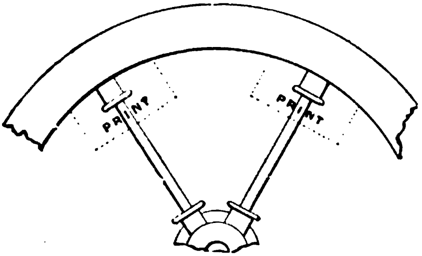


Fig. 90.

Fig. 91.

Then the sweep, with its bosses and prints, is rammed up in sand level with its top face, and withdrawn. It is then carried round exactly one-sixth of its circumference, and its right-hand print and boss is dropped into the impression just made by its left-hand print and boss. There the sweep is again rammed up, to be again withdrawn and removed, until the ring, with its six bosses and six prints, is completed. The reason why prints are used is obvious on a moment's consideration. The wheel being moulded in segments renders it impossible to ram up a top part in place, as in the case of a pattern, and, as a consequence, the only possible way of making the top half of the boss is by a core.

This core-box will consist of a rectangular frame, having one side sweeped to the inner curve of the rim, and a bottom board, on which will be fastened the half boss and print (Fig. 92, enlarged for distinctness). These must be exactly in the centre of the box, and of exactly the same shape and size as those which are fastened on the rectangular print; otherwise there will be overlapping of joints in the casting. In fact, it is usual to joint the two boss halves and turn them together; then, taking them apart, use one for the core-box, the other for the pattern. The print in the boss is of the same diameter as the wrought-iron arms, and that part of the arm which enters the boss is jagged or notched, in order that the cast-iron may embrace it the more securely.

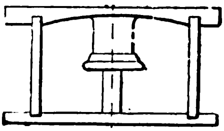


Fig. 92.

The mould for the rim having been completed, the arms are laid in the prints ready for their reception, the rectangular cores are laid over their ends (each in its print), and the entire ring is covered with a flat surface of loam or green sand. The rim is then cast and allowed to cool. When cool, but *not quite cold*, the boss will be cast on the opposite or central ends of the arms, which also will be jagged to prevent possible loosening.

The reason why the boss is cast on after the ring has cooled is that the contraction of the ring in cooling is so largely in excess of that of the boss, that the rigidity of the latter, supposing it were cast at the same time with the ring, by preventing the arms from coming inwards, would infallibly either bend the arms or fracture the rim. Hence the boss is always cast when the rim has nearly, but not quite, done contracting, there being, of course, a slight amount of shrinkage on the boss.

A complete pattern boss is wanted, jointed in the centre of the arm bosses in a direction parallel with the plane of the wheel. The boss mould also is made in halves, and usually dried.

CHAPTER XV.

STRAP PULLEYS—METAL PATTERNS.

Curving of Pulley Arms.—Necessity of due Proportioning of Parts.—Rim.—Arms.—Boss.—Wood Patterns.—Iron Patterns: (I.) Made by Board and Core-box; (II.) By Sweep and Arm; (III.) By Ring and Set of Arms.—Split Pulleys.—Metal Patterns.—Why used.—Their Preparation.—Range of their Utility.

THE arms of pulleys, or of riggers (Fig. 93) as they are sometimes called, are usually curved, except in the case of those of very small diameter. This curving is considered essential in these light castings, lest the shrinkage of the boss, which remains hot longest after casting, should tear the too rigid arms asunder, either in the mould or at some subsequent period. Straight arms would be unyielding, while curved ones are somewhat analogous in character to a bent spring. For the same reason also the greatest care is necessary in properly proportioning the metal in the different parts—the boss, arms, and rim. To reduce the metal in the boss is the great essential. A heavy boss will infallibly break either the arm or the rim. If the rim is very rigid the arm will break, while if the arm be too strong the rim will break. In either case the mischief is due to the internal tension or stress set up through the contraction of the boss continuing after the rim and arms have cooled down and set. Hence, let the pulley be so proportioned that the boss shall contract very little after the other parts have cooled—so little that the moulder can counteract that small excess by opening the mould around it and allowing it to cool while the rim and arms still remain covered. Make the boss as light as possible consistently with safe working, and give the necessary strength for keying by adding a keyway boss (Fig. 93, *a*).

In proportioning pulleys, let the rim be from $\frac{3}{16}$ inch thick in small riggers to $\frac{1}{4}$ inch or $\frac{5}{16}$ inch in large ones, when turned. For pulleys running at a high speed give $\frac{1}{8}$ inch or $\frac{3}{16}$ inch rounding per foot width of surface; for those running at slow speeds, say, $\frac{3}{8}$ inch of rounding per foot. This rounding must be omitted in the pattern, except where it happens to be parted in the centre, care being taken, however, to allow sufficient thickness of rim to permit of the casting being turned to this extent in the machine shop.

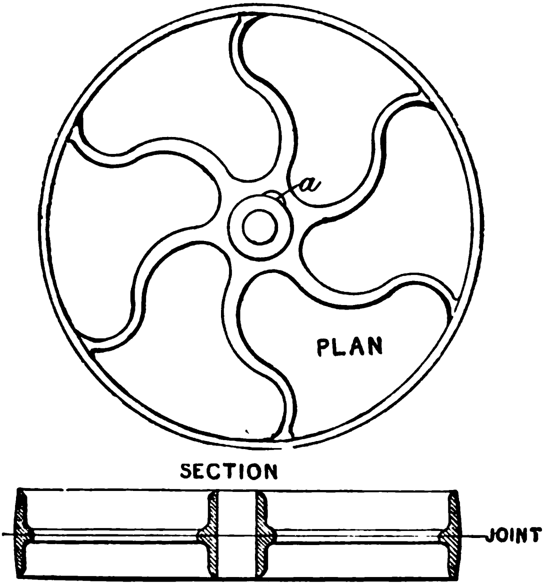


Fig. 98.

For the curves of the pulley arms set rules could be given; but for my part I prefer simply to line out roughly with a pencil an arm which has a graceful appearance, and then adapt radii to it. In giving to the arms their *cross sections* a trained eye is almost or quite as safe as rules; but in the absence of experience the following rule gives correct results for pulleys doing ordinary work:—

$$\sqrt[3]{b} = \frac{d \times w}{n \times 8}$$

where b = breadth of arm at point.
d = diam. of pulley in inches.
w = breadth of rim in inches,
n = number of arms.

Thus a pulley 4 feet in diameter by 9 inches wide, having six arms, would have an arm 2 inches wide at the point. Near the boss the arm should be one-third wider than it is at the rim. Its section should be elliptical, and its thickness equal to half its width. If made thinner, the strength must be made up by cross ribs running down its centre (Fig 94).

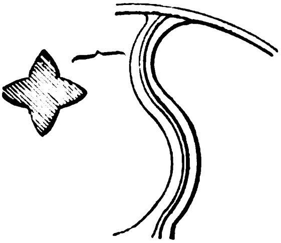


Fig. 94.

The thickness of metal around the hole or eye is variable, depending upon the size of the shaft and the diameter of the rigger. A rigger on a small shaft will require less metal than the same rigger on a large shaft, because the torsional strain is less in the former case than in the latter. A large rigger will require more metal than a small one, because both torsional and centrifugal force will be greater in the case of the large than of the small one. Up to 2 inches or 3 inches in bore the boss is generally made twice the diameter of the shaft; over 2 inches or 3 inches a less ratio obtains. Practical men usually judge by the eye in proportioning a boss. A formula which gives a good boss is this:—

$$D + d + 5 = t$$

Where D = diam. of pulley in feet,
d = diam. of shaft in inches,
t = thickness in metal in boss in *eighths of an inch.*

The length of boss may be two-thirds the breadth of pulley, except in the case of fast-and-loose pulleys, where they should be a trifle longer than the breadth of rim, $\frac{1}{8}$ inch or thereabout. The keyway boss should be as thick as the depth of keyway, and embrace one-sixth of the circumference of the main boss.

Small strap pulleys are sometimes made from a complete pattern of hard wood, in which the rim is built up in segments, and the arms let in when the building-up process has reached to the centre. Owing, however, to the extreme lightness of these pulleys, wooden patterns are too flimsy and fragile for those of larger diameter or those intended for repeated use. Hence in usual practice we discard wooden patterns, and resort to as many as three other different methods of making pulley castings. The first and least commendable method is that described in connection with the flywheel with cast-iron arms in the previous chapter, viz. that in which a board and core-box is used. Except for a makeshift and temporary job this is not to be recommended, not even for large pulleys, much less for those of moderate size. An iron pattern is far preferable, and is essential where there is a repetition of castings.

The iron pattern itself will be made either from a rough wooden pattern, just strong enough to hold together for the one moulding, or from a previously existing casting, or it may be struck up. If deep, it ought to be jointed in the centre of the arms, to afford better facilities for moulding (Fig. 93, section). An iron pattern in halves can be made very readily thus: a sweep, half the total depth of the rim, can be worked round to form the ring, and a single arm and boss, jointed down its centre, can be rammed up six successive times to form the six arms of the pulley. Two separate halves can be made in this manner, and be jointed afterwards to form a complete pattern. A pattern thus made must be dowelled, turned, and filed in the fitting-shop, and then varnished or beeswaxed, warm, before it is ready for the foundry. This is somewhat costly, but the first expense over it is, accidents excepted, imperishable, and free from the defects to which wooden patterns are liable, as warping, shrinking, and such like.

A third method is to have an iron pattern still, but in a modified fashion. There will be an iron ring (Fig. 95) representing the pulley rim, turned inside and outside, but wide enough to embrace the widest pulley that may reasonably be expected to occur—say 12 inches to 15 inches. This will be made from a sweep in the first place. Also a complete set of arms distinct from the rim, with a hole in their centre for the reception of separate bosses of any required diameter (Fig. 96). The advantage of this latter method is that pulleys may be made off such a pattern of different widths, and with bosses varying in size to suit different-sized shafts.

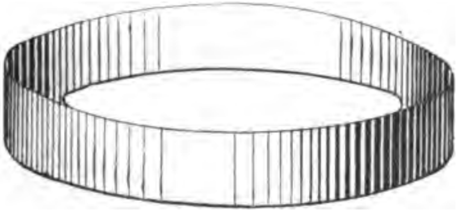


Fig. 95.

These, of course, are expensive, but are everlasting, and extremely convenient for making pulleys of variable widths and bores. The inconvenience caused by the absence of a joint is got over by the moulder thus: He does not ram up the top box over the rim and arms, as in an ordinary pattern; but using the rim and arms as a *core-box*, makes and lifts away two cores, top and bottom, to be replaced after the outside of the rim is rammed up. The necessary depth of rim is given by a strickle working down from the top edge of the rim.

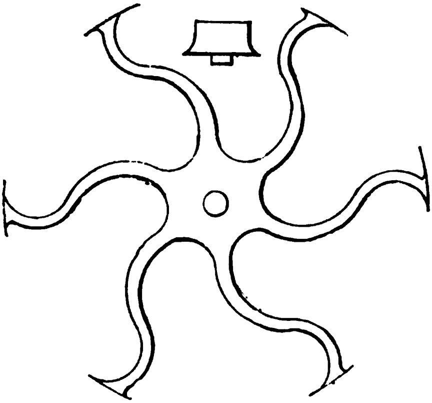


Fig. 96.

Pulleys are often split for the same reasons that cog-wheels are split, when they are to occupy some intermediate portion of a shaft (Fig. 97). The same process is adopted as in cogwheels (Chapter VII., p. 57), blocks and prints and splitting plate pattern being required. The curving of the arms gives a rather unsightly appearance to the lugs on the boss, but it cannot be avoided, and is a matter of no real consequence.

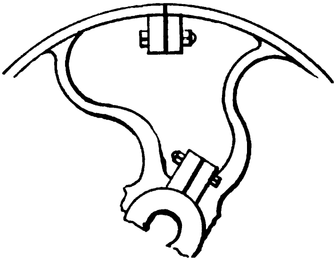


Fig. 97.

Metal Patterns.—A few remarks on these, suggested by the subject now discussed, may fitly close this section. Patterns are very often made of metal. They are so made when, from the flimsy character of the work, a wood pattern would get out of shape or become broken to pieces, or where the number of castings required is so great that a wooden pattern would not last long enough to mould the total quantity. In the former category may be classed all kinds of light and ornamental work; in the latter, almost anything of moderate weight.

If we make a pattern of wood from which to mould a metal pattern, we do not bestow anything like that amount of labour upon it which we should devote to one for standard use. We should neither build it up with a view to strength and durability, nor should we finish it so neatly. It will be made so that it might be moulded once, after which it is useless. But we bestow all our care on the metal pattern. We should turn it where circular, and plane, or file, or grind portions which could not be turned. If made of brass, nothing further is requisite; but if of iron it must be coated with some preservative against rust. Warm the metal and rub it over with a rag dipped in melted beeswax. This forms a glossy skin, and allows the metal to leave the sand readily; or varnishing with shellac varnish also answers very well. But to insure the adherence of the varnish on bright work it is necessary to rust the metal first. Wet it with a solution of salammoniac, allow it to dry, then glasspaper and varnish.

In making a wood pattern for a metal one *double* contraction must be allowed, since there will be the contraction of the metal pattern itself besides that of the casting to be allowed for.

The use of metal for patterns is not, however, restricted to iron and brass. Sometimes we want a curved casting, and various reasons would concur to render the working of wood patterns unadvisable—the attendant expense, the weakness of cross grain, the difficulty of marking out, and such like. Then we make a straight wooden pattern, cast it in lead, and bend it to shape afterwards. From this a more rigid iron pattern can be made if required.

Lastly, wood patterns will often have metal parts. Thus the bearing faces for the shoulders of brasses when skewered on are usually made in metal, since in wood they would become broken in consequence of their fragility. The letters for name-plates also are cast in metal and fastened to a wood plate, and we shall find as we go along many cases in which the pattern-maker resorts to the use of metal as being preferable to that of wood.

Figs. 97*a* and 97*b* illustrate the casting of a common road wheel with strutted arms of wrought-iron cast in rim and

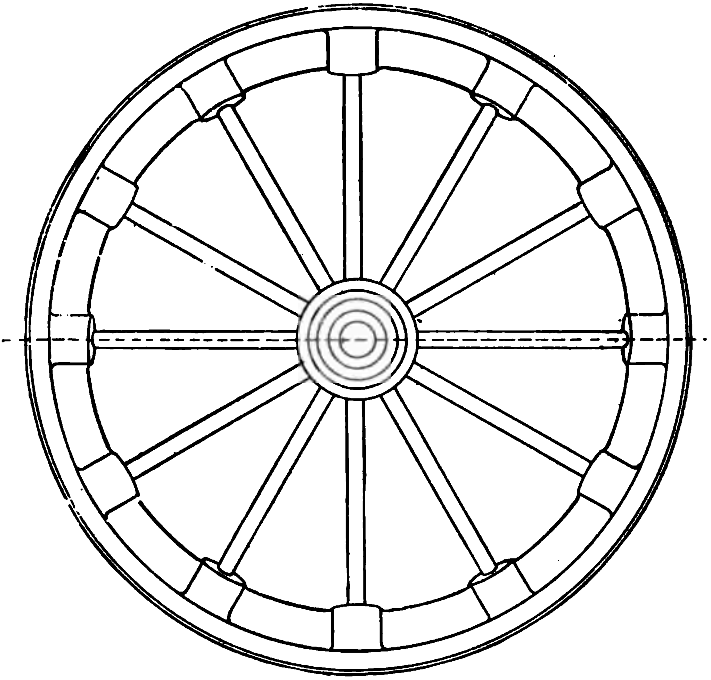


Fig. 97*a*.

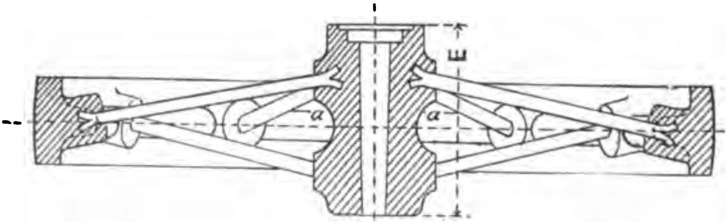
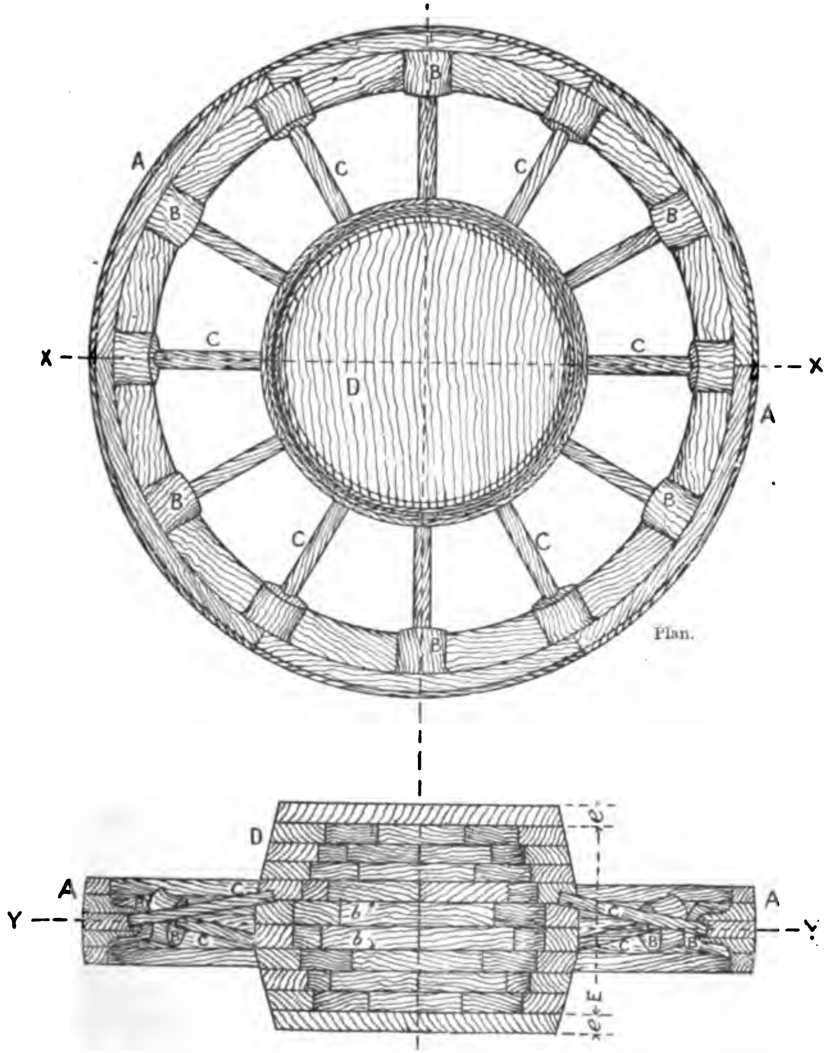


Fig. 97*b*.

boss, as used for various kinds of stationary engines mounted on carriages for convenience of transit. Such wheels

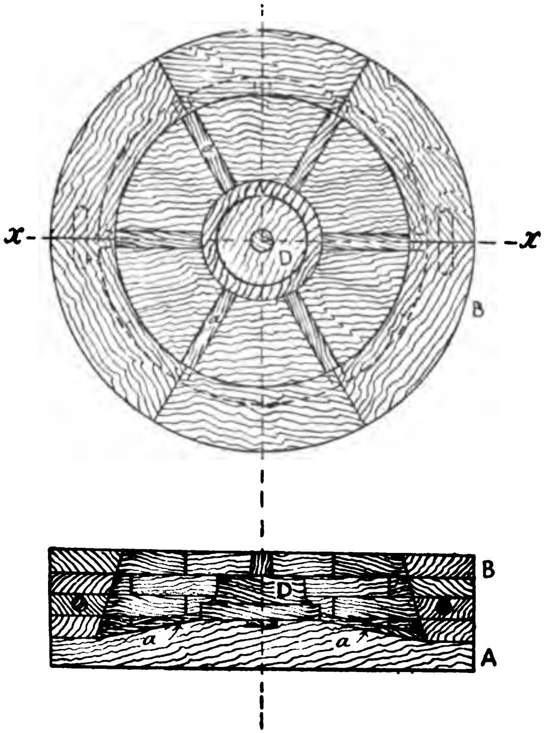


Plan.

Cross Section x x.

Fig. 97c.

are light, strong, and elastic, and although the work for a single wheel would be rather costly, they are not expensive when the pattern-work is once done, and the castings made in quantity for stock and standard types of engines. I will go through the pattern and core-box work involved.



Section x—x.
Fig. 97*d*.

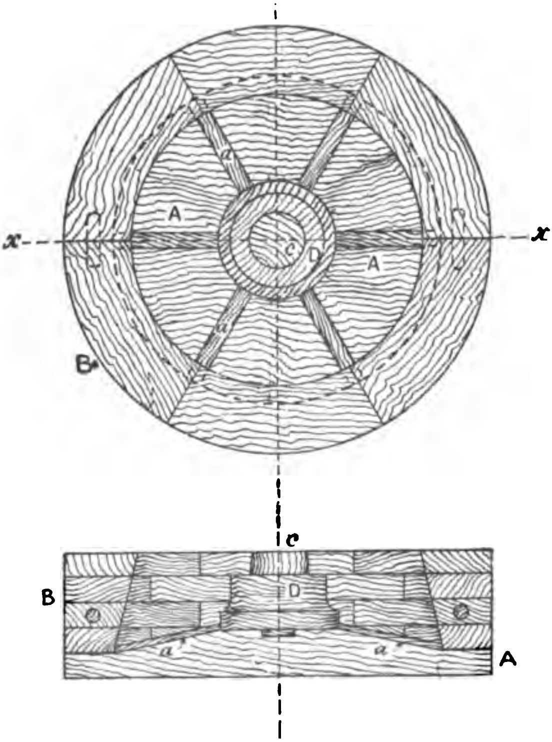
Such a wheel can be made with, or without, a complete pattern, dependent on size and on number required off. We will take the case of a complete pattern.

Fig. 97*c* shows the pattern in plan, and cross-section. The rim A is built up with rows of segments, the number of rows depending on the depth of the rim—in this case the rim is 3½ inches deep, and there are five courses of segments. The bosses, B, are fixed at the same bevel as the arms. They are turned entire, and recessed to fit over the internal rib at their proper angles, as shown in cross-section B in Fig. 97*c*.

All this is simple enough; but the reason why I have selected this wheel as an example of pattern-work is because of the method of formation of the central boss and the strutting of the spokes or arms. If the boss were straight instead of being recessed, as in Fig. 97*b*, *a a*, it would be practicable, though a little troublesome, to insert the actual pattern boss itself in the centre of the wheel pattern, connected therewith by means of the prints C in Fig. 97*c* for the spokes. Then sloping zigzag joints would be made by the moulder, reaching from arm to arm, and the boss would deliver half in the top and half in the bottom part of the mould. But the recessed shape of the boss at *a a* in Fig. 97*b* precludes the possibility of doing this; hence we form the whole of the boss with cores—a method both neat and accurate. The diameter of the cores is of little importance so long as there is sufficient length of prints available for the arms to lay in. Fig. 97*c* shows a suitable proportion of print D. Note that its top and bottom faces coincide not with the top and bottom faces of the boss, but with the faces of the prints for carrying the central core or the central chill, if the wheels are to be chilled. The distance E in Fig. 97*c* coincides with the distance E in Fig. 97*b*, and the remaining thicknesses, *e e*, are print thicknesses. This is to facilitate the pouring of the boss. Observe, too, that there is ample taper given to the outside of the print, in order to prevent pulling down of the mould or crushing by the core. The print is built up in segments as shown. It is made in two portions, jointed along the plane Y Y, and then screwed together permanently.

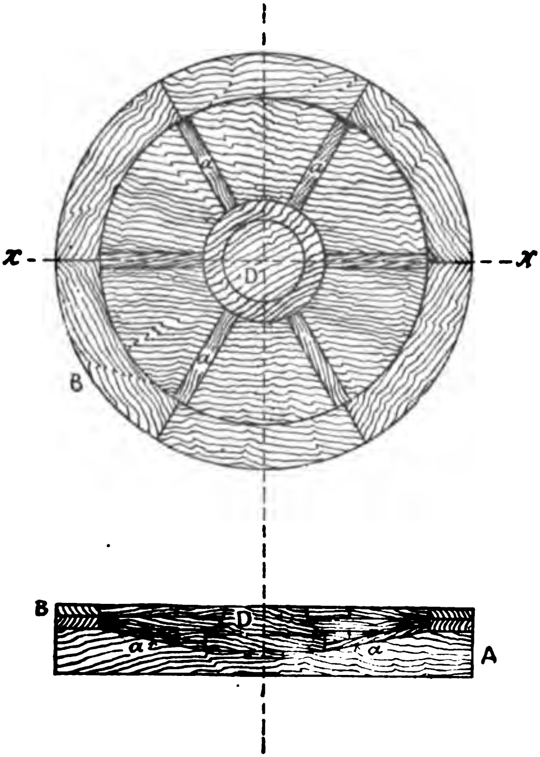
The holes for the spoke prints, C, are bored at the required angle with a centre-bit in the bosses, B, around the rim. In the central boss, D, they are cut with a gouge or else bored with a bit. But in either case it is necessary to make temporary screwed joints in the planes *b b*—that is, the joints of the segments there will not be glued until after the arm prints are put into place. They are inserted and glued with the joints separated, and then the joints are glued, and the whole boss is a solid structure inclosing the arm prints at their proper angles. All other details of construction, arrangement of grain, &c., are clearly shown by the shading.

There are three core-boxes, shown in Figs. 97*d*—97*f*. Fig. 97*d* is for the bottom core, Fig. 97*e* for the top core, and Fig. 97*f* for the two middle cores, the last two being jointed face to face along the middle plane of the boss. It will be noted that in each case the core-box consists of a bottom board, A, dished to correspond with the amount of strutting given to the spokes, and carrying as much of the central boss as belongs to the core, and half-prints, *a*, for the arms. Also that the bottom board carries a ring, B, the internal diameter



Section x—x.
Fig. 97*e*.

and sectional shape of which correspond with the external diameter and sectional shape of the corresponding portion of the print into which the core has to fit. A comparison of Figs. 97*d*—97*f* with Fig. 97*c*, will render these correspondences



Section x—x.
Fig. 97*f*.

clear. The rings in Figs. 97*d* and 97*e* are dowelled to the bottom board, and jointed across the diameter, in order to permit the boss to be drawn away from the cores without any risk of breaking down, which would happen if the rings were undivided. In Fig. 97*f*, however, the rim is so shallow that it is fastened to the bottom board.

CHAPTER XVI.

MISCELLANEOUS ENGINE WORK.

Eccentric Sheaves.—Straps.—Slide-valves.—Guides.—Cross-heads.

BEYOND the cylinder pattern, the pattern of its bed, and the flywheel, there is nothing in engine work difficult or intricate from the pattern-maker's point of view. Hence we shall run rapidly through the only items that call for remark in connection with an ordinary engine, comprising them in the compass of a single chapter.

Double eccentric sheaves, forward and backward, are cast together. The pattern itself consists simply of two plain discs dowelled together, the grooves being turned out in the casting. But the dowelling together of the discs requires care. Proceed thus:—Say we have an engine with ⅜-inch lap, $\frac{1}{16}$-lead, and 2¼-inches throw of sheave. Strike a circle 2¼ inches diameter on the centre of the crank shaft, and draw a line through its centre (Fig. 98). At a distance away from this line = $\frac{7}{16}$ = lap and lead, and parallel with it draw another line. The two points where this second line cuts the 2¼-inch circle will be the centres of the two sheaves, forward and back-

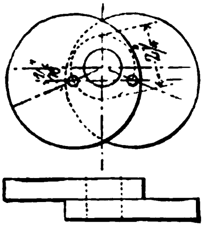


Fig. 98.

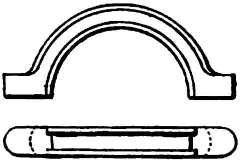


Fig. 99

ward respectively. Strike the circles representing their diameters; lay one disc upon the drawing on its proper circle, and dowel the other upon it perpendicularly over its circle, adjusting it with set square. Put the print for the shaft-hole on the pattern for one pair of sheaves first, say the right hand. Cast one off, then remove the print to the other centre for the left-hand pair.

As small eccentric straps (Fig. 99) are usually made in gunmetal, the grooves in many instances are cut out in the pattern. The neatest way to get out the inside of the strap with its grooves is to turn it; but as an allowance for facing is given in the joint, which makes the pattern $\frac{1}{16}$ inch more than a half circle, the straps are turned a half at a time, a false block being screwed on the face plate to complete the circle—its face standing $\frac{1}{16}$ inch back from the centre line—while the two half straps are being turned in succession. The outside portion, with its lugs for bolting together, is worked by hand, away from the lathe. The lug or facing for eccentric-rod, and the oil-cup boss (not shown) are put on separately. Straps are moulded at pleasure either on their sides or edges, the latter giving, as a rule, the cleanest metal.

Slide-valves of the D-shaped type are those most commonly used. Ordinary valves are too simple to cause any trouble to the pattern-maker, accuracy being the important condition.

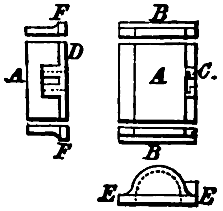


Fig. 100.

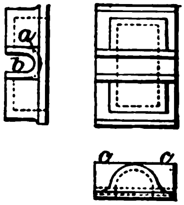
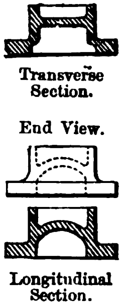


Fig. 101.

The usual D-shaped valve, as the type of the class, is the only one therefore that calls for special notice. A glance at the sketch (Fig. 100) will indicate the way in which it is made. The block (Fig. 100, A) forming the inner portion of the valve is planed to width, and marked out and worked through with gouge and chisel. The sides, B, B, are also worked to shape and then fastened to the block. The piece, C, for the reception of the valve-rod head is fastened in place, and a print for the nut core bradded on. An allowance of ⅛ inch is made on the face D for planing, and the same at ends, E, E, for accurate cut-off: a similar allowance also at sides, F, F, for close fitting into the steam-chest.

A D-valve, like Fig. 101, is made in a similar way, except that, after the D shape is worked, a half-round piece, *a*, is glued within, and when dry the recess, *b*, for the valve-rod is worked on the outside, the pieces, *c*, *c*, being fitted and glued round the curve to form the flat edges and ends of the groove.

A valve, like Fig. 102, is made in three pieces, as in the first instance, or cut out of a solid piece of stuff; but the outside, instead of being worked half-round, is partly turned and partly dressed off by hand. Allowance for turning is made also where the eye of the valve-rod slips over.


Transverse Section.

End View.

Longitudinal Section.

Fig. 102.

Figs. 102*a*—102*e*, illustrate the casting of a double-ported slide valve. Here J J are the outer steam ports, communicating with the exhaust arch K; L L are the inner steam ports, opening on the sides of the valve. In Figs. 102*c*—102*e*, M is the hole for the valve rod, made of elliptic form, to allow of free fitting as the valve face wears down; N N are the guide blocks, which slide against the steam-chest covers. The design and construction of this type of valve is so well known and so clear from the figures, that we may at once proceed to the description of the pattern work.

The pattern itself is shown in Fig. 102*f*. Here A is the body, B the flange, C the prints for the inner and outer steam ports, D the print for the exhaust arch, and E the prints for the oval hole for the valve rod. The pattern moulds with face B downwards to ensure sound metal there, and the prints E, are skewered loosely on. The skewering on of these requires that a joint be made in the mould along the line F F; but there is an advantage as regards the placing the cores in the mould in this method, otherwise the prints E would have been of the pocket form.

There are three core-boxes wanted for this valve, one (Fig. 102*g*) for the outer steam ports J, and the exhaust arch K, in Figs. 102*a*—102*d*; another box (Fig. 102*h*) for the inner steam ports L, in Figs. 102*a*—102*e*; and the third (Fig. 102*i*) for coring out the hole M for the valve rod, in Figs. 102*a*—102*c*.

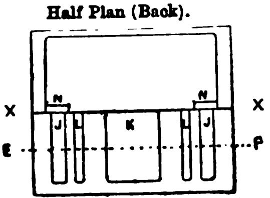


Fig. 102a. Half Plan (Face).

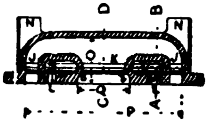


Fig. 102b. Section E E.

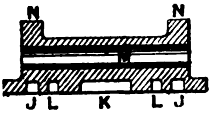


Fig. 102c. Section X X.

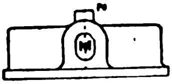


Fig. 102d. End View.

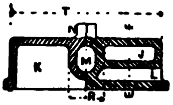


Fig. 102e. Half Sec. CD.
Half Sec. A B.

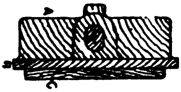


Fig. 102f. End View.

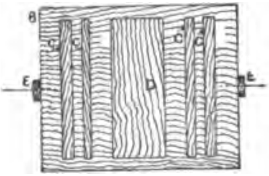


Fig 102f. Plan of Face.

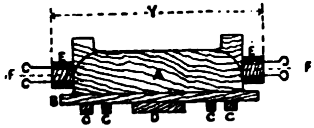


Fig. 102f. Side View.

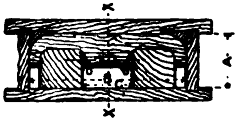


Fig. 102g. End View.

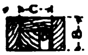


Fig. 102h. Sec. X X.

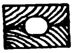


Fig. 102i.

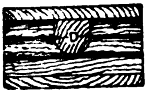


Fig. 102g. Sec. X X.

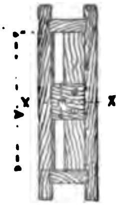


Fig. 102h.
Plan.

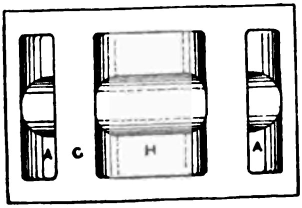


Fig. 102k. Plan of Face.

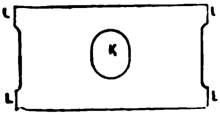


Fig. 102l. End View.

In Fig. 102*g*, the distance A corresponds with the distance O in Fig. 102*b*, plus the print thickness C in Fig. 102*f*; and the length B in Fig. 102*g* corresponds with the length P in Fig. 102*b*; and the distance C in Fig. 102*g*, with the distance Q in Fig. 102*b*. The width of the piece D in Fig. 102*b* is equal to the width R in Fig. 102*e*, and, of course, forms the metal around the cored hole M for the valve rod. In this box everything delivers except the pieces D, which form the extensions at S, in Fig. 102*b*, and these are therefore skewered on. The other portions are fastened to the outsides, and draw directly with them.

The box (Fig. 102*h*) which forms the inner ports L (Figs. 102*a*—102*e*) extends in its length A to the width T in Fig. 102*e*, cutting through the valve sides to give inlet to the steam from the steam chest. The depth B of this box extends to the depth U in Fig. 102*b*, plus the print thickness C in Fig. 102*f*; and the width of the portion C in the box is equal to the width V in Fig. 102*b*. The edge D of the bridge piece E in Fig. 102*h* corresponds with the edge W in Fig. 102*b*, and its width E with the width R in Fig. 102*e*. It will be observed that there is no provision in this box for the formation of the curves seen in Fig. 102*b*. As is often the case, these are left to be rubbed off the core after it is dried.

The section of the box (Fig. 102*i*) for the formation of the valve-rod hole M is a plain ellipse, and its length is equal to the length Y in Fig. 102*f*, and it is jointed and dowelled longitudinally.

An example of a main-slide valve—that is, one in which expansive working is provided for by means of a cut-off valve sliding on its back face—is shown in Figs. 102*i*—102*o*, and the pattern work in the figures following.

In Figs. 102*k*—102*o*, A A are the steam passages passing through the valve from the back B to the face G; H is the exhaust arch, J the lightening recess, K the hole for the valve rod, L facing guide strips, sliding against similar strips within the steam chest.

The pattern, Fig. 102*p*, is a plain rectangular block, with facing strips A B, upon the sides, the lower ones B, being skewered on. There are prints B B in this case, of the pocket form for the valve-rod hole; and also prints C D both at top and bottom, for the steam-passage cores. Prints are put upon the top, as well as upon the bottom, because the exact position of the ports is of great importance; and in the absence of the top prints the cores would be liable to tip out

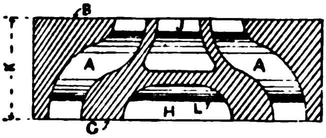


Fig. 102n. Section E E.

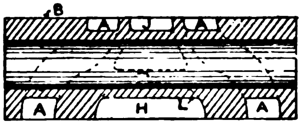


Fig. 102o. Section C D.

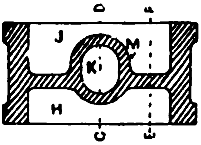


Fig. 102m. Section A B.

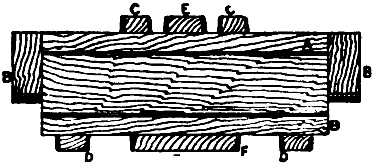


Fig. 102p. Side View.

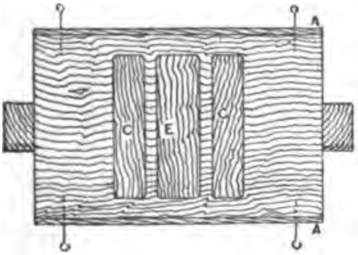


Fig. 102p. Plan.

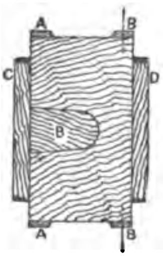


Fig. 102p. End View

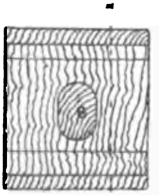


Fig. 102q. End View.

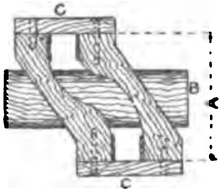


Fig. 102q. Section X X.

of truth, one way or the other. Prints are not as a rule used in the top of a mould if they can be avoided, because there is always a risk of the sand in the top becoming more or less crushed thereby. There are prints E for the lightening recess, and F for the exhaust arch.

Fig. 102*q* is the steam-passage core box. Its width A equals the width K in Fig. 102*n*, plus the thickness of the prints C D in Fig. 102*p*. The block B, which is slid through holes cut in the sides of the box, forms the metal around the hole for the valve rod, and corresponds in size and section with the portion marked M in Fig. 102*m*. When the core is made the block is drawn out endways, the sides C C unscrewed, and taken away from the core.

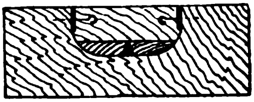


Fig. 102*r*. Section X X.

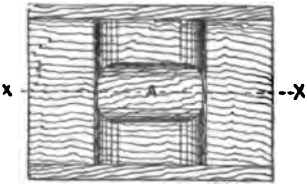


Fig. 102*r*. Plan.

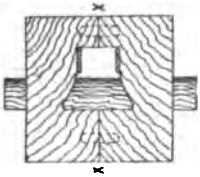


Fig. 102*s*. End View.

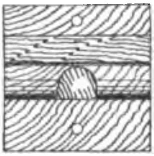


Fig. 102*s*. Joint Face X X.

The box (Fig. 102*r*) forms the arch of the valve, and the block A forms that portion of the metal seen at L in Figs. 102*n* and 102*o*. The chipping strips for the cut-off edges are necessarily skewered on.

The box (Fig. 102*s*) cores out the recess J in the back of the valve (Figs. 102*n*, 102*o*), and has its block also, to form the necessary metal around the valve-rod hole.

The box for the valve-rod hole, of elliptic form, is similar to that shown in Fig. 102*i*.

An ordinary steam-chest calls for no special remark, and of a double-flanged one it is sufficient to note that the bottom flange must be left loose from the body. Patterns also for plain, flat guide-bars are made just like their castings, so we say nothing about them. Instead, however, of the old guide-bars, circular guides, bored to receive a circular cross-head, are coming into common use. They are cast in a piece with the cylinder cover, have a massive appearance, require little

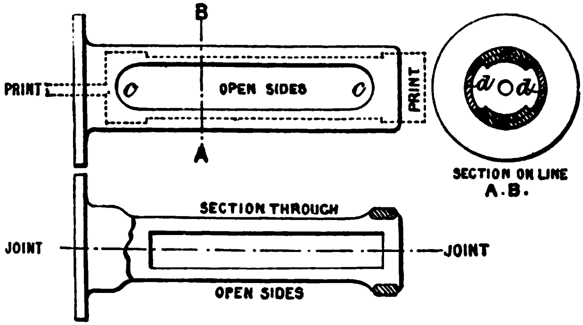


Fig. 103.

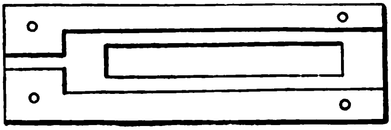


Fig. 104.

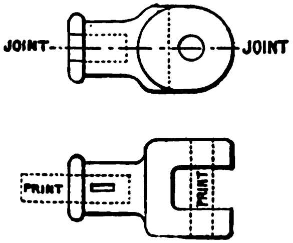


Fig. 105.

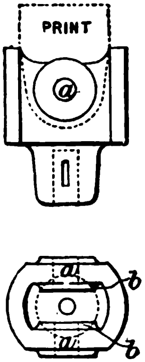


Fig. 106.

fitting, and owing to the large extent of surface over which the friction of the cross-head is distributed, wear for a very long time.

The pattern is made in halves, jointed longitudinally (Fig. 103), and has a print at each end. The open parts of the guide (Fig. 103, c c) are cut on the pattern as far inward as the diameter which corresponds with the body core of the guide (Fig. 103), section, *d*, *d*.

For the core, a box is necessary, owing to the existence of the facings, *e*, *e*, for the cross-head, which will not allow of its being struck up. The box is dowelled in halves, and worked with templets. Fig. 104 shows one half, looking into it from the joint.

The cross-head, or head of the piston-rod, is of the shape indicated in Fig. 105, when flat guides are used, and like Fig. 106 when it works in a circular guide. In the former case the pattern would be jointed and cut out to the shape of the casting, the holes, if large, being cored, with a parallel print bridging over between the sides. In the latter form (Fig. 106) the inside is taken out with a core, the pattern moulding either on its side or on its end, and requiring no joint. In either case the core-box will be jointed longitudinally, and the holes, *a*, *a*, will be cut out in top and bottom boards dowelled on the box body, which boards will also carry the top and bottom facing bosses, *b*, *b*.

Cranks, brasses, pistons and their rings, slipper blocks, governor castings, except when there is something special in their construction, are too simple to need description from the pattern-maker's point of view; so with this chapter we close our remarks on engine work and pass to other subjects.

CHAPTER XVII.

SHEAVE-WHEELS.

Modified Provisions for the Reception of the Chain.—Patterns.—Mode of Jointing.—Built-up Patterns.—Templets.—Sheave-wheels with Cast Arms.—With Wrought-iron Arms.—Core-box for Rim-cores.—Central Boss.—Sheave-wheels made entirely with Cores.—Their Boxes.—Recessed Chain-wheels.—Rope-wheels.—Wave-wheels.—Projection of the "Wave."—Sprocket-wheels.—Wrought and Cast Fingers.

A SHEAVE-WHEEL is a wheel with a rim grooved or hollowed out for the reception of a chain or rope. We take the chain-wheels first in order.

In a plain sheave the chain lies in its groove in the direction shown in Fig. 107. But a chain when in motion is always apt to twist, and when, as in hoisting machinery, a heavy load is directly dependent from it, a sudden return to its normal position will be accompanied by a jerk, and, as a consequence, a considerable extra strain will be put upon it at once. Hence it is customary where the wheel is immediately over the load dependent from the chain, and not merely acting as a carrier or support, to use, instead of a smooth sheave, one grooved out, so that the chain links may lie successively parallel with, and at right-angles to, its axis (Fig. 108). Further, in the differential pulley-block, and in all cases where the wheel has to draw the chain along, the friction of the simple groove would not be sufficient to overcome the resistance of the

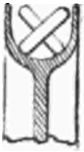


Fig. 107.

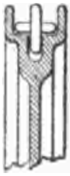


Fig. 108.

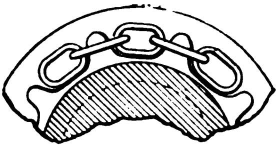


Fig. 109.

load, and then the wheel is recessed at regular intervals to receive the alternating flat links (Fig. 109).

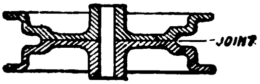


Fig. 110.

These wheels, if small, will have plated centres (Fig. 110); if moderately large, cast-iron arms with transverse ribs (Fig. 111); if very large, wrought-iron arms, which will be usually strutted (Fig. 112).

If a whole pattern—that is, one not cored out round the rim—be made for a sheave-wheel, it must be jointed in the centre, because the groove for the chain will have to be lifted away as a middle ring of sand. Whether it be a wheel with arms, or one solid plated, the joint may be made

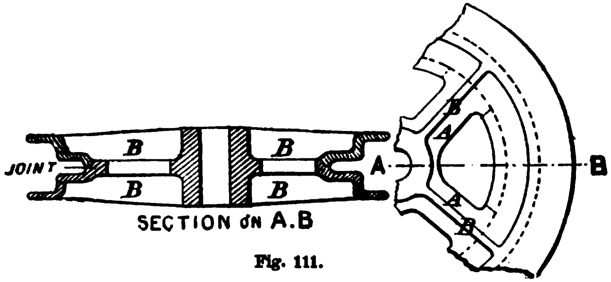


Fig. 111.

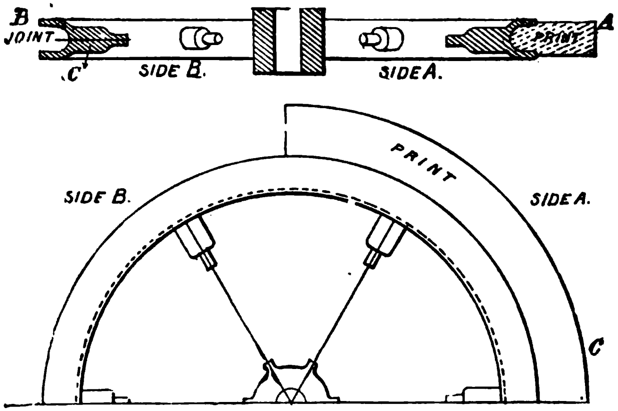


Fig. 112.

either through the exact centre of the arms or of the plate (Fig. 110), or along their upper faces (Fig. 111), the ring alone in the upper portion being left loose. When, however, the rim is *cored* out, both rim and arms (or plate) and circular print are all made fast together (Fig. 112, side A).

Sheave-wheels are used generally as standard patterns, therefore it is well to take especial care in their construction. Glue them up in courses of segments, using thin stuff—say ¼-inch or ⅜-inch—and good glue. Also peg each course with small pegs. Never mind about the pegs coming through here and there. If the wheel is plated, have at least two courses of segments in the plate, unless it be small—say less than a foot in diameter, in which case a piece of very dry solid stuff will do.

The wheel, when glued up, must be turned with templets made from the sectional drawing. Fig. 113 shows the half-pattern in section, and the method of cutting the templets for its inner and outer portions respectively. The centre hole for the studs of the bosses will serve for rechucking the pattern when one face has been turned. We prefer having a central stud hole for the reception of separate bosses, to making the bosses an integral part of the pattern, because we can then use the pulley for different sized shafts by simply making fresh bosses of the required diameters.

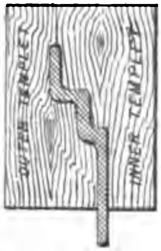


Fig. 113.

But if instead of a wheel with a plated centre we have one with arms, we shall make those arms as for a spur-wheel (Chapter III., p. 25), by locking them together and letting them into the rim (Fig. 111, A, A), there gluing and bradding them. Similarly bosses and cross-ribs (B, B, B, B), having a slight amount of taper, will be fastened to these flat arms. Hollows may be put in or omitted at discretion.

Next take a large pulley with wrought-iron arms (Fig. 112). In some cases it will be advisable to use a complete pattern on account of the number of castings demanded. The ring could then be made in the usual way by building up in two halves and jointing (Fig. 112, side marked B). The bosses and their prints (C) on the inside of the ring would be jointed also. This will answer very well where the wheel is of stout proportions. But if it were light in section, such a pattern would not bear foundry usage very long, and an iron pattern would be advisable. But another method would be to build up a solid ring with a broad print (Fig. 112, side marked A), and to take out the groove with segmental cores — say ten or a dozen to the circle (Fig. 114, A). The advantage here would be that without making an iron pattern we should still have a rigid rim, not liable to become rammed out of truth—a matter of importance in a wheel of any kind. And further, although there is the additional expense involved in the making of the cores, we also save as a set-off against this the trouble of the middle-part box, since, instead of the joint on top and bottom, we want one joint only at the top face of the print.

The core-box will be made thus:—Two sides will be prepared (Fig. 114, B, B). Their outer edges (C, C) will be worked to the same radius as the outer edge of the print C, in Fig. 112. Their inner edges—straight—will extend about a couple of inches below the line which represents the bottom of the wheel groove. In these sides cut grooves (D, D) ¼ inch deep, radial from the centre of the wheel, and at a distance apart equal to the intended length of the segment of core; a sixth, tenth, or twelfth of the circle, as the case may be. Into these grooves drop distance pieces of the width necessary to keep the sides at their proper distance apart—that is, equal to the thickness of the print. Then fit a couple of blocks (E, E) between these sides and ends, parted longitudinally down the centre of the box and dowelled. Work their edges (F) to the same radius as the rim of the wheel, then mark on their ends the rim section. Cut out the groove thus marked with templet very truly, so that when the cores are made and laid end to end they shall correspond neatly, and not show a lapped joint in the casting. When worked, replace the pieces in position, and screw them one to each side of the box. It only remains now to put on the bosses for the arms, and to make

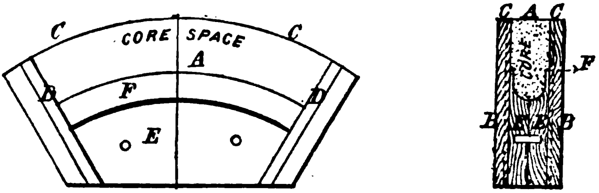


Fig 114.

the central boss with its prints precisely as in the case of a flywheel with wrought-iron arms (Chapter XIV., p. 119).

When the arms are strutted to give rigidity to the wheel, the bosses on the rim have to be bevelled alternately in opposite directions, and the prints on the central boss bevelled in like manner. These latter, too, in a strutted wheel should be *pocket* prints, and not round ones; for round prints would necessitate two joints in the body of the boss, coinciding with the centres of the prints, while with pocket prints the joint on the top face of the boss is alone required.

There is yet a common way of making a large sheave-wheel without a pattern at all. A glance at the sketch (Fig. 115), will indicate the method to which I allude. The light portion is the wheel rim in section—the dotted parts indicate two cores, one outer (A), one inner (B), forming outside and inside of rim respectively. It is seen that these cores are jointed at B, B. Of course the joint must be a curved one, both cores being worked to the same radius. The outer edges of the cores (C, C) need not be curved at all, because they form no part of the wheel. Give sufficient sand there, say two or three inches in the narrowest part, and some lesser amount, say 1 inch to 1½ inch, at the sides.

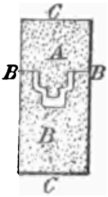


Fig. 115.

To make these boxes:—First frame sides and ends together for each respectively. Their ends must converge to the wheel centre, and must either cut through the centre of an arm boss or midway between two bosses. Thus, if the wheel have eight arms, there must be either eight or sixteen cores. Assuming there are eight cores, we have a half-boss at each end of the inside box. The boxes must be equal to each other in width, which will include the width of the rim and of the two sand joints (B, B, Fig. 115). Then blocks will

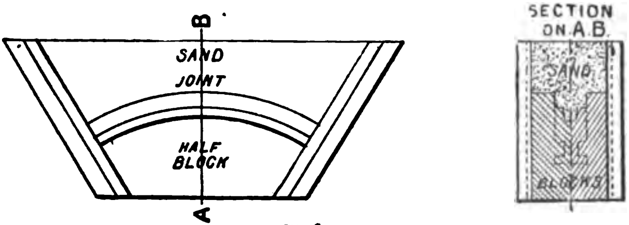


Fig. 116.

be fitted between these boxes, as in the last example; those forming the wheel *groove* will be worked out by templet to the shape indicated in Fig. 116, and those forming the inside portion of the rim will be worked like Fig. 117.* It is not necessary to fasten either of these blocks in place, for if their flat bottom edges are planed while in position level with the bottom edges of their boxes, they cannot shift when being rammed on a level core-bench or bottom board. The half-boss fastened on each end of the inner box, together with its arm print reaching to the termination of the sand (Fig. 117), will complete the pattern-maker's part of the business. The moulder simply guided by a line struck on a level sand bed, lays a ring of inner cores in place, brings the outer cores to abut against these by the circular joint, thrusts the wrought-iron arms through their prints into the bosses, rams sand around the outside and the inside of the cores, and then casts the ring. When nearly cool the boss is cast around the opposite ends of the arms, as in the flywheel alluded to in Chapter XIV. p. 119.

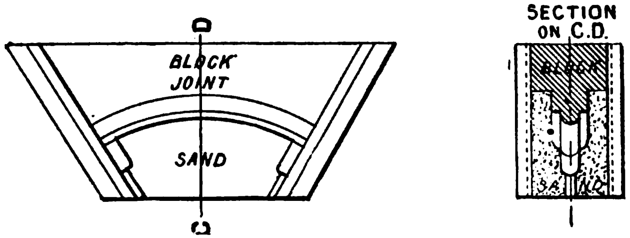


Fig. 117.

A sheave-wheel recessed for alternate links of a chain can be made by pattern or core-box. It requires almost as much care in pitching out as a spur-wheel, because if there is a slight initial error in the pitch, that error increases with each successive link. Thus, when we commence to lay the chain in, suppose we find the recesses are $\frac{1}{16}$ inch too far apart, the error will not remain at $\frac{1}{16}$ inch all the way round the ring, but will be $\frac{1}{8}$ inch in the third recess, $\frac{3}{16}$ inch in the fourth, $\frac{1}{4}$ inch in the fifth, and so on, so that by the time we had got half-way round a large wheel no reasonable amount of clearance between the links and their recesses would prevent the chain from riding out of place. In pattern wheels we can always insure accuracy by roughing out the recesses on a slightly larger diameter than we deem necessary; and then, trying the chain in, gradually reduce the wheel until it fits neatly all round. But when a wheel is made with cores we have not this chance, and then we must take especial care in getting the exact pitch of the links first of all, and in transferring that pitch to the drawing from which the core-box is to be made. Hence we must measure off the total length of a definite number of links, and divide that total length by the number of links measured; this average will be the pitch of the chain, which we forthwith transfer to our drawing-board. Working thus we shall not find our wheel at fault after it is cast. Some clearance is allowed sideways and endways for the links, say ⅛ inch all round, and the recesses are worked out of the solid with gouge and chisel, in pattern and core-box alike.

---

* Fig. 117 is drawn to show the position of the core relatively to Fig 116, the box, of course, being turned the other way up for ramming.

In all other respects the directions we have given for the making of plain sheave-wheels will apply to these as well.

A common rope-wheel is similar to a plain sheave-wheel, with the exception that its inner sides are inclined at a somewhat acute angle in order to bite the rope in the bottom of the groove. This object is sometimes also assisted by little semicircular bits, or nibs, pitched at regular intervals, and standing a little above the groove. Be the rope-wheels large or small, the same methods of making the patterns will be adopted as in the previous examples.

But there is a modification of this form which is sometimes used, and which is somewhat puzzling at first sight—I mean the wave-wheel form. It is a rope-wheel, in which the rim, instead of continuing in one circular plane, as in ordinary wheels, is bent or *waved* in serpentine fashion, the object being, of course, to increase the friction of the rope and thus prevent it slipping.

This is a device which is seldom adopted in small wheels, and therefore it is so seldom necessary that a complete pattern should be made thus that we shall only consider it as applying to a wheel made entirely with cores. The remarks we previously made as to the method of procedure to be adopted in the preparation of the core-boxes will be applicable here until we arrive at the working out of the internal blocks. Then our difficulty will be to insure that the metal in the rim shall be of uniform thickness throughout. If we go working away at the curves at random, trusting only to the eye for accurate results, we shall probably find a variation of ⅛ or ¼ inch in the thicknesses of different portions of the castings.

So we work in the following way:—Draw in elevation a segment of the wheel, equal in length to the intended length of the cores (Fig 118, A, B). Draw also lines on this view converging to the wheel centre from the pitch distance of the

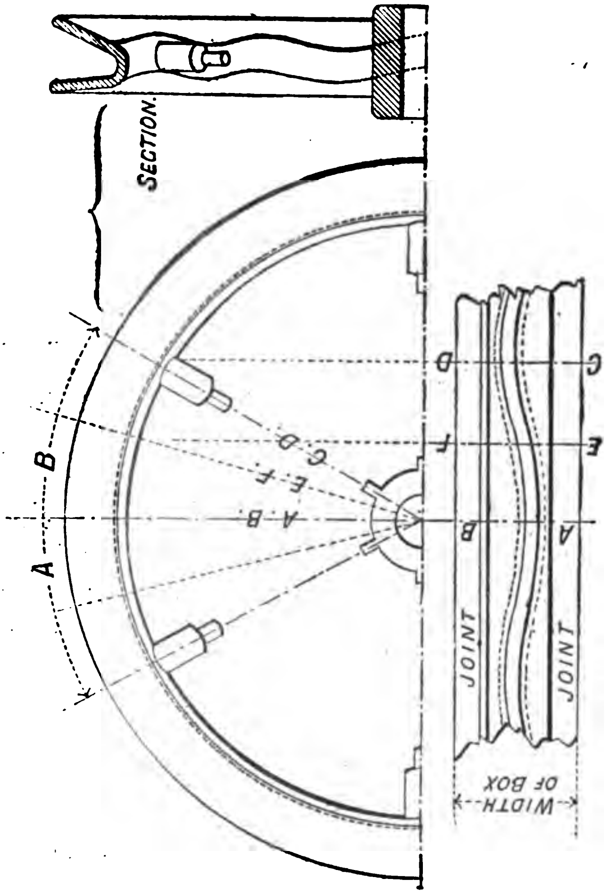


Fig. 119

wave, viz. at these points where it attains its greatest deviation from the plane of the wheel, A B, C D. Draw a portion of the rim with the intended width of the core-box besides in plan (Fig 119), and carry the lines representing the pitch across it. At these points draw sections of the rim in its extreme positions *relative to the sides of the boxes* (Fig 120). Between these extreme deviations of the wave draw other lines at

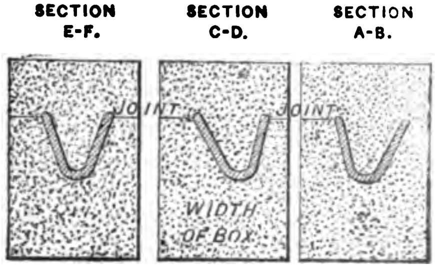


Fig. 120.

pleasure (not shown on engraving), projecting these to the plan, and drawing corresponding sections also in relation to the sides of the core-boxes. Then making templets to the inside and the outside of the rim, all we have to do is to work narrow portions of the rim at the distances from the edge indicated in the sections, and to shape the intermediate portions with gouge and chisel as regularly as possible. If this is done carefully there will be no appreciable difference in the thickness of different portions of the wheel rim when cast.

The last form of chain-wheel we shall describe is that known as the *sprocket* wheel (Fig. 121). It is a form which is in very general use for the transference of motive power by means of a flat link or "pitch chain." Like the chain-wheels, these require to be pitched out very carefully, else the pitch-chain would ride on the projections, or "sprockets," instead of dropping over them.

These wheels are made in two forms, the first like the Fig. 121, where the sprockets are made of wrought-iron and cast in the wheel body; the second like Fig 122, in which the sprockets are a portion of the casting. In the former case they are dropped into prints, whose edges are their exact counterparts; in the latter, the pattern and casting are precisely similar.

In these castings the links must fit the places prepared for their reception so nicely that it is sometimes necessary in a large wheel to throw away the first cast and make a slight alteration in the pattern, a variation in the anticipated amount of contraction being sufficient to cause ⅛ inch or ¼ inch of error in the semicircumference. The wheel might be saved in such a case by filing a lot of clearance in the sprockets; but such a practice is not to be commended. The accuracy of a small casting can be depended on.

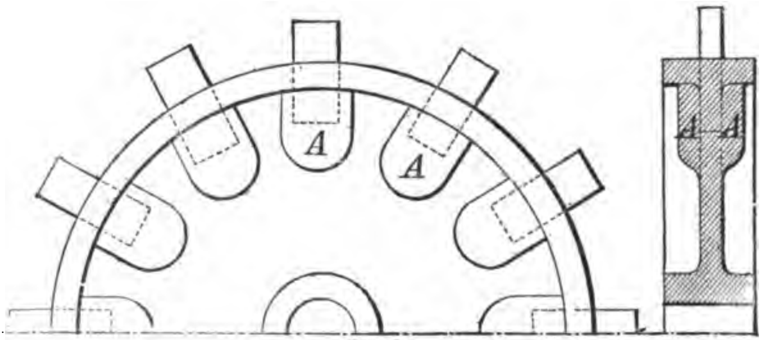


Fig. 121.

After what has been said about the building up of wheels, special remark is scarcely necessary in reference to these last-named. Note, however, that a built-up plate made in two or three thicknesses or segments is better than a single solid piece of stuff in which the sprockets are cut out, because short grain and shrinkage are both avoided thereby. On this plate the two portions of the rim are built with segments as usual.

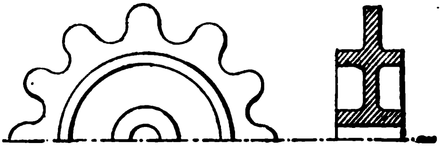


Fig 122.

The prints for wrought-iron sprockets should be pocket prints, to be stopped over after the sprockets are placed in the mould.

In Fig. 121, A A, are the boss thicknesses around the wrought-iron sprockets.

CHAPTER XVIII.

COLUMNS AND PIPES.

Jointing of Columns and Pipes.—Lagging up.—Turning.—The Use of a Steady.—End Flanges.—Body Flanges.—Socket-pipes.—Putting Holes in Flanges.—Loam-pipes.—Fitting Branches.—Throat Core-boxes.

MAKE it a rule to joint all columns and pipes, whether they be large or small. Jointing the pattern prevents the tearing away of the upper half of the mould, and the joint forms a convenient basis for the marking of centre and parallel lines, the setting square of blocks, facings, flanges, bosses, &c. Pipes and columns up to 7 or 8 inches in diameter will be made of solid stuff; if they exceed those dimensions they should be "lagged up" (Fig. 68, p. 81). The transverse blocks or bars upon which the lagging is to be laid may be about 12 inches or 15 inches apart, so that in a long pipe or column there may be as many as a dozen of transverse blocks, and each bar should have a dowel in the centre. The number of pieces of lagging which form the circle will vary with the diameter of the pipe or column. An 8-inch pipe may have eight strips to the circle, while a column of 16 inches or 18 inches diameter may have a dozen. Fit the strips and glue successively in the manner described when treating of engine cylinders,* the only difference being that a long joint is not made to fit close so readily as a short one, and may require to be chalked and tried in place repeatedly before a fit is obtained. When built up, secure the two halves of the pattern with centre-plates (Fig. 212, p. 206), and put into the lathe. If the pipe be long, staple the joint at intervals before attempting to turn. Do not turn any one portion to finished sizes immediately, but rough the whole pipe down from end to end first. If other work can be prepared in the interval, it is even better to let it remain thus roughed down for a few hours before finishing than to finish at once. The reason is, that all timber, whether well seasoned or not, has a tendency to spring, and will in most cases buckle more or less out of its original shape when newly-cut grain is exposed to the air. For this reason a careful workman, when beginning a lengthy job, always "gets out" as much stuff as he can see his way clear to prepare, and "jacks" it all over before planing or turning any one portion to its finished dimensions.

---

* Chapter XI., p. 80.

If the column or pipe be of small diameter relatively to its length, it will vibrate or "wobble," to use a workman's term, in the lathe, so that to turn it true will be impossible. Make a steady, shaped roughly to fit the bed of the lathe and to take the diameter of the pipe. The sketch, Fig. 123, shows the best way to make a steady. By means of the sliding blocks, A, A, replaceable at pleasure with blocks of any other dimensions within the limits of the Vee'd portion of the steady, we can make it a standard tool for pipes of various dimensions. Wedge-shaped cottars, B, B, passing through the shank, will hold it firmly in position on the bed. A lubricant must be applied where the pipe runs in the steady, else much heat will be developed, and an excessive amount of friction be set up. Soft soap, or soft soap mixed with blacklead, are good lubricants.

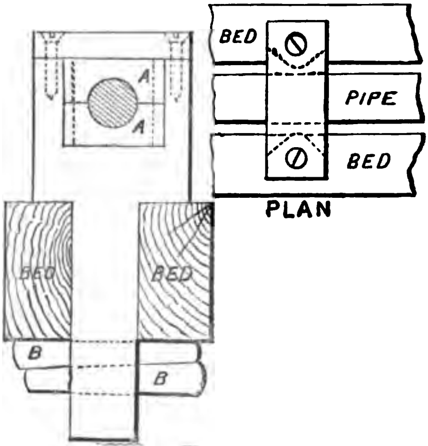


Fig. 123.

It will facilitate the operation of turning if, in a long pipe, after having reduced the two ends to the required diameter, we plane a straight flat along the pipe from one of the finished ends to the other. We can then see at a glance, when working at any portion of the pipe, whether we are nearly or quite down to the size, without having recourse to calipers and straightedge continually.

Flanges, round, square, or of other shapes, socketed or spigoted ends, belts, mouldings, &c., will be required for pipes and columns. If the pipe is to be flanged, the flanges will be made distinct from the body of the pattern. A flange will be made in halves, dowelled together; and where it is put on at the end of a pipe, the hole must be made of such a size that it shall drop into a groove somewhat smaller in diameter than the print, to keep it steady. If the print at the end of the pipe is, say, 4 inches, the groove may be 3½ inches in diameter (Fig. 124). The stuff should be got out thicker than the actual thickness of the flange, to allow of a small radius or hollow being turned out at the back. If the casting is to be faced, ⅛ inch must be added to the thickness on the front side of the flange on that account. If the flange is to go on some part of the pipe intermediate from the ends, it is usual to turn it as a "body flange"—viz. a flange having a hole of the same diameter as the *outside* of the pipe, Fig. 125. The flange can then be slid along and screwed to any desired position, and the casting can be "stopped off"* to the corresponding length. In body flanges the hollow on the back is usually omitted, being left for the moulder to rub in sand.

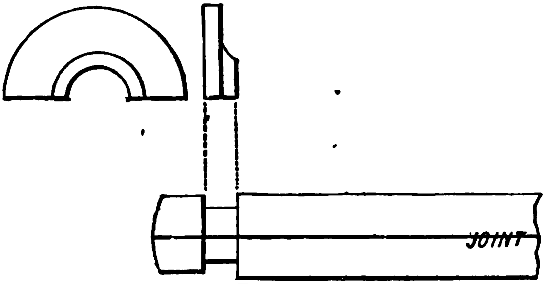


Fig. 124.

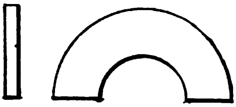


Fig. 125.

---

* Chapter XXIII., p. 196.

For socket and spigot pipes, or faucet and spigot, as they are also called, the pattern may have blocks glued upon it just where the socket is required, large enough to bring it up to the proper size, and long enough to include the socket print, which, of course, will be larger than the outside of the pipe by the necessary allowance for "caulking." This method of blocking up the pattern with a permanent socket, though proper enough for standard work, would be absurd in a jobbing shop where pipes of all lengths and of both kinds—flange and socket—are made from a single 9-feet length of pattern. We must have the socket, like the body flange, a thing quite distinct from the pattern, to be screwed on anywhere or removed at pleasure. The most convenient form is an iron pattern socket in halves, fitting over the body of the pipe, and cast very thin to reduce its weight. A single screw run in from the top holds it in position (Fig. 126); dotted lines indicate how the socket is lightened out.* For the spigot a bead of lead may be cast, bent round, and tacked to the pattern, or, if for permanent use, it may be turned out of the solid.

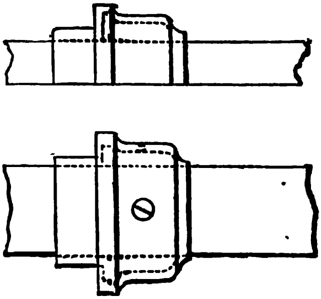


Fig. 126.

When round or square holes are cast in flanges, they should be put in by templet; in this case a piece of thin wood cut to the shape of a half flange and having slot holes cut out, the termination of those holes giving size and position of cores.

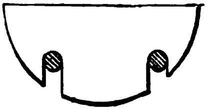


Fig. 127.

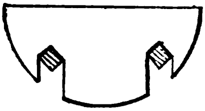


Fig. 128

The cores, rubbed to the thickness of flanges, are thrust into position by the templet, and the slight friction of their faces against the faces of the mould is sufficient to retain them in place during the inflow of the metal. Fig. 127 shows a templet flange for round, Fig. 128, one for square holes.

---

* For proportions of sockets and flanges, see Appendix, p. 320.

Pipe patterns from which a large number of castings are required are always made in wood or (where the quantity is very large) in iron. Yet we sometimes have pipes of a large size to make where the number of castings is not sufficient to pay for the cost of a pattern. In that case we make a loam pattern. That is a different thing from a loam mould In the latter case our boards are made to strike the actual *mould* (Chap. XII.). In the former, the boards strike up the *pattern* from which the mould is to be made. The flanges will not be struck up, but made in wood, unless, indeed, they happen to project but a short distance from the pipe body. Mouldings and sockets, however, will be struck as part of the loam pattern. The annexed figures (129) will sufficiently illustrate the way in which a loam pattern and its core are struck up, without verbal explanation. We shall return to the subject of loam patterns again in connection with some more elaborate forms of work. See Chap. XXIII., p. 191.

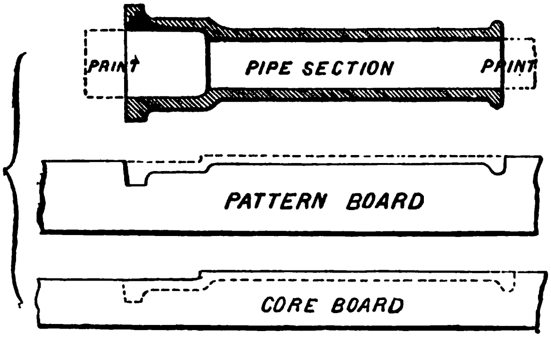


Fig. 129.

Branch pipes, fitted to a main piece of pipe, might have their ends struck out geometrically; but we can always, or almost always, chalk the main pipe and cut the branch to a fit in less time than would be occupied in striking the necessary lines. Where branch and pipe, however, are of the same diameter, there is a ready and simple method of insuring a fit at once. Having marked in the joint of the branch the line where it is intended to abut the edge of the pipe (Fig. 130), on this, as a base line, construct a triangle, whose sides shall be inclined towards it at an angle of 45°, meeting consequently and forming the apex at the centre line of the pipe. Cut to these lines at right angles with the joint (Fig. 131). Where the cut faces intersect the circumference of the branch, a curve will result, which, if worked to, will insure the required fit without further trouble (Fig. 132).

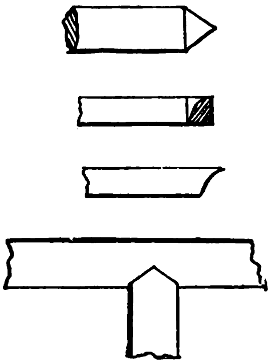

Figs. 130, 131, 132.

Fig. 133 shows a tee pipe, or tee piece, made in the usual way, with a wide throat at the point of junction, for the purpose of allowing freedom of water way, and diminishing friction. Here a special core-box (Fig. 134) is advisable, to get the throat of the shape corresponding with the pipe. The core for the pipe, being plain and circular, can be struck up separately, and the branch core abutted against it in the mould. These throat core-boxes are made for various sized pipes, and kept in the pattern stores ready for use.

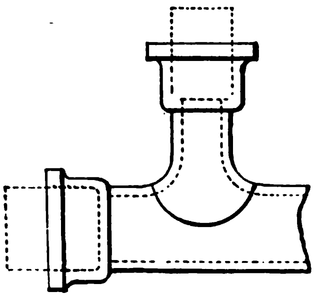


Fig. 133.

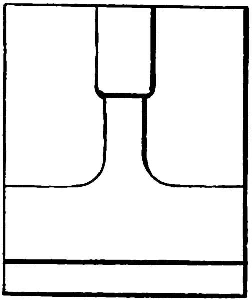


Fig. 134.

CHAPTER XIX.

MISCELLANEOUS PIPE-WORK.

Turning Quick Bends in the Lathe.—Working Flat Bends.—Dovetailing Bends.—S-pipes.—Striking up in Loam.—Guide-line.—Guide-iron. —Strickles.—Sockets.—Pipes of Irregular Shape.

COMMON pattern bends of uniform section can be very conveniently turned in the lathe if we want two bends of the same size. Jointing four pieces together at angles of 90° and screwing them on the faceplate, we can turn the semicircular section with a templet in far less time than would be occupied with gouge and chisel and spokeshave, and with more accurate results (Fig. 135). Removing the four half patterns from the faceplate, we dowel them two and two together, forming two bends.

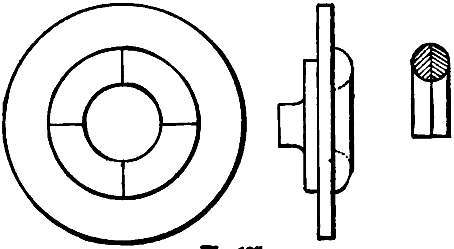


Fig. 135.

If the pattern is of a flat curve, as in the common "eighth" and "quarter" bends of the pipe-makers (Fig. 136), or if it is a "reducing" bend, viz. a bend tapering from a larger to a smaller bore, the use of the lathe is out of the question. In these cases we joint truly together two pieces of wood large enough to take the outline of the bend, each piece being thick enough to take half the diameter of the bend. We dowel them together, and on the joint face of one mark the outline we require. Cutting to these lines we obtain the longitudinal form, and working with gouge, chisel, and spokeshave, guided by a semicircular templet, we get the transverse section. We mark the outline of the second half from the one just worked, and cut that in turn with the half templet. Socket, bead, and prints are put on afterwards.

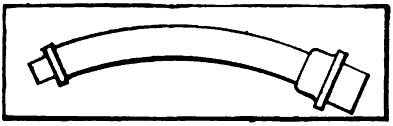


Fig. 136.

Some workmen have a way of cutting a bend, which, though slow, is safe, because there is no risk of undercutting, as there is sometimes where the roughing down is done recklessly before a templet can be tried on. It is to work the stuff, first of all rectangular in section (Fig. 137), gradually into a polygonal form until a nearly circular section is attained (Figs. 138, 139). The last remaining angularities being taken off with a spokeshave, a practically true circle is the result, which will not show wavy lines in the longitudinal direction. This is certainly the better method to adopt with a *reducing* bend, in which the diameter is constantly varying.

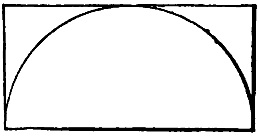


Fig. 137.

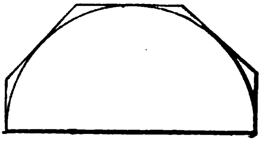


Fig. 138.

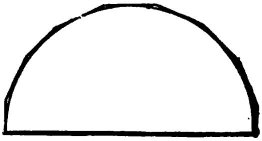


Fig. 139.

When the pattern is to form the elbow of a bend pipe (Fig. 140), it is necessary to attach the straight pieces of pipe each to their proper end of the curved portion. This we shall effect by means of a double dovetail, which is to be let into each of the portions of pipe which abut against one another (Fig. 141).

Sometimes pipes are made of very awkward shapes, to curve round parts of machinery, buildings, other pipes, &c.

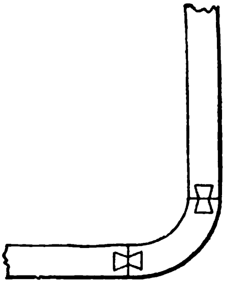


Fig. 140.

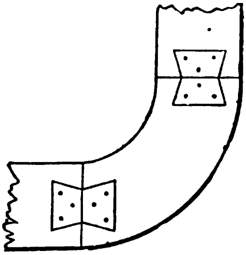


Fig. 141.

There may be two or three different bendings of the pipe not all in the same plane, and the flanges may have their faces at angles other than right-angles relatively to the axes of the pipe. The pipe-makers supply bends and S-pipes of various shapes, by which the desired shape can often be pieced up; but where space is limited, or where a graceful outline is wanted, we make a pattern; and this opens up the question of loam work. In these and many other cases we want but one casting, and if the pipe is of large or even of but moderate dimensions, the pattern would cost a great deal more than the casting itself. Then the question of wood *versus* loam becomes one for our consideration. In large castings the answer must be in favour of loam in almost every case, and in small castings also it will usually be cheaper to strike up the pattern in loam. But in those awkward-shaped pipes, such as Fig. 142, where the bends are not in the same plane, it costs less to knock out a rough unjointed pattern in wood than to strike it up in the foundry. Yet even in a case like this, if the casting were large, say over 6 inches in diameter, loam would be the cheaper.

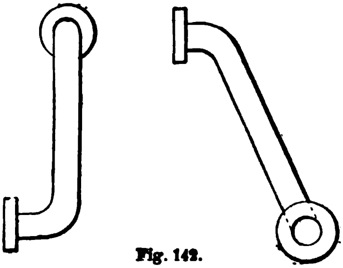


Fig. 142.

There are a number of "wrinkles" in the striking up of pipes in their various forms, so that a lad who had served his apprenticeship in a shop where no pipe-work was done would be "all at sea" on getting a start in a jobbing shop where pipes formed a part of the trade. So, taking the process up at the beginning, I will try to make the matter so clear that a pattern-maker who had never seen a plain loam pipe made should be able to prepare his work correctly. In pattern-making it frequently happens that, though the parts which the workman has to prepare for the moulder's use are few and simple in form, they involve more technical knowledge than work of more pretentious appearance. This is especially the case in loam work. The parts which the loam moulder requires are few and simple, and, like many other things, they are easily made—when one knows the way.

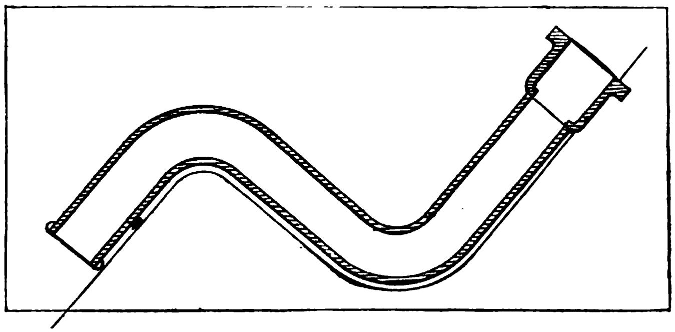


Fig. 143.

Let us commence upon the drawing. Fig. 143 represents the board, upon which we have drawn a 6-inch S-pipe in longitudinal section. Observe that there is a line drawn parallel with one side of the pipe, and at a distance of ¾ inch away from its edge. This is the "guide-line." We mention ¾ inch, not because that dimension is of any importance—it might just as well have been ½ inch or 1¼ inch—but the better to illustrate our explanation. By this line the foundry-smith bends a piece of ½-inch or ¾-inch square rod, which becomes, as we shall see immediately, the "guide-iron" (Fig. 144) for the "strickles." The strickles are the templets used for striking the transverse sections of the pipe in loam, and they have their edges cut in such a way that each strickle is maintained at its own proper distance from the guide-iron during the process of striking. Thus, the guide-iron being ¾ inch away from the body, the body strickle (Fig. 145) will be notched up ¾-inch from one edge of its 7-inch semicircle.

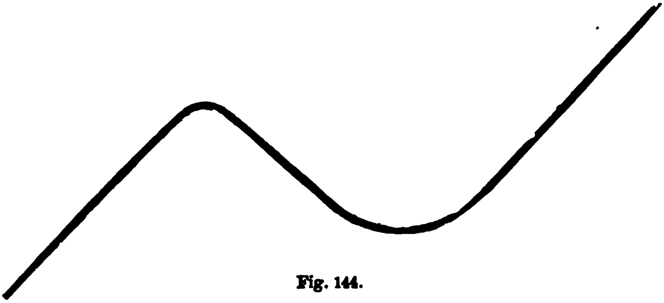


Fig. 144.

But the metal in the pipe being ½ inch thick, the core strickle (Fig. 146) will be ¾ inch + ½ inch = 1¼ inch wide at the shoulder. The edge of the strickle is chamfered like that of a loam board (Fig. 147). These strickles are used thus:—The

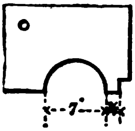


Fig. 145.

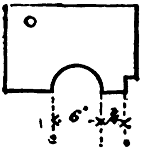


Fig. 146.

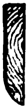
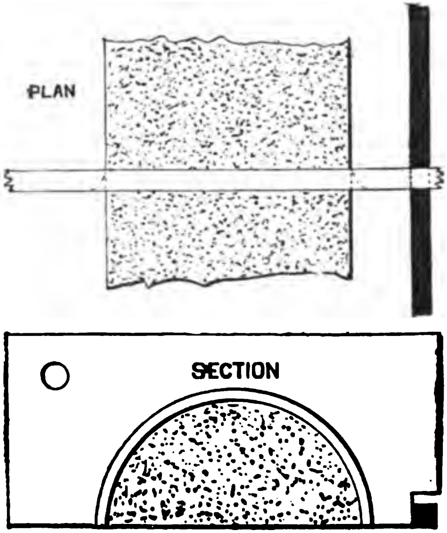


Fig. 147.

guide-iron is laid upon a plate on the foundry carriage, and kept in position by sundry weights resting against it. Then the "check," as it is called, of the core strickle (Fig. 146) is set against the guide-iron, and a semicircular body of loam is struck up (Figs. 148), following, of course, the contour of the guide-iron. The iron is then turned over and fixed again in a new position, and a similar half-core struck up, but the reverse hand to the first. These are run into the stove and dried. When dry, the *pattern* strickle is set against the guide-iron, and a thickness of loam struck over each half-core in turn. This also is dried; then both halves are detached from the plate, turned over joint to joint, and the rough pattern is complete (Fig. 149). A little touching up of the joints and a coat of tar will make it fit for the mould. After having been moulded, the thickness of loam representing the ½ inch metal will be stripped off, and the core placed in the mould for casting.

If a flange is required for a loam-pipe, the hole in the flange will be of the same size as the core, and the body thickness of loam will be shouldered back to afford steadiness to it. Obviously, a socket end would not be formed with strickles very readily, on account of the dressing off necessary where one diameter blends with another. Hence sockets are in most cases struck separately in the same way that a straight piece of pipe would be, but on a body of loam equal in diameter to that of the pipe for which they are intended, to be afterwards sawn longitudinally down the centre and slid or threaded over the pipe body. They are held in place during moulding with nails. The socket-core is either treated in the same manner or abutted against the body core.



Figs. 148.

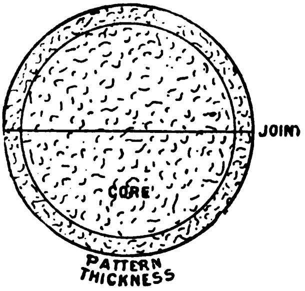


Fig. 149.

If we require pipes or hollow castings whose shape is not symmetrical, and which cannot, therefore, be struck on a revolving bar, or continuously by means of strickles, the difficulty is first how to get the core of the proper shape, and then how to insure an equal thickness of metal throughout. Take, for illustration, a reducing pipe connecting a rectangular valve-box or pipe with one circular in section (Fig. 150). Except at the ends the section is never uniform, so, except at the ends, a strickle or strickles cannot be used. In such cases the core body is first roughed up with a square strickle at one end and a round one at the other, and dried, then *rubbed* to its required shape with rasps and glasspaper. A number of strips are then prepared of the same thickness as the metal in the pipe. These are laid flat on the core in various positions, and their interstices are filled up with loam, which is strickled off level with their thicknesses. When the loam has set a little, but not baked, the strips are taken away, their vacant places filled up with more loam, and dried. When moulded, the thickness is stripped off as before, and the core placed in the mould. By this method castings of almost any size and shape can be made with uniform thicknesses of metal, and with much less trouble to the pattern-maker than would be involved in making a core-box with templets.

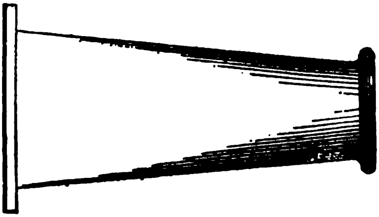


Fig. 150.

CHAPTER XX.

FLUTED AND ORNAMENTAL COLUMNS.

Apparent Difficulty of Moulding.—Number of Joints.—Central Foundation or Base.—Mouldings.—Flanges.—Working the Flutes.—Loam-board.—Square Core.—How attached.—Lines of Jointure.—Danger of Undercutting.

These, at first sight, would appear to present insuperable difficulties in the way of moulding. Looking at an architect's drawing, which somehow always does look more elaborate and enigmatical than the actual thing it represents, we wonder how such a complicated mass of ornamental work is to be got out of the mould. The pattern can be made like the drawing, but how to reproduce it in the casting is the difficulty. The use of drawbacks would perhaps appear feasible at first; but a little consideration usually reveals practical difficulties in the way of their adoption, and in most cases we are reduced to the method of loose pieces, as being, on the whole, the least troublesome.

We take, then, a fluted column like that shown in Fig. 151. Here we have a square base with mouldings, above that a fluted portion, then moulding again; after that a long fluted shaft, surmounted by an ornamental capital. It will be observed that the column in this case varies very much in diameter, being nearly twice as large in the lower portion as in the upper. We must strike out the column to full size, first in longitudinal outline, indicating the thickness of metal by dotted lines, and then in cross sections, at A A, B B, C C, to show the flutes. To make the pattern, we want a steady foundation—not the actual pattern, but that on which the pattern is to be built. Upon this base the fluted portion will be laid in strips, which strips will be drawn in succession from the sand, after the base is lifted out. A glance at the section (Fig. 152), will make my meaning clear. Divide the

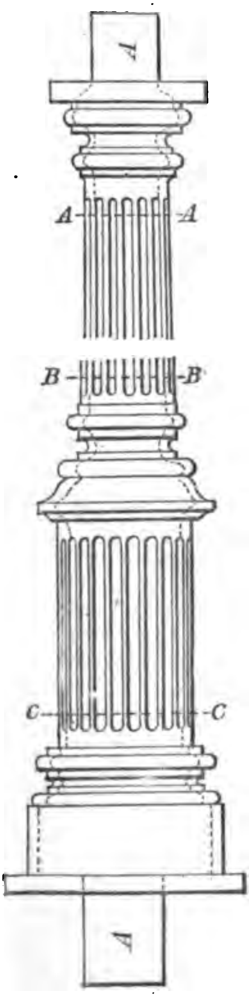


Fig. 151.

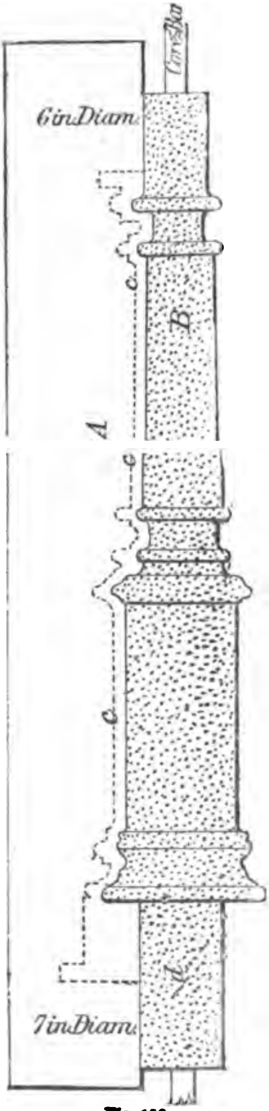


Fig. 156.

circle into such a number of parts that the flutes will draw readily from the sand; thus, a strip so wide as that shown in

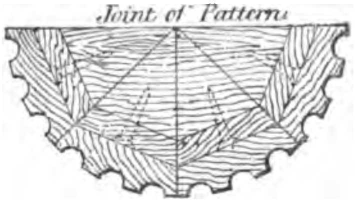


Fig. 152.

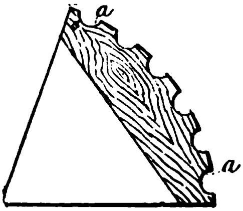


Fig. 153.

Fig. 153 could not possibly be drawn away without tearing down the sand at *a*, *a*. Let the edges, therefore, of the extreme flutings be plenty free enough, and do not, for the sake of lessening the number of joints, make the pieces so wide that opposite fluted edges will be *undercut* in relation to each other. There will not be less than six in any circle: eight are better, and in some cases twelve are desirable. We will have eight in this column. Divide the circle accordingly, and mark out an octagonal-shaped figure on each section to indicate the flat backs of the loose fluted pieces, allowing sufficient stuff at the bottom of the flutes for strength—say ⅜ inch or ½ inch. The central portion—that included between these lines—will be the base or foundation of the pattern. This may be solid if the column is not large, and if thoroughly dry stuff is available. But it is not advisable, in the case of a large pattern, to run the risk of its warping for the sake of saving the extra labour involved in jointing up; so we lag our central part up, just as in the case of a pipe pattern (Chapter XVIII., p. 151). This will contain the same number of lagging pieces as there are to be loose strips. At the lower portion of the long flutes (Fig. 151, B, B), the diameter is larger than at the top, so that unless we taper the body to an equal amount, the fluting stuff will be thicker at the lower end than at the upper. It is of no consequence which course we adopt. The lower series of flutes, however, are twice as large in diameter as the uppermost ones, and the loose pieces would be inconveniently thick and heavy to handle in the mould, if made of that extra thickness. Instead, therefore, of giving the extra thickness to these, prepare pieces of the same length, and of such a thickness as will reduce these flutes to the same substance as the upper ones, and screw them on the main body (Fig. 154).

This part, which forms the foundation for the column proper, should have good close joints, to insure the requisite rigidity; it should be as straight as possible, and each flat should be altogether free from winding or twist. Mark out lengths of flutes, positions of mouldings, and faces of flanges in the joint, and begin to build up.

Turn the mouldings first, jointing them, of course, in halves, with the grain running transversely to the axis of the column. Cut them out to fit over the angular body, or else groove out the body in the lathe just where the mouldings fit, and bore out the latter to fit in these grooves. Screw the mouldings on from the *inside* of the column, since it is desirable that they should be left loosely attached to the body, to be withdrawn separately from the mould. Top and bottom flanges and square base will be prepared and fitted over similarly. Frequently small flanges are jointed diagonally, but in those of large size an inconveniently large moulding-box is rendered necessary; hence it is desirable to joint these latter parallel with their edges, and to put a little taper in their sides.

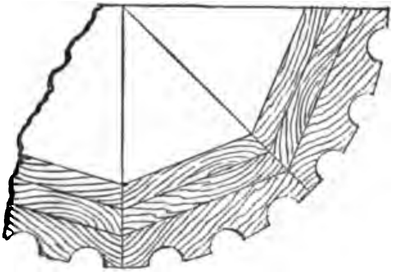


Fig. 154.

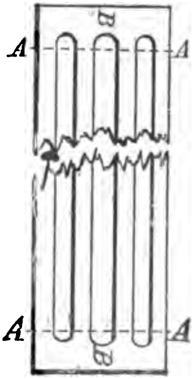


Fig. 155.

Then follow the flutes. As many flats as there are in the foundation body, so many separate joints will there be in the fluted portion. Each end of each flute will terminate in a hollow (Fig. 155). In preparing the stuff, square the pieces off just to the commencement of the hollows (Fig. 155, A, A). Screw on each end the narrow pieces, B, B, necessary to complete the length up to the mouldings. Then build up the strips in the usual way; instead, however, of gluing, screw (like the moulding) from the inside of the pattern. Afterwards work to a circular shape either in the lathe or with planes if no lathe long enough to take the pattern is available. Then the flutes will be divided round with compasses, and lined out with straight edge—the end make-up pieces, B, B, unscrewed, and the flutes worked along with a round-plane, after which the end pieces will be replaced, and their hollows worked with a firmer gouge and glasspapered.

The end prints, A, A (Fig. 151), are turned out of the stuff with which the column is built up, or else made separately and screwed on, dependent on circumstances. Sometimes, also, where columns are made in quantity, a certain portion of the length of the print, or an independent collar concentric with the print, is made to fit into a bored hole in the end of the moulding-box while the pattern is being rammed up, and the core-bar has a collar also corresponding identically in size, by which a concentric position of the core relative to the mould is guaranteed. This, of course, applies to each end.

A round column with a square base such as ours is has a square core in that base, for which a special core-box is made, the round core being struck on a revolving bar. Fig. 156 shows the loam board which is used for striking the main core. A is the board, B represents the core, the dotted line, *c*, *c*, *c*, indicates the edge of the column, marked on the board to give the moulder his thicknesses of metal for the purpose of checking their accuracy when in the mould. It is usual to stamp diameters also at the ends as shown. Fig. 157 shows the box, in the centre of which a round print, *a*, passing through its entire thickness, forms the hole, into which the shouldered portion of the long core (Fig. 156, *d*) is thrust (Fig. 158).

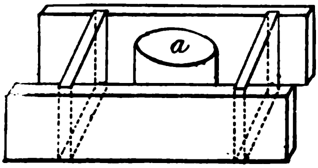


Fig. 157.

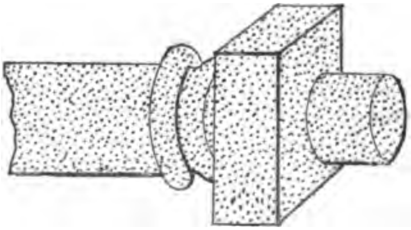


Fig. 158.

The foregoing remarks will enable the reader to understand the general process of column construction; but there is, as may be supposed, much variation of detail in columns of different designs. Still, the principle remains good in every case, so far as I know, that columns are not made by cores or drawbacks, but by *loose pieces;* and the one essential to be borne in mind by the pattern-maker is, that all parts shall withdraw easily from the mould. In highly ornate columns the pattern-maker is not required to do the carved work; but he has to joint the stuff in reference to the design, so that there shall be no difficulty in moulding after it leaves the carver's hands.

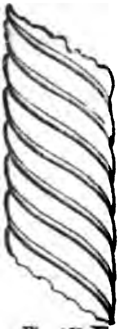


Fig. 159.

But it does not follow that a handsome column is difficult to make. A twisted design for a shaft (Fig. 159) does not involve any jointing at all, except the usual one in halves. Neither would an octagonal column like Fig. 160, excepting at *a, a* (section), where the undercut portion would be formed by two loose strips. Nor is it always desirable to joint radially from the centre, as in Fig. 152. In that case, if the flutes had been deep, we should have jointed like Fig. 161, else the sides of the flutes would tear the sand away at *a, a*. When the central fixing reaching from *b* to *b* is lifted out, the side flutes, A, A, are drawn out parallel with the joints, *c, c*, after which the other two will follow easily enough.

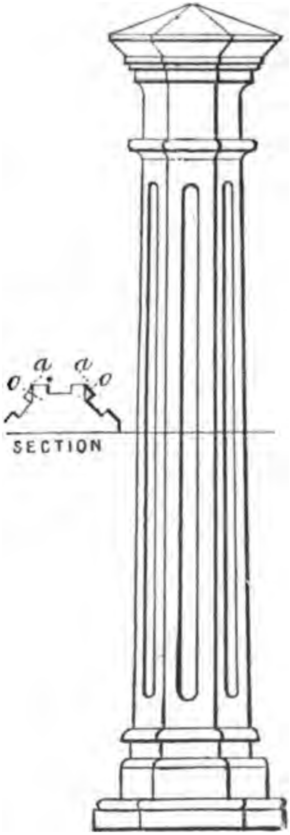


Fig. 160.

Another mode of jointing some kinds of ornamental work is shown at Fig. 162 (plan). Note that the central piece of the pattern is somewhat wider at A, where the joint of the mould

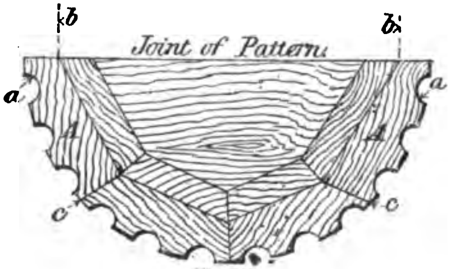


Fig. 161.

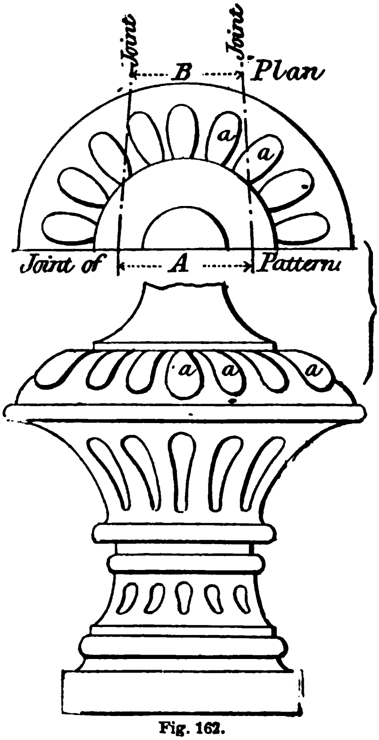


Fig. 162.

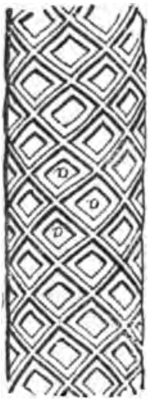


Fig. 163.

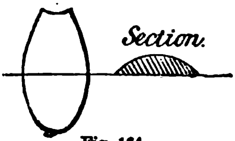


Fig. 164.

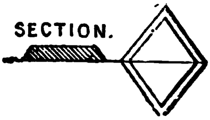


Fig. 165

comes, than it is at B. This is for freedom of withdrawal from the mould, that piece being taken out first, the side pieces being removed afterwards. This joint is in frequent use, is easy to make, and allows of the side pieces being drawn away at any angle, even parallel with the joint of the mould—an arrangement possessing great advantages over the former in columns highly ornamented, such as those of Corinthian type.

In all columns and ornamental work generally this must be remembered, that no parts, however apparently insignificant, shall be *undercut*. It is more difficult to mend up work of this kind in the mould than any other; therefore, every little recess, flute, boss, swell, leaf, scroll, and moulding must have its edge so cut relatively to the direction in which it is to quit the mould that it shall cease to drag against the sand immediately that it is started by rapping. In doing this, it is sometimes, though not often, necessary to sacrifice a little of elegant appearance to the inexorable conditions of necessity. The undercut edges of the carver's work have thus to be tapered towards the outside of the pattern. But a little of this fudging will often save extra jointing, and the fewer joints there are in patterns of this kind the better: an experienced eye can always detect them in the castings. Looking at the swells, *a, a, a*, in Fig. 162, and the diamonds *a, a, a*, in Fig. 163, it would appear that they ought to be loosely wired on, and drawn out one at a time. But this would entail too much work. By fudging the carver's work, and tapering the edges (Figs. 164, 165), the main pattern joints make sufficient provision for the delivery of these. Even in working plain mouldings there should be *no absolutely square edges*, but a slight amount of taper should be given to every part.

CHAPTER XXI.

ESTIMATING WEIGHTS OF CASTINGS FROM THEIR PATTERNS.

Reducing to Feet and Inches.—Multipliers.—Sources of Error.—Specific Gravities.—Practical Example in Calculation.—Approximate Formula.—Bevel-wheels.—Mortise-wheels.—Pipes and Columns.—Decimals.—Useful Notes.

THE pattern-maker is often required to estimate the weight of a casting with more or less of accuracy, that accuracy being demanded either on account of the value of the metal, or by reason of the purpose for which the casting is intended. Accuracy within a hundredweight or two may be sufficient in some large castings, while in other cases, and in smaller castings, we may wish to be correct within a pound or two. Let us go a little into detail in this matter.

To calculate the weight of a casting, it is necessary to ascertain the number of cubic feet, or cubic inches, it contains, and to convert that number into weight by a multiplier. These multipliers vary, of course, with the nature of the metal to be employed. Thus, we know that a cubic foot of cast iron weighs on an average 450 lbs., and a cubic inch ·263 lb. These, then, are the multipliers by which cubic feet and cubic inches respectively of that metal are converted into pounds. Another multiplier easily remembered and commonly used is the number of pounds contained in a square foot of iron 1 inch thick. Such a plate weighs 38 lbs. Gunmetal, again, would require another multiplier; a cubic inch would weigh ·3 lb. Lead, steel, copper, and every other metal would appropriate its own multiplier. Hence the general rule is:—Ascertain first the number of cubic inches (or feet) contained in the pattern; treat this total with its appropriate multiplier: the quotient is the number of pounds which the casting may be expected to contain.

I use the word "expected" designedly, for it often happens that a most careful calculation is rendered very wide of the mark through contingencies lying beyond the control of the pattern-maker. I have had a difficult gunmetal casting, weighing 284 lbs., vary only 8 lbs. from the estimated weight, and an iron casting of 5 tons within 2 cwt.; and I have also, on the other hand, been a couple of hundredweights wide of the mark in castings ranging between one and two tons. There are many causes at work to produce such discrepancies. There is the custom of "rapping," which will make an appreciable difference in small work. There are different densities of metal, which will cause variations in the weight of large castings. A mould rammed unequally—that is, harder and softer in different parts—will allow a casting to swell, and to come out larger in the imperfectly made parts than the pattern. A large plate will increase in thickness, and therefore in weight. A broken mould will not always be mended up just like the pattern. These and many other things go to destroy the accuracy of a calculation; but we have to take things as they are, and frequently, judging by past experiences, we can make slight allowances for these and other contingencies, and thus produce, on the whole, very reliable results.

I spoke of the necessity for reducing to feet or inches, but there are other methods in favour with workmen. One of these is the method of specific gravities. The pattern is steadily immersed in water in a tank, the displaced water is allowed to overflow into a second vessel, and is then weighed. This, the weight of water displaced by the pattern, is multiplied by the sp. gr. of the metal in which it is to be cast, and the quotient equals the weight of the casting required. Thus, supposing a pattern displaced 4¼ lbs. of water, and that the sp. gr. of average cast iron be taken at 7·3, we shall get—

$$4{\cdot}25 \times 7{\cdot}3 = 31 \text{ lbs.} = \text{weight of casting.}$$

This is a very accurate way, presuming that a proper vessel is available by which no waste of overflow water occurs; but as it needs some special apparatus, it is hardly suitable for large patterns, and is seldom resorted to except in those cases where accurate weight is of the utmost importance.

Another and a most delusive method is to weigh the pattern itself, and multiply that by 16, which is supposed to represent the relative weights of dry yellow pine and cast iron. This leaves out of consideration the various densities of different qualities of pine, and the presence of screws, nails, or other foreign substances in the pattern. We simply mention this by the way, and pass on to illustrate the method we alluded to in the first place.

Let us take, as a practical example of the method of calculating by cubic inches, the cog-wheel in Fig. 8, p. 16, partly reproduced here (Fig. 166), for convenience of reference. This is a small casting, so we must reduce to inches, feet being too large a factor.

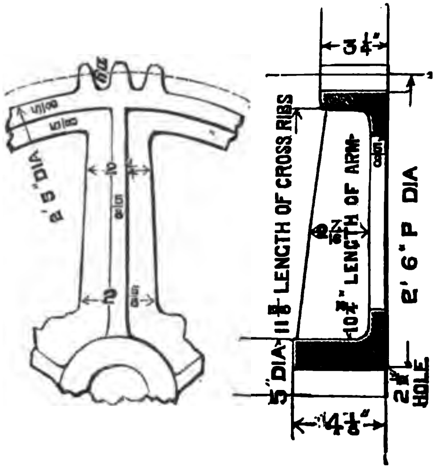


Fig. 166.

First of all then, take the rim. Its outer diameter is 2 feet 5 inches, its thickness ⅝ inch, the average or mean diameter, therefore, being 2 feet 4⅜ inches. To save the labour of calculation, we turn to a table of circumferences, and find that the circumference of such a ring is 89 inches; therefore, imagining the rim unrolled, it becomes—

1 strip 89 in. × 3¼ in. × ⅝ in. = 180·6 cubic inches.

Then the teeth. Imagine all the points of the teeth, *a*, broken off along the pitch-line and inserted between the roots, *b*. We see that a continuous ring is formed (neglecting the slight allowance for clearance). The mean diameter of this ring will then be taken, and its circumference deduced. At 2 feet 5¾ inches average diameter, it is—

1 strip 92 in. × 3¼ × $\frac{7}{16}$ = 130 cubic inches.

The boss in like manner may be imagined to be a simple ring piercing the arms, and can be reckoned thus:

One solid cylinder 5 inches diameter × 4⅛ long − one cylinder (the hole) 2½ inches diameter × 4⅛ long. A disc of 5 inches diameter by 1 inch thick will be found, on referring to a table of areas, to contain 19·6 cubic inches; one 2½ inches diameter by 1 inch thick will contain 4·9 cubic inches. Subtract the one from the other, and multiply by 4⅛; the quotient is the number of cubic inches in the boss.

19·6 − 4·9 × 4⅛ = 60·2 cubic inches.

The rib or flange within the rim will, at ⅝ wide, average 2 feet 3⅛ inches in diameter. Then it will contain—

85·2 × ⅝ × ⅝ = 33·3 cubic inches.

There will be six arms extending from boss to rim, averaging 2$\frac{7}{16}$ in width. Therefore we have—

Six pieces 10⅝ × 2$\frac{7}{16}$ × ⅝ in. = 97·2 cubic inches.

Feathers or cross-ribs likewise—

Six pieces 11⅜ × 2⅝ × ⅝ = 109·8 cubic inches.

Hollows add so little to the weight of a casting that they are generally taken no account of, or something else is set off against them. If the weight is desired so very precisely, they can be reduced to triangles, and the triangles in turn to rectangles.

These totals of cubic inches should now be added together, and multiplied by ·263, which will give the weight of the wheel in lbs.

Reckoning out, we find that there will be 161 lbs. weight of cast iron in this wheel.

There are rules given in various books for calculating the weights of wheel castings by their diameter and pitch. They are principally useful where approximate weights are desired, or where wheels are made by the same rules from which these formulæ are deduced. Three such rules given by three different authorities yield the following results in the wheel we have been considering. It contains—

75 teeth of 1¼-inch pitch, and is 3¼ inches wide, and 2 feet 6 inches diameter.

Formula from D. K. Clark, 170 lbs.
„ „ Unwin, 171 lbs.
„ „ Box, 158·4 lbs.*

In a wheel weighing several cwts. the difference would be more marked. The ring of a bevel-wheel might appear at first sight to offer a difficulty in the way of calculation, its diameter varying at every point. But if we take average diameter and average thickness, it will be just the same as though we divided it into an infinite number of sections, and reckoning each separately added their totals together afterwards.

The recesses in a mortise-wheel will not complicate the matter in the least, for after finding the number of cubic inches in the ring, on the assumption that it is solid throughout, we need then only find the number of cubic inches in each mortise, multiply that by the number of mortises, and subtract the sum total from the number of inches in the solid ring.

A more intricate piece of work, such as a steam cylinder, with passage and perhaps jacket cores, with webs of metal of odd shapes, curved brackets and feet, and such like, should be divided out piecemeal on the drawing itself in order to get exact dimensions. Without this precaution we are likely to reckon some portions twice over, or to omit some parts altogether. In reckoning, it should be our aim to simplify matters as far as possible by reducing everything to *circular* or *rectangular* form.

---

* They are the following:—

$W = (\cdot05 + \cdot08\,p)\,d\,(1 + 0\cdot10\,d).$
d = diameter in feet.
p = pitch in inches.
$\cdot05$ = constant.
W = weight per inch of breadth.
Bevel wheels to be taken at ⅔ to ¾ the weight of spur ones.
—(D. K. Clark, "Rules, Tables, and Data," p. 741, edit. 1878.)

$W = K\,N\,b\,p^2.$
p = pitch.
b = breadth of face.
N = number of teeth.
K = 0·38 for spur wheels, 0·325 for bevels.
—(Unwin, "Machine Design," p. 302, sixth edition.)

$W = (D \times P \times W) + (\sqrt{D \times P \times W}) \times M.$
$D = p$ diameter in feet.
P = pitch in inches.
W = width on face in inches.
M = 12 for spur wheels, 10 for bevels.
W = weight in lbs.
—(Box, "Mill Gearing," p. 24.)

The weight of parallel pipes and columns may be obtained from tables, either by tables of weights for pipes of various thicknesses, or by a table of solid cylinders. Thus—tables are given in all engineers' books of reference of the weight of solid cylinders a foot long.* All we have to do, then, is to take the weight of a cylinder equivalent to the *outer* diameter of our pipe, and subtract from that the weight of one equal in diameter to the *bore* of the pipe. Or if such tables are not at hand we can get the *average* diameter, thence obtain the circumference, and multiply that by the *length* of the pipe and its *thickness*. In a taper column we must take the *average* diameter, and reckon then as though it were parallel.†

If we have a column with a quantity of mouldings and ornamental work, where it would be impossible to strike an average, we must divide into *sectional lengths*, calculate each separately, and adding their totals together, thence deduce the weight.

If a casting weighs several cwts., it is inconvenient to have a sum total in lbs. The multiplier ·009 will convert lbs. into cwts.

In the calculation of weights I find decimals more convenient than vulgar fractions, and inches more convenient than feet. Thus it is easier to multiply—

11·87 inches × 6·75 inches × 4·62 inches

than to multiply

11⅞ inches × 6¾ inches × 4⅝ inches,

and to multiply

69·75 inches × 14·37 inches

than

5 feet 9¾ inches × 1 foot 2⅜ inches.

---

* See Table in Appendix, p. 317.

† A correct rule for finding the weight of a lineal foot of pipe in lbs. is this:

$W = K\,(D^2 - d^2)$.
W = weight of a lineal foot in lbs.
D = outside diameter of pipe in inches.
d = inside " " "
K = a multiplier 2·45 for cast iron.
2·82 for brass.

We have assumed that tables of areas and circumferences are always ready to hand—as they are in the workshop. But when a man is sent out to take dimensions for a casting, it sometimes happens that an approximate weight is required at the same time. It is well, therefore, to bear in mind that—

$$\text{Diameter}^2 \times \cdot 7854 = \text{area}$$
$$\text{Diameter} \times 3{\cdot}14159 = \text{circumference},$$

Or,

$$7 : 22 :: \text{diameter} : \text{circumference},$$

and that cubic inches divided by 4 = pounds, nearly.

MULTIPLIERS FOR THE COMMON METALS.

Cubic inches × ·263 = lb. cast iron
„ „ „ ·288 = „ steel
„ „ „ ·3 = „ brass
„ „ „ ·41 = „ lead
„ „ „ ·32 = „ copper
„ „ „ ·266 = „ tin.

See also Appendix for useful and more extended tables.

CHAPTER XXII.

ON THE USE OF CORES AND DRAWBACKS.

Different Methods of Moulding.—Value of Experience.—Gasholder Bracket.—Drawbacks.—Grid.—Travelling Girders.—Cylinder.—Drawbacks.—Joints.—Lathe-bed.

The pattern-maker is often in doubt as to the best method of taking out the recessed portions of a casting. Cores, drawbacks, dowelled and wired pieces, are the usual means resorted to for the purpose. Sometimes all three methods are practicable, sometimes only two; rare are the circumstances in which the workman is reduced to one plan without having the option of another. Broadly it may be said that castings can be made from patterns which are exactly like themselves. But in very many instances it would be very unpractical, unwise, and expensive to make them thus. Because a moulder can make drawbacks *ad infinitum*, and form joint over joint, as many as it is possible to put in the pattern, that is no reason why a vast amount of unnecessary labour should be undertaken which could have been avoided by a little judicious coring out.

Yet we need not fall, on the other hand, into the error of taking out everything with cores in order to lessen the difficulty of moulding. For cores are expensive, requiring making and drying, and the core-boxes for a piece of work will very often entail more labour in the pattern-shop than the pattern itself. Looking at the drawing of an intricate piece of work for the first time, it is not easy to arrange everything in detail, and to foresee every contingency that may arise, before deciding how best to make the pattern. Yet there is a rough-and-ready kind of intuition acquired by experience, and it is marvellous how readily a skilled hand will unravel the difficulties of a fresh job, and decide in his mind how he will set about it. Taking the various methods in succession—loose pieces, cores, drawbacks—he soon perceives which is feasible and which is impracticable; then what is easy and what is not so easy; then, lastly, which is good and which is best of all. So that before the man with less experience has grasped the leading features of the drawing, the other has already settled in his own mind the lines upon which he intends to work.

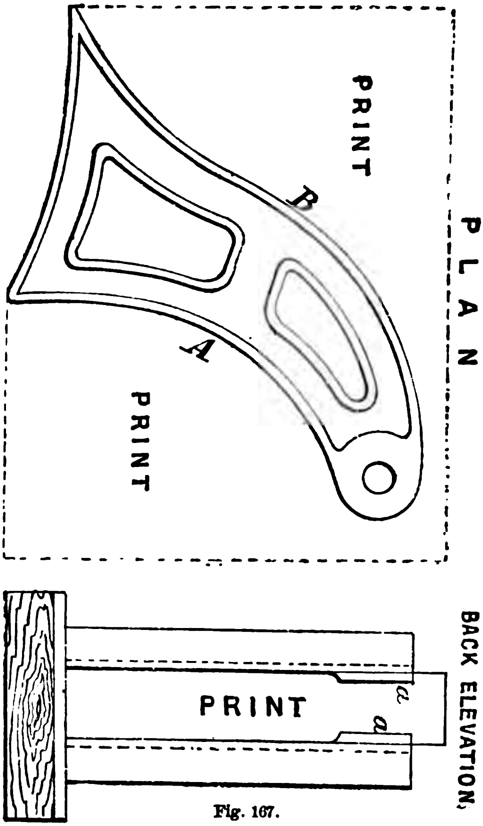


Fig. 167.

But this almost unerring kind of intuition only comes after many years' habitual observation; and also, let us add, after many dearly purchased errors, for here, as elsewhere, failure is the stepping-stone to success. To apprentices and young hands there is nothing which presents such difficulty as this of the best method of moulding; and, in point of fact, it is seldom left to their choice. When the foreman gives out a job he will almost invariably, except in very simple work, give directions as to the way in which it is to mould, and even then a watchful supervision is necessary with the less experienced hands. It is to help such as these in the matter of moulding that this chapter is written. The simplest way, perhaps, will be to illustrate our meaning as we go along by examples taken from actual castings.

Take, for instance, a double bracket (Fig. 167), such as is used for carrying the guide-wheels of a gasholder. Here is a casting whose pattern might be made to mould with the edge

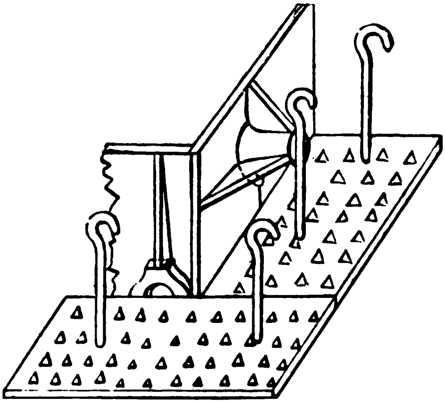


Fig. 168.

A in the bottom and the edge B in the top. Certainly the fillets or flanges round the edges would not allow of the pattern being drawn, but the sand forming the entire sides, including their bounding edges, could be drawn away on plates or "drawbacks."

In case some of my readers should marvel respecting the meaning of this curiously applied term, I will explain. Fig. 168 represents two drawback plates laid against a pattern. On one side of the pattern is a long boss with ribs, on the other a thick bearing with its bracket. We suppose, as often happens, that there is not sufficient central space to draw these projecting pieces into—that cores would mean more work than the job is worth, and that the sides are too deep to allow of jointing down from the top. Then we ram the sand around these particular sections of the pattern upon these plates, dividing the sand on each plate from that on the other and from the outer sand by joints of brown-paper or of parting sand, and afterwards "draw back" the plates, with their complement of sand, from the pattern. The pattern is then lifted out and the face of the mould cleaned and blacked, after which the plates are brought into position again by the paper or sand joints.

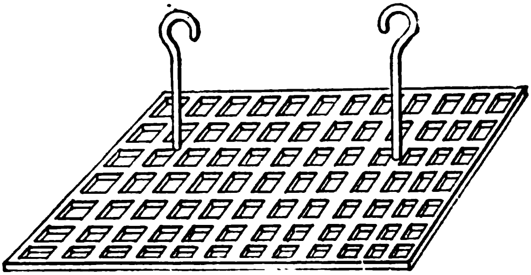


Fig. 169.

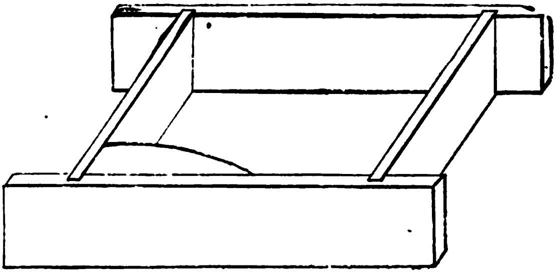


Fig. 170.

Well, we could make the pattern of the guide-roller bracket to mould thus, but we should not care to adopt this method in this case. For the drawbacks would be large and heavy, and the flanges and inner edges of the pattern being square would tear away the mould, there being a vast difference between lifting a pattern out of the mould by gently tapping, and tearing the sand forcibly from the pattern. We should find drawbacks expensive in this case.

But it might be made to mould flat side down, just as represented in Fig. 167, plan, in which case the middle space (Fig. 167), back elevation, would have to be taken away on a "grid," of which Fig. 169 gives a sketch. One side of the pattern would then be left loosely dowelled to come away in the top box, and temporary distance blocks would maintain the sides at their proper width apart during ramming. Yet neither would this be a wiser course to adopt in a pattern of so flimsy construction, though it would be well suited to a stronger piece of work. In this case no two castings would come out alike, but the sides would be winding and not parallel with each other. We should, therefore, taking these things into consideration, unhesitatingly vote for a central core (the outline of which is indicated by the dotted line). Then our double bracket would mould on its side, as in Fig. 167, plan; the core-box being plain (Fig. 170), would involve little labour, and the distance between the frames (maintained parallel by the core-print) would be perfectly uniform. The facing bosses, *a*, *a*, will either be put, one on a bottom board, the other on a crossbar dowelled on the top edge, or be measured into place while the core is being made. Of course the top pattern frame would be dowelled upon the print.

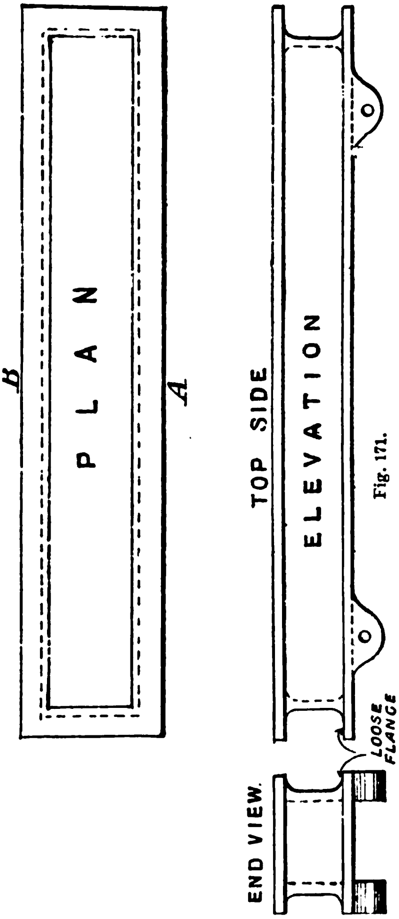


Fig. 171.

Take next a type of cast-iron girder used at the ends of the gantries in overhead travelling cranes (Fig. 171), and which carries the flanged running wheels. Should we take out the centre in this case with a core? The frame in this instance also is double, with a central space, and here analogy would lead one at first sight to think it advisable to mould it upon its side, making A the bottom and B the top, and to take out the central space with a core. But no; here we should use neither cores nor drawbacks, for although we cannot leave the bottom flanges loose round the edges, for the simple reason that owing to their width they could not be drawn inwards, we can leave the entire flange, made as a frame, loosely dowelled to the bottom edges, to be parted from the rest of the pattern by a sand joint. So our pattern will be exactly like the casting in this case, and the trouble of making a plain sand joint will be far less than that of making prints and a core-box, and preparing the cores besides. Fig. 172 shows the pattern in sand completely rammed up.

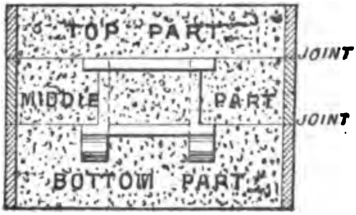


Fig. 172.

Take another form of travelling girder (Fig. 173), where, instead of broad flanges, we have thin fillets, and bearings whose faces stand out beyond the fillets. Here we should leave bottom fillets and bearings loosely wired on, both inside

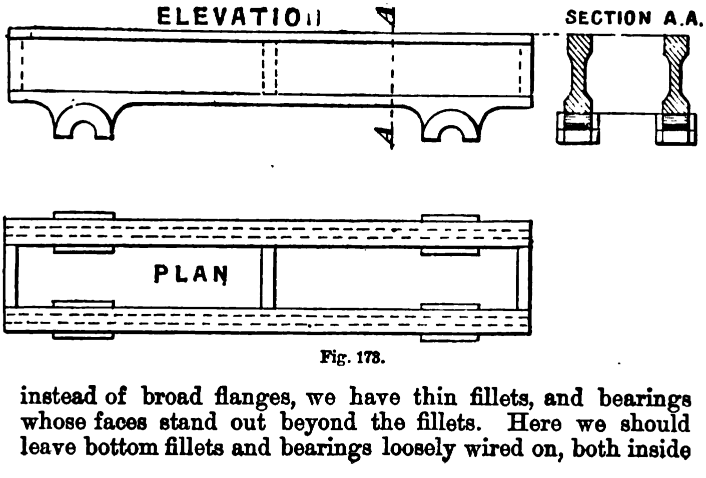


Fig. 173.

and outside. Our sides are, say, 1½ inch thick, and our fillets 1 inch. These latter would draw into the space left by the pattern after its withdrawal; but if, as we will suppose, the bearing-blocks stand out an inch beyond these, they clearly will not come up through 1½ inch space. But we can get over the difficulty of increased thickness in one of two ways here. We could put the blocks on, 1 inch thick, outside the fillets, not screwed, but wired, and draw them *after* the fillets; or we can take away the middle sand on plates, after the sides of the pattern are withdrawn. In a shallow pattern the former entails least trouble; but in the case of a deep girder the latter is the one to be chosen, since it has this great advantage—that both the outer and inner mould is more readily accessible for mending up, blacking, and so forth, when the middle sand is removed than when it remains *in situ*. Fig. 174 shows the pattern rammed up.

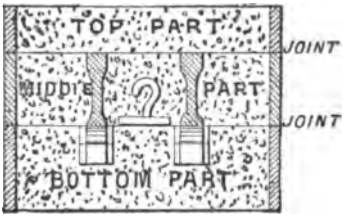


Fig. 174.

The cylinder (Fig. 175) as used in vertical steam cranes affords an illustration of drawbacks, loose pieces, and cores in one pattern. Observe the shape of the feet, A, A; clearly it will not mould on either side, because the cranking of the feet will not allow them to be drawn into the pattern space, and the sand overlying them will prevent their coming up with the pattern, no matter whether we joint it through the plane of the passages, B, B, or parallel with the steam-chest face, C, C. An accurate core, moreover, would be a troublesome thing to make, for it would have to include the entire foot with its bracketings, its bottom face of course excepted. But there is no difficulty if we use drawbacks, and they are very readily manipulated here, D, D. Fig. 175 shows the pattern completely rammed up in a three-parted box, with joints and drawback plates shown. The section is supposed to be on the face of the cylinder flange. Fig. 176 shows the middle and bottom parts of the mould when the cylinder body has been removed and the drawbacks are lifted out, but before the feet are drawn or the middle box parted from the bottom. The section is taken through the middle of the exhaust, the feet, and the steam-chest flange. The exhaust flange and that portion of the body above the foot are in the drawback (not shown), so that that portion of the mould shows a clear space right down to the flange. Fig. 177 shows the right-hand drawback lifted out. The left-hand one, of course, will be similar, except that it will contain also the exhaust portions just mentioned.

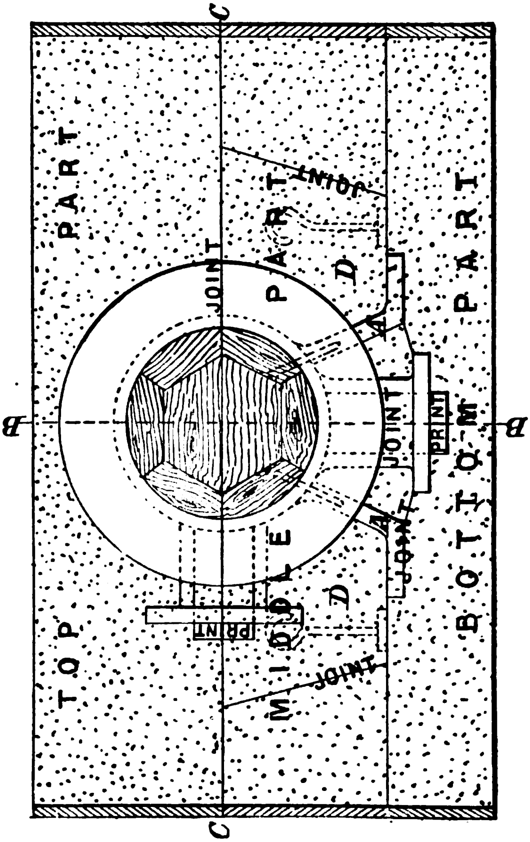


Fig. 175.

Then, further, we must either core out underneath the steam-chest flange or leave it loose. A core would be far too troublesome, so by leaving that flange loose we can joint underneath it, and draw the half-pattern from one box and the flange from the other. And the steam passages must be taken out by cores, the prints for which will be placed on the flange.

The more completely to illustrate this chapter on the diversified methods of moulding patterns, let us discuss the different methods in which a lathe-bed might be made. Every one knows the familiar form of a lathe-bed, with V-shaped edges for the saddle of a slide-rest. The V-strips are planed all over, and that settles at once their position in the mould. They will be in the bottom, to secure the advantage of the soundest and cleanest metal.

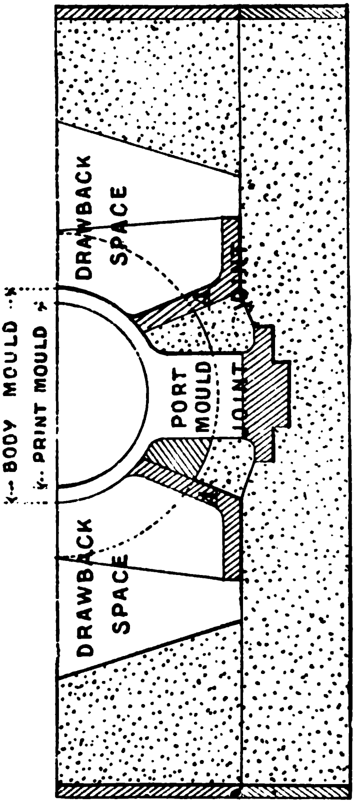


Fig. 176.

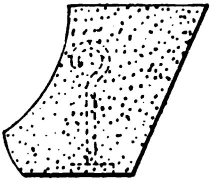


Fig. 177.

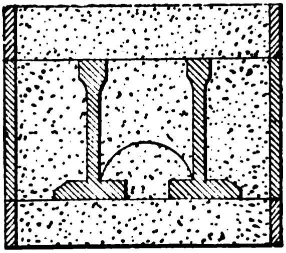


Fig. 178.

But we require to settle something beside the fact that the strips are to be cast downwards before we commence the pattern, and that is, how to taper the sides. Looking at the imaginary mould in section, Fig. 178, we see clearly that, though the sides of the bed can be made to withdraw readily from the sand, it is impossible to lift out the inner and outer bottom strips through the spaces left by the sides. Hence our idea would be to remove some portion of this overlying sand, and so render the strips accessible. From this point of view the pattern could be constructed in three different ways, in order to provide for three methods of moulding and the ready removal of the strips in each case.

The three diagrammatic views, much exaggerated, will clearly illustrate these three methods. In the first instance (Fig. 179) we plane no taper in the stuff which forms the sides, but give, instead, ¼ inch to ⅛ inch of taper (according to the depth of bed) to the ends of the bridges or crossbars, so that the bed shall spread bodily in section. Here the sand forming the inside of the bed will be lifted away on plates, after the removal of the top box, and the pattern itself will be drawn immediately afterwards. The fillets, *a*, *a*, would have to be wired on to lift with the inner sand, and the outer Vee's, *b*, *b*, would also be left loose to be drawn into the middle space left by the lifting out of that sand.

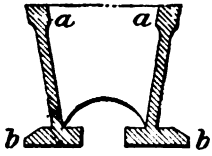


Fig. 179.

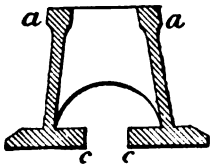


Fig. 180.

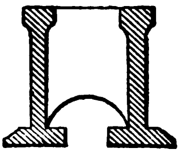


Fig. 181.

The process adopted in method two (Fig. 180) would be the same in principle as the first, but the *modus operandi* would be exactly the reverse. Here the outer sand would be lifted away, either on drawbacks or on an outer encircling plate; then the pattern would be drawn, leaving the middle sand remaining. In this case the inner strips, *c*, *c*, and the outer fillets, *a a*, would be left loose. In the third method (Fig. 181) the median lines of the sides are parallel, and taper is given to their inner and outer faces. The bottom strips, both inside and outside, are wired on, and the screws which unite the sides to the crossbars are withdrawn one by one as the ramming goes on, and when all is rammed up and the top lifted away the pattern is drawn piece by piece, leaving the sand behind. Then either middle or outside is taken away on plates, and the loose strips drawn in. Fig. 182 shows an encircling plate as used for lifting the outside of a mould away bodily.

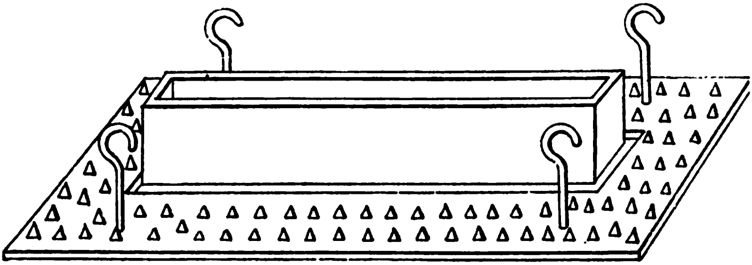


Fig. 182.

The last method is to take out the inside with cores (Fig. 183). It makes a cleaner and truer casting, and as the cores are very plain the expense is not great. Only the outer pieces, *a*, *a*, are wired on. The core-box may be made of the *entire* length of the pattern, and the bridges put in, as into the pattern, or short core-boxes may be made to reach from bridge to bridge.

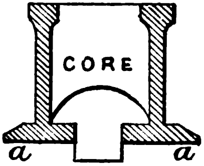


Fig. 183.

Some of my readers may be disposed to put the question, Why lay so much stress on matters of moulding, instead of describing simply how such and such patterns are made? I reply, that in any save the simplest jobs, scarcely any two men would go to work in precisely the same way. A pattern-maker must understand moulding well, and even here the usages of shops differ. The bare description of one pattern would be of little assistance in the construction of another, having perhaps a general resemblance to that, yet differing from it (from the moulder's point of view) in some very important particular. I know of no trade where the methods of working differ so widely as in pattern-making. Many patterns can be made to mould in three or four different ways, and the workmen, therefore, instead of proceeding in certain set grooves, like those of many handicrafts which will occur to the mind, must devote to each new job some amount of originality of thought and modification of construction. It is for this reason that piecework is so difficult of adoption in the pattern shop.

CHAPTER XXIII.

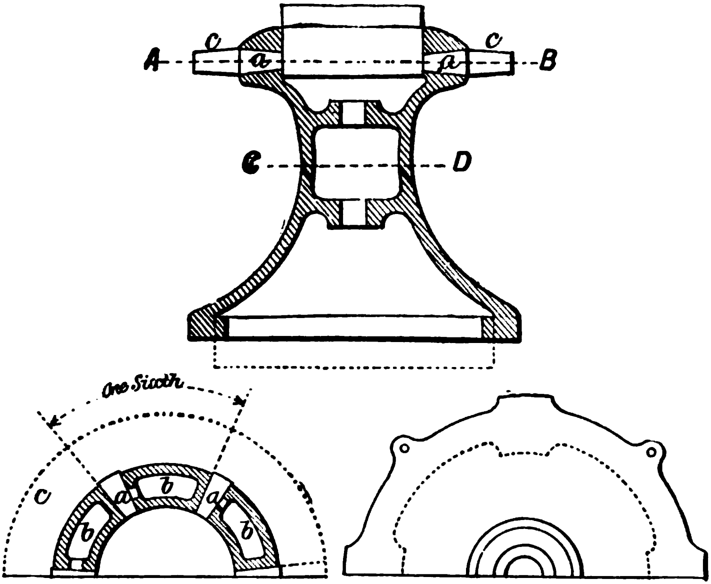
LOAM PATTERNS, &c.

Why used.—Methods of making.—Capstan.—Bar Cores.—Boards.—Core-box.—Remarks on Wooden Patterns.—Loose Pieces.—Stopping-off.—Pipes.—Wheels.—Brackets.—Skeleton Patterns.—Rings.—Levelling-block.—Crane-centre.—Tank-plate.

A LOAM pattern is quite a different thing from a loam mould. We made the boards for a loam mould in the case of the large cylinder (Chap. XII., pp. 99, 100). We will now make the boards for a loam pattern, and that pattern shall be a common capstan. In cylindrical work a loam pattern is advisable when the mould is so small that a man could not conveniently work within it to strike the board round, and yet so large that a wood pattern becomes too expensive. This is usually, in fact, the ultimate consideration: the relative proportion the cost of the pattern bears to the value of the casting or castings. Thus, in the case of a capstan, if we had one or two castings only to make, we should use a loam pattern, but if we required a dozen or twenty castings all alike, we should consider a wood pattern the cheaper. Though its first cost would be considerable, the subsequent expense of the moulding would be diminished in a greater degree.

A loam pattern, then, is a pattern made in loam instead of in wood. Both are exactly alike in outline, the materials only of which they are constructed being different. A loam pattern, like a loam mould, is struck up, but the boards are cut the reverse to those intended for a loam mould. Brackets, however, facings, flanges, &c., not circular, are made as separate pieces, and attached to the loam body by means of nails. Where there is a longitudinal centre core, as in a pipe, a cylinder, or, say, in our capstan, it is customary to strike the core up first on the bar, to dry it, and give it a coat of blacking, and then to strike the body of the pattern over that (see Chap. XIX.). After the pattern is moulded the body thickness is stripped off, and the core is placed in the mould for casting. Evidently this can be adopted only where one casting is required, and if this happens to turn out a "waster," the labour of striking up a pattern has to be gone through again. Therefore the question of striking up a pattern on another bar distinct from the core is an economical matter to be decided by the character and circumstances of each individual job.

Reverting to our capstan body, then (Fig. 184). We take the body, because that alone is made from a loam pattern,



Half Section A.B. *Half Section C.D*

Figs. 184.

omitting the base and cap (not shown) as being wood patterns of so simple a character as to call for no comment. Observe that there are six cores, *a*, *a*, required at the upper part of the capstan for the insertion of the lever bars. There are also lightening spaces, *b*, *b*, between these recesses (Section A, B). We can put in these cores in one of two ways. We might have six prints arranged equidistantly round the pattern, and left loosely set, so that they might be drawn singly into the mould. But as it would be difficult to set them properly in loam, we consider it better to make a print continuous round the circumference, *c*, *c*, and to shape the cores in such a way that they will fill the print ring quite up, or "stop themselves off." Having thus decided, we simply make our boards as indicated in the sketches, Fig. 185 representing the board which strikes the core, Fig. 186 that which strikes the pattern. Stamp the diameters as shown, and mark ends of prints. The dotted line in Fig. 185 shows thickness of metal. Two little battens on the same figures, *a*, *a*, hold the bosses which carry the central spindle. When the core is struck up, of course these projecting bosses form recessed grooves or rings, and if the board were drawn back with these firmly attached to it a portion of the loam would be torn away also. But these are unscrewed after the core is made, the main board is drawn back, and then they are taken away parallel with the axial line. Fig. 187 shows the same enlarged. When the loam pattern is struck and finished, supposing the thickness of metal is struck on the core, it will in section have the appearance shown in Fig. 188.

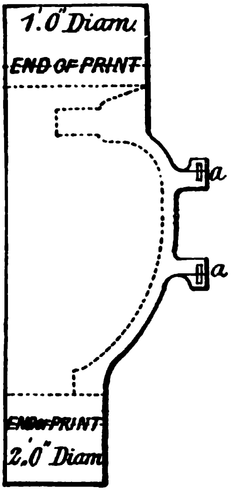


Fig. 185.

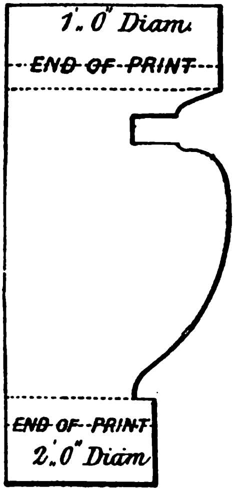


Fig. 186.

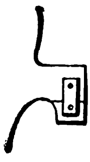


Fig. 187.

Then we take the core-box, and here we observe that a plain tapered box, similar in shape to the holes required for the capstan bars, would be of no use. The sides of the circular print (tapered) and the sides of the holes are not in one plane, but inclined towards one another, and we ought to put this double taper in the core.

It sometimes happens that in a tapered core we can give the same taper to a print which we give to the core, and then the sides of the box are straight bevelled; but in this case such a method would prevent the pattern from moulding. Hence we shall cut the top and bottom edges of the box to the same angle as that to which the sides of the print and the sides of the bar recesses are inclined towards one another (Fig. 189, elevation). This will, of course, necessitate the addition of a bottom board to the core-box, of the same shape as its edge. Further, the cores are intended to stop themselves off; therefore they must be so made that when all are put in place the ring print shall be completely filled up. This we shall accomplish by making the print portion of the core-box to fill up exactly a sixth of the ring print. Then, again, we have cores between the bar sockets, to lighten the casting and to insure regular contraction. The gas must be brought away from these cores; so to insure a communication with the outer air we will make the lightening cores unite with the bar cores by the round holes indicated in section, Fig. 184. Therefore one core-box will fill up print, take out bar and

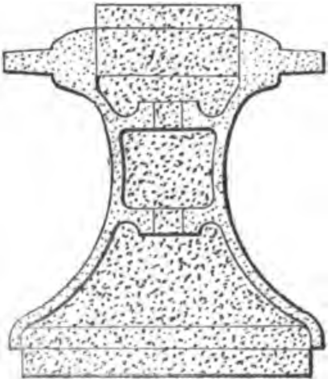


Fig. 188.

lightening cores in one, and all the air will be drawn away at once into the print.

We may note by the way that although we have selected this capstan as an illustration of a loam pattern, it is, where the quantity is sufficient to pay for it, made in wood—moulding in the same fashion, with prints at each end, and a central core struck up on a revolving bar against a board. When, however, capstans are made in large numbers, it is better to have the patterns to leave their own cores. The capstan then would mould upright exactly as it stands when in position, and its pattern would have two or more horizontal joints, depending on circumstances; one at the centre, where the diameter is

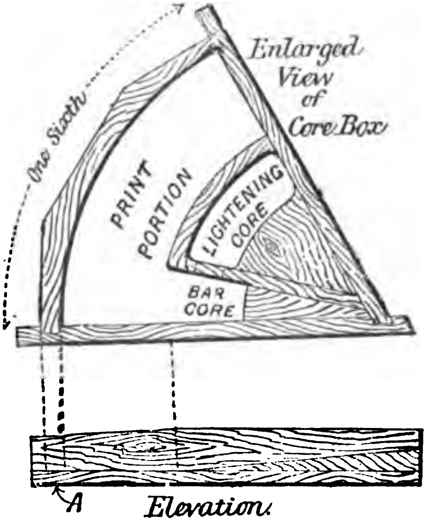


Fig. 189.

smallest—just where the line C D cuts in Fig. 184—and one at the top of the bar cores. The bar cores may be set in prints, or be made to rest upon small oval cores lying upon the central core. The various portions of the pattern will be built up in segments and turned to templet, good glued joints and pegging being essential. The loose joints, where the pattern parts, are either dowelled or turned with shoulders, to drop into one another. The tapering shape of the capstan affords every facility for this way of moulding.

While the subject of the various methods of moulding patterns is under discussion, a few remarks on loose pieces, stopping off, and skeleton patterns will also be in place.

Loose Pieces.—Take the annexed plate (Fig. 190). For some reason or another, generally for the purpose of securing a sound face, as in a surface plate, this must be cast face downwards. Then the proper way is to leave the deep ribs loosely dowelled on. We do so in order that they may be lifted up with the top sand, to be properly rapped and drawn out afterwards, rather than that the sand should be torn away from the ribs and entail a deal of mending up. If these ribs were shallow, the necessity for leaving them loose would not exist; but, in the case of deep top lifts, there should be no exception to this rule.

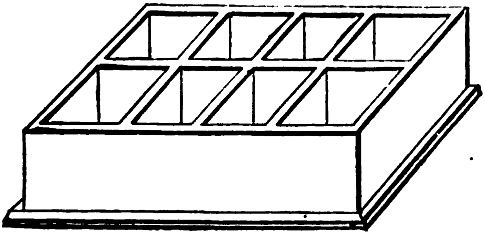


Fig. 190.

Somewhat akin to this is the case of a pipe or cylinder. We know the rule is almost invariably to make the patterns of these in halves, jointed longitudinally. The top half of the pattern is then lifted in the top box and rapped and drawn away from the sand. Occasionally, however, we see a pattern made solid, either through ignorance, or from a false idea of economy, and then the evil results of such a method are apparent in broken edges in the sand, and lapping joints in the casting, the result of imperfect mending up. The evil is seen at its maximum where a loam pattern is used. Here a joint is not practicable, and the rough loam tears the top mould so much that mending-up pieces are always necessary.

Further, if we take a common trolly-wheel, though the back boss is almost as often fastened on as left loose, it is better to leave it loose, with a stud in the centre. For, although, owing to the abundant taper given to such bosses, the top box will often be lifted away without causing fracture of the sand, yet a little unsteadiness in lifting will certainly break the mould, and then the boss must be unscrewed from the pattern and embedded in the broken mould for the purpose of mending it up. The advantage becomes still more obvious if there are deep arms (Fig. 191) in addition to the boss in the top, so that in bevel-wheels, deep spur-wheels with double-ribbed flat arms in the centre of the rim, and similar instances, the portion in the top should be dowelled on—boss and arms usually being fastened together and lifted out as one (Fig. 192). There are few patterns, indeed, in which some parts have not to be left loose, either for convenience of being lifted with the top part, or of being drawn in at the sides, as mentioned in the last chapter.

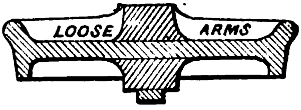


Fig. 191

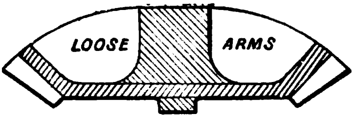


Fig. 192.

Stopping Off.—We have used this term several times in the course of these chapters. It is one in common use in the workshop, and means broadly the modification of the shape of a mould, so that the casting shall be, to the extent of such modification, unlike the pattern from which it is made.

Much can be done in this way by the moulder, and considerable expense saved thereby. A comparatively small amount of labour will often save the cost of a new pattern, or that of extensive alterations to one already in stock. Take, for example, the simplest case we can instance. Say we have a solid plunger pattern, 12 feet long, 6 inches diameter, and we want a casting of the same diameter, but only 10 feet long. If we cut the pattern off, we spoil it for the greater length if required at any future time; but neither should we make a new 10-feet length. So we simply mark a length of 10 feet

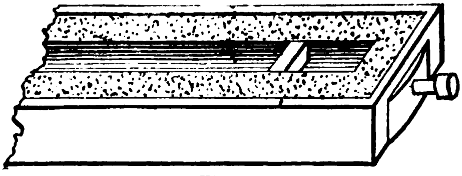


Fig. 193.

in the joint of the pattern at the solid end, and provide the moulder with a semicircular piece of the same diameter as the plunger, and two or three inches long. Before the pattern is drawn out from the sand, he carries the 10-feet mark across the sand joint both in top and bottom, then withdrawing the pattern, he lays the face of the stopping-off piece level with the mark, and fills up the mould beyond that face with sand (Fig. 193).

Instead of a solid cylinder, let it be one hollow in section, say a pipe 5 inches in bore by 6 inches outside diameter. The stopping-off piece will then take the form of Fig. 194. The half-circle, 6 inches diameter, will, as in the last illustration, fit the mould of the pipe body, but it will have a 5-inch half print screwed upon it. This, when laid in the mould and rammed round with sand, will give both the length of the pipe and the shape and size of its print as well.

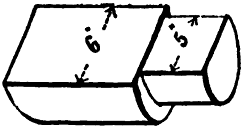


Fig. 194.

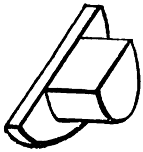


Fig. 195.

If, instead of a plain pipe, we have one double flanged, we should proceed in this way. A pipe, say as before, 6 inches diameter by 12 feet long, has to be made 8 feet long, and at each end of the 8-feet length a flange is wanted. On the pipe body, 8 feet away from one flanged end, we screw a body flange (see p. 153) of the size we want cast on. Then we make a stopping-off half flange and half print that will be dropped into the impression made by that on the body, and there rammed round. Or we may take one-half the flange from the pipe, and, filling up the hole which fitted round the body, screw a print against that, and use it in the same fashion (Fig. 195).

From these illustrations it is apparent that the principle is capable of almost indefinite application. There is, in fact, scarcely a limit to its adaptability. Pattern wheels may have castings made from them either deeper or shallower, without altering the depth of the pattern itself. In the first instance the wheel is *drawn*, in the second *strickled*. That is, supposing the pattern were 3 inches deep, and the castings were wanted 4 inches, the sand would be rammed level with the top faces of the teeth, then the pattern would be drawn up as in delivery, but just to the extent of 1 inch, and the sand rammed level again. The pattern then finally drawn would leave the mould 3 inches + 1 inch = 4 inches deep. Or, in the second case, the pattern being 3 inches, we want the casting 2 inches deep. Then the sand, as before, being rammed level with the top faces, a strickle shouldered to 1 inch in depth is worked around and between the teeth, making a new joint 2 inches from the bottom of the pattern (Fig. 196). Even the outlines of side frames, cheeks, and brackets are altered as occasion arises by this simple method of stopping-off. Thus a wall bracket like Fig. 197, A, would easily be cast like Fig. 197, B, in the manner shown, the shaded parts representing the new pieces put on the pattern which indicate the shorter length required, and the piece C the stopping-off templet for the use of the moulder. In the economy of the trade this principle of stopping-off is of the utmost importance.

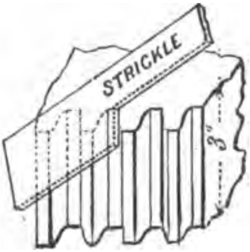


Fig. 196.

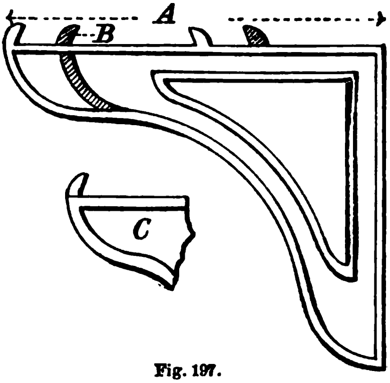


Fig. 197.

Skeleton Patterns.—Loam patterns are economical; but, apart from loam work, there are methods of making some pieces of casting without a complete pattern. Thus, if we wanted a ring somewhat large in diameter, and moreover for a temporary job only, we should make a sweep (Fig. 198) of the same section as the ring, and a foot or so in length. To this we should attach a radius bar, B, in which a hole would be bored corresponding in position with the centre of the ring. A stake, C, driven into the sand would form a fixed centre, around which this would swivel on a hard wood pin or bit of wire, *d*, while the moulder rammed the sweep up a sufficient number of times in succession to complete the circle. Or we may omit the bar, and simply mark two circular trammel lines on a true sand bed, by which to set the sweep.

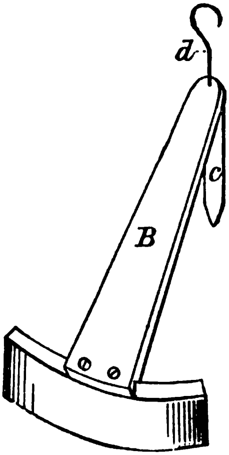


Fig. 198.

As a rule, a whole pattern would not be made for a large rectangular casting, such as a boilermaker's or smith's levelling block. In these cases a frame only would be screwed together (Fig. 199), rough inside, but corresponding outside with the block in length, width, and depth. A level bed would be made on the sand, the frame laid upon it, and the sand rammed round flush with its top edge, and strickled-off level. The pattern would then be withdrawn, its cores put in by measurement, and a plain top box, rammed on the foundry floor and struck off level, would cover the mould over. These are simple illustrations, but the principle is often extended. The cast-iron centres for the wrought-iron truck frames of cranes are made in this way (Fig. 200) The curb ring facing, boss, and bed are strickled in the bottom by a board working round a core-bar, the skeleton pattern frame is rammed around on this, and the top and bottom arms, and middle ribs and boss, are formed by cores.

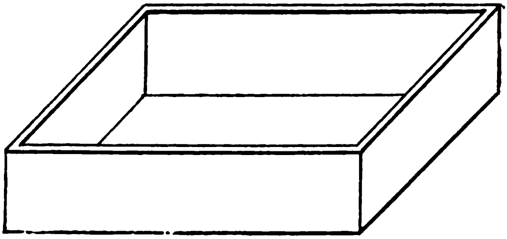


Fig. 199.

Neither in making a plated casting is a whole pattern necessary. The familiar form of a tank-plate will illustrate this. A frame is made corresponding in outside dimensions and in thickness with those of the plate, and to this frame the flanges for bolting are screwed. When the pattern is rammed up and turned over, its position is that represented in Fig. 201. The sand within the frame is strickled over level with its upper face. The top box is then placed over it, and upon the level and hard-rammed surface of the frame the top sand is rammed (parting sand of course intervening). The top is then removed, and the sand within the frame is scraped out with a strickle, shouldered to the same depth as the thickness of the plate (Fig. 201), after which the pattern is drawn out. This method is also applied in modified forms to core-boxes as well as to patterns. In making tank-plates in quantity, however, it is usually considered cheaper to make the pattern solid, and so save the cost of strickling each time of moulding. This is merely a question of relative cost, and does not affect the principle.

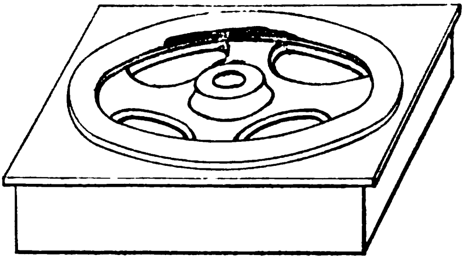


Fig. 200.

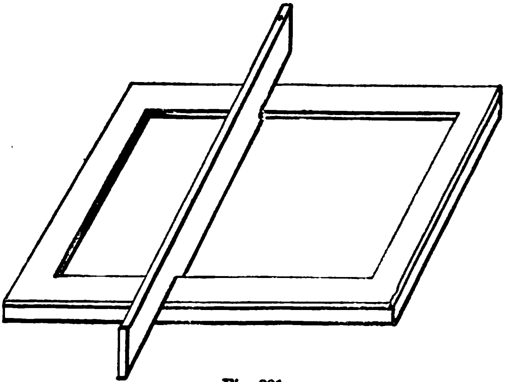


Fig. 201.

CHAPTER XXIV.

SPECIALITIES—SPECIAL TOOLS.

Dowels.—Difference between those of the Cabinet and Pattern Maker.—Wood Dowels.—Metal Dowels.—Peg and Cup and Plate Dowels.—Methods of putting in.—Rapping Plates.—Lifting-straps.—Centre Plates.—Modes of securing Jointed Patterns in the Lathe.—Long-toothed Gauge.—Radius Finder.—Flange Templet.

Though there are many points of similarity among those trades which employ the same materials of construction, each has, nevertheless, its own specialities—special tools, modifications of tools, and modified methods of working. Cabinet-making, carpentry, pattern-making, and the cognate wood trades have many tools in common, yet each also has its appliances separate and distinct from the others. Likewise, boiler-making, smith's work, engine-fitting, brass-finishing—all have this in common—the manipulation of metals, and a knowledge of the qualities which characterise those metals, besides the possession of some similar tools. Yet each trade, again, is so highly specialised that the man who works in one rarely has a thorough knowledge of the other. Taking this view of the matter, therefore, a few remarks upon the commoner specialities of the pattern-maker's craft in particular will, I trust, be in keeping with the scope of this work.

Dowels.—These are in constant request in the pattern shop. But the dowels of the pattern-maker are used with quite a different purpose from those of the cabinet-maker and carpenter. The latter must hold tightly in the wood; the former simply act as steadies to pieces which have to be left loose in moulding. The purpose of the two being quite distinct, their forms differ also. The cabinet-maker's dowel is a parallel pin fitting tightly and glued firmly into each of the two pieces which are jointed together. The pattern-maker's dowel, on the contrary, fits tightly into one piece only, the other being left so easy a fit that the loose piece will come away with the top sand from the lower part of the pattern. But this does not mean "slop," for too slack a fit would cause overlapping joints and inaccurate work. The fit should be good when the joints are closed up, and only slop when they are separated. Hence the dowel is parallel through one-half only of its length, and tapered like a print through the other half, the first portion being that which is driven home, the second that which retains the temporary loose piece in position.

Formerly, all dowels were made of wood in the pattern-shop—oak, apple-tree, birch—almost any hard wood was used. They were either turned in the lathe or else planed up in lengths in an angle-board, to be sawn off just as required, and the half intended for the loose fit filed taper with a safe-edged file. But in the good shops these have long since been superseded (except where rough and temporary work is concerned) by metal dowels made expressly for the trade. These are vastly superior to the wooden ones, being more accurate, less likely to become broken off or damaged, and consequently more durable. Two forms are shown (Figs. 202, 203), each of which are made in various sizes. The peg and cup dowels (Fig. 204) are made in brass, and are quickly fixed; but the plate dowels are more suitable for permanent work.

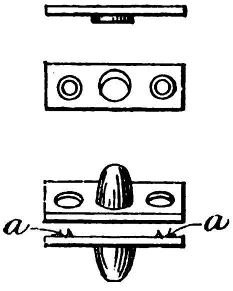


Fig. 202.

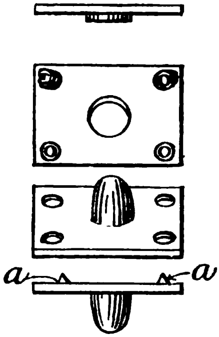


Fig. 203.

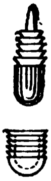


Fig. 204.

The brass dowels are put in thus. Say we have two pieces of wood prepared for a plain round core-box (Fig. 205). Square over from their two correspondingly true edges, two corresponding lines representing the centres of the dowels, measured longitudinally. On those lines gauge at equal distances from the edges other lines, the intersections of which will be the centres of the dowels. But we do not always want the trouble of squaring edges, neither in all cases is it possible to get a square edge to work from. So a true way and ready is to lay a common pin in the joint with its head covering the spot where we want the centre of the dowel to come, and then to press the upper and lower blocks together. The pin-head will leave its impression on the two blocks, corresponding exactly with one another in position, and these form the centres for running in the centre-bit. Half a dozen or any number of holes may be marked thus if needed, and all perfectly true. This is so good and simple a method as to be preferable to the scribing of lines.

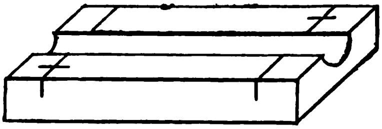


Fig. 205.

Having the centres marked, bore holes, so that both shank and cup may be driven in tightly. Note that the portion which is driven into the wood is not screwed, as it may appear to be at first sight, but is simply grooved out concentrically. The idea is, that the yielding grain of the wood being forcibly driven out of its natural position by the blow, will afterwards swell out and hold the dowels in position by filling up the inter-ring spaces.

The plate dowels are put in thus. On the underside of the female plate there is a ring (see figures). In the joint of one of the pieces of stuff to be dowelled bore a centre-bit hole, into which this ring shall fit tightly, the hole having a depth slightly greater than the length of the dowel-pin itself. Dropping the ring into this hole, scribe round the edges of the plate, remove it, and cut a recess to that size, and equal to the thickness of the plate. Drive in the plate, see that it is flush with the surface of the joint, or, even better, just a shade under it, and screw in place. Then the male plate is dropped in, the top half of the pattern lowered over it steadily into required position and pressed downwards. The two points or nibs, *a*, *a*, which stand out from the back, will then leave an impression in the top of the pattern, by which we can, when turned over, set the plate in that half and mark its exact boundaries. Its recess will then be cut, into which it will be screwed, and if done carefully no fudging will be necessary to insure a proper fit between pin and hole.

Rapping Plates.—A pattern must be subjected to the process of "rapping," else on attempting to pull it by main force out of the mould, all the bounding edges of the sand would cling to it and become broken and torn up. But rapping loosens the pattern by slightly thrusting aside the sand which is in close contiguity to it, and, so to speak, clearing its way. A hole is bored in the pattern, the pointed end of a round bar is thrust into this hole, and the bar is then struck sharply with a hammer on all sides in succession. Now this, as may be believed, is very destructive to the pattern, although essential to the moulding. So plates of wrought or cast iron have long been substituted for the hole in the wood, the plates being let into the pattern flush with its top face.

But a few years ago, perhaps a dozen or more, plates made of malleable cast iron became a speciality, and have gradually superseded the clumsier, and in the end dearer, home-made productions, so to speak, of the shop. They are neat, and are made in several sizes, of rectangular form. In most cases they contain provision both for rapping and lifting. Figs. 206, 207 show two different forms of these plates, *a* being the plain hole for rapping, *b* the tapped hole for the reception of a lifting-screw (Fig. 208). The plates are let in similarly to dowel-plates, and are secured by the longest screws it is convenient to use.

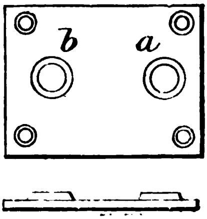


Fig. 206.

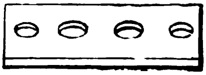


Fig. 20.

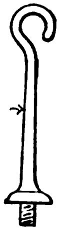


Fig. 208.

Lifting Straps.—When a large pattern has deep sides, a great amount of friction is set up between it and the sand, and it is lifted out with the foundry crane. In most cases of this kind plates would be useless except for rapping, because the strain put upon them in overcoming this friction would tear them away from their attachment in spite of screws. Then we put on lifting-irons or lifting-straps (Fig. 209). These are pieces of thick hoop-iron or thin wrought-iron bar screwed all down the side of the pattern, and bent round at the bottom to a right-angle. The upper end has a hole drilled to receive a rod for the hook of the crane. By making these straps somewhat thick, say $\frac{1}{8}$ inch or $\frac{3}{16}$ inch, they can be made to fulfil another useful purpose in certain cases—viz. they will keep the pattern straight throughout its depth—an obvious advantage where thin stuff is otherwise scantily stayed. As they are used only with deep patterns, the fact of their standing out from the face of the wood to a distance equal to their thickness is attended with no inconvenience, because in such patterns either the middle or the outside of the mould must in most cases be lifted away for the purpose of rendering their faces accessible for cleaning up. Then the impressions left by the straps are filled with sand and levelled.

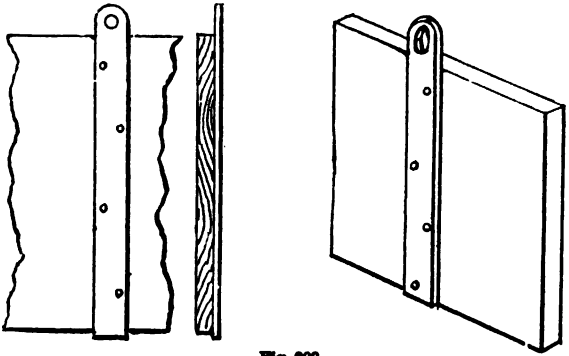


Fig. 209.

Centre Plates.—These are indispensable to the pattern-maker. They are used for the purpose of securing the two halves of a dowelled pattern while it is being turned in the lathe. Those illustrated in Fig. 210 are used for work of small diameter, and the claws, *a*, are sufficient to insure security while turning, but for larger work such could not be depended upon, and plates secured with screws (Fig. 211) are necessary. When centre plates are not used, as in small work, the stuff is secured with wood screws

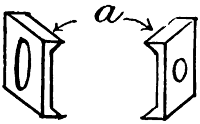


Fig. 210.

(Fig. 212), which figure shows a roughed-out piece of stuff ready for the lathe, or, when the stuff is large, with "dogs" or

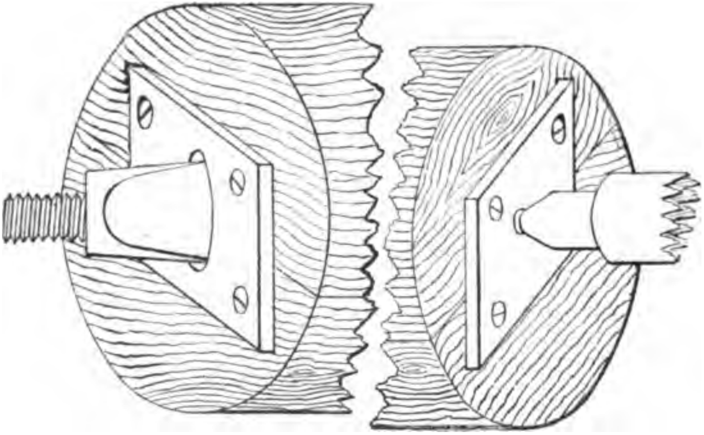


Fig. 211.

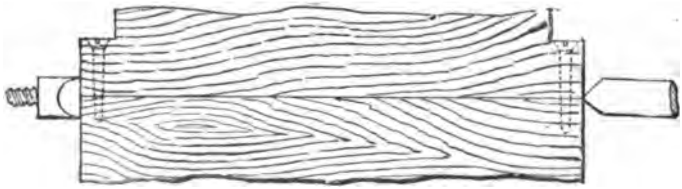


Fig. 212.

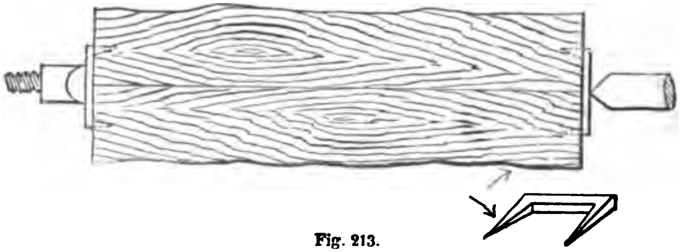


Fig. 213.

"staples" (Fig. 213). But, even when it is not jointed, centre plates should be used with large work, because, without them, both fork chuck and dead centre work into soft yellow pine to a greater depth than is desirable, thereby increasing friction, and sometimes causing the pattern to run out of truth before it is finished.

Long-toothed Gauge (Fig. 214).—This is in constant use in the shop. In gauging quick sweeps to parallel widths, or in gauging parts not on the same level, this is a most valuable tool, as useful in its way as the trammel with an adjustable leg. The scribing point is capable of adjustment, and will gauge anywhere within the range of its length, 4 inches or 5 inches. One face of the stock is flat, the other rounding.

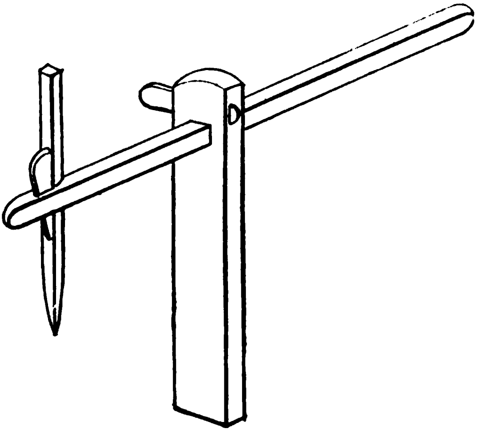


Fig. 214.

Centre Square or Radius Finder (Fig. 215).—A useful home-made article. It is made use of for the purpose of finding rapidly the centre of a disc, without rule, compasses, or geometry. On a piece of mahogany $\frac{3}{8}$ inch thick draw a circle, say, 3½ inches diameter; through its centre draw lines intersecting at right angles. Cut to one of these lines to a little below the centre, A; drive two turned pins, *a*, *a*, through, on those points where the other line cuts the circle, and finish the edges to taste. When the edges of the pins are slid round the circumference of a disc, the edge A always points to its centre. The intersections of lines drawn from opposite sides of the disc will indicate the centre point. The limits of its adaptability range between a diameter somewhat greater than the distance apart of the pins and one twice the length of the stem. This tool has been improved upon in an American article costing about 12s.

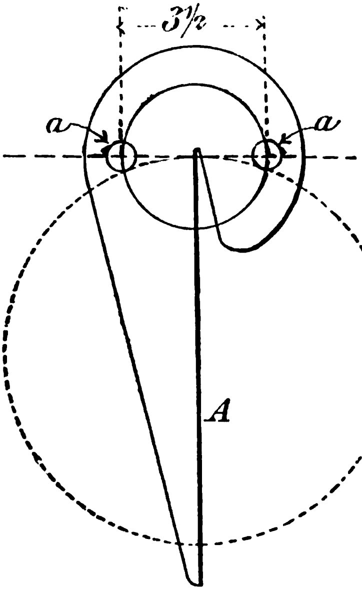


Fig. 215.

Among the numerous little time-saving appliances of the trade I shall mention one more. Every pattern-maker is aware of the difficulty of screwing body flanges quite accurately on pipes, by set-square or trying square, especially when the edges of the patterns have become damaged by long usage. A very simple article by which the difficulty is minimised is shown in Fig. 216. It consists simply of three strips of wood fastened together, with sides parallel, and ends as square as they can be made. Fig. 217 shows the templet in use. Its face is held against

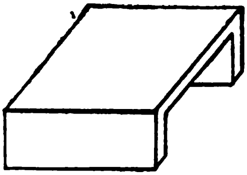


Fig. 216.

the face of the flange, while the screws are run in, one inside edge being of course in contact with the edge of the pipe itself. Half-a-dozen of these, ranging from 2 inches to 12 inches between their sides, will embrace all pipes within those limits.

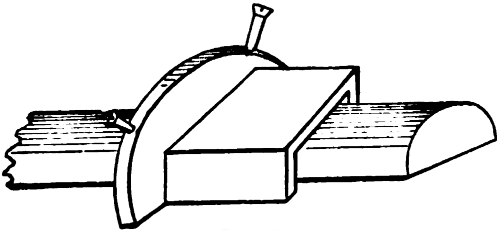


Fig. 217.

CHAPTER XXV.

CHAIN BARRELS.

Various Kinds of Barrels.—Plain and Spiral.—Barrels made from Loam Patterns.—Mode of Striking-up.—Barrels made from Loam Moulds.—Striking-up.—Right and Left-handed Spirals.

Many barrels are made quite plain around their circumference, and then the chain can only lie at an angle (Fig. 218). The disadvantage with these is that the links are apt to override one another, with the result of straining the chain when they are jerked into the normal position by a load pulling at them. Barrels grooved spirally to take the links in flat and vertical positions alternately are made with the purpose of obviating this dangerous liability (Fig. 219). Barrels also not grooved with deep link recesses, but simply hollowed out spirally to take the links in angular position, without the danger of overriding, are also made (Fig. 220).

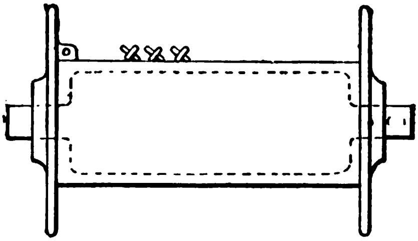


Fig. 218.

The pattern of the plain barrel presents no difficulty. The remarks made in reference to the building up of plain cylinders and columns will apply to these barrels. If small, they are made of solid stuff, jointed and dowelled of course; if large, they are "lagged up" (p. 81). The flanges and their bosses are turned separately and screwed on the ends, and the prints for the hole for the barrel-shaft are fastened outside of these again. The spiral, whether it be a groove or a hollow, is marked out by points of equal division in the manner adopted when making pattern screws (see p. 175). Thus if the pitch of the screw on our barrel were 3 inches, divide that into, say, a dozen equal parts, and divide the circumference into precisely the same number. Through the successive intersections carry the thread. Mark another line parallel with the first for the width of the groove, and work with gouge and chisel. The central core is struck by a loam-board.

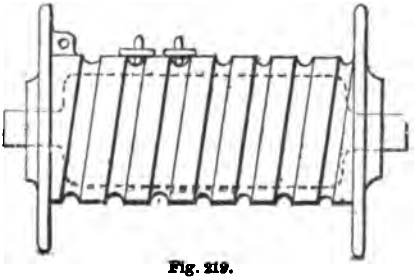


Fig. 219.

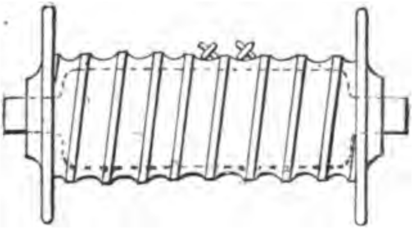


Fig. 220

But the cost of patterns of this kind, except where the same type of crane is being constantly repeated, bears too great a proportion to the cost of the castings. In such cases a plain barrel already in stock, of the diameter of the bottom of the groove, is sometimes utilised by having lead strips cast to the section (Fig. 221), and bent round and fastened with screws. Yet this is a clumsy method, and not to be recommended. A better way, if the barrel does not exceed 20 inches or 24 inches in diameter, is to make a good *loam pattern* (see Chap. XXIII.), which, if well made, and protected with a coat of tar, will

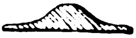
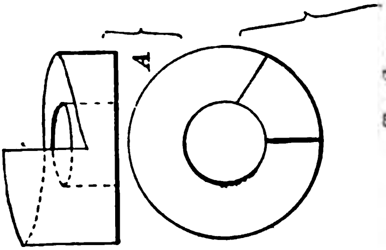


Fig. 221.

stand several mouldings before it becomes rotten. If the barrel exceeds these diameters, a *loam mould* (see Chap. XII.) is our only choice.

To get the spiral groove, a good deal of rigging up is required, after which the process is as simple as possible. Let us take the loam *pattern* first in order.



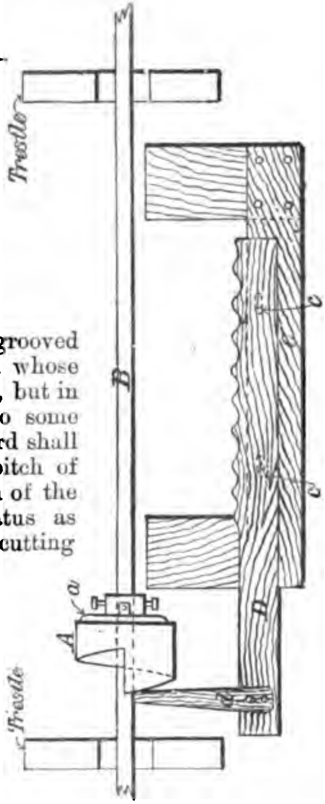


Fig. 222

We require a loam-board grooved along its edge like the barrel whose pattern it is intended to strike, but in the reverse way. Evidently also some arrangement by which the board shall travel a distance equal to the pitch of the screw during one revolution of the core-bar; in fact, an apparatus as regular in its motion as a screw-cutting lathe. But it would be preposterous to think of fitting up change-wheels to a core-bar, so we devise some simpler but equally (for our purpose) effective method. Fig. 222 shows the arrangement.

A is a block of wood turned to any size, say, a foot in diameter, and bored to fit loosely over the end of the core-bar, B. One face of this is cut to form the face of a screw of exactly the same pitch as the spiral on the barrel. Two pieces of paper, equal in length to inner and outer circumferences respectively, and cut to the pitch—that is, tapering from 3 inches to nothing on their lengths—

and glued round the inner and outer diameters, give by their slant edges the lines by which the face of the block is to be worked. On the back of the screw-block a face-plate of iron, *a*, is attached, and by means of the set screws in the boss the screw can be adjusted truly on the bar.

The loam-board consists of two portions—the lower, C, which strikes a loam body ¼ inch or thereabouts less in diameter than the base of the grooves, and the ends, the bosses, and the prints beside, not shown. Over this comes the grooved board, D, which slides upon the bottom one by means of two hardwood pins, *c*, *c*, working in slots, which slots permit of its motion in a rectilinear direction over a space equal in length to the pitch of the screw.

Now all is clear enough. After the loam body is struck up by the bottom board, the latter is of no further service save as a base for the spiral board. It is accordingly drawn back to clear the points of the screw, and the top board dropped into place by means of the pins, in a position corresponding with the commencement of the screw-thread. A boy then turns the handle of the core-bar, and while the core-maker daubs on the loam, another boy steadies the board whilst it is being pulled along by the screw A through the medium of the tongue piece *d*, working against the screw face. Immediately that it gets close to the extreme of the screw pitch the boy at the handle turns more slowly, until the shoulder of the screw is reached, when boy number two slides the board sharply back to the commencement of the thread once more. After this process has been repeated, say, eighteen or twenty times, the loam pattern screw is neatly finished, and is ready to go into the stove to be dried. The loam pattern, when struck up, has at this stage the appearance of Fig 223. The flanges and facing bosses are made of wood, and bored to fit the loam prints.

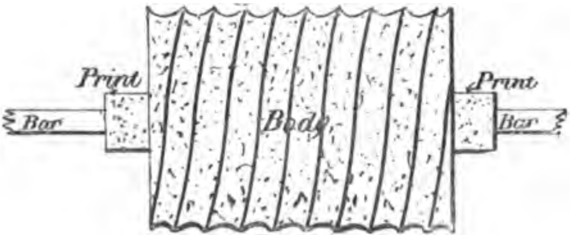


Fig. 223.

Very large drums are so seldom in demand, that usually one casting alone is wanted at a time. Then, if the diameter will permit of a man standing upright within it to work, we make a loam mould. This requires a special rig-up, the same in principle, but differing in detail, from that last described. The same guiding-screw will be used, but it will be laid in the bottom of the mould in a recess specially struck for its reception by the bottom loam-board. The striking-board also, instead of being cut reverse to the screw grooves, as in the last example, will be cut like them; because, in this case, it has to strike the actual mould and not the pattern itself. The apparatus for striking will still be made in two, but will differ from the last in these particulars. First, there will be the

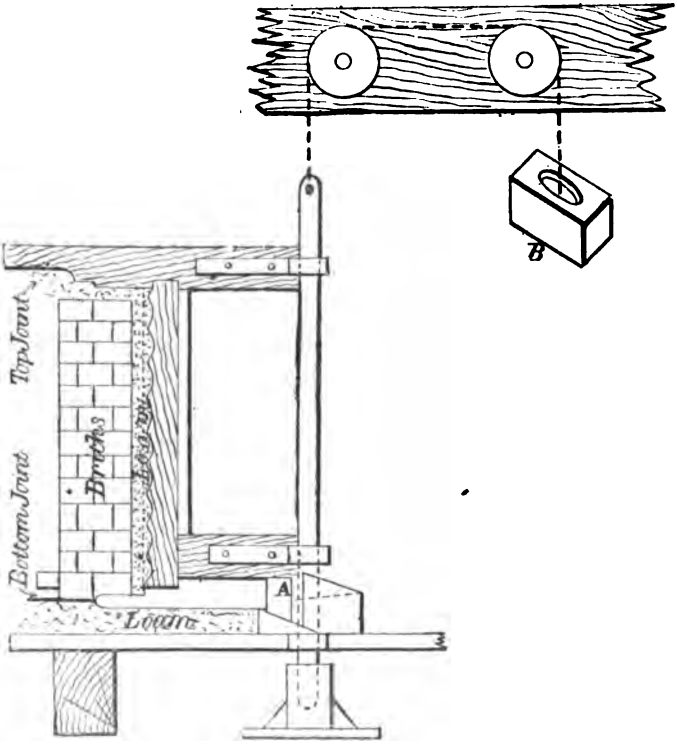


Fig. 224.

under plain board for striking the loam body, not as in the last, ¼ inch smaller than the base of the grooves, but the conditions being reversed, ¼ inch larger than their tips. Then the second board, its edge cut to the shape and pitch, will not work in slots, but will be screwed to the first-mentioned one, and the necessary vertical movement will be accomplished by another device. Fig. 224 represents the apparatus rigged-up ready for striking the spiral. The top joint will have been struck before the screwing-tackle is put in.

A is a block of wood carrying a small iron roller, enlarged at Fig. 225, which runs on the face of the guiding-screw, the block being fastened firmly to the bottom bar of the striking-board with wood screws. B is a counterpoise which, by taking the weight of the board and striking-bar off the roller, allows the whole affair to run with very little friction, and leaves the moulder free to give his attention to the loam without much expenditure of muscular effort. When the board drops from the top to the bottom of the guiding-screw at the end of each revolution, a groove will necessarily be cut in the loam equal in width to the thickness of the board; this the moulder will fill up when wet, and dress off afterwards when dried. With this exception, the action is quite automatic; the moulder has

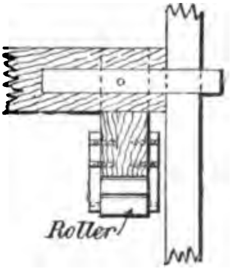


Fig. 225.

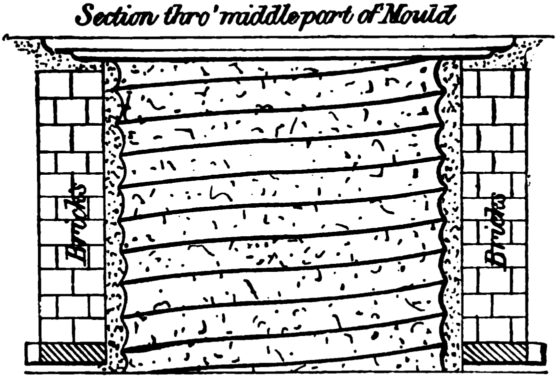


Fig. 226.

merely to move the board around, and see that the loam he throws against its face is of the proper consistence. Fig. 226 shows half a section of the middle part of mould. In cranes of heavy construction it is common to have two chains winding at once, one from each end of the barrel. This means a double spiral, right and left-handed (Fig. 227), and, of course, two guiding-screws, one cut to a right-hand, the other in a left-hand direction. The grooved board also will be only half the length of the other, and will strike the two screws distinct.

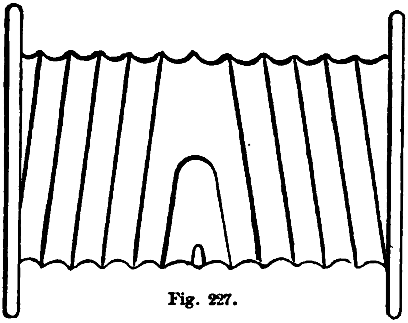


Fig. 227.

Thus, say the screw commencing at the centre of the barrel and running upwards is right-handed, while the other running downwards is left-handed. The grooved board will be screwed on first for the top screw, and the right-hand guiding-screw put in the bottom. When it is struck, the grooved board will be removed to the bottom, and the left-hand guiding-screw put in. The bottom screw is struck last to prevent its receiving damage from the tumbling down of loam from above.

The making of the lugs, or recesses, as the case may be, for the attachment of the chain or chains is too simple a matter to call for comment, and the making of flanges and boards, top and bottom joints, has already been described.

CHAPTER XXVI.

CHILLED WORK.

Theory of Chilling.—Trolly-wheels.—Curve of Disc.—Chill.—Top Box —Roller.—Jointing of Chill.—Wheel Naves.—Clips.

The art of chilling castings properly is only to be acquired by long experience and observation. The theory is, that by the chilling of a casting the separation of the graphite from the iron is prevented, and combination takes place instead. The essential thing is so to mix various classes of iron together that a chilled face penetrating to any required depth may be assured. Consequently, it is somewhat of a trade secret; those who know how to chill keep the results of their experience to themselves. But, as regards the pattern-maker, the only knowledge necessary to be imparted is how to make due provision for patterns whose castings have to be chilled.

A chilled surface results when molten iron is run against a cold metallic mould. The crystals of metal invariably arrange themselves at right angles with the cold surface, and they become white, hard, and of a steely nature. The regularly crystallised portion may extend from ¼ inch to ¾ inch in depth, and presents a most characteristic section when broken along the course of the needle-like crystals (Fig. 228).

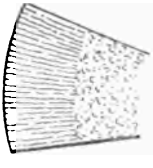
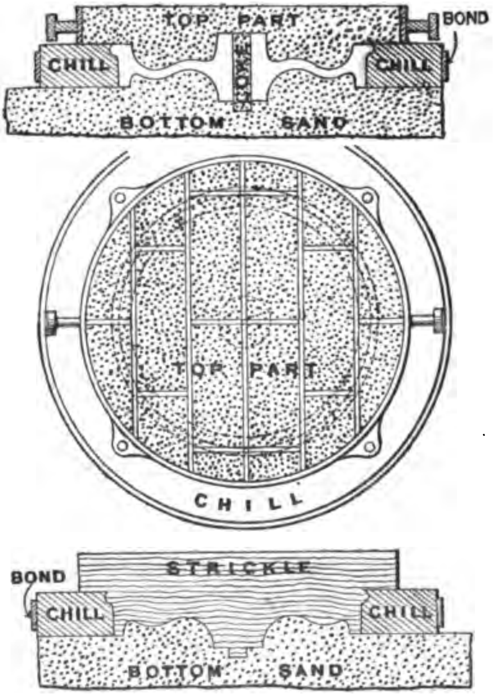


Fig. 228.

Take a simple illustration in the first place. We want to chill a trolly-wheel so that it may resist the grooving action of the rail for a long time. We could not possibly chill a thin wheel without weakening it very much; therefore it should be substantially proportioned *round the rim*. Properly, too, it should be a plated wheel. We have several times had occasion to refer to the internal stresses set up in cast iron through the irregular cooling of different parts, and in particular when treating of strap pulleys (p. 120) we mentioned that the curved arm was adopted with the view of lessening the liability to fracture arising from that cause. For the same purpose when we chill wheels, we curve, not indeed the arms, for arms are not so suitable here, but the discoid centre (Fig. 229). The rim is chilled almost immediately that the fluid metal comes in contact with the cold iron ring, and consequently it has no further contractile power. But the centre being yet red-hot, goes on contracting after the setting of the rim. In a small wheel the natural elasticity of the iron will prevent any evil effects arising from this source, but a large one must either inevitably break or be liable to fracture at any future time through internal tension and stress. By imparting a large amount of curve to the disc the wheel is safe,



Figs. 229, 230, 231.

provided, of course, that the metal in the boss is not in excess, and that the proper mixtures are assured. The disc will accommodate itself to molecular stresses, and lose some slight portion of its curvature.

First in order we take the pattern., There will be no difference between this and any ordinary pattern of the same class. Build up in segments as usual and turn to templet. Then follows the chill. It is seen in section in Fig. 229, and in plan in Fig. 230. It is made wide, and bonded, otherwise it is liable to burst. Six or eight inches of metal in the chill will not be too much for a wheel of two or three feet in diameter. It is accurately bored to the same shape as the wheel rim. As the rim alone needs chilling, the two faces of the castings are made with a sand mould. The bottom face will be strickled, the strickle working on the edge of the rim (Fig. 231). After having strickled the bed, the pattern will be laid upon it, and in the chill. Then the top box will be placed in position, and secured by its pins dropping into holes drilled in the top face of the chill, while the upper face of the pattern is rammed up. Or, instead of bedding in the sand floor, a bottom box can be used, and the pattern turned over. The mould, when cleaned and put together, will have the sectional appearance of Fig. 229. Fig. 230 shows it in plan. The rim will, if the founder makes his mixtures properly, be chilled as hard as highly-tempered steel to a depth of from ¼ inch to ¾ inch, as desired.

Suppose, however, that we have to make provision for chilling a roller for a turntable or for a crane, as shown in Fig. 232. It is quite clear that although the metal could be run into the chill, the casting could not be got out; therefore in this case we must part our chill. One way to part it would be through the centre in the plane of the wheel (Fig. 232, *a*, *a*), moulding in other respects as in the last instance. This would answer the purpose, and the only objection to it would be the "fin," as it is termed, or thin film of metal which forms at the joint. This could be ground off, however. Or the chill could be jointed in three in the line of the wheel axis, and fastened with cottars passing through lugs. Of the two, the latter is, perhaps, preferable, though a little more expensive to construct (Fig. 233).

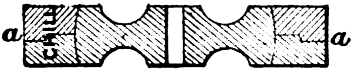


Fig. 232.

Some castings are chilled through their inner diameters. A wheel nave will illustrate how this may be done. Common wheel naves, with tapered holes for tapered axles, are not bored; yet it is necessary that they should be smooth and truly circular, and durable beside. In order to effect these ends, a chill is often used in preference to a common core. Having the pattern presumably with its prints true, and the chill with ends corresponding exactly with the prints on the pattern, the one essential is that the chills shall always occupy precisely the recesses formed by the prints in the mould. This could not be insured in prints formed in sand, because the weight of the iron chill would displace the more yielding sand to a certain extent. So iron rings, bosses, or clips, it matters not which, are cast and bored to fit alike around the pattern prints and the ends of the chill, and these being either rammed up in the sand, or fastened to the top and bottom respectively of the moulding box, retain the chill in place. Fig. 234 shows different forms of clips. Fig. 235 shows them attached to the pattern. Fig. 236 shows them round the chill.

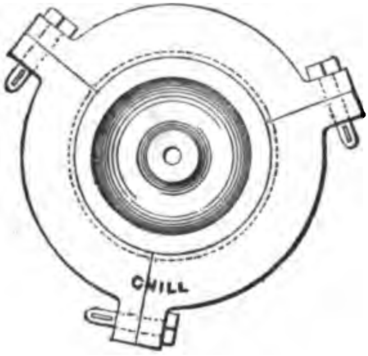


Fig. 233.

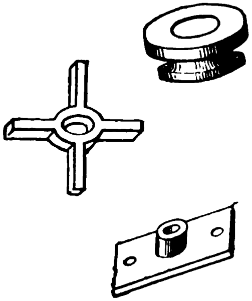


Fig. 234.

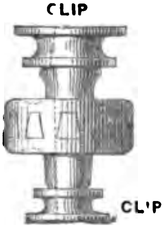


Fig. 235.

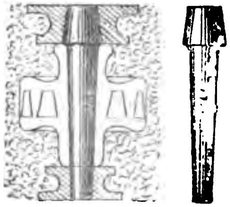


Fig. 236.

CHAPTER XXVII.

SCREWS.

Principle of the Screw.—Diameter.—Pitch.—Striking out.—Entire Patterns.—Fitting the Segments.—Working to Shape.—Pile Screws.—Propeller Screws.—Marking out.—Pattern Blades.—Loam Screws.

Screws will range from a few inches in diameter up to several feet. They will contain several revolutions, as in those for corn elevators and brick machines; or a single revolution only of the blade, as in pile screws; or fractional portions of two three, or four helices, as in propellers. We can also mould them from patterns, or strike them up in loam. To a young hand a screw appears a most difficult task—a veritable donkeys' bridge, the *Pons Asinorum* of his craft. How to get the necessary lines is by no means clear, nor, having got them, how to work the blades. But if the fundamental principle of the screw be borne in mind, viz. the development of an inclined plane around a cylinder, no real difficulty need be experienced in work of this kind. Details will vary, and a considerable degree of accuracy will be requisite, but a screw is only a screw after all, no matter how it may be modified.

The diameter of a screw is measured across the tips of the blade (Figs. 237, 238). The pitch is the distance between the centres of the blade when it has made one revolution (Fig. 237). So that a piece of paper shaped like an inclined plane,

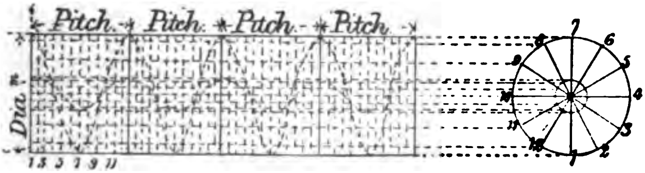


Fig. 237.

equal in length to the circumference of the screw, as wide at one end as the pitch of the screw, from thence tapering to a point at the other end, will, when wrapped round a cylinder of the proper diameter, form a helix around its circumference. Similarly any number of revolutions could be formed by describing corresponding lines on a sheet of paper long enough to embrace the total number required, such lines to fulfil the condition stated above, and to run parallel with one another (Fig. 239, A, A, A, A).

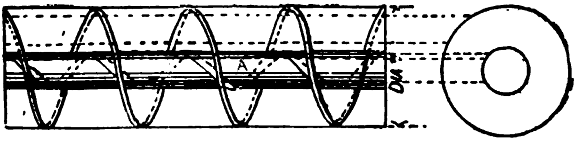


Fig. 238.

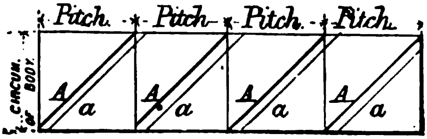
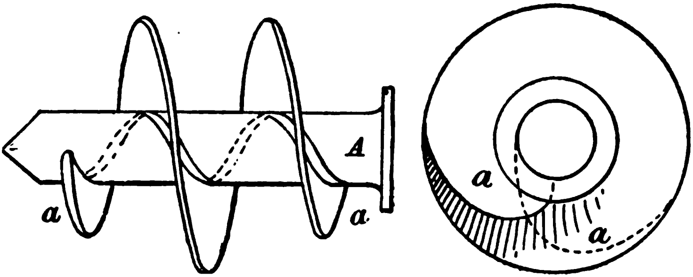


Fig. 239

But this, though a correct and ready method in the case of small screws, would not be quite so practicable with those of large diameter which are not cut from a solid cylinder. Some other method is desirable, and the following answers for a screw of any diameter, and also for the projection of the screw on the drawing-board.

Divide both the circumference and the pitch into the same number of equal parts (Fig. 237)—10, 20, 50, it matters not, so that they are equal; but the greater the number of divisions, the more accurately will the screw be lined out. Through the successive intersections of these lines draw a diagonal, right or left handed, as required, and this will represent the line of the screw thread—either its edge or centre, whichever we choose to elect (Fig. 237).

If we had to make a screw either with one or with several revolutions and of small diameter, we could cut it out of the solid stuff, as we did in the case of the worm (Chap. V., p. 34). But such a course would be open to this objection—that the fibres of the grain would be no longer than the thickness of the screw blade, and our pattern would become damaged or broken by a very slight amount of ill-usage. Hence a better way—the correct way, in fact—is the following. First joint, dowel, and turn up the body of the pattern, *i.e.* the solid portion round which the helix turns (Fig. 238, 240, A, A). Evidently the pitch of a screw at the base must be equal to the pitch at the point. So we mark our inclined planes diagonally across, uniting the lines which represent the pitch, with the edges which complete the circumference, on a piece of paper of the breadth of the screw body, and of length equal to its circumference (Fig. 239, A, A, A, A). Parallel with these lines, and at a distance from them equal to the thickness of the screw at the root, we mark other lines, *a*, *a*, *a*, *a*, and then glue the paper round the turned body. The space inclosed by these parallel lines represents the width of a groove which is to be channelled out about $\frac{3}{16}$ inch deep, with saw, chisel, and templet, to receive the actual screw. When the groove is cut the body will have the appearance of Fig. 241, which represents the body of the pile screw (Fig. 240).



Figs. 240.

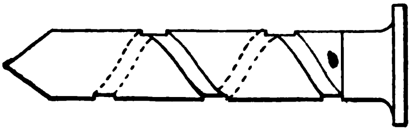


Fig. 241.

Then for the actual thread, get out a number of segments roughly, like miniature propeller blades, long enough to reach from the bottom of the groove to a little beyond the screw tip, say ¼ inch, and a little thicker than the thickness of the screw at the root or base. The width will be immaterial—say a sixth of a revolution each in a small pattern, a tenth or a twelfth for a large one. Let the grain fibres run towards the centre of the screw's diameter to afford the greatest strength (Fig. 242), which represents three such roughed out blades. Each of these pieces must now be fitted in succession with gouge and chisel in the grooves previously cut, and the centre line of each piece should stand approximately square with the axis of the screw body. As these are fitted in succession they must be held in place by means of screws run in from the *joint* of the body. When the desired revolution or number of revolutions is complete, replace the body in the lathe, and turn the edge of the blade to the proper diameter, holding the tools with a firm grip to avoid a smash.

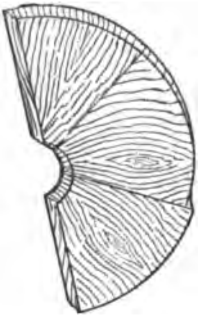


Fig. 242.

This being done, mark on a strip of wood the number of divisions into which it is intended to divide the pitch (Fig. 243); lay this on the lathe rest, and with a timber scribe set off corresponding lines on the revolving pattern. Then divide the circumference into the same number of equal parts as that into which the pitch is divided. Through the successive intersections of these lines draw a helix by means of a narrow blade of thin steel bent around the edge (Fig. 244), which represents the pattern at this particular stage. Previous to marking these divisions, especial care should be taken that we start square with the body. A good way to begin at right angles is to take the pattern out of the lathe before marking out the point of the thread, unfasten the joint, and mark a centre line on the blade *in the joint* with a square. This produced to the outside will form a correct starting-point for the subsequent dividing out.

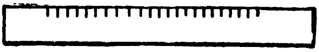


Fig. 243.

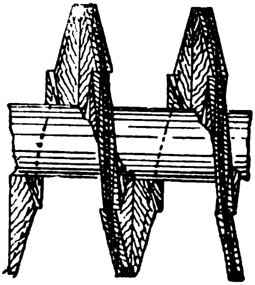


Fig. 244.

The thickness of the screw at the tip will be pricked with compasses and marked equidistantly from the centre line, using the bent steel, as before, to run the lines round. The segments forming the helix will then be all unscrewed at the joint, and one by one worked to shape. This simply consists in cutting *straight* outwards from the thickness of the root, given by the width of the groove, to the thickness at the tips last marked (Fig. 245). A rebate plate, slightly rounded on the face, is the best tool for this purpose, and the work must be tried with a straight-edge from time to time, to be assured that every line running to the centre is straight, and not rounding or hollow. Clean up with glasspaper and replace in groove.

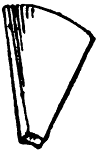


Fig. 245

If our screw be a small one, say of not more than 10 inches or 12 inches in diameter, these blade segments can now be finally and permanently fixed in place. For a small screw, even though it have a good many revolutions, can, if worked carefully, be drawn, or rather screwed, out of the sand by a spiral twist. But if the screw be one of two or three feet in diameter, the friction of the sand against its sides is much too great to allow of this. In such a case each segment must be drawn separately. This is only possible by allowing the radial joints full freedom to slide over one another; hence screws and brads cannot be used to keep those joints flush in the mould. Yet they must have some steadiment during the process of ramming up, and this can be afforded by an oblong dowel at the tip of the thread (Fig. 246). Each segment piece which contains the dowel-hole can then be drawn out, followed by the piece containg the dowel. The screws in the joint of the body retain the segments in their grooves during ramming up. After they are drawn, the body is lifted out and the segments follow singly.

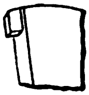


Fig. 246.

The taper of the pile screw (Fig. 240, *a, a*) is given after the screw is worked. It is marked round with a pencil, the eye judging of its shape, or the entire circumference may be divided into a number of equal parts, and in each division, beginning with the first, a corresponding division will be pricked, proportional with the required amount of taper.

In making the pattern for a propellor screw, precisely the same principles of design will guide us as in the previous case, but our mode of working will be greatly modified.

Say we have to make a common screw of 6 feet diameter and 12 feet pitch, by pattern. It may be two, three, or four-bladed, that is, it will contain segmental portions of two, three, or four helices. Our first care is to strike it out. Fig. 247 shows a three-bladed propeller, though not a working drawing; for in practice it is not necessary to strike out the whole screw.

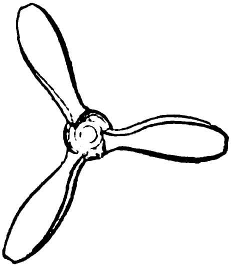


Fig. 247.

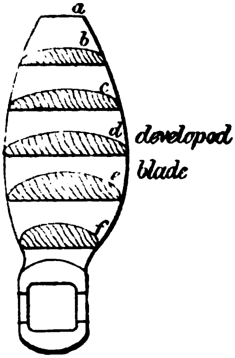


Fig. 248.

All we need take is some aliquot part of the circumference, and a corresponding proportional part of the pitch, from which to get our data. Usually we want the angle at tip of screw, and a single developed blade with a boss section. The blade is developed as shown in Fig. 248 in order that the pattern-maker may prepare his templet strips for the guidance of the moulder, those strips corresponding in shape with the sections drawn across the blade. The angle at tip is required so that a templet may be cut for the building up of a pattern blade, or a sheet-iron guide made for the striking up of a loam bed. Imagine the circle formed by the tip of the screw to be unrolled—that is, take the circumference of the circle, in this case 18 feet $10\frac{1}{8}$ inches, and let that form the one side of a right-angled triangle (Fig.

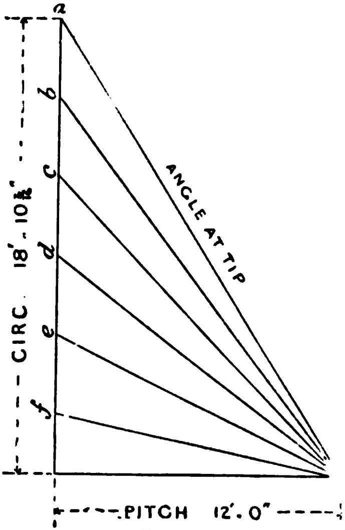


Fig. 249.

249), the pitch of the screw, 12 feet, being its base; then the angle the hypothenuse will make with the side will represent the angle of the tip of the screw.

This need not, however, be drawn to full size, since in equally proportioned triangles the corresponding angles are equal to one another. So we can make it to any convenient scale, and measure upon it the actual breadth of the screw blade, and divide into as many parts as we divide the radius of the screw into, *a*, *b*, *c*, *d*, *e*, *f* (Fig. 248). These lines will represent the respective angles made by the screw sections at those points.

When a pattern blade is made, it is built up in overlapping strips, as shown in Fig. 250. The strips, it will be observed, are planed to a uniform thickness of ¾ inch or 1 inch, so that when glued together their squared edges form an exact guide for the dressing off to shape. Work from end to end with planes, remembering, as before, that every line running from centre to circumference is straight. If the pattern blade is to be used for casting an entire propeller, the most convenient way of doing so is to make a core-box, put the blade into it, and make as many cores as we require blades. The thing to be noted is that the angle at the segmental boss is suited to the number of blades, 90° for 4 blades, 120° for 3, &c. If a core-box is not used, the blade is attached to a centre bar, and rammed up as many times as there are blades in the propeller. Movable top plates, or drawbacks, are used to carry the sand over the blades.

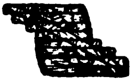


Fig. 250.

In striking up screws entirely of loam, templets of sheet-iron are required, somewhat longer than the blade of the screw at its widest, and deep enough to take the amount of inclination which the pitch gives to each blade. The lower edge being supposed to remain truly horizontal, the top edge is cut to the angle of the pitch, and the plate then bent between rolls, to a circumference somewhat larger than that of the screw tips, is set in position around the bottom plate, and held upright by stakes, or other suitable contrivance, driven into the foundry floor. Then, on the building-up plate and underneath the places which the blades are to occupy, the moulder bricks up three sloping beds, filled in with ashes for the escape of the gas, and covers them with loam struck to shape either by a board working round a central bar, or by a straightedge working across from an inner to the outer templet. The pattern-maker now has to provide outline and sections of blades. The best way to get the outline is to make a templet from the drawing, either in tin, brown paper, or thin wood, and to mark its shape on the loam with a scriber passed around its edges. For the sections, get some strips of wood cut to the respective cross sections of the screw (Fig. 248), or, better still, strips about ¾ in. thick cut to section, but cast in lead, and bent each to the curve of the radius at its own particular section. These are set upon the loam face in their proper positions, and their purpose is to afford a sufficient guide to the moulder in getting the proper blade sections. This he does by filling in the interstices of the strips with loam or sand, and strickling it off level with the curved upper faces of the same. The central boss is either made in loam or wood—usually the former. Parting sand being strewn on the blade surfaces, the tops are rammed up in green sand, or as is usually the practice in large foundries where a stove is available, in loam, to be afterwards removed and dried. The templet strips, and their interlying loam, when taken away, leave the bottom face clean, and ready to receive the dried top parts for final fixing and casting.

CHAPTER XXVIII.

FOUNDRY REQUISITES.

Moulding Boxes.—Their Proportions.—Details of Parts.—Variations in Type.—Box Parts.—Dimensions.—Pattern Work for.—Swivels.—Lugs.—Grids.—Back Plates.—Core Rings.—Gaggers.

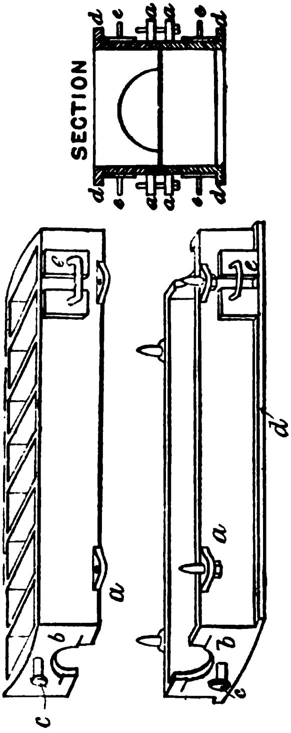
MOULDING boxes or "flasks" are rough articles which any one can make; yet, like everything besides, if one were told for the first time to make a pattern for one of these, he would be in doubt what proportions to give to it.

In the first place, then, the size and shape of the box will be decided by that of the pattern which has to be moulded in it. There should be two or three inches of sand on each side of the pattern in the narrowest portions, and from three to six inches on top and bottom—less in the case of small boxes, more in that of larger ones. It is most essential that a box should be rigid, even if that involves more cost in metal and some extra ramming up of sand. There is an immense fluid strain on a large moulding box when the metal is being run in = head × sp. gr. × superficies of mould. Also in the lifting about and turning over of the box, with its weight of contained sand, there are considerable straining forces at work. A flimsily proportioned box will spring, causing portions of sand to become loosened, to the endangering of the mould and the casting. The liquid pressure of metal will also tend to open its joints and make the casting disproportioned. For these reasons the metal in a moulding box should be heavy in proportion to its size. A box soon pays for itself, and the metal is always worth its first cost.

Usually the top part of the box has vertical bars, and, unless in cylindrical work, the bottom part flat bars. In boxes for cylindrical work there are vertical bars in both top and bottom. If there is a middle part it is usually without bars. The vertical bars should be brought within about $\frac{3}{4}$ inch of the joint edge of the box, and within the same distance of the pattern they are to inclose. The edges of the bars next the pattern are chamfered (Fig. 251). They may be placed from five to seven or eight inches apart in the box, contingent upon size and circumstances. In common with the box sides, let them have plenty of taper—from ⅛ inch. to ¼ inch.

Fig. 251.

Strong lugs are placed at intervals on the box sides (Fig. 252, *a*, *a*), to carry the pins which connect the parts together. During casting the latter are kept close, either by weights or cottars; in the latter case cottar-ways are cut through the pins. Swell pieces (Fig. 252, *b*, *b*) are put on the ends to impart strength and to give extra thickness for the swivels, *c*, *c*, to carry which pocket prints are fastened on the swells. Flanges are often cast round the top and bottom edges, *d*, both for convenience of turning the box over and for the attachment of flat stay plates to support the sand in deep vertical casts, such as cylinders and plungers. For lowering boxes into the foundry pit by the crane, or for rolling over, handles, *e*, *e*, are often cast on the sides, to carry which pocket prints will be needed.



Figs. 252.

But the forms of boxes vary widely, and the patternmaker has to exercise his judgment both in designing and in making complete patterns, or sectional parts for them.

The aim in a well-regulated foundry is, not to multiply the number of boxes more than is necessary. But this main object is controlled largely by the class of work which is done in a firm. Jobbing boxes, that is those which are taken and used for various odd jobs that come in, are only suitable for those shops which do a general class of work. When a firm's work is specialized, or when certain sections of it are specialized, then special boxes are made, each box to suit one pattern or group of patterns.

The box illustrated in Fig. 252 is a standard one suitable for pieces of work of greater length than breadth, and it would be employed for short lengths of pipe, short columns, stanchions, etc. But for many kinds of work the semicircular bars in the top would interfere with patterns that would otherwise go in the box, *e.g.*, girders and other examples of sections mainly rectangular. For dealing with these, vertical bars are still retained, but they would be shallow. Sometimes then they stand up a long way from their patterns and deep liftering has to be resorted to to sustain the sand. But when long pipes and columns have to be moulded, such boxes, even though of sufficient length to take the patterns, would be very wasteful of labour and sand. Boxes having tapered sides, Fig. 253, are made for these; each taking one standard size, or two or three standard sizes of pipes or columns, according to the volume of work done. In the standard boxes the bars are cut to come within ⅝ or ¾ inch of the pattern everywhere, the aim being to lessen sand, liftering, and weight.

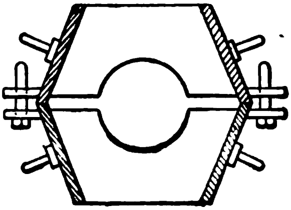


Fig. 253.

In the case of very heavy boxes a compromise is sometimes made in order to lessen the storage room required and the weight of metal. Box frames are cast entirely destitute of bars of any kind, and loose bars are fitted with short flanges, through which bolts attach them to the frames. In very large boxes the frames themselves are occasionally cast in four pieces,—two sides and two ends, and united with bolts passing through flanges. These devices are not suitable for boxes in constant service, but for those only which are required at occasional intervals.

The type of box shown in Fig. 252 is a "two-part" one, comprising "top" and "bottom," or "cope" and "drag." But many moulds require three or more parts, top, bottom, and "middle," or middles, since there is often more than one of these. Fig. 254 represents a box of this class, comprising top A, middle B, bottom C. The plan view above is taken through the middle. The top has vertical bars coming within ¾ inch or 1 inch of the joint face, the middle has no bars, but internal flanges which assist in retaining the sand in place, and upon which also rods are often laid to assist in supporting the sand, or upon which grids are laid. Such boxes are kept in a large range of dimensions, some oblong and some square, in sizes ranging from about 2-feet to 12-feet or 16-feet, depending on the classes of work done in shops. The depth and thickness are suitably proportioned to size, so that while a 2-feet box may have its "parts" from 4 to 6 inches deep, by ¾ inch in thickness, the parts of a 12-feet box would be from 10 inches to 12 inches deep and 1½ inch in thickness. Usually two or three middles are made for one top and bottom, all

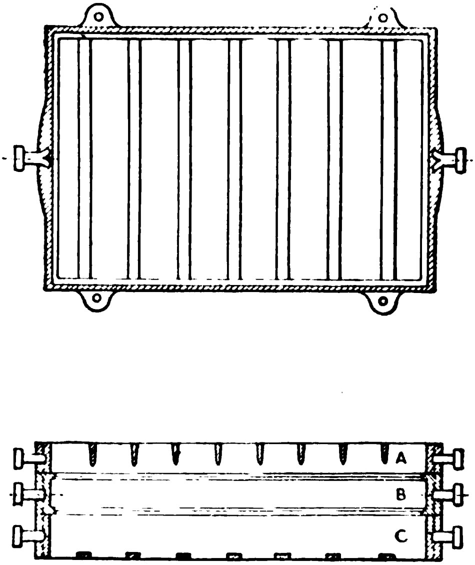


Fig. 254.

mutually fitting for convenience in making up boxes for deep work. This is better for general service than making one deep middle, which would be useless for shallow moulds.

Sometimes a middle part is utilized as a bottom part by bolting a grid frame on one of its faces. This is easily detachable, leaving the middle intact.

The general arrangement of flat bars in boxes is seen in Fig. 254, p. 232. As they always lie upon the floor, the sand in the bottom is thus adequately supported. In the top, such bars would be useless as supports to the sand, and they would, moreover, interfere with the work of ramming. The vertical sides of the top bars do not interfere with ramming, while they afford large faces against which the sand is held by friction. The distances at which they are fixed apart are proportional to the sizes of boxes, ranging from about 4 inches to 8 inches. Except in the smallest sizes only, cross bars are also fitted, the arrangement of which is shown in Fig. 255, which is a top fitted with strips, *a*, against which stakes are driven into the sand when work is moulded by bedding in the floor.

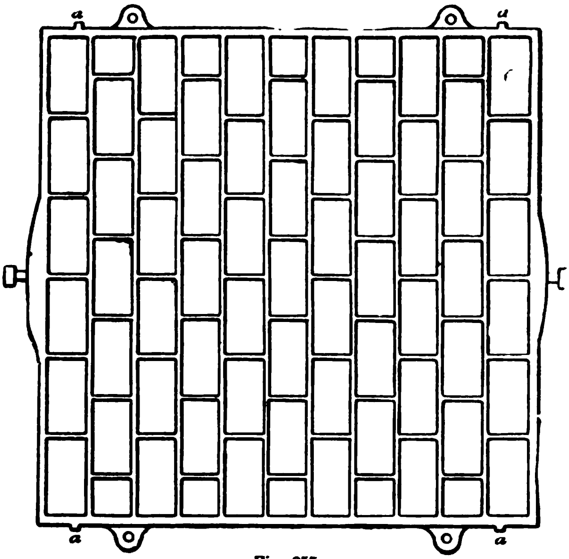


Fig. 255.

Frequently the central portion of these boxes for a space of 16 to 20 inches is left as a square space destitute of bars, to facilitate the bringing off of a large central vent, or vents, or for inserting a runner and vents, see Fig. 257. In boxes made for special castings only the bars are arranged to suit the runners, risers and vents.

The smallest boxes used by iron and brass moulders have no bars, but are cast with internal fillets, Fig. 256, which, with the friction of the sand against the box sides, are sufficient to sustain it. The smallest boxes are cast without handles, those of from about 12 inches to 18 or 20 inches are cast with looped handles of wrought iron.

Circular boxes are properly used for circular work, as being more economical of sand and labour than square ones. A plan-view of a circular top is shown in Fig. 257. These are made as top and bottom only, or top, bottom and middle, similar to other boxes.

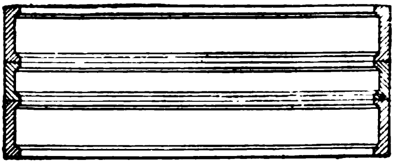


Fig. 256.

As a general rule full patterns are not made for moulding boxes. The method of procedure is as follows:—The pattern framing is made about ¾ inch deeper than the actual box casting when the mould is to be made in open sand, in which case the metal is not allowed to quite fill up the mould. The various outer attachments are fastened on, and mould with the framing, but the bars are moulded in detail. Three bars are prepared, with cross bars if such are required, and the moulder rams up two of these at a time, setting them by marks, scribed on the top edges of the box framing by the pattern-maker. When two bars are rammed they are withdrawn and removed to the next position and the third bar is inserted in the mould adjacent to prevent the sand from becoming rammed down there. The economy of timber and time which is effected by the adoption of this method is considerable in long and large boxes. Only in the case of boxes the bars of which have to be cut closely to irregular contours, as in the case of some standard work, is it necessary to fit all the bars in the pattern box. In these rough foundry patterns varnish is not used; often they are left rough from the plane. Sometimes, however, in these, as in other heavy patterns, the deeper faces are seared with a hot iron, sufficiently hot to scorch, smoothed over the surface.

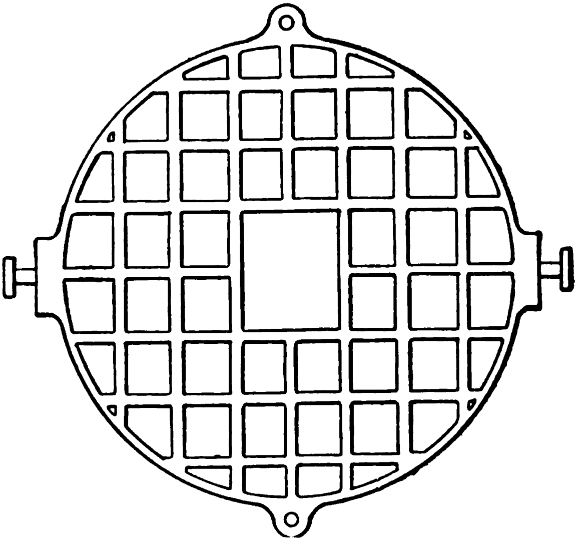


Fig. 257.

The swivels and the looped handles of wrought iron are cast in place in prints of suitable shape. Pocket or drop prints are used for the first, and prints of the same shape as the loops for the second. The ends of these are divided out as seen in Fig. 254, p. 232, and jagged to enable them to hold better. The metal also is increased around them.

Lugs may be drawn inwards, but they are better made in cores. The section of a core and lug is seen in Fig. 258. Standard boxes for lugs of each size are properly kept in the foundry.

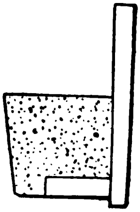


Fig. 258.

Grids are moulded from standard pattern grids of fair size, larger ones being made by shifting the pattern, smaller ones by stopping off.

Back plates are made in open sand from open framed patterns strickled out in the centres. The holes are cored by measurement, often without prints, the cores being retained in place by an iron bar serving as a weight.

Core rings are moulded from sweeps supplied by the pattern maker, the prods being stamped from a standard pattern prod.

Gaggers are moulded in quantity from a number of plated patterns. A bed is first levelled and the gaggers moulded by stamping or pressing them down with the plate.

CHAPTER XXIX.

HEAVY MACHINE WORK.

Variety of Types.—Hollow Framing.—Planing Machine Bed.—Loose Strips.—Cored Portions.—Taper.—Standard of Machine.—Chaplet Blocks for Cores.—Travelling Table.—Open Joints.—Wall Drilling Machine.—Radial Drilling Machine.—Boxing up.—Core-box.

THIS includes types of so many different kinds that the barest description of them would be incompatible with the general scope of this book. Lathes, drilling, shaping, planing, boring, slotting machines, steam hammers, punching, shearing, riveting machines—all of them engineers' tools. The subject is both varied and attractive in the highest degree. But we shall find it more to our advantage to take two or three of the principal and more typical castings, and to thoroughly understand the construction of their patterns, than to run over the whole field in a cursory and superficial manner.

One thing strikes the most casual observer who walks through an engineer's shop—the massive appearance of the framework of the machines. Everything has a solid-looking exterior, contrasting very markedly with the old skeleton-like types that linger yet in some of the older firms. But these ponderous-looking castings are really most economical of metal, since they are hollow, the form which best combines lightness with strength, their thicknesses ranging from about ⅜ inch to 1 inch or 1¼ inch.

The lathe furnishes the oldest type of the engineer's tools, and contains in itself the essential principles upon which many others very diverse in appearance are constructed. Without the automatic slide, not only would our lathes have remained in the same rude condition in which they were found by Henry Maudsley, but those other machines whose value depends on the parallelism of their faces would have remained in the limbo of oblivion. Postponing, however, the discussion of lathe matters to the next chapter, we pass at once to the machine which comes next after it in importance—the planing machine.

Looking at its bed (Figs. 259, 260) we observe the V-shaped grooves for the sliding table, running its whole length, and

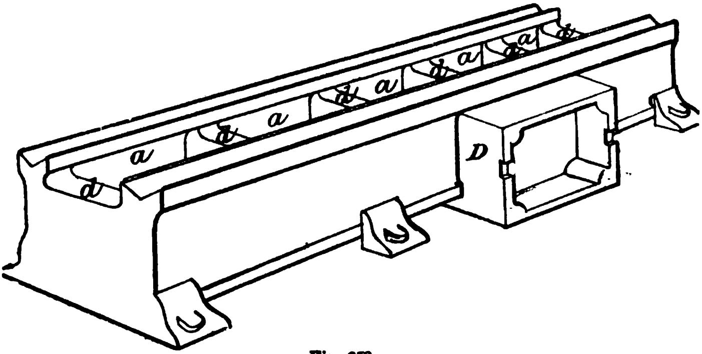
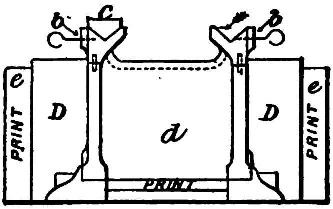


Fig. 259.

projecting several inches within the sides. They are planed truly linear and smooth; hence they must mould downwards. Moulding thus, it is necessary that they should be left loose, and the best way of jointing is to dowel as shown (Fig. 260). After the main pattern is removed, and the middle sand cores (*a*, *a*, *a*, *a*, *a*) are lifted out, these strips could be drawn upwards but for one obstacle—the overlapping portions, *b*, *b*, projecting beyond the outer edges. These, therefore, should be wired loosely on the already dowelled pieces, to come in after their removal. Or, if the hollow on *b* is not undercut, the V strips entire may be drawn in after the removal of the bed by a sidelong motion in the direction of the arrow—that is, of the outer V face. Sometimes, however, the V's are taken out with cores, in which case the print c (left-hand side) would prevent the removal sideways, and the outer piece must be left loose.



Section of Bed.

Fig. 260.

The cross-bars, *d*, are cored out (Fig. 261) with the view of lightening them, and thin prints for that purpose are fastened on the back and lifted in the top. The outside faces of these cross-bars, together with the sides of the bed, should have at least $\frac{1}{8}$ inch of taper, or more if the bed be large. The blocks, D, D, upon the sides (Figs. 259, 260) are for the attachment of the upright standards, and are cored out with prints, *e*, *e*, screwed against their sides. The bosses in the corners are for the purpose of receiving the bolts which retain the two parts together, and are placed in the core-box (Fig. 262) at a distance below its edge equal to the thickness of the prints, *e*, *e*. These blocks and the cross-bars are "boxed up" (Chap. XIII., p. 104) and attached to the sides with screws. The feet are worked out of solid stuff and screwed on permanently, as also is the fillet or moulding running round the bottom edge. The bosses for carrying the driving and quick-return shafts, &c. (not shown), must all be wired on loosely. Such a bed should have lifting straps down its sides (Chap. XXIV., p. 205).

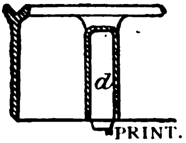


Fig. 261.

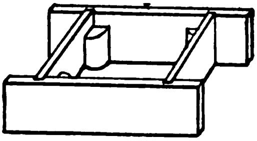


Fig. 262.

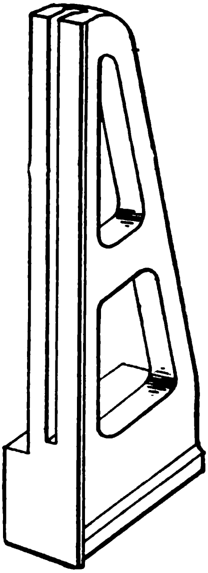


Fig. 263.

It may be taken as a rule in ribbed or flanged castings that plenty of taper should be given to those faces which are not working parts. Strength is not sacrificed—the average thickness being maintained—and the risk of the breaking up and damaging of the mould is vastly diminished. Also, *round* all parts that can be rounded—the edges of these cross-bars for instance—a rounding edge having a more graceful appearance than one quite angular.

The standard (Fig. 263) is either "boxed up" or made of solid bars mortised together. It moulds upon its side with the face which bolts to the bed downwards, and a print is screwed on this joint face to carry a portion of the lightening core. One pattern will suffice for both standards, by reversing the parts from one hand to the other. The core will cut through on the bottom—the top—the joint face, and on the slide, but no prints will be required save that one on the joint face just mentioned, which bolts against the machine bed. Elsewhere the core will be supported and steadied by chaplets. In nearly all large hollow machine castings chaplets furnish the chief support to the cores, prints being available to but a limited extent. In their rudest form they are simply thin plates of hoop iron, into which a bit of wrought bar of the necessary length is riveted, the opposite end of the bar being steadied against a bar of the box, or a cubical wooden chaplet block embedded in the sand (Fig. 264). These chaplets, arranged at the discretion of the moulder around the otherwise unstayed portions of a core, effectually prevent the liquid pressure of the metal from thrusting the core against the side of the mould.

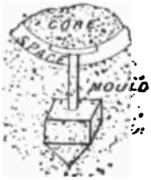


Fig. 264.

The core-box for the main core of the standard will be made as shown in Fig. 265. It is very similar in appearance to a pattern partly boxed up. The strips which form the bottom of the box may be battened together, and should be at least 1¼ inch thick. The sides will be abutted together first, and then after being sustained with stout blocks glued and screwed into their angles the radii will be worked, the whole of this portion of the box being kept in position on the bottom board with dowels. The groove for the nut for the vertical screw is cut through the side of the box at *d*. This core does not include that which cuts through the joint face block. This will be made in a distinct box, similar to Fig. 262, and laid in the mould first, the main core being subsequently laid upon it.

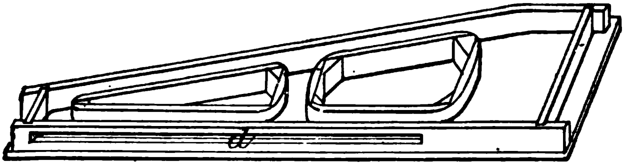


Fig. 265.

Looking at the travelling table (Fig. 266) we see a recessed portion at each end dropping a little below the T-headed bolt recesses We shall take advantage of this fact, and make our table in such a way that it cannot get out of truth. The plate will be formed of two thicknesses of stuff, the lowermost thickness being equal to the plate at its thinnest (Fig. 267, *a*), the uppermost equal to the thicker portion, *b*. The thinner pieces will be equal to the table in length, and sufficient in quantity to make up the width. We shall not glue these pieces edge to edge, but joint with open joints; that is, leave about ⅛ inch between each strip of timber. If we were to glue our pieces together in a pattern so wide, a few hours of exposure in the damp sand of the foundry would expand the wood sideways, and either make the pattern too wide or else curve it. The open joints allow of localised extension, and so the bounding edges of the pattern remain unaltered. On the lower longitudinal pieces thus jointed, screw in a transverse direction sufficient stuff to form the thicker portion, *b*, also with open joints. We shall thus have a rigid table that will not go out of truth either by the action of damp or heat.

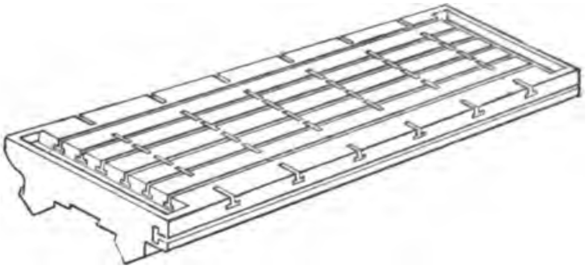


Fig. 268.

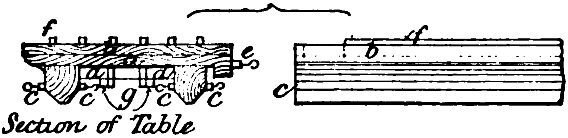


Fig. 267

Upon this we put the remainder of the work, very simple indeed. The long V-shaped sliders have narrow planing strips wired on their sides (Fig. 267, *c*, *c*). Strengthening ribs are often placed crosswise underneath on heavy tables· *d*, *d*. Sometimes in the larger machines the sliders are lightened out at intervals with rectangular holes, in which case pocket prints on both sides will be used. A T-headed groove is run along one edge (frequently along the bottom) to receive the tappets. The core for this will be fixed by a print wired on *e*. The prints on the face of the table, *f* (Fig. 267), for the T-headed bolts, need only be shallow, ½ inch or ¾ inch deep, and the cores will be made in short lengths, say 18 inches or 2 feet, placed end to end, as also will be those for the tappet groove. It will aid the moulder if all the work on the under side, sliders, and ribs is left dowelled, to come away with the top sand, rather than that the top sand should be dragged away from them. The lugs, *g*, *g*, are for attaching the travelling rack to.

A plain wall drilling machine is made almost precisely like the casting. The plate or web is not cut from the solid, but halved together with half lap joints, and the ribs, having about ⅛ inch of taper on their inner faces, are screwed fast upon both sides of the web. The bosses for spindles are cored out, if cored at all, with pocket prints. But the case is not so simple when we have to do with more massive frames, or with radial machines. A heavy, solid-looking frame is boxed up and cored out like the planing machine standard just described, but the core-box is often more difficult to make. Especially is this the case with large curved brackets, having their curves irregular and in different planes. Careful measurements taken from plan and elevation views are then essential. Without such care, the thickness of metal in the casting will vary considerably, and after the pattern-maker has done his best the moulder will often detect variations in thickness by means of his clay templets.

If to the remarks already made we add a description of a radial drilling machine, enough will have been said to enable a reader of ordinary intelligence to understand the construction of any of the common machine castings of this type.

Looking at it (Figs. 268, 270), we see that the top and bottom portions are projected upwards and downwards to form bearings for swivel movements; the back is hollowed out deeply to receive the vertical spindle and gearing, and the Vee'd strips are cast on the horizontal arm which stands out at right-angles with the vertical axis of the machine. We can only mould it in one way—on its side, with the Vee'd face downwards. Evidently, then, the hollow back must be taken out with a core, which core must be supported by a sufficiency of print. Then there is a boss for horizontal telescopic spindle, with abutting ribs, and between this boss and the radial arm there is an intervening space, *d*, to be taken out.

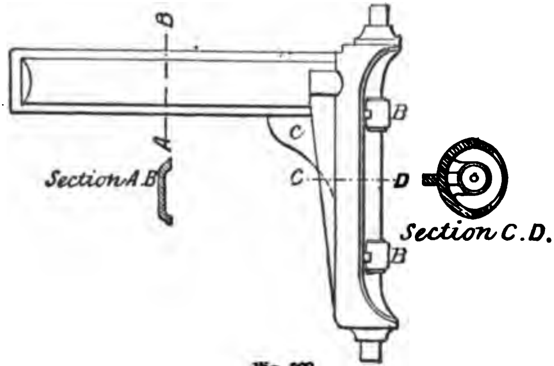


Fig. 268.

We shall decide to joint our pattern along the longitudinal centre—that is, through the centre of the boss and rib. Being large also, we will box or lag up each half in preference to using solid timber. It will be lighter and less liable to get

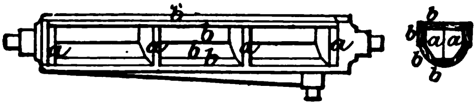


Fig. 269.

out of truth. Make four or five blocks (Fig. 269, which represents one half the pattern, looking against its joint, and a section also), *a*, *a*, *a*, *a*, dowelled together, and glue and screw lagging strips, *b*, *b*, *b*, *b*, across these, to include both the

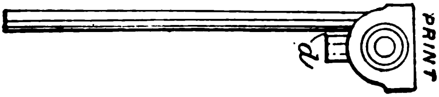
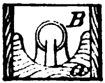


Fig. 270.

curved portion of the pattern and also its print, bringing the print edge level with the termination of the pattern side (Fig. 270). The rounding ends and the swivel projections will be prepared as separate pieces, and screwed against the ends of the lagging. The radial arm will be a plain piece of wood to which the Vee's will be screwed fast. It will be fitted against the rounding body at its due distance from the boss centre, and the bracket, *c*, attached to it. The spindle boss and its rib will be made in halves and screwed in place. The pattern itself is now complete, but the space, *d*, between the boss and arm is rather awkward. If but one or two castings are required let it remain so, and the moulder will use a draw-back; but if for standard use put in a print, and make a core-box for the recess.



Section of Core Box

Fig. 271.

Fig. 271 is a section of the core-box, which takes out the back of the vertical portion. It is made, as is usual with rectangular boxes, with two sides and two ends grooved in. Into this a block of wood worked to the shape of the inside of the vertical pillar is dropped, *a*, the ends of which are curved just as the edges of the casting are curved. The lugs for carrying the spindle are shown at B, each having a pocket print on opposite sides, and a loose boss wired on.

There is much similarity in these machine castings. When we are conversant with one type of frame, and the method of making and moulding it, we see, almost as if by intuition, how to make one of a different class, yet to which the same methods will apply. Almost all will be resolved into two kinds, the ribbed and the solid. Of the one the planing machine bed may be taken as a type; of the other its standard and the radial drill furnish illustrations. Large slotting, shaping, punching, shearing machines, and so forth, are all boxed up and cored out; lathe beds, many drilling and boring machines, have a ribbed framework. The patterns are made strong and substantial, and instead of being varnished are usually painted.

CHAPTER XXX.

LATHE MATTERS.

Lathe Beds.—Advantages of Coring Beds.—Boxing up.—Attachments.—Core-boxes.—Saddle for Slide Rest.—Transverse Slide.—Standard.—Headstocks.

There are two ways of making lathe beds: one is to construct the pattern like the casting, leaving certain parts loose, and giving due taper both to external and internal portions; the other is to box up a pattern, and to core out the internal portions. Of these two methods I am going to describe the latter, because with a cored-out pattern there is less chance of an untrue casting being produced, such a pattern being less liable to become rammed winding, or otherwise out of truth in the sand. If I were going to make a small bed such as this is for myself, knowing the moulder who would mould it, and that I could check it with straightedge and strips in the sand, I would not bother with cores; but if cast in a strange foundry, perhaps by men unaccustomed to this class of work, I would not run the risk of getting a crooked bed by constructing a pattern of so slight proportions. To such as wish, however, to mould in greensand simply, the view of Fig. 272 is self-explanatory. A pattern made thus (one only of two or three methods) will be made correctly for moulding, remembering of course that the top of the bed is the bottom in the mould.

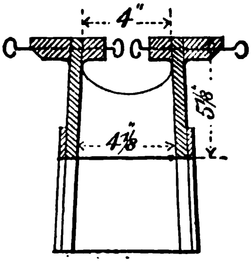
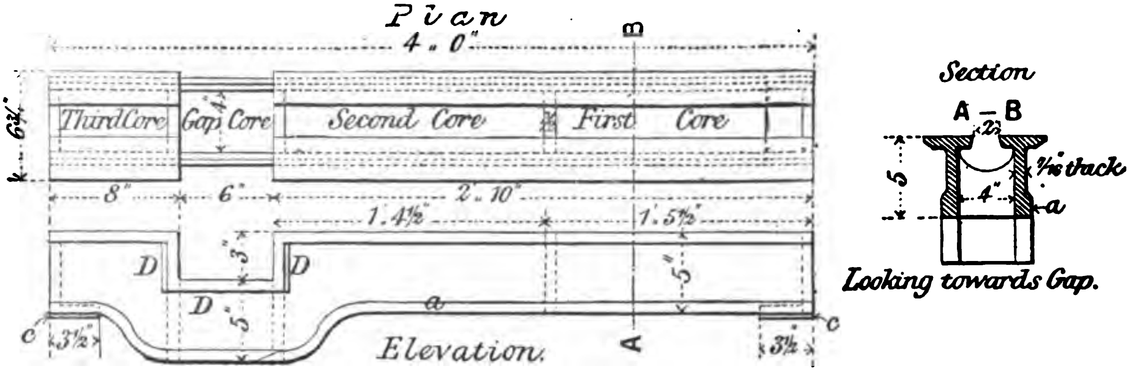
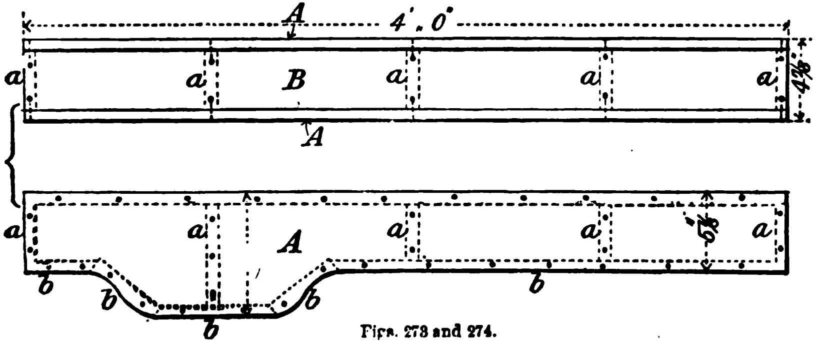


Fig. 272.

Fig. 273 shows a fairly proportioned bed, dimensioned for the sake of clearness of illustration. It might perhaps be lengthened six or twelve inches with advantage, dependent upon the class of work for which it is to be adopted.





Figs. 273 and 274.

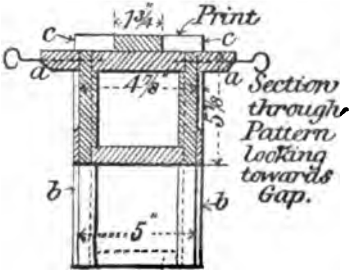


Fig. 275.

"Box up" the main body of the pattern (Fig. 274). Procure some inch board, out of which cut two sides (Fig. 274, A, A, A) slightly larger than the outline of the bed. Rebate them ⅛ inch deep to the width of an inch all round, and also across where the ribs or stays, *a*, *a*, *a*, *a*, *a*, are to come. Then prepare one piece for the top (B) 4 feet 0⅛ inch long by about 3⅜ inches wide. We say "about," because the stuff in the sides may be full or bare in thickness, and we want the bed to measure 5 inches over the sides when roughly boxed up, the finished width being 4⅞ inches. Prepare pieces likewise for the bottom, *b*, *b*, *b*, *b*, *b*, of the same width as the last, also the cross ribs, *a*, *a*, *a*, *a*, *a*, of the same width too. Nail or screw all together. Plane up the sides to 4⅞ inches wide at the bottom (bottom from the moulder's point of view, really the top face of the lathe bed) by 5 inches bare at the top. Plane over the face straight and square with the vertical centre of the bed—*i.e.* so that the taper in the sides is equal relatively to the top; shape the blocks that form the swell round the gap, and plane 1/16th taper at the ends of the bed.

The main body is now ready to receive its equipments. Make a print 4 feet by 1¾ inches by ⅛ inch and nail it upon the centre of the face (Fig. 275). (In reference to the apparent discrepancy between the width of the print here given and the width of the groove in Fig. 273, as also to other instances of the same kind, as 5⅛ inches depth of bed in Fig. 275 against 5 inches in Fig. 273, let me remark that these are the usual "planing" allowances). Extend the width of this print *just over the intended gap* to 4⅞ inches (Fig. 276, Fig. 275, *c*, *c*), the reason of which provision we shall see by-and-by. Prepare the outer V-shaped strips to the sections (Figs. 277, 278), and wire on in place (Fig. 275, *a*, *a*). The outer lines in Figs. 277, 278 are the *pattern* lines, the inner ones represent the *planed* sizes. Make the fillet to section (Fig. 279), planing

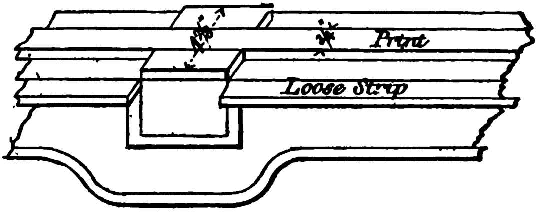
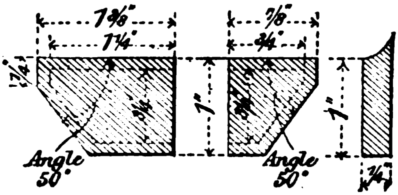


Fig. 276.

the straight portions, and cutting the curved parts round the gap with gouge and chisel, and nail or screw in place (Fig 273, *a*, *a*; Fig. 275, *b*, *b*). The strips, D, D, D, round the gap must, however, be wired on. The two facings for the standards, 5½ inches by 3½ inches by ¼ inch (Fig. 273, *c*, *c*), complete the pattern.



Figs. 277, 278, 279.

For the first core (Fig. 273, plan), frame up a box 1 foot 5½ inches by 4 inches by 5⅝ inches (Fig. 280). This is long enough to include the first and second ribs, and deep enough to include the print. Plane two strips 1 foot 5½ inches by 1⅝ inch by 1⅛ inches, equalling respectively length of box, depth of inner strip and print, and width of inner strip with planing allowance, and screw them against the sides of this box flush with its top edge (Fig. 280, A, A). Prepare two cross-bars ½ inch thick to the shape and dimensions indicated in Fig. 281, which represents a section of the box, looking towards the end, and screw in place (Fig. 280, B, B). Prepare a piece 4 inches by 3 inches by ¾ inch, and fasten at one end for the standard facing (Fig. 280, C).

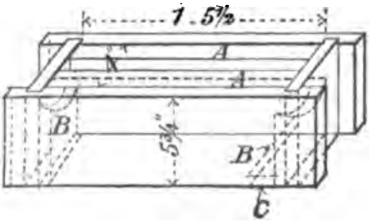


Fig. 280.

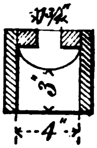


Fig. 281.

The next box is framed to 1 foot 4½ inches by 4 inches by 5⅝ inches, and one end is made to follow the outline of the pattern (Fig. 282). In the end next the gap, a cross-bar similar to the others, but 3 inches deeper, is fixed (B). The guide strips, A, A, for the poppet, as in the last box, will be required. The box for the third core (Fig. 283) will be 8 inches by 4 by 5⅝, having strips, A, A, cross-bars, B, B, and facing, C, for standard; or the second box may be utilised after its core is made by screwing a cross-bar in, 8 inches from the end next the gap, and putting in the necessary parts.

The gap box (Fig. 284) is framed to 6 inches by 4⅞ inches by 8⅜ inches. This, it will be seen, corresponds with the

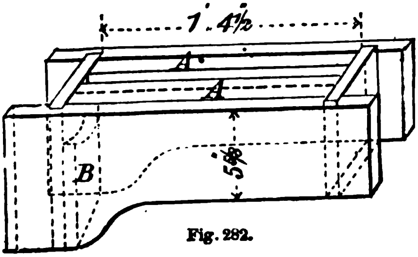


Fig. 282.

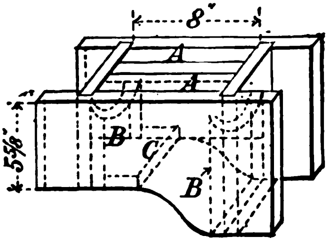


Fig 283.

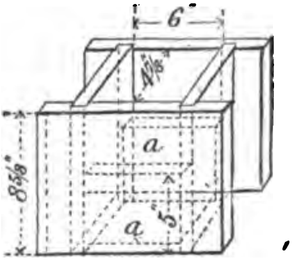


Fig. 284.

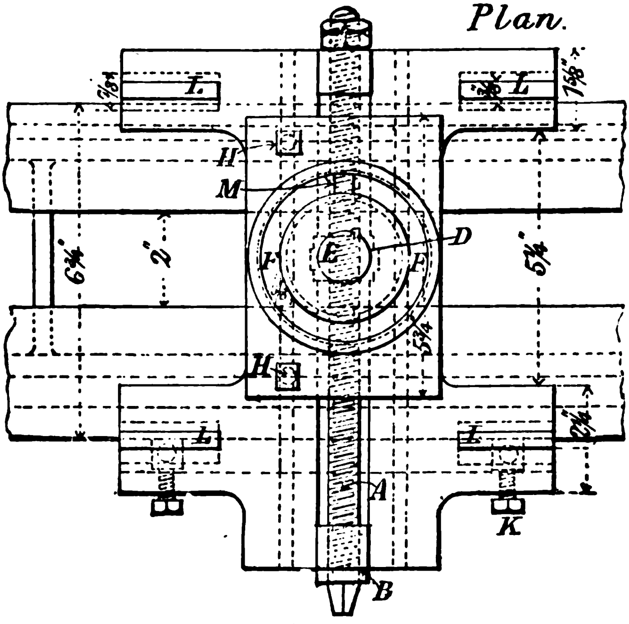
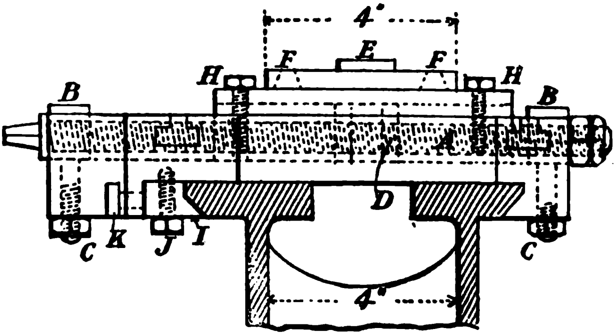


Fig. 285

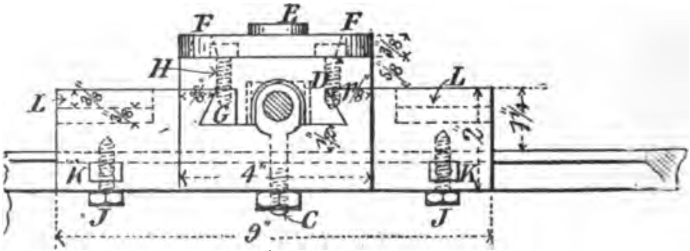
print in Fig 276. Against the sides of box screw two blocks 6 inches by 5 inches by $\frac{7}{16}$ inch (Fig. 284, *a*, *a*), to form the metal at the sides of the bed below the gap.

Fig. 285 shows the saddle and transverse slide suitable for the bed we have just described in plan, Fig. 286 gives a side view, Fig. 287 one in front. A is the screw; B, B are the nuts attached to the saddle by the screws C, C; D the nut held in the transverse slide, through the medium of which the motion of the screw is communicated to the slide; E the stud for the longitudinal slide; F, F a turned bevelled groove to receive the tightening nuts for the upper slide; G loose strip for transverse slide, tightened up by screws H, H; I is the loose strip for the saddle, fastened by screws J, J, and *set* by screws



END VIEW.

Fig. 286.



FRONT VIEW.

Fig. 287.

K, K; L, L are slots for T-headed bolts, for convenience of holding work to be bored. The bosses for the rack pinion movement are omitted to avoid crowding.

Taking the pattern of the saddle first (Fig. 288), make the main plate 2 inches thick, to dimensions given, framing the parts together either with half-lap joints or by mortises and tenons; nail on a print, A, ½ inch thick, to take out the recesses for the transverse slide; screw on the strips B, B which embrace the lathe-bed, wiring on the Vee, which is cast in a piece with the saddle. Fig. 289 shows a section of the core-box for A, looking towards one end. By means of the curve, *a*, on the end cross-bars of the box, the core is strickled to a corresponding shape for the purpose of taking out the recess underneath the traversing screw. The prints, L, L, L, L, and their core-box, M, shown in section, Fig. 288, are for the T-headed slots, shown in the three views of the rest. Fig. 290 is a half-size section of the loose Vee strip, I, in Fig. 286, giving planing allowance

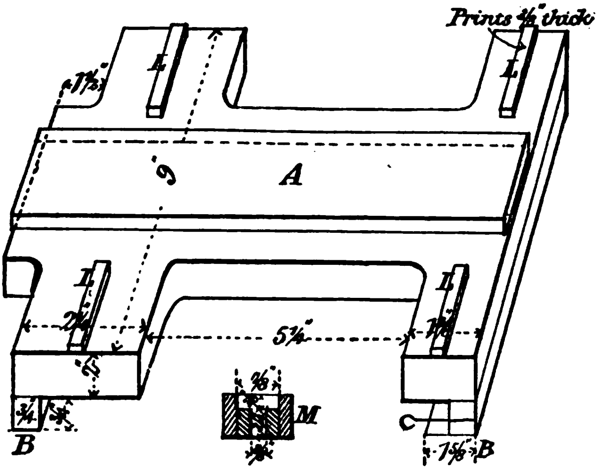


Fig. 288.

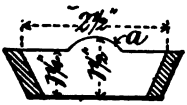


Fig. 289.

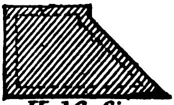


Fig. 290.

Fig. 291 shows the pattern of the transverse slide, top and bottom faces respectively, and Fig. 294 in end view. The plate A is 5¾ inches by 4 inches by ¾ inch (finished to ⅝ inch). Upon this the circular face, with its print for the bolt recess, B, Fig. 292 in section, is fastened. Fig. 293 shows the core-box for this recess, in section and plan. A is a bottom board upon which a centre-piece, B, is studded, and a ring piece, C, dowelled; the unshaded portion being the core space. Note that the width of core is given as $\frac{5}{16}$ inch against ⅜ inch width of groove on top of Fig. 285. This allows of the barest possible amount of skimming up in the lathe, the core being too small to permit of much turning allowance, neither is much necessary if the box be made truly.

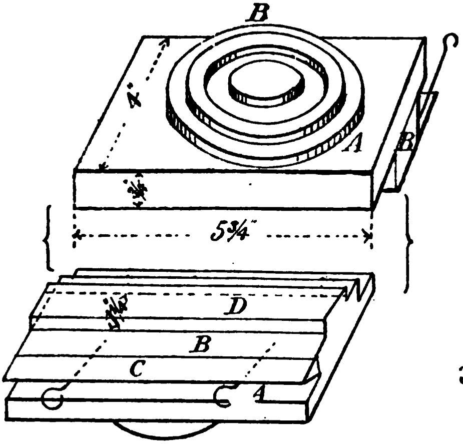


Fig. 291.

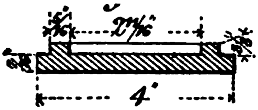


Fig. 292.

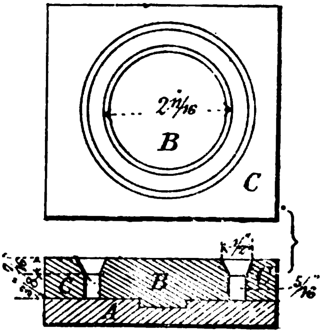


Fig. 293.

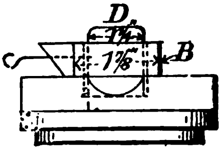


Fig. 294.

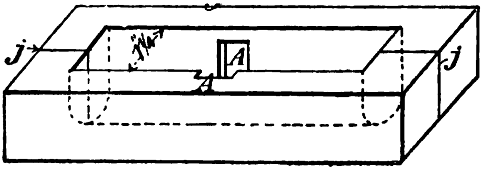


Fig. 295.

A slot will have to be cut in the casting, shown at M in Fig. 285, through which to thrust the tightening bolts into place.

For the under face of the traversing slide prepare a piece of stuff 5¾ inches by 1⅞ inch by ¾ inch, and fasten on in the centre of the plate already prepared (Figs. 291, 294, B); on this wire the loose strip, C, and nail the print, D. Make core-box (Fig. 295) jointed longitudinally, *j*, *j*, and dowelled and recessed at sides, A, A, to receive the brass nut (Figs. 285, 286, D, and Fig. 296).

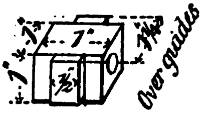


Fig. 296.

The standard (Fig. 297) is suitably designed for the bed which we have described. The frame will be made with half-lap joints, and the ribs screwed upon it with $\frac{1}{16}$ inch of taper on their inner faces. The ⅜ inch ribs on the outer

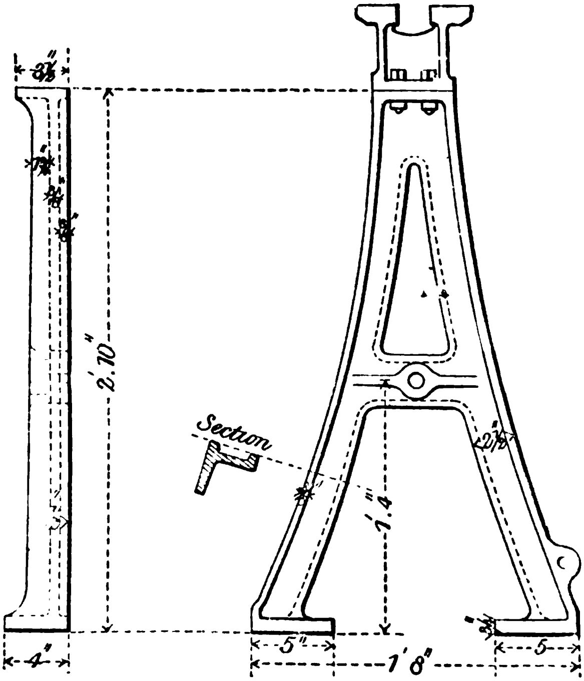


Fig. 297.

face simply relieve the otherwise heavy appearance of the casting.

Headstocks and poppets are jointed either longitudinally in their vertical plane, thus moulding upon their sides, or they are made to mould top side down, the barrel of the poppet being loose in that case, and the overhanging portions also of the headstock being left loose; or where the overhang is considerable, as in arms for back gear, the sides are taken away on drawbacks.

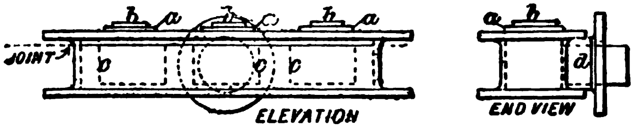
CHAPTER XXXI.

PUMPS, COCKS, AND VALVES.

Three throw Pumps.—Suction-box.—Delivery-box.—Jointing.—Barrel.—Its Core.—Bucket.—Air-vessel.—Strainer-pipes.—Their Cores.—Sluice-cocks.—How Moulded.—Gunmetal Faces Cast and Turned in.—Plug.—Nut.—Force-pumps and Core-boxes.—Small Brass Work.—Globe-valve.—Methods of making Cores.

THE varied character of pump work forbids all except a brief description of the commoner forms. The essential parts are barrels, plungers or pistons, suction and delivery boxes, more or less elaborate in detail, and air-vessels. Single-barrel, two-throw, three-throw, hand and steam, single and double-action pumps, vary more in details than in principle or general design, and are not usually very intricate. But almost always the internal portions are cored out, and the core boxes are generally of the most importance, often involving more work than the patterns themselves, and in certain cases requiring very great care on the part of the pattern-maker.

Let us run through the main patterns for a set of three-throw pumps first of all. The pattern of the suction-box is made as indicated in Fig. 298. One flange at least, sometimes both flanges, are dowelled on to the body, and upon one of these flanges are fastened the facings for the barrels, *a*, *a*, *a*, and the prints, *b*, *b*, *b*, for the holes that flange moulding downwards, or the reverse to the figure, which shows the box as it stands in natural position. In standard patterns it is customary to work the hollows around the flanges, and then the loose flange will be planed thicker by that amount. Sometimes, instead of a mere suction-box, where the valves rest upon the facings, *a*, *a*, *a*, we have a clack-box—that is, a box which either contains the valves on their diaphragms inclined at an angle towards the front, or else on the top of a suction-box cast separately and bolted up from below. Then there is a door-way, dotted at *c*, *c*, *c*, cast in front of each valve aperture, so that any temporary defect in either of the clack-valves may be seen and remedied without removing the barrels or taking the structure all to pieces. Where this is the case these holes will not require to have prints upon the pattern. If there is a branch in the bottom for the suction it will be studded on loosely, and its flange—unjointed—will be slipped loosely over the print. If upon the side, *d*, the branch will be fast, and the flange either slid loosely over, as in the first case, or parted in two, the top half being left loose.



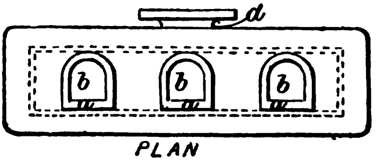


Fig. 298.

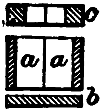


Fig. 299.

The core-box is usually made in several pieces (Fig. 299). The two blocks, *a*, *a*, dowelled, are cut to form the inside of the shell. If holes are cored for doorways, as supposed above, *c*, *c*, *c*, they are cut in the side of one of the blocks—the thickness of that block being gauged to represent the metal-thickness. A bottom board, *b*, is dowelled on, and a top board also, *c*, the latter in halves, and dowelled, and being equal in thickness to the thickness of the top flange together with its facings and prints. Holes are cut in the latter piece of the same shape and size as the prints.

The delivery-box (Fig. 300) is not very different from the suction. In this, also, one or both flanges will be loose; facings to receive the barrel ends, *a*, *a*, *a*, and prints, *b*, *b*, *b*, for their apertures will be fastened on. There will be a delivery branch somewhere or other, in which the same conditions of moulding will obtain as in the one for the suction-box, and probably a facing, *c*, for the air-vessel. The core-box (Fig. 301) will be constructed similarly, in regard to joints, apertures, and so forth; but the hole for the air-vessel. *a*, will cut through the top piece. The core for the delivery branch will not be made in the main core-box, but as a separate piece, and it will rest in its print and merely abut against the body core.

Jointing the patterns in the way described means using a three-parted box in the foundry, with its two sand joints. But in most cases there is no objection to jointing through the centres of the prints, as indicated by the dotted line, and making the flanges in the plan (Fig. 300) fast. Then the core-box, also, may be jointed in the same fashion, and its sides screwed fast to its body portion. See Fig. 302, which shows the parts of one-half the box made in this fashion, ready to go together.

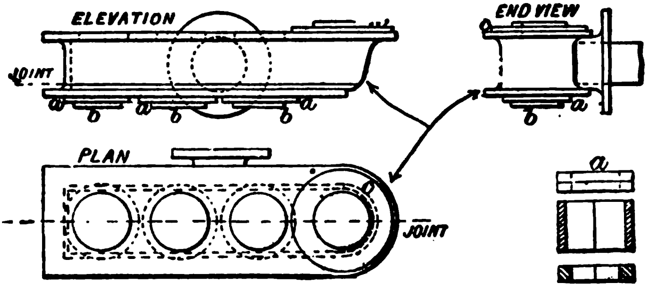


Fig. 300.

Fig. 301.

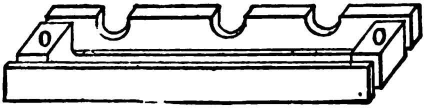


Fig. 302.

The barrel (Fig. 303) is turned as a cylinder pattern would be, from solid stuff if of small bore, or lagged up if large—in each case jointed and dowelled, and having prints, *a*, *a*, at the ends. Where an aperture and door are made at the front of the lower end, as is done when the valves rest upon the top of a suction-box, the square portion of the D-shaped block is either worked from the solid or else as a separate piece of wood, and fitted over the main body. The core in that case is struck up by a board and shouldered down as shown at Fig. 304 to receive the D-shaped core, which is threaded on as the square base of our column was threaded on the round shaft core (Chap. XX., p. 168). Or the main core is struck to its full diameter, and a saddle piece made from a box of the section of Fig. 305 is fitted against it (Fig 306).

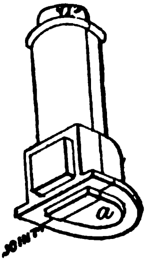


Fig. 303.

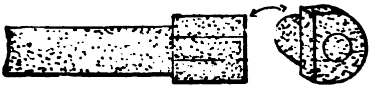


Fig. 304.

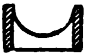


Fig. 305.

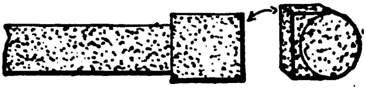


Fig. 306.

The bucket is made as shown in Fig. 307. The piston is turned from the solid, and the arch built up in about three thicknesses of small segments. The arch is fitted to the bucket itself by loose tenons or dowels. The water aperture

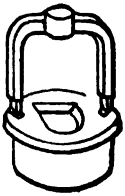


Fig. 307.

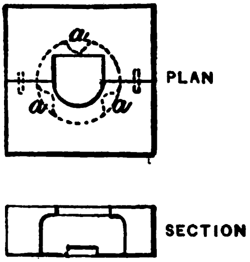


Fig. 308.

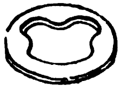


Fig. 309.

is better cored than cut out, the pattern being printed on the bottom, and its core-box (Fig. 308) being made in halves. The three lugs, *a*, *a*, *a*, in the bottom of the bucket are for the attachment of the cup-leather guard, shown at Fig. 309, which last is turned and worked from a bit of solid mahogany.

Air-vessels are cored out, the core being struck up. A core-box is only made when several similar castings are required. Frequently for large castings a loam pattern is used for the body itself. The common form is the dome shape shown in Fig. 310, the pattern being jointed to mould sideways, and except at the print end the core rests upon chaplets.

The last of a series of suction-pipes is furnished with a strainer (Fig. 311) at the bottom, to prevent the entrance of any foreign obstructions with the feed-water, which would choke the pump. These pipes are constructed similarly to the air-vessel, but no provision is made in the pattern for the strainer holes. These, numbering several scores in a strainer of moderate size, are made in a peculiar way. The core-box is like Fig 312, its thickness being equal to the thickness of metal in the strainer bulb, and the holes have a large amount of taper. After being cut with a gouge they are burnt smoothly with a taper iron, its taper corresponding with the taper of the holes. The cores are then rammed up, each with a common cut brad standing point upwards from its centre (Fig. 313). When dried, the cores are stuck around the mould, approximately equidistant, by means of the brad points thrust into the sand. The main core is then laid in, and rests upon these cores, so that chaplets are not requisite.

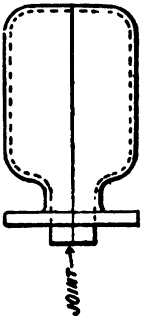


Fig. 310.

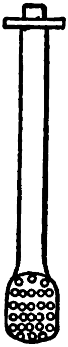


Fig. 311.

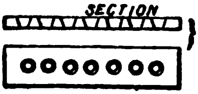


Fig. 312.

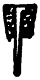
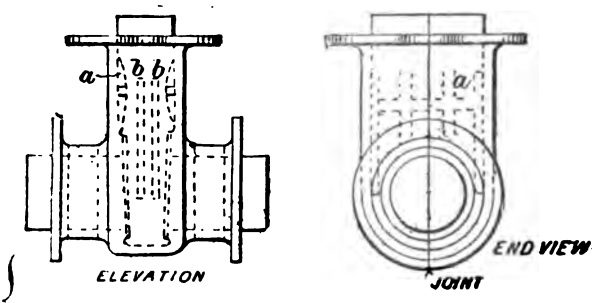


Fig. 313

Sluice-cocks comprise shell, cover, plug, and screw parts. The shell and the plug only need be mentioned. The shell (Fig. 314) may either have flanged or socketed branches—the latter being the more convenient for jointing up. The way of jointing the pattern is not affected, whichever form of branch we make. I have made these with the sockets up and down, and of course left loose (indicated by the dotted lines in the elevation); but this involves putting in the core in three portions—first, that for the bottom socket; secondly, the body; lastly, the top socket—and is therefore not to be recommended. The cheaper way is to joint through the centre of sockets and body as shown in the end view, and so mould the cock edgeways. Then the core is made all in one, as represented in the plan of the open box, and time is saved both in pattern-shop and foundry.

In small cocks the brass facings are cast in a piece with the shells. The facings being cast first in brazing metal with projecting nipples (Fig. 315), are turned bright and laid in the core. The molten iron meeting these, partially fuses the brass and makes a close joint with it. But in larger ones watertight joints cannot be secured by casting in, so they are of necessity turned to fit the turned shell and pulled in close with screw pressure. When they are cast in, the proportion of copper must be large, since common brass or gunmetal would melt at the temperature of molten iron. From 4 inches to 6 inches in diameter is about the limit at which a perfect amalgamation of the metals at the joint can be relied on.



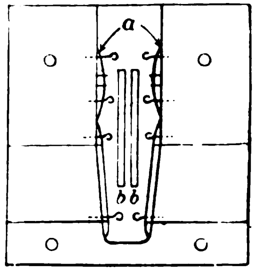


Fig. 314.

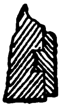


Fig. 315.

By making the pattern as we have indicated there are no loose pieces required. In the core-box the only loose pieces are the circular facings which carry the brass rings, and also in large cocks the internal strengthening ribs, *a*. The guide-strips for the plug, *b*, *b*, are fastened in the top and bottom of the halves of the box.

The plug pattern (Fig. 316) is made from the solid, and is turned without, and recessed down on each side to the central web, *a*. On this web boss pieces, *b*, are fitted, to give the metal round the central hole, *c*, which is large enough to allow of clearance for the screw. A block for the nut, *d*, a print, *c*, at the bottom end of the same size as the central hole, and a couple of guide strips, *e*, *e*, skewered on, complete the pattern. The remarks made in reference to the facings in the shell apply to those on the plug. The core-box for the hole has also a recess cut in it similar to the recess cut in the saddle of a lathe to carry the screw-nut.

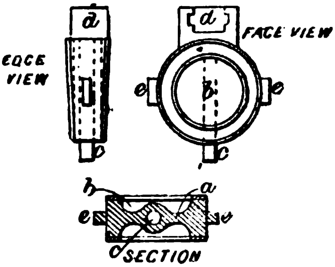


Fig. 316.

The nut (Fig. 317), made of brass, is, instead of being screwed in the lathe, commonly cast upon the thread of a duplicate of the screw itself, three or four such being cast upon one thread at a time. The screw rests in a bed made in the sand by a long pocket print shown in Fig. 317, *a*, *a*, *a*, *a*, which print is of course "stopped over" against the face of each nut.

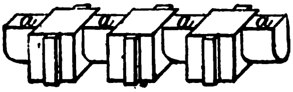


Fig. 317.

Force-pumps, unless when very small, are seldom made from solid stuff, because of the liability of the timber to curve and twist. Fig. 318 shows such a pump, in which the turned

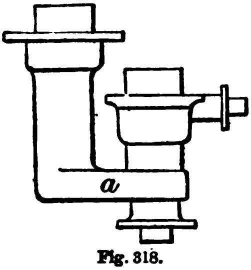


Fig. 318.

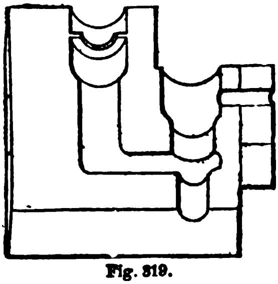


Fig. 319.

portions are each made separately, and screwed to the rectangular part, *a*. One half the core-box is shown at Fig. 319, and the stuff of which it is composed is prevented from curving by battens screwed upon the back.

In working a core-box of this kind it is not necessary to make templets for each separate radius. A set-square furnishes a convenient and certain means of checking the accuracy of a semicircle, since, if the edges touch the opposite sides of the diameter while the corner is in contact successively with every intermediate portion, the conditions of a true semicircle are fulfilled (Fig. 320).

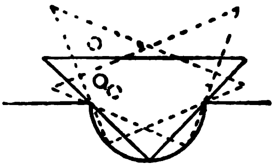


Fig. 320.

In making gland and bib cocks, and similar articles, it is better, unless they are exceptionally large, to cut them out of the solid, and this remark applies to the generality of small brasswork. Of course the parts which are spherical can be turned, even though they occur in different axes, by rechucking, and the portions intermediate worked by gouge and chisel. Moreover, jointing is not commonly resorted to in these patterns. The regular makers seldom joint small work at all, but use bottom boards, and also use metal patterns largely. In places where these things are a speciality, there will be as many as a dozen, or twenty or thirty, of such separate and distinct metal patterns, usually of brass, in a single box. It is marvellous to note the rapidity with which the workmen will lift the patterns out one after another with their fingers, without disturbing or breaking down the sand in the process. But it is essential that the metal patterns be got up well, and that the core-boxes—also of metal—be well jointed.

It is not customary to mark out both halves of a core-box with compasses and square. One-half only is usually marked first and worked. Its face is then either chalked over or smeared with red lead, and the unmarked half pressed closely against it and tapped with a hammer, when the lines of the bounding edges will be transferred by the chalk or red lead to the opposite face. Or where easily got at, a bent scriber is brought into requisition, and being carried round the edges, marks the lines on the opposite half.

The pattern for a common globe-valve (Fig. 321) might be jointed in the plane of the figure (vertical section), and be either worked out of a solid piece, if of small dimensions, or, if large, the globular part would be turned, together with the inlet and outlet ends and their prints—the branch for the screw-gland being turned separately and fitted on. Or the pattern might be jointed at right-angles to the plane of Fig. 321—that is vertically, line A, B—and the branch be moulded downwards; and this I consider the better way, as more convenient for laying in the cores. A small valve has usually nut-shaped hexagonal ends as figured, and is screwed within with gas-taps for the attachment of the piping. But large valves often have flange attachments, both at the ends and on the top, and in the latter case the top flange will be left loose if the branch is moulded downwards. The core for a large cock is not made in one, but in two pieces. The cores are made from two separate boxes, and fastened together with claywash before being put into the mould. Looking at Fig. 321, A is one core and B is the other, and they are connected together by the print C, shown dotted in the figure. In setting to work, just dismiss core B from the mind for awhile, and start about making a box for A. Three views

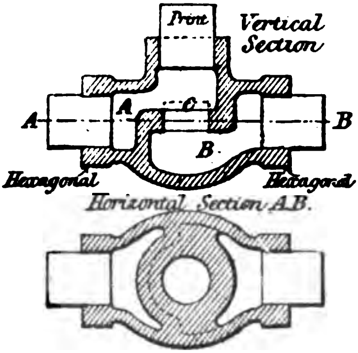


Fig. 321.

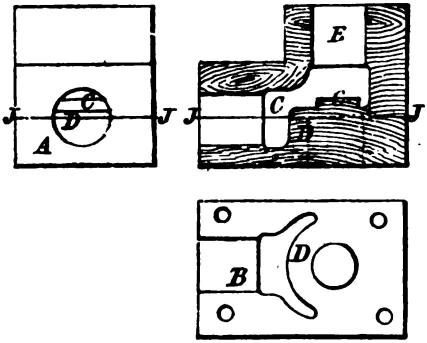


Fig. 322.

of the box are given (Fig. 322), A showing its appearance viewed from its outer end; B, in sectional plan, looking on the face of the core-box joint and downwards; C, a sectional elevation cut longitudinally through the box. Clearly the box parting at the joint, J, allows perfect freedom of delivery for the semicircular portion, D (Fig. 322), and also for the branch part, E, and the print, C will leave a recess in the core, by which core B may be set true.

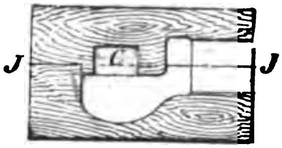


Fig. 323.

Now make a box for core B, jointed at J, which is (Fig. 323) a longitudinal section.

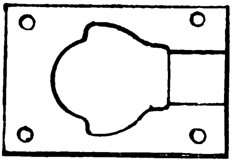


Fig. 324.

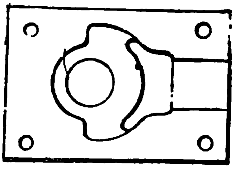


Fig. 325.

It is shown in plan in the joint, looking downwards, at Fig. 324, also looking upwards in Fig. 325. Evidently now the stud, C, formed in this core will drop into the print in core A, and the two cores together will in section be like Fig. 326, which is exactly what we require.

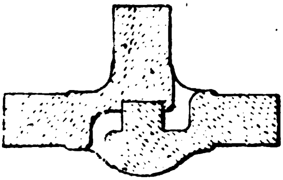


Fig. 326.

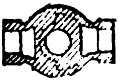


Fig. 327.

This is the way adopted in making cocks of moderate and large dimensions. In very small cocks, however, say of 1 inch or thereabouts, it is often deemed not worth the while to round the metal outside the valve-seat, and then one core-box suffices. Its plan would be like Fig. 327, and its section, of course, as before; and the joint of the box would show like the vertical section of Fig. 321

CHAPTER XXXII.

WATER-WHEELS AND TURBINES.

Water-wheels.—Their Bosses.—For Flat Arms.—For Round Rods.—Shrouding.—Toothed Ring.—Building it up.—Marking out.—The Teeth.—Turbines.—Core-box for Buckets.—Mode of forming the Shrouding.—Core-box for Guide.—The Discs.—Greensand and Loam Moulds.—Turbine Steps.—Lignum Vitæ Strips.—Directions for fitting in.—Governor-ring.

Water-wheels do not come within the range of the pattern-maker's work to the same extent that they formerly did. For, in addition to the fact that the smaller and more economical turbines are largely taking the place of the more cumbrous and extravagant water-wheels, there is also the circumstance that cast iron enters but slightly into their construction. But the fact that there is some cast iron about them, and that the country workman is not unfrequently called upon either to construct or to repair an existing wheel, justifies some slight allusion to the principal parts.

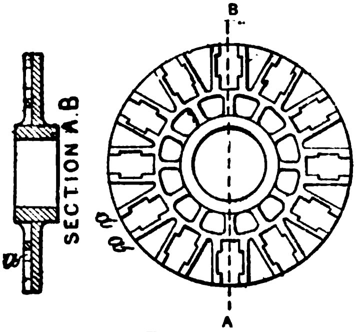


Fig. 328.

In the first place, then, the structure of the central bosses will vary according as the power is taken from the centre or from the circumference of the wheel. If it be taken from the centre the torsional strain is great, and stout wrought or cast iron arms will be used. Then the boss will have recessed pockets (Fig. 328) to receive the ends of the arms, and the pattern, but for the central print, will be exactly like the casting. The bits, *a*, *a*, *a*, are chipping strips to allow of accurate fitting of the arms without chipping the edges of the recesses along the entire length. But when the power is taken from the circumference there is very little leverage, and round wrought bars serve both as arms and struts. Then the central bosses take the form of Fig. 329, having arm and strut bosses and cottar ways, *a*, *a*, for the attachment of the rods.

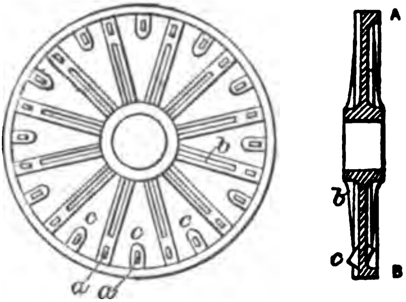


Fig. 329.

In making this pattern a plain plate is turned, of the correct diameter, and with a strengthening rib built up at the circumference. The central bosses being turned and screwed on, the long bosses for the arms are abutted against them. These are turned as indicated in section, Fig. 330. A represents a middle strip planed to the same thickness as the plate itself; B, B represent the actual boss pieces laid against each side of this strip, and held temporarily with screws, as when jointing pattern stuff in halves (p. 206). The three are thus turned together, and the middle piece being removed, the boss pieces are ready to screw in their places and form a circular section with the plate itself. The pieces marked *b*, *b*, Fig. 329, are mere strengthening ribs fastened upon these bosses exactly as required in the casting.

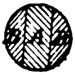
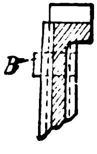


Fig. 330.

On the periphery long pocket prints are fastened, Fig. 331, and on every boss a cottar way print, B. The two prints carry the arm core with its cottar ways, made from a box, one-half of which is shown laid open in Fig. 332.



Enlarged view of pattern at A *on Fig.* 329.

Fig. 331.

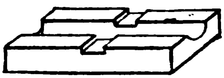
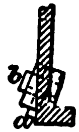


Fig. 332.

The bosses, *c*, *c*, *c*, *c*, Fig. 329, are for the strutting arms, and these are best turned from the solid, and sawn all alike to a bevel. On these also pocket prints, Fig. 333, *a*, and cottar way prints, *b*, are fastened, for which a short core-box similar to the last will be made.

The shrouding of a wheel (Fig. 334) will also vary with the conditions under which the power is taken off. Round rods will require cottared bosses, and these will be made and cored similarly to those just described on the central boss. Flat arms will require recesses like those on Fig. 334, A.



Enlarged view of pattern at H *on Fig.* 329.

Fig. 333.

When making the shrouding plate it is desirable, where the wheel is large and the number of segment pieces considerable, to make the pattern plate of cast iron, or, better still, of a piece of thin wrought-iron plate, and to screw upon this the curved flanges, *a*, *a*, either continuous, as shown in the figure, or disjointed, for the attachment of the buckets, and the inner flange, *b*, for the attachment of the sole-plate.

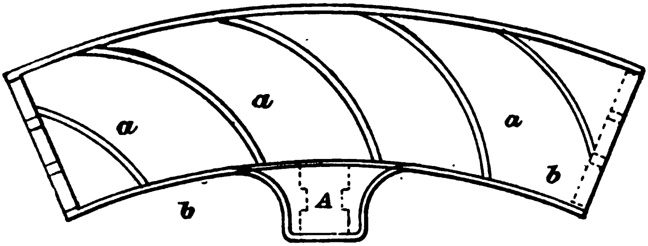


Fig. 334.

Where a ring of teeth is bolted round the shrouding, much care is necessary in the preparation of the pattern. Without due care the segment castings may come out long or short; they may be atwist, their ends may not be radial, and their teeth may not be square—for all of which errors the pattern-maker will be held responsible.

The correct length of the segments is obtained by calculating the length of a chord of the circle* if the wheel be

---

* The chord is obtained thus. Find the half angle of the included space betweeen the radii. Get the sine of that angle from a table of natural sines, multiply the radius by the sine. The product doubled gives the required length of the chord. Thus, let it be required to know the length of the chord A B, Fig. 355, A B being the twelfth of a circle whose diameter is 16 feet. The angle at C D is 30°, one-half of which is 15°. The sine of 15° is ·25881. The radius is 8 feet. Then ·25881 × 8 × 2 = A B = 4' 1·69".

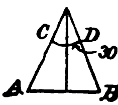


Fig. 355.

large, or by striking out a portion of the entire ring, say ¼ or ⅛, if the wheel be small, and giving the segment its proportional part of the arc thus struck out. We allow for fitting on the ends of the segments, which with all due care may vary ¼ or ⅛ inch in length in the castings. The allowance is made for chipping by means of narrow strips ("chipping strips") about ¾ inch or 1 inch wide, and they are made thick enough to allow for all possible variation in the casting, say ⅜ inch in this case at each end, and of this amount at least ¼ inch is allowed at each end over and above the finished length of casting, to be taken off by chipping. And as the shrouding plates are not likely to be true, and the segment may become rammed winding, we also put chipping strips on the bottom face of the segment, giving a similar allowance there for fitting.

This ring may be either internal or external, according as the teeth are on its inner or outer curve; but in either case the pattern is made as follows:—

Having struck out the segment in plan (Fig. 335) to get the ends truly radial and the teeth of the correct shape, and in section also (Fig. 336), we prepare segments for the purpose of building up the sweep. The plate of the segment (Fig. 336, *a*) can be made either in one piece or in two or three sets of sweeps, the latter being, of course, the better method of the two. The thin portion, or the rim, will be made in segments, ceasing at *b*, just where the hollow, *c*, commences. The thickness which forms the hollow, *c*, will be cut out separately—then these three parts, the plate, the rim, the hollow—each distinct and separate, but gauged to thickness, will be screwed together temporarily in the rough. The segment, though rough externally and internally, is at this stage complete in its thickness and ready to receive the lines.

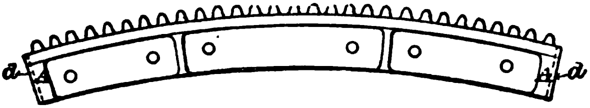


Fig. 335.

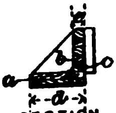


Fig. 336.

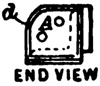


Fig. 337.

Strike the line* on one side for that curve of the ring on

---

* When striking large radii a trammel-rod is apt to spring and cause a wavy line. In such cases it is better to screw a couple of straightedges

which the teeth are to be fastened, and mark the ends radially from the centre of the curve so struck. Remove to the vice and plane these ends square with the parallel planed top and bottom faces. Then laying the segment on its face upon a true bench or drawing-board, square over with set square the curved line just struck on to the opposite side, and mark the sweep again on that side also. Work this sweep from one side to the other, roughing with gouge and finishing with planes. We have thus a true curve for the attachment of our teeth, at right-angles with the base of the segment. Now, taking out our temporary screws, we can gauge each of the separate portions of the segment, the plate (Fig. 336, *a*), the rim, *b*, and the hollow, *c*, and work them separately—returning them into position and gluing and screwing permanently when done. We shall work the teeth in a box (Chap. III., p. 22), and glue and brad on. The segment ends, A A, Figs. 335, 337, will be fitted into the angle formed by the plate and the rim, and their chipping strips, *d*, *d*, fastened on, excepting the one in the bottom, which will be skewered. Holes in the ends for bolting the sweeps together will be taken out with pocket prints.

Turbines (Fig. 338) are not yet so extensively come into use in England as in Continental countries. They vary much in design, but differ essentially from water-wheels in that the axis is vertical, and the turbine therefore revolves in a plane parallel with the horizon. The principal type is that which consists of an inner ring of guides, A, A, and an outer ring of buckets, B, B, usually in two or three vertical tiers connected with shrouding, *a*, *b*, *c*, *d*. Turbines being very small in comparison with water-wheels, both the buckets and their shroudings are formed in one casting, the guides and their shroudings being also formed in the same way. Now if we look attentively at our ring of buckets (Fig. 338, plan B), we shall

together like Fig. 354, and slide them around two fixed pins set in the course of the circle at the extremities of the chord, and with a scriber held against the apex describe the circle. The condition is that the height of the triangle measured from the chord shall be equal to the versed sine of its circle, which versed sine is obtained thus:

$$V = R - \sqrt{R^2 - C^2}$$

In which R = radius

C = semichord.

I prefer this to the methods of intersecting lines given in books on geometry.

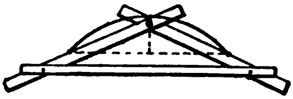


Fig. 354.

see that the labour of making a pattern would be immense To cut the shroudings and all the buckets would be a roundabout task. But the buckets being all alike, cores sufficient for an entire course of buckets can be made from one core-box (Fig. 339); and if there are two or three courses, we need but two or three core-boxes, in which core-boxes the shrouding can also be made. Considering again for a moment, we see that not only will no pattern be necessary, but that no prints for these cores will be wanted, for if the cores be made to fit one another closely without and within the circle of the buckets, they will close up the mould (Fig. 340). Then all

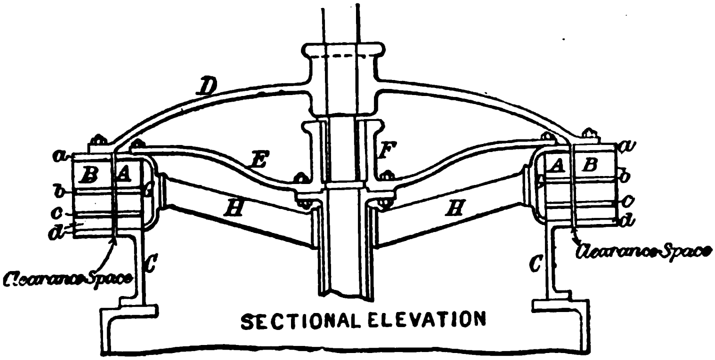


Fig. 338.

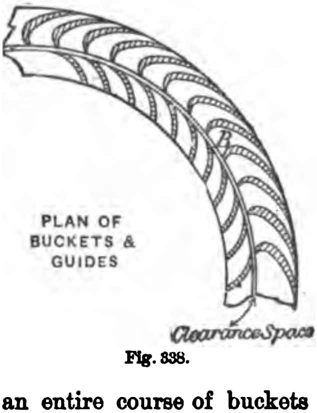


Fig. 338.

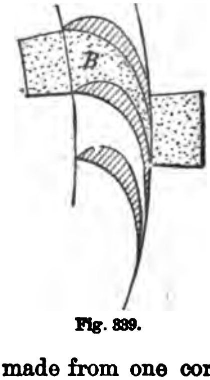


Fig. 339.

we need do is to strike two circles corresponding with the inside and outside ends of the cores, C and D, upon a sand-bed, and to set the cores by these lines. Having thus cleared the way, let us go into detail.

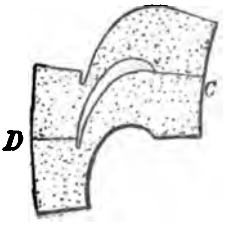


Fig. 340

Fig. 341 illustrates the way in which the core-box is made. Construct a plain rectangular core-box, as indicated by the outer lines. Into this fit sundry blocks, *a*, *a*, *a*, *a*, to part at *b*, *b*. Make a templet of the core in thin wood, and laying it on one side of these blocks, scribe round its edges upon the box face. Open the box, square down in the joint, place together again and scribe off from the templet on to the other side. The box may then be pared and planed through. We might make the box of the entire depth of the three rows of buckets with their

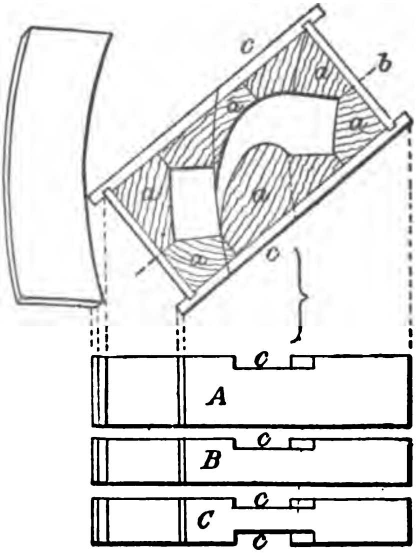


Fig. 341.

shrouding, but that would cause inconvenience, since the intermediate shrouding, or rather plating, would be formed through the heart of the core, and being only ⅛ inch or ⅜ inch thick, there would be no chance to get at it for the purpose of cleaning up or blacking; so we prefer to make as many core-boxes as there are rows of buckets, A, B, C.

Then for the shrouding we get out sweeped pieces (Fig. 342), corresponding in section with the shrouding and plating, and having marked carefully their concentric positions on the faces of the boxes we cut out recesses, *c*, *c*, *c*, *c* (Fig. 341), on those faces for their reception. Hence, when a core is made, say core A, it presents the appearance of Fig. 343. When the three rows of cores are made and put together we get two shrouds, two plates, and a metal space between contiguous cores. The cores being arranged in a circle, sand is rammed around them to afford support, and a loam top covers the whole. The metal then flows between the cores to form the curved partitions between the buckets, and through the cores to form shrouding and plating, while at the outer and inner terminations of the buckets its flow is arrested by the abutting ends of the cores.

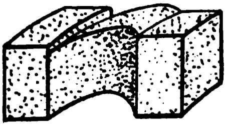


Fig. 343.

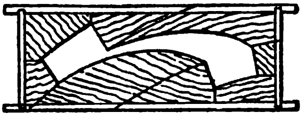


Fig. 344.

The same method is adopted for making the ring of guides, in which the core-box will be shaped like Fig. 344. The cylindrical seating for the governor, with its flange for bolting to the inlet pipe (Fig. 338, C, C), is shown cast in a piece with the guides, and for this two boards, shaped respectively like the Figs. 345, will be made, the seating being cast uppermost.

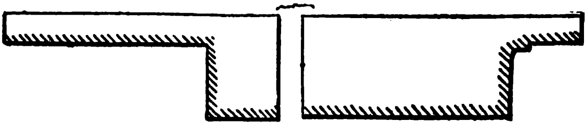


Fig. 345.

The dished plates (Fig. 338, D, E), to which the buckets and guides are respectively bolted, would be made from patterns if small, but struck up if large. Either greensand or loam may be used in the latter case. If greensand, the boards will be cut as in Fig. 346; if loam, like Figs. 347, 348—the difference between the two being as follows: In a struck-up greensand mould the top board cut to the dotted line, *a*, *a*, *a*, *a*, in the Fig. 346, strikes a bed of hard rammed sand, which, being sprinkled with parting sand and covered with a top box has a reverse sand mould rammed upon it, a thing easily and constantly being done, since the lower sand is rammed sufficiently hard to resist the thrust of the hand-rammer. This being lifted away, the board cut to the full line, *b*, *b*, *b*, *b*, strikes out the thickness of metal to the bottom edge. The top box then closes this bottom mould for casting.* The disadvantage of this method is, that square edges—that is, edges of sand standing approximately vertical—cannot be lifted in greensand without becoming torn away and broken down, so that mending up with sweeps becomes necessary. Where this occurs the best way is to make the board to strike the edge at an angle from which the sand will lift without fracture, ram the top box on that, and then make the edge in the top square with a sweep. We then have an unbroken lower edge by which to guide the mending-up sweep (Fig. 349). The advantage of adopting a greensand mould is, that the time occupied in bricking up and drying are both saved—items of so much importance that a loam mould which would occupy perhaps four days in making could be done within a day in green-

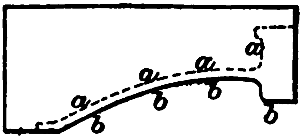


Fig. 346.

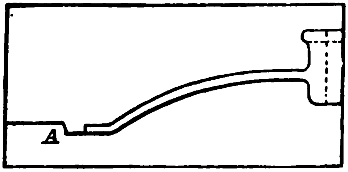


Fig. 347.

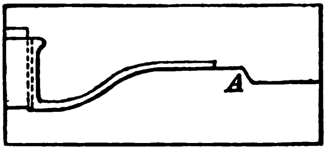


Fig. 348.

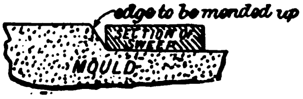


Fig. 349.

---

* For another example of a struck-up greensand mould see Chap. VI. p. 45.

sand. There is of course a large class of foundry work which must be done in loam; but where the option lies between the two, the difference in cost will induce us in such cases to decide in favour of greensand.

A comparison of the figures illustrates the difference in method, for in the loam mould the boards strike the actual opposite faces in both top and bottom,* while in the greensand the bottom face only is directly struck. When the moulds are closed, the checks, A, A, insure their concentricity.

The guide-ring plate, E, carries the step bearing of the turbine shaft (Fig. 338, F), and the step of a turbine is lined with strips of lignum vitæ (Fig. 350), which, with the water for a lubricant, answers better than metal. These strips are driven tightly into grooves, *a*, *a*, *a*, cast in the boss (Fig. 351). These recesses, if cut out in the pattern, are so deep, and the spaces between them so slight, that they would not deliver from the sand. Hence we core them out, as indeed we should do in the case of any other recesses or pockets where accuracy is required. But neither could we put prints around the inside of the boss, since the thin sand between their edges would not hold together. So the correct way is to put a round print upon the centre of the boss just as though there were nothing but a perfectly plain core wanted. Then we make a core-box for the recesses, distinct from the main central core, of course with no print allowance, and the sides of this should have a shade of taper from the upper end, so that the strips shall have a tendency to tighten as they are driven down. When the cores are dry the pattern-maker marks off as many equal divisions on the central core as there are to be recesses in the casting, and nails the recess cores upon the central one (Fig. 351), which is then ready to be dropped bodily into the mould.

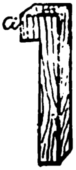


Fig. 350.

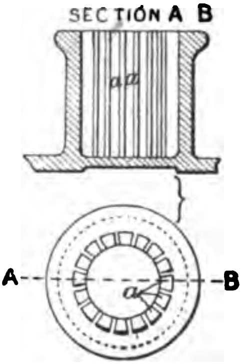


Fig. 351.

The pattern-maker is also expected to fill in the lignum vitæ blocks, and this should be effected with as little waste of stuff as possible. The best plan is to cut the stick down with a circular or frame-saw to the thickness required, and then, having fitted a templet strip into the casting and made the necessary allowances for turning and facing, to mark out the thicknessed stuff from that. Once sawn out, the pieces should be kept in a cool place or in water while being worked up, as lignum vitæ is particularly liable to shake in the joints of the annular rings. When driving in, care should be taken not to strike on the shoulder (*a*, Fig. 350), or it will infallibly split off. When all are driven in, the step will go into a lathe having a slide-rest, to be bored and faced.

---

* See also Chap. XII.

The governor-guide (Fig. 338, G, G), is either cast in a piece with the arms or bolted to them afterwards, the latter plan being preferable. A small guide would be cored out with segmental cores, a large one struck in loam, for which the boards will be like Fig. 352. The arms (Fig. 338, H, H) are planed up oval-shaped and mortised into the central boss (Fig. 353), and have their flanges screwed on, everything being fast, and the moulder joints down to the centre of the oval section.

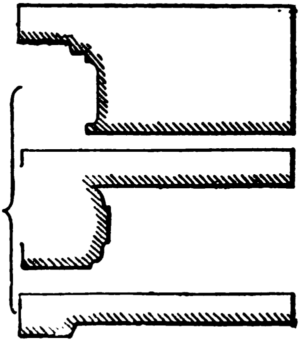


Fig. 352.

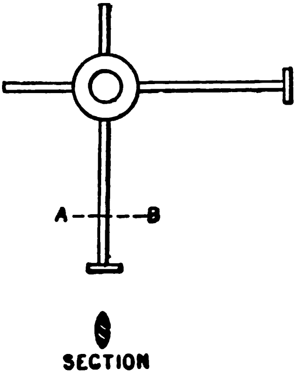


Fig. 353.

CHAPTER XXXIII.

BOILER FITTINGS AND MOUNTINGS.

Dead-plate.—Marking and Filling.—Fire-bar.—Allowance for Play.—Bearer.—Door Frame.—Building up of the Pattern.—Door.—Valve Seatings.—Safety-valve Shell.—Valves.—Sweeped Fire-bars.—Mud-hole Door Frames.—Man-hole Frames.

LANCASHIRE and Cornish boilers are fired internally, the latter being constructed with a single furnace tube, the former with two, and with cross-tubes besides passing through the furnace. The pattern-maker has to prepare dead-plate, fire-bars, furnace front and door, seatings and valves, and other attachments. Some of these have to be fitted to the boiler, and a few general hints relative to these matters may very properly be borne in mind.

The dead-plate (Fig. 356) is that portion of the fire-grate surface lying just within the front end of the boiler, and it ranges from 9 inches to 15 inches or 18 inches in width, according to the capacity of the boiler. It slopes downwards and backwards, and either rests upon angle iron brackets fastened to the sides of the fire-box, or simply against the boiler sides. In order to fit it correctly, the workman marks its position at the boiler front, and also the amount of drop or slope which the fire-bars make where they abut against the bridge (about 1 in 10), and straining a chalk line between these points, strikes the line of slope on each side of the fire-box. To these lines the dead-plate pattern is fitted, and a few chipping strips, *a*, *a*, sufficiently thick to compensate for the contraction which the plate will undergo, and to allow of a little fitting besides, are fastened upon the ends. At its front end the plate either abuts against or rests upon a flange upon

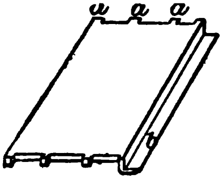


Fig. 356.

the fire-door frame, and at the back it is recessed, *b*, to receive the ends of the fire-bars.

The fire-bar is a simple pattern of the annexed shape, Fig. 357. It is tapered in section to allow the ashes to fall freely downwards, while the upper portion is left parallel to keep the air-space parallel and equal during the burning down of the bars. The central thickness pieces, *a*, *a*, are put there to prevent the twisting of the bar sideways. Bars like this, when made in quantity, are usually made from iron patterns, which are moulded by simply bedding in. Fire-bars should never be made a tight fit, as they expand permanently with the heat, but a play of about 1 in 24 should be given at the ends. The cast-iron bearers for the bridge and for the fire-bars are made of an L or T section, and are fitted similarly to the dead-plate, Fig. 358.

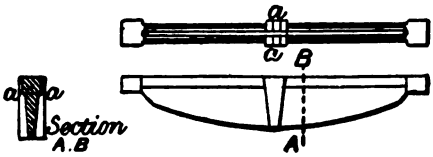


Fig. 357.

A fire-door frame is shown in plan, and in section in Fig. 359. The plate, A, is framed together with segmental pieces and half-lap joints, preferably to cutting it from a single piece of stuff, since the taking out of the central portion would leave short grain at the sides. The hooded portion, B, is glued up with thin segments, cut through with gouge and chisel and screwed upon the plate. The front, C, is halved together with half-lap joints, and screwed to the face edge of the hood. A narrow chipping strip, *d*, is run round in segments on the face which bolts to the boiler, of sufficient depth to clear the rivet heads, and a thin facing is bradded to that portion upon which the door folds. Lugs, *e*, *e*, *e* for attachment, and, a lug, F, on

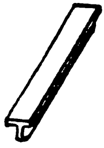


Fig. 358.

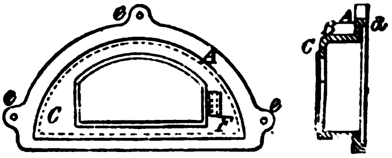


Fig. 359.

which the door hinges, cored out with pocket prints for the hinge pin, completes the pattern.

The pattern of the door (Fig. 360) consists of a thin plate, having a couple of hinge lugs and a thin facing on the front for chipping. Provision will often be made for draught by a revolving ventilator or a sliding grid, the holes for which are cored out. If the fire-hole opening is wide, a double door is used in preference to a single one.

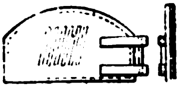


Fig. 360.

Seatings for the valves and cocks are made in cast iron, and riveted to the boiler. Fig. 361 shows the pattern of a seating of this kind. It consists simply of a curved flange, A, and boss, B, having T-headed recesses cast in. The flange may either be fitted to the boiler direct, or a thin templet of wood may be cut to the curve of its diameter, and the pattern worked with a templet cut the reverse of this. The flange itself is made distinct from the boss part, and the two screwed together afterwards. The stuff for the flange being planed to a parallel thickness, the hollow face should be planed first, and the rounding side gauged and cut with a chisel afterwards, remembering that the rounding of the flange should blend into a hollow around the flat face on which the boss is to be secured. On this boss, plain, square prints will be nailed, and a core-box shaped like Fig. 362 will take out the T-headed recesses.

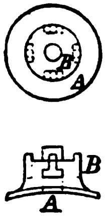


Fig. 361.

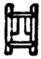


Fig. 362.

The shell of a safety-valve consists of a plain, double-flange pipe, with or without a branch for the steam-pipe, depending upon whether the steam is taken from the valve or no. Or, if there be two valves, as in large boilers, it consists of a double bend pipe (Fig. 363), a core-box (Fig. 364) being necessary with the latter. The valves may be flat disc (Fig. 365), maintained in position with guides attached to the seating

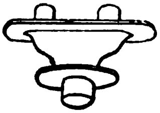


Fig. 363.

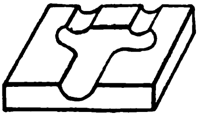


Fig. 364.

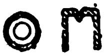


Fig. 365.

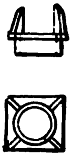


Fig. 366.

(Fig. 366), or mitre, with three or four wings (Fig. 367), having either a top pin, A, or a recess to produce unstable equilibrium, and prevent the tendency to sticking (Fig. 368). The patterns of these valves are all made like their castings, the wings being cut separately from the discs and studded on, either fast or loose. Mahogany should be used, and they mould just as they stand when in natural position.

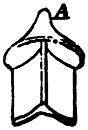


Fig. 367.

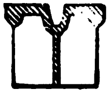


Fig. 368.

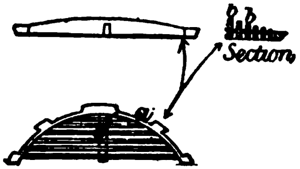


Fig. 369.

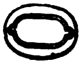


Fig. 370.

Vertical boilers, for steam cranes and small stationary engines, have fire-bars of a sweeped outline (Fig. 369). These are sometimes cut out of solid mahogany; but the best way is to build up the rim, *a*, in segments, and, having cut that to shape, to fit the bars, *b*, already planed to their thickness, into very shallow grooves, about $\frac{1}{16}$ inch deep, cut in the rim. The connecting strips, *c*, are glued in afterwards. These bars rest upon a ring of wrought iron set in the interior of the fire-box.

Mud-hole doors are fitted opposite to every cross tube and at the bottom of the boiler. These are plain oval castings, held in place with a tightening screw. When the boiler is cleaded, as these vertical boilers often are, the cleading is screwed to a casting made to encircle the hole. These are of the annexed shape (Fig. 370), and being extremely thin, are either made from metal patterns or are cored out. The man-hole in a cleaded boiler has a frame also precisely similar (Fig. 371), but, of course, proportionally larger. For this a wood pattern is built up in segments, and the flat flange which takes the cleading being thin, is curved round and fastened to the built-up portion. But a metal pattern is necessary for durability, and it is cast in iron if for frequent use, or in lead if used for different boilers having different diameters, and therefore requiring some alteration of curvature.

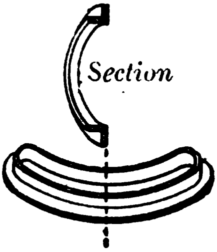


Fig. 371.

CHAPTER XXXIV.

WORKSHOP NOTES.

Allowances for Turning and Planing.—Variable in Amount.—Name-plates.—Lead Letters.—Curved Name Plates.—Chequering of Foot-plates.—Stock Core-boxes.—Glue.—How to make.—How to Joint.—Shellac Varnish.—Paint.—Faced and Unfaced Portions of Patterns.—Prints and Bosses.—Pattern Register.—Makeshift Work.—Lead.—Plaster of Paris.—Shop Tools.—Stamping of Patterns.

THE miscellaneous character of the contents of this chapter will render desirable the classification of the subjects under their appropriate headings.

Allowances for Turning and Planing.—The usual practice is to allow $\frac{1}{8}$ inch on iron castings for machining. This allows of two cuts being taken in the lathe or on the planing machine—a coarse first cut and a fine one for finishing. For brass castings one-half only of this allowance is given, $\frac{1}{16}$ inch. But this, though a general rule, is by no means to be universally observed. In a long casting, where there is a probability that it will not remain straight in cooling, more than the $\frac{1}{8}$ inch must be allowed, the precise quantity being regulated by the risk and uncertainty present as to the amount by which it is likely to buckle. In some long, disproportioned castings, the allowance may be as much as $\frac{3}{8}$ inch. Again, in a small engine cylinder, $\frac{1}{4}$ inch in the diameter is ample, but in a cylinder of 6 feet or 7 feet in diameter that would not be enough for safety, owing to the possible inaccuracy of the core and the uncertainty about contraction, and we should allow from $\frac{3}{8}$ inch to $\frac{1}{2}$ inch in diameter.

Then, on the other hand, a small piece of work need not have so much as the usual allowance, because, the surface being small, will only be affected by its local roughness and slight inequalities, instead of by some other portion of the surface two or three feet distant being possibly not in the same plane with itself. Neither is a small casting affected by contraction as a large one is; practically, it does not contract at all, since the rapping counteracts or more than counteracts its small amount.

Again, in set work—that is, work which is repeated over and over again without any variation—we get to know the amount of contraction so exactly, and the least allowance necessary for fitting so perfectly, that we can do with less allowance than it would be safe to allow for in a first casting. We then reduce it to the minimum, so that expense may be lessened in the turning and fitting shops.

Name-plates.—These are attached to all work leaving the shops. They are cast in iron or in brass. The letters put upon the pattern are first cast in lead or tin, what are called "block letters" being preferable, because easier to prepare, and not difficult to mend up if they tear the mould. They have a large amount of taper on their edges, and are fastened upon a wooden plate, which is usually surrounded with a narrow fillet-strip to improve its appearance. The letters are cast from metal patterns purchased for that purpose, and sold in many different sizes. The pattern-maker, in that case, has to file them up smoothly for moulding. Or they may be purchased by the gross already filed and ready for use. Common shellac varnish, especially if thickened with a little powdered chalk, will hold them very firmly; but, if for permanent use, small upholsterer's gimp pins, or pins still smaller but of the same shape, sold for the purpose by the letter-makers, will render them more secure. Larger lead letters, however, say from 2 inches upwards, will be screwed on the plate.

If a name-plate has to fit a curved or crooked casting it will be made straight in wood first, then cast in lead and bent to shape, and the mould made from the lead pattern. It will be as well to make a bottom board of the same shape to support the lead pattern during the ramming up. Or the pattern will be made straight, cast in yellow metal or soft brass, and bent then to the curve direct. Sometimes the maker's name, instead of being bolted to, is cast in a piece with the work, the letters being put upon the pattern if cast in a vertical position. But if on the side where they would not deliver, the name-plate is put into a core-box, and the core dropped into a print impression made for its reception.

Chequering.—The chequering of cast-iron foot-plates for boiler-rooms, &c., is not always done, as many would suppose, in the pattern. The time required for making and nailing on the lozenge-shaped diamonds on a foot-plate is most deceptive. Hence the method commonly adopted is to nail a double row of "chequers" on a strip of wood, Fig. 372, and to stamp it

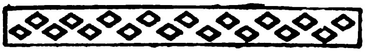


Fig. 372.

in the mould, the hinder row of chequers dropping into the front row of impressions last made, and so forming the guide for the next row.

Many items are kept in "stock" in a well-ordered establishment. Core-boxes for making plain round cores are thus always kept on the foundry shelves. A good set should run from ⅜ inches to 5 inches or 6 inches in diameter, advancing by eighths in the smaller sizes and by quarter inches in the larger ones. They are made in cast iron, fitted as shown in section, Fig. 373, and bored out true in the lathe. Cores larger than these are oftener made from wooden boxes, or are

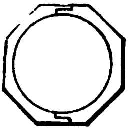


Fig. 373.

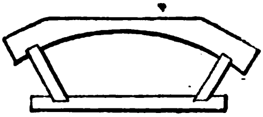


Fig. 374.

struck up on a core-bar. Where the iron pattern rings of pulleys are kept in stock, large cores may conveniently be made from them; or if very large—say over 18 inches or 24 inches—from segment boxes (Fig. 374), six or eight to the circle. Square wooden core-boxes are also kept in the foundry. Small prints are kept in all their sizes; and instead of bradding them on, it is much better to have a standard "stud-bit"—*i.e.* a centre-bit of ¾ inch or ½ inch diameter—and to turn studs on all prints to this size, by adopting which method they will be always readily interchangeable.

Glue.—Glue must be kept free from dust and dirt in a clean box. When required for use, the pieces should be washed in cold water, broken up small with a hammer, and dropped into the middle pot with sufficient clean water to cover them well over. The bottom pot being about three parts filled with water is then put on the stove and simmered, the glue being stirred from time to time with a stick, and the scum which rises ladled off and thrown away. Too great a temperature should be avoided, for that would burn the glue and impair its adhesive power. A small cast-iron tank supplied with hot water from the waste-steam pipe of the engine affords a better means of heating the glue than a fire, because then the temperature can never exceed that of boiling water.

Glue joints are made either with the trying plane or with a longer plane called a "jointer." One face, or edge, as the case may be, is planed true first, and chalked, then its fellow is fitted to the chalked portion. Where the joint is long, two men rub it alternately backwards and forwards to work out all the superfluous glue and air, and "set" it when it becomes difficult to move it any more. The pieces thus jointed are sometimes secured with cramps, sometimes with staples or with weights, or are simply left to themselves—all dependent upon the character of the work. Thin pieces having large superficies—thin segments, for example—have a tendency to curl upwards, the joint opening along the edges, owing to the swelling action of the moisture. Damping the upper surface with hot water from the outer pot counteracts this tendency.

In winter-time the joints of the pieces to be glued should be warmed, else the glue will chill, and never set properly. The "thickness" or consistence of the glue is regulated by the amount of water present, and should vary with the character of the work, end grain joints or joints running obliquely to the grain requiring thicker glue than those along the grain, and small stuff taking thicker glue than stuff having a large area. Both of the joint faces of the wood operated upon should receive an application of glue from the brush. From one and a half to three hours is sufficient to allow of the drying of the joint, more in winter than in summer, though it is always better where practicable to give an unassisted joint a night to harden.

Varnish.—The varnish of the pattern-maker is made by dissolving pale shellac in wood naphtha or in methylated spirit, in the proportion of about two pounds to the gallon. The spirit should be pure, for if there is water present the varnish will dry white and streaky. While dissolving, it should be kept in a warm place, and shaken from time to time, or stirred with a clean stick. No other ingredient is put in, and the varnish is laid on with a brush only. When dry, the grain of the wood presents a hard rough surface which is glasspapered down, and another coat of varnish is laid on, two coats being the usual number for ordinary patterns, three sometimes for better work. When a large number of castings are wanted from one pattern it is true economy to preserve the grain from the action of the damp sand by a liberal application of varnish.

Paint is often used in preference to varnish in the case of large patterns. It gives a harder skin, is cheaper, and if plenty of "driers" is put in it soon hardens.

We have referred several times to the upper and lower parts in moulding as affecting planed and turned metal faces. The moulder, in most cases, would not be able to distinguish the one from the other in classes of work to which he was unaccustomed. Hence it is the custom in some shops to indicate the faced and unfaced portions by distinctive colours. Thus, if the pattern were varnished with yellow shellac varnish, the portions faced might be coloured black or red. This practice is often extended to distinguish prints from bosses, which are sometimes confounded by the moulder, cores being put into bosses, and prints being cast on. Then a third colour would be adopted for all prints.

Further, to prevent mistakes, and to keep a pattern register on the pattern itself, a printed label is sometimes stuck on, containing sundry items—as for instance, "Pattern number, *A* 840; Number off, *Two; Cast, this side down.* Name of pattern, *Steam-chest.* For, 12-*horse engine*," and perhaps the initials of the foreman are added. Or a kind of cheque-book is kept by the foreman, and a written order from that book given loosely with the pattern to the foreman moulder, the counterfoil being kept in the pattern-shop. This might contain, "*date, order number, number off, name of pattern.*" In shops where little system is observed, because a very limited amount of work is done, it is usually considered sufficient to *chalk* on the pattern 1 *off*, 4 *off*, 12 *off*, as the case may be, and to give special instruction by word of mouth.

Work of a makeshift character often has to be done in the pattern-shop and foundry. Castings are frequently renewed without a wood pattern, the broken or worn casting, as the case may be, being made to do duty as a pattern. Where this is the case, all dirt and grease (which would cause the sand to stick) is burnt off; parts that would not mould by reason of their being undercut are filled in with prints, and core-boxes made to take out the undercut portions. Holes are filled up and printed; contraction, if the casting be large, is allowed for by thin strips of wood laid against the ends. Allowances for turning and planing are made by thin slips of wood, or of lead if the surfaces where the allowances are required happen to be curved. Broken wheels are often replaced in this manner, new patterns being expensive. The broken teeth are made good by the pattern-maker, the wood being fastened to the metal with thick shellac varnish, and a couple of mending-up teeth provided to make good any falling down of the mould. These broken castings require varnishing in order to draw from the sand.

Thin sheet lead is very useful in the pattern-shop for lining up the patterns of brasses or other bearing parts in order to accommodate them for a smaller bore, for thickening up curved faces where it would be difficult or impossible to bend wood, or for increasing by a slight amount the diameter of a pattern—as, for instance, that of a flange or small rigger. The lead is fastened on with fine screws or with brads. For lesser increments of thickness limp cardboard or thick brown paper are serviceable, attached either with glue or shellac varnish. Plaster of Paris, too, is almost indispensable in the shop. In small work of a temporary character a pattern, or some portions of a pattern, or an alteration to an existing pattern, can be made in a few minutes with plaster, which alteration would take a very much longer time if done in wood. And since its purpose is but temporary, it is of no consequence if the plaster becomes broken on leaving the mould.

There is a good deal of rough work, as well as some of the very best, done in the pattern-shop. As a rule, the men who do the one class are not employed to any great extent upon the other. Among the rougher class of work shop tools take an important place, and in a large factory there is always sufficient in this line to keep one man constantly employed. There are boxes and turn-over boards for the foundry, special chucks and templets and setting blocks for the turners and fitters, bending blocks for the boiler-makers, and dies of all descriptions for the smiths. Much special knowledge is required in this work—little "tips" and "wrinkles," as the workmen say—and certain allowances, all essential to the perfection of results. So that, after all, the term "rough" rather implies an absence of "finish" in the patterns than a slight equipment of technical knowledge or absence of accuracy. For rough work as applied in this sense a foreman or employer will provide special timber. While he will use the very best quality board that can be got for the best and standard work, he will provide a certain proportion of seconds for the rougher work of shop tools, core-box sides, boxed-up patterns, and loam-boards.

All patterns should be stamped before they go into the pattern stores. They may be stamped by the name of the piece of work to which they belong, or by some distinctive number, which number is kept in a pattern register, or with both together thus: "4IN. THREE THROW PUMPS. B 482." The letter B has this reference: when the registered patterns have reached a certain number, say, 1,000 or 10,000, an increase in the number of figures is apt to cause inconvenience. Hence, there would be A 1, A 2, &c., up to the limit, say A 1,000; then B 1, B 2, as far as B 1,000; afterwards C 1, C 2, to C 1,000, so that 26,000 patterns might be thus registered. The system is an excellent one, and is largely adopted. The drawback is, that when patterns have been repeatedly altered, as they very often are, for modifications of design and difference in dimensions, these registers become comparatively valueless unless a very complete record of such alterations is kept in the pattern register itself.

Checking Patterns.—A good many readers on seeing this heading will think, "Why, there's nothing in that. 'Tis just a case of taking a few measurements, and then the thing is done." Well, if those of my readers had been checking patterns and castings as I have, for many years, and been entirely responsible and blamable for all errors in dimensions, I think they would have found that there is something worth saying about it. Of course, like other fallible men, I have had an occasional big blunder, but on the whole I have been tolerably free from these, and for the assistance of my fellow-craftsmen, both journeymen and foremen, I will just state concisely the general lines on which I work.

I never assume that a pattern is correctly made. On the contrary, however good the workman is who has made it, I assume that there are some errors in it. I regard every pattern with suspicion until proved to be trustworthy. This is a safe attitude to take up; the contrary assumption may lead to trouble.

Before measuring anything at all, look the drawing well through, in order to gain a clear idea of the relations of the several parts. Then walk round the pattern, and, taking a general survey of its broad features, see that everything shown in the drawing is also on the pattern; and not only on, but in its proper relation to the other parts. Compare pattern and drawing in their several corresponding views in succession—plan, elevation, end views, and sections. When you are sure that the general relations of parts are all correct, then begin to measure.

Take first all centres and lengths embraced in one view—plan, or elevation. Don't trouble about other views, but finish one at a time. After the cardinal dimensions, take the less important ones, as minor lengths, thicknesses, diameters, &c., one by one, going over the drawing in detail. Some tick off each dimension as taken, but this is not necessary if contiguous dimensions are followed, and it disfigures shop drawings. When one view has been thus treated, pass on to the next, and so on, until every dimension in every view has been tested.

As regards the methods of taking dimensions, they do not differ essentially from those employed on the marking-off table. Most patterns have to be laid either upon a true bench or on a drawing-board, or on a joint board, in order that the square may be tried up against vertical faces, both to test the truth of those faces and to take measurements therefrom.

A foreman should always insist that centre lines should be scribed, not marked with pencil, which might be easily obliterated. Scribed lines facilitate measurement, and tend to accuracy.

After having checked the pattern dimensions proper, the next thing should be to test the correspondence of prints and core-boxes, and to check the core boxes with the drawing dimensions. Note that the print thickness is allowed in the core-box. Not infrequently it happens that this matter is forgotten, and that the core-box is made minus the print thickness.

As regards the correspondence of prints and core-boxes, it should be noted that they ought not to correspond exactly. In large cores the boxes should be rather smaller than the prints; in small cores the boxes should be slightly larger than their prints. The reason is this: large cores become strained in ramming, and usually come out rather fuller than their boxes, and will then require to be filed before they will go into their prints. Small cores, on the contrary, come out a trifle smaller, owing to the rapping of the box sides, and they are too small to become strained. In small patterns, again, the rapping makes the mould rather large, and therefore the diminished core fits slack into the enlarged mould. Of course, these differences are slight, and for rough work no notice need be taken of them; but in the best work, and standard work, account should be taken of these things, for a close-fitting core prevents the formation of fins, and of slight movement out of place. On the other hand, when a moulder starts to file a core, the chances are that he will file it irregularly, or take too much off. The precise amount of the difference in size between core-boxes and prints is one for experience. No two moulders or core-makers work alike. One man is more clumsy than another. Then, moreover, the thickness of the coat of blacking counts for something in small cores. Generally, for large cores, I make the box a full $\frac{1}{16}$ inch or $\frac{3}{32}$ inch smaller than the print; and in small cores I make it slightly fuller, or so that the calipers fitting easily over the print will fit very stiffly on the core.

Important matters in checking pattern-work are, to see that faces are in winding with each other; that parts are duly parallel, or at right angles, as the case may be; that the taper is equally distributed, and that it does not interfere with working parts.

In a rough-and-ready way the truth of faces in the same plane can be judged by the eye. But we often have to check the truth of faces which are not in the same plane, but are situated higher and lower, or which, if in the same plane, cannot be glanced or sighted down directly because of other portions of the pattern, as prints, brackets, and bosses standing up in the way. Then the winding strips alone are available. Do not use short winding strips. Employ them of such a length that they stand out a foot or more beyond the faces which they are checking. Error will then be magnified, and so become quite apparent. If, in a bad light, the edge of the farther strip is but dimly discernible, chalk the upper part of the flat face that faces towards the observer, and the edge will then appear sharply defined.

When trying surfaces that are in the same plane, it does not matter if the faces of the strips are not parallel with one another. But when trying faces that stand higher and lower, the strips must be kept strictly parallel, or the results will be inaccurate. But when checking such higher and lower faces, it is usual to place packing blocks of parallel thickness under the lowermost strip to raise it up level with its fellow.

Again, when checking opposite faces for parallelism, it is not usually accurate enough to take rule measurement down the opposite sides—that is, at right angles with the faces. Two strips should be placed on the opposite faces, and measurement be taken from their extreme limits in order to magnify any want of parallelism in these faces; or caliper measurement may be made, but the strips are better. In many cases caliper measurement cannot be taken, but the straightedges afford the only means available.

To test the truth of faces at right angles, the try-square alone is often not good enough. Thus, if the face against which the stock of the square is tried is not true, this mode of testing will give erroneous results. And the flat surfaces of patterns are frequently not true, especially in old work. Hence the need of a level board upon which a pattern can be laid, and from which the set square can be tried. Or when a try-square is used, its stock should be long enough, or nearly so, to go over the entire breadth of the surface from which trial is made. This may seem a trivial matter, but it is not so; for if the surface upon which the stock is tried is out $\frac{1}{32}$ inch only, then on the length of the blade there will be $\frac{1}{16}$ inch difference, and this will often equal the allowance for taper, or half the allowance for machining.

When putting taper see that it is equalised. This is best tested with a set square and with calipers. It is an axiom that a very considerable amount of taper shall be given to parts that are not working parts, but that the smallest appreciable amount should be given to working faces.

A foreman should always exercise control over the allowances given for shrinkage. There are certain standard allowances given for average work, as $\frac{1}{8}$ inch in 15 inches for cast-iron, $\frac{1}{8}$ inch in 10 inches for brass and gunmetal, and $\frac{1}{4}$ inch per foot for steel. But these are only averages, and every foreman who has had much experience knows as a rule how much these allowances must be departed from for special jobs. I cannot go into this extensive matter here, but mention it by way of caution.

Another point is the making allowances for moulders' ways and the straining action of moulds. The pattern thickness for all large plated work should be under size, if thicknesses are required accurate, because such thicknesses increase by casting. All deep moulds become strained also, so that a deep casting will usually come out as deep as the pattern itself, though shrinkage allowance has been given.

The accuracy of the pitch of wheel teeth and their equal thickness must be checked with calipers upon the pitch-line. Their position, as regards right angles, is best tested by laying them flat upon a surface board and trying a set square up their flanks. This is better than using a trying square from the ends of the teeth. Their accuracy lengthwise should be tested by a small thin straightedge—that is, if they have been cut by hand.

When checking dimensions, do as little arithmetic, adding and subtracting, as possible. Measure, whenever practicable, direct. If, for instance, $2\frac{1}{16}$ inches has to be taken from $17\frac{7}{16}$ inches, let the rule stand over the edge of the work that $2\frac{1}{16}$ inches. This seems a trumpery little point, but its observance will save a blunder in calculation sometimes. For the same reason, when checking a loam board, measure direct from the centre of the job, obtained either by straining a line or by laying a straightedge down it. Do not measure from the edge of the board, subtracting the differences from centre to edge from every successive radius dimension.

Old patterns in a jobbing shop are pitfalls for the unwary foreman. They are not to be trusted, for between previous alterations, shrinkages of timber, and damages in the foundry, they are often altogether wrong. In many old patterns special attention must be given to checking the shrinkage that the stuff may have undergone in the stores since last put away. Many old patterns that should be circular approximate to an elliptical form. They must be altered by gluing a strip on the edge, or, if circular and jointed, by gluing a liner in the joint; if circular and solid, by sawing them down the centre, jointing the edges, and gluing sufficient between the joints to make them circular. Patterns that have been put away in the stores after the first time of using only are much more likely to be out of truth when brought out again than those which have been used several times at considerable intervals. The former are more liable to shrink (the stuff being comparatively new) than the latter, in which the stuff has been well seasoned by time.

This is just a bundle of general hints, so much ought to be said if I were to go fully into details of measurement; but these hints are the groundwork of safe results.

CHAPTER XXXV.

PATTERN-SHOP MACHINERY.

Lathes—For Light and for Heavy Work—Characteristics requisite—Chucks—Saws—Circular—Framing—Sizes of Saws—Fences—Other Apparatus—Band Saws—Framing—Pulleys—Other Parts—Planing Machines—For Surfacing—For Panel Planing—Mitre-cutting Machine—Motor for Pattern-Shop—Gas Engine—Shafting—Speeds of Machines—Care of Machinery.

When the first edition of this book was published, I did not think its scope required that allusion should be made to the machines which are employed by pattern-makers. But in view of the increasing use of these machines, and the differentiated types which are offered for selection, I think it advisable now to write a special chapter on the subject, which will be of service to those who may have to do either with the selection of machines, or with their practical working. It by no means follows that what is suitable for a carpenter's shop is equally suitable for a pattern shop, or that what is adapted to one class of pattern shop is equally well adapted to a shop differently circumstanced. I shall endeavour, therefore, to make my comments as comprehensive and as concise as possible, to suit the widest possible range of conditions.

Lathes.—The lathe is, of course, indispensable. Saws, planers, &c., can be dispened with, and often are in small firms, but not the lathe. And at least two lathes are essential—one for light, one for heavy work. In larger shops there will be more.

For light work, lathes of about 5-inch centres, or ranging, say, between 4½ inches to 6 inches are more useful than any. Smaller lathes are of limited value, while larger ones are more suitable for heavy work. In shops where light brass pattern work is chiefly done, lathes larger than these are seldom required: but in shops doing heavy work, and indeed in all general shops, one lathe of from 8-inch to 12-inch centres, dependent on the work chiefly done, will also be wanted. It is desirable that the beds should be of the extreme length usually manufactured in a given size. The small lathes should have beds of from 5 to 6 feet in length, and the larger lathes, beds of about 12 feet in length. The reason is, that they are suitable for turning pipes and columns without the necessity of having frequent recourse to the temporary extension of the beds for that purpose.

There are plenty of good small lathes manufactured by various firms which are suitable for the pattern shop. I will not illustrate these, as their forms are so well known, but will only mention the characteristics which it is desirable that such lathes should possess.

Everything should be rigid, massive, stoutly proportioned. This is necessary to ensure steadiness during turning, and the prevention of vibration and wobbling, which are quite fatal to the performance of accurate work. Usually these lathes are bolted, not upon concrete foundations, like heavy machine tools, but upon floors and joists; and this is another reason why they should possess rigidity in themselves. Hence, also, I should always prefer lathes with iron beds and iron standards, notwithstanding that in many pattern-maker's lathes these parts are made in wood.

Another, and most essential point, is that the bearings of the mandrels should be of good length, especially those for the running mandrel in the fast headstock. They should not be less than from three to four diameters in length. Further, I do not think steel cones at all suitable for pattern-maker's lathes, which run at high speeds. They are liable to become heated and scored. The bearings should be of gunmetal, or better still, phosphor bronze; and even then, I think that parallel bearings are better than cones.

In some lathes the fast head is cast in one piece with the bed. There is no special advantage or otherwise on the score of rigidity in this arrangement, being made only with a view to cheapening manufacture.

In reference to tool rests, the ordinary tee rest is always used for the average run of work. When a long piece of work is being done, then a specially long tee rest is employed, being supported in two sockets placed from 1 foot 6 inches to 2 feet 6 inches apart. But in a shop where a considerable amount of pipe and column work is done, then it is desirable to have a lathe fitted with a plain slide rest operated by hand,

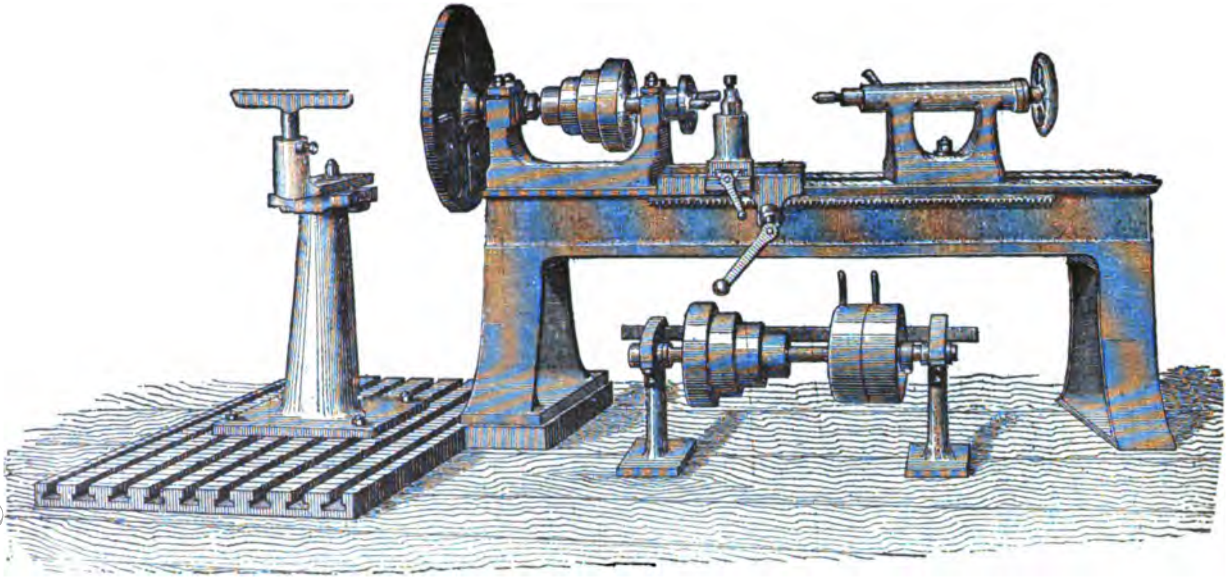


Fig. 375.

with plain rack and pinion movement, the tool being held in a tool post in the socket of the rest. For the turning of tapered columns it is desirable that the poppet should be capable of a transverse movement. But this is seldom done in lathes of English manufacture.

For turning face work of large diameter, there are two methods usually adopted in the shops. One is to turn the headstock right round on the bed, so that the face-plate revolves at the end of the bed, the other is to turn it half round, and run with a twist in the belt. The alteration involves some trouble, and, of course, in a lathe having the headstock cast in one with the bed is quite impracticable. Since in some shops a large proportion of the work consists in face-plate turning, such as wheels and pulleys, bosses and facings, pipe bends and mouldings, it is worth while to have either a special face-lathe, or an ordinary lathe fitted with an overhanging mandrel and floor rest, like Fig. 375. These lathes are of a highly useful type, and the floor rest in the figure has the merit of great steadiness, being quite self-contained and independent.

The chucks used by pattern-makers are very simple. They only comprise the fork, the bell, and the face chucks; the latter in the two forms of the taper screw for some of the smallest jobs, and the plain plate with countersunk holes for wood screws. Generally an intermediate face-plate of wood is employed between the iron plate and the work.

Saws.—During the whole of my apprenticeship I never used circular nor band saws. Now there are few shops in which lads get much practice in the use of the hand saw. There is a vast improvement in the types of the circular and band saws manufactured to-day by contrast with those made twenty years ago. In these, as in other machines, one cannot say that such-and-such a machine is better than any other, but must be content to indicate the principal essentials in a good machine.

It is an easy job to fit up a braced wooden framework for a circular saw, leaving only the saw and its spindle and pulleys to be purchased. But such a structure is lacking in the rigidity which a boxed framing of cast-iron possesses. Because of this, therefore, and also because an iron standard is better adapted to the fitting of fences than a framework of wood, I should be in favour of the purchase of a complete saw bench of iron fitted with a canting fence, with or without other attachments.

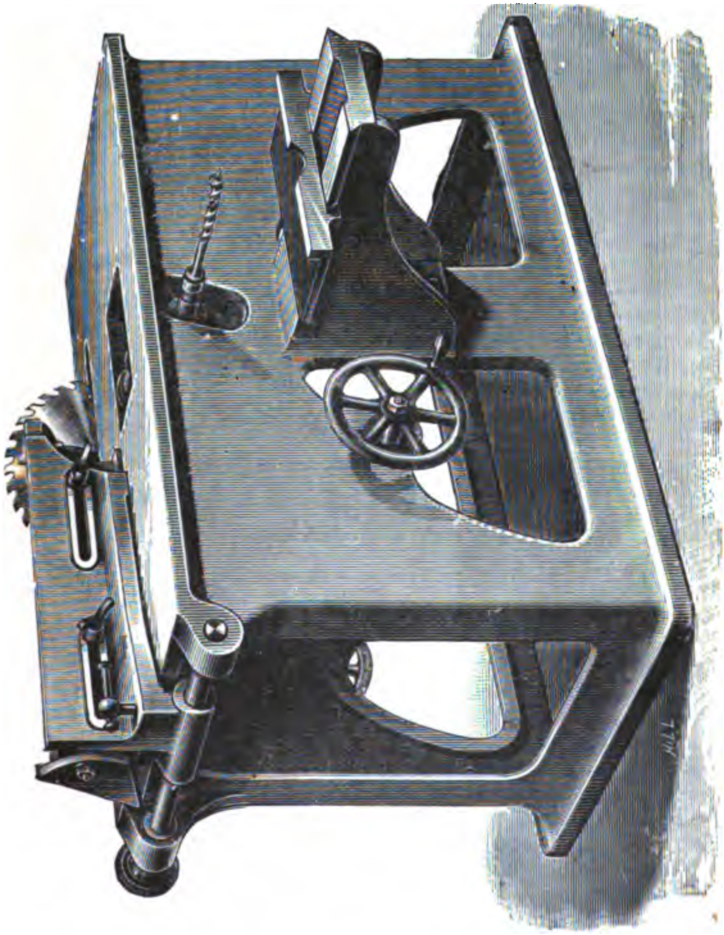


Fig. 376.

The size of saw must be selected with reference to the requirements of any given shop. For shops doing only light work, saws of from 12-inch to 14-inch diameter are large enough. But for the average work of most pattern shops, saws of from 16-inch to 18-inch diameter will be more suitable; while in shops where the same saw has to serve the carpenters as well as the pattern-makers, saws of 20-inch or 21-inch diameter may be selected. Always a saw should be selected to suit the heaviest work that a shop is ever likely to have, because a small saw cannot be made to do work beyond its capacity, while for light work it is always practicable to change the large saw for a smaller one bored to fit the same spindle. This is commonly done, just as cross-cut and ripping saws are substituted one for the other as required on the same spindle.

I need not say anything about the construction and proportions of spindles and pulleys, nor of the shapes of saw teeth, because these are generally correct when they leave the makers' hands. It is only necessary to state what purpose the saws are to be used for chiefly—whether for ripping or cross-cutting, for hard or soft wood, and the proper saws will usually be delivered. Neither can I enter into such matters as the setting and sharpening of the saws, which would lead me beyond the present connection, but will confine my remarks to matters more directly connected with the selection of saws.

A pattern-maker's saw bench should be provided with an adjustable and removable fence. This is essential if the bench is to be utilised to its fullest extent. In a very large proportion of repetitive work for pattern-makers, as well as for carpenters, much time can be saved by the use of the fence. It is desirable that the fence shall be provided with a canting movement for bevel sawing, for lagging strips, &c. And it is necessary that the fence shall be removable to leave the table quite clear for wider stuff and for cross-cutting. The saw in the illustration (Fig. 376) possesses such a fence, movable in a direction parallel with the face of the saw, provided with a canting movement, and being hinged also in such a manner that it can be thrown backward over the end of the table.

This saw, in common with many others, is fitted with a rising and falling spindle. This arrangement is of much service in the pattern as well as in the joiner's shop. The shouldering of half-lap joints and of tenons, and the edges of grooves, can be sawn to line, entirely saving the cost of hand sawing, rebating, or grooving at the bench. Moreover, when there are two saws, one can be sharpened for ripping and one for cross-cutting, and either one can be elevated in an instant, and to any height above the table—slightly only, or to the utmost limit of its range, to suit cuts of any depth.

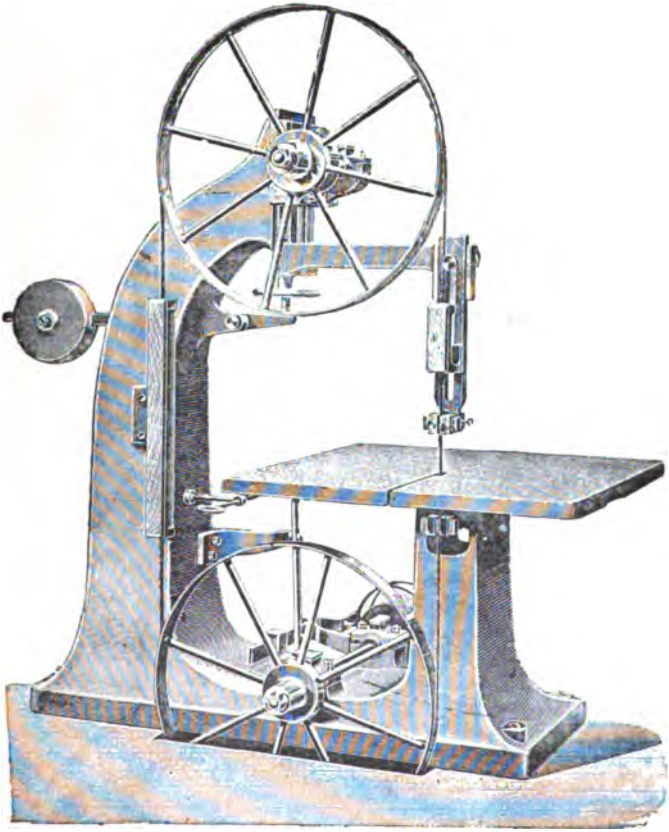


Fig. 377.

In the machine illustrated in Fig. 376 the saw can be removed, and a cutter block substituted, by which tonguing, grooving, rebating, and beading can be done. This is an advantage also in some shops, dependent entirely on the class of work done.

There is also an attachment for boring holes, and a rising and falling table for supporting the work being bored. This is hardly of so much advantage to a pattern-maker as to carpenters, but is a matter worth consideration in a shop where the carpenters work with the pattern-makers. Often when this is the case it is better to have a plain circular saw with canting fence only for the pattern-makers, and have a general joiner for the special use of the carpenters. But, as I have already remarked, the choice in any single instance must always be decided by the circumstances, which vary in every works.

The band saw is almost, if not quite, as valuable an adjunct to the pattern shop as the circular. Where there is no band saw, all segments and swept work have to be sawn laboriously with bow, or compass, or keyhole saw. The earlier saws have been much improved on in the direction of increased lightness combined with greater rigidity, in better guidance, and in the lessening of the risk of breakages of the saws, and in improved balancing. I cannot go into the history of these in detail, but will proceed at once to point out the chief characteristics of a good saw.

The framing must be of the boxed type, because that is the most rigid form, and a rigid framework is one factor in the lessening of liability to vibration, and consequent fracture of saws. The framing shown in Fig. 377 is a good typical one.

The pulley wheels should be as large as practicable. Small pulleys are a fruitful cause of the fracture of saws, because they bend the saws to a relatively small radius, which, with the constant return to the straight form, stresses them unduly. Large pulleys, on the contrary, bend the saws to a relatively large curve only, with relatively less stressing of the steel. If a band saw has pulleys of small diameter, as in the case of the smallest machines, which are occasionally operated by a hand-wheel in shops destitute of power, then the saw should pass over three pulleys having their centres arranged at three points whose connecting lines would form a triangular figure.

It is essential that the pulley wheels should be very light.

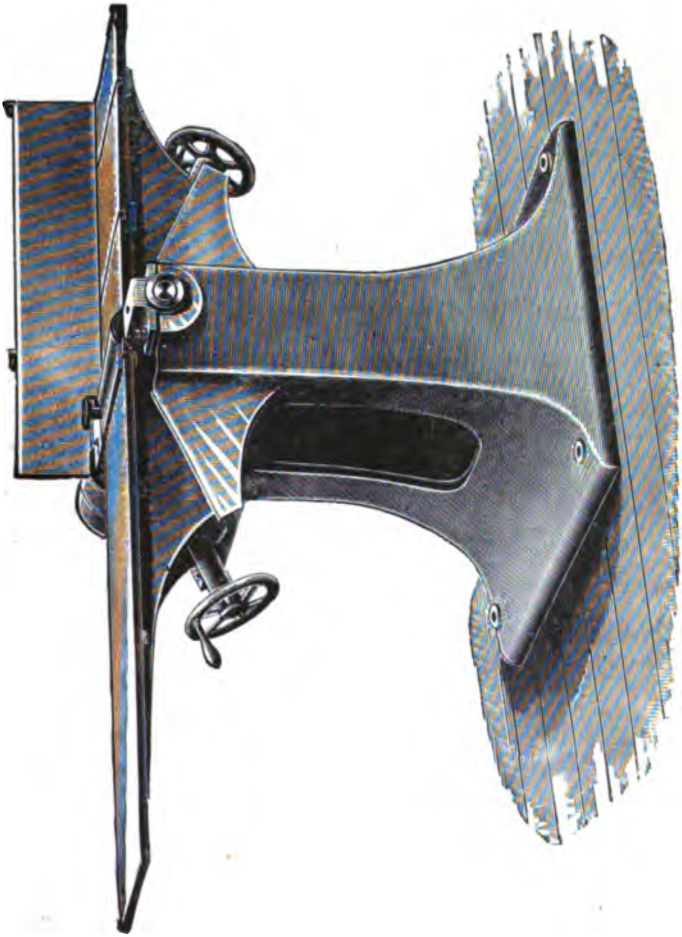


Fig. 378.

Heavy wheels are a fruitful source of breakages because of their excessive momentum, causing overrunning and undue downward pressure and bending in the saws. The best wheels are those of spider design, like bicycle wheels. Flanges at the back of the wheels are not essential. If the wheels are properly balanced and correctly hung, and the saw runs in a suitable guide, then the saw will not run off the wheels even though they have no flanges.

The tension on the saw should be taken off whenever the machine is lying idle.

Rubber, and not guttapercha, is the covering most suitable for the wheels.

The saw is supported at the back, both above and below the table, with guides. These are either steel rollers or steel pins, or simply bits of hard wood—apple-tree generally—saw-kerfed to receive the saw, and well saturated in oil. The top guide is adjustable in the vertical direction, in order that it may be fixed in a position immediately above the stuff being sawn. In some machines it is counterbalanced. The lower guides are generally let into a shallow recess in the top of the table.

The table should be of the canting type for pattern work, so many edges being required cut on the bevel.

Planing Machines.—We now come to a machine which is found in a relatively small number of shops, but which is nevertheless second to no other machine in economy and usefulness; the planing machine, two types of which are shown in Figs. 378 and 379, the latter being the more useful of the two.

The fundamental difference between the machines shown in Figs. 378 and 379 is that the first one surfaces only, the second both surfaces and thicknesses. The latter is, therefore, worth, in economy of time, much more than the extra money charged for it. In a shop of ten or twelve men and boys, one of these machines would recoup its first cost in a twelvemonth. But the shop labourer must be trained to attend to it, for if it is used miscellaneously by each man and boy in the shop, it may become injured, and inflict serious injury on some one, for the revolving knives and the belts are not to be played with or dozed over.

The machine in Fig. 378 comprises a boxed standard, provided with veed diagonal ways, upon which slide two

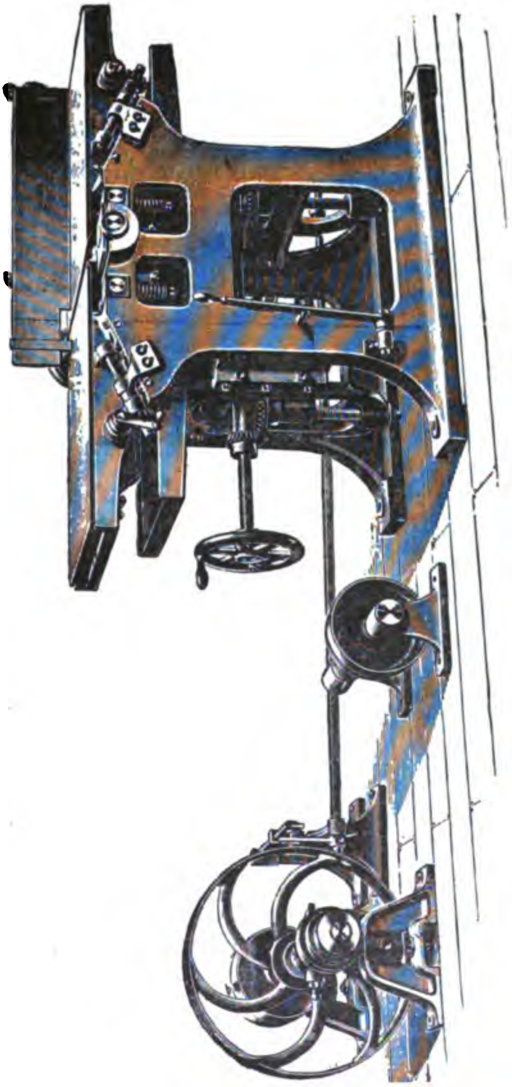


Fig 379.

tables, adjustable with the hand wheels seen to right and left. The table at the right-hand is kept below the left-hand one by the amount of thickness which is to be removed from the board at one cut. The stuff is fed forward over the cutters by the pressure of the hands alone, and this pressure must not be in excess of that actually required for the movement of the timber, otherwise the planed surface will not come out true, but winding. Of course, if the stuff is badly winding in the board, two or three separate cuts will be required to remove all the rough exterior and leave a true smooth surface.

The truth of the planed surface depends also upon the good sharpening of the knives, and their correct setting radially and longitudinally upon the adze block or driving spindle. This is the work of the attendant, who employs a straightedge held along the top of one of the tables for testing the correct setting of the knives before finally tightening the set-screws. This machine is fitted with an adjustable and canting fence for the guidance of edges which have to be planed either square or at a bevel.

The second machine (Fig. 379) is much more complete than the previous one. The stuff is surfaced over the top tables, which are adjustable. But the means of adjustment are more complete in this machine than in the previous one, comprising for each table a worm, and worm-wheel operated by a handle, together with an index-plate and pointer, indicating the amount of vertical movement of the table in fractions of an inch. The right-hand table is also fitted with an adjustable and canting fence.

But the special value of machines of this type consists in the provision for thicknessing, which is accomplished between the lower table seen in the figure and two feed-rollers, the ends of whose spindles are seen at the front of the machine. These spindles are driven by pulleys and gearing operated by a belt, quite independently of the belt which drives the cutter-spindle, and there is a separate striking-gear also for each set of motions. The countershaft with its pulleys is shown in the illustration. The essential point is, that after the one face of the stuff has been surfaced over the top tables, the trued face is then carried along the lower table by means of the feed rollers, and the top rough face is planed over by the revolving cutters above. As the bottom table is parallel with the rollers and with the cutter-block, the stuff is thicknessed quite parallel, while the fact that the lower surface has been already trued, and is laid upon the trued surface of the bottom table, ensures that there shall be no winding of the stuff after it is delivered at the right-hand end of the machine. The height of the lower table is adjustable by means of vertical screws, bevel gearing, and the hand wheel seen at the left-hand end of the figure. This is altogether an excellently-designed and very serviceable machine, suitable for any pattern-shop, large or small.

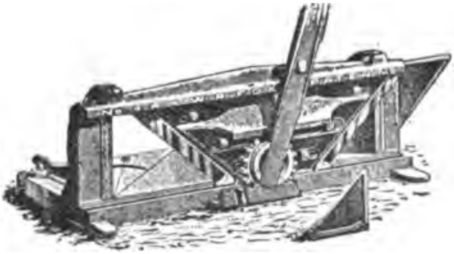


Fig. 380.

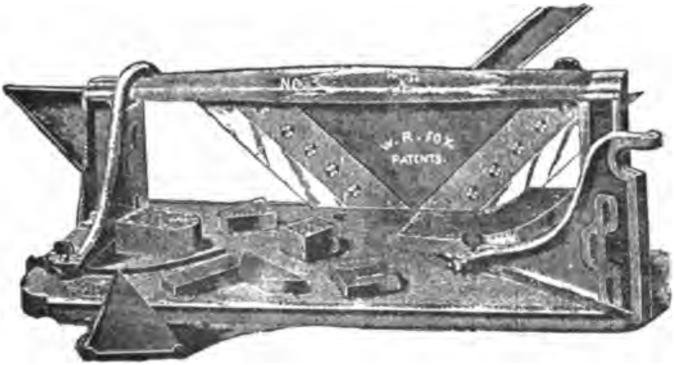


Fig. 381.

A useful little machine in the pattern shop is Fox's Patent Universal Trimmer, Figs. 380, 381, 382. It will cut any ends within its capacity, both square and bevelled, and all bevels, besides mitres. An end that would take ten or fifteen minutes to square or bevel with chisel and plane, can be done more accurately in this machine in a less number of seconds. The gauges or guide brackets at the ends of the machine, which are quickly adjustable to lines scribed on the planed base, become the guide for bevel cutting in one direction, while the true adjustment of the faces of the knives at right angles with the face of the planed base, insures square cutting in the other direction. Fig. 380 shows the back of the bench machine; Fig. 381, the front; Fig. 382, an improved form mounted on a cast-iron standard. In Fig. 381, which shows the front of the machine, the left hand bracket is pinched in a position at right angles with the edge of the base, but the right-hand bracket is removed out of its place and detached to show the hinge. The quadrant slot along which the brackets move, is seen at the left-hand end.

The two knives are screwed to a plate which is guided in grooves planed in the base of the machine, and in the top cross-bar, and are actuated by a hand lever and pinion working in racks above and below. This detail is seen in Fig. 380, which is a view of the back of the machine. To prevent accidental cutting of the hands by the acute corners of the knives when they project beyond the ends of the machine, guard wings of iron are screwed to the ends of the machine. These are shown attached at one end of the figures, while the guards are removed from the other end and laid down beside the machine. In the later type, Fig. 382, there are several improvements introduced besides the standard. Instead of the pinion for actuating the knives there is a half-segment and counterbalance, so that when not in use the knives are retained in any required position. It has also a stop-pin fastening for retaining the gauges or brackets at any required angle, and small adjustable stops against which work is set while being cut to definite lengths. Specimens of the work which is done with these machines is seen lying about. They are manufactured in Mich., America. The English agents are Messrs. J. B. Stone and Co., 135, Finsbury Pavement, E.C.

The best motor for a pattern shop is a small gas-engine, provided specially for the use of the pattern shop. This is better in many respects than an engine situated elsewhere in the works, or than bringing steam-pipes from the works boiler to an engine in the pattern shop. An engine of from

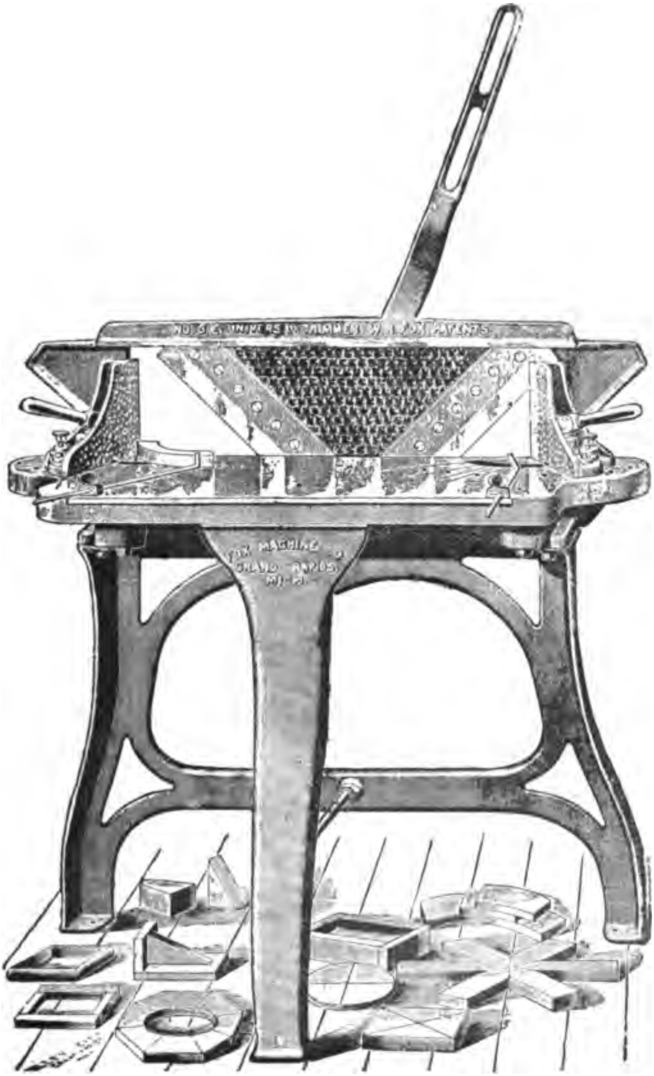

UNIVERSAL TRIMMER
PATENTS
FOX MACHINE CO
GRAND RAPIDS
MICH.

Fig. 332.

4 to 6 H.P. is amply powerful enough to drive all the machinery in a pattern shop of quite average size. Such an engine makes about 120 revolutions per minute. This speed should be reduced at the line shafting to 90 revolutions. The machines will all be driven from countershafts off the line shafting, the speeds being different at all the machines.

The speeds of the countershafts may be roughly as follows:—For lathes, 400 to 600 revolutions per minute; for the circular saw, 400 to 600 revolutions per minute; for band saw, 400 to 500 revolutions per minute; for planer, 600 revolutions per minute.

As regards the speeds of the machines themselves. The lathes can be made to run at almost all speeds by means of their stepped pulleys, or, say, anything between 400 revolutions and 4,000 revolutions, depending entirely upon the size and nature of the work being done. Circular saws should travel at the rate of 7,000 or 8,000 feet per minute at the periphery, band saws at the rate of 4,000 feet; the knives of the planer should make 2,500 revolutions; a grindstone, 90.

A panel-planer requires 2 H.P. to drive it; a band saw from ½ to ¾ H.P.; a lathe, nearly nominal; a 20-inch circular saw, 2 H.P.

The whole of the machinery in a pattern shop should be put under the sole charge of one man, and no others allowed to meddle with it. His work would consist in starting and stopping and cleaning the engine, keeping the shafting and machine clean and lubricated, and operating at least the planer, and perhaps the circular and band saw. This, with the cleaning up of the shop, running with messages, and carrying pattern work into the foundry is work enough for one man.

Constant cleaning and lubrication are essential to the good running of motor and machinery.

The water-tank for the gas-engine must be kept full, and the circulation in the jacket maintained, and the hand should be tried on the jacket two or three times every day to see that there is no obstruction to the free circulation of the water, which would cause overheating of the cylinder to occur. In frosty weather the water should be let out at night, and the jacket refilled in the morning before starting; without this precaution there will be the trouble of a cracked cylinder.

The knives of the planers must be kept well ground and sharp, and the trimmings in the bearings seen to and properly lubricated.

The circular and band saws will have to be kept suitably set and sharpened, the bands on the band saw kept free from sawdust, and the packing in circular and band saws well lubricated.

The lathes must be cleaned down at intervals, and the lubricators in the shafting bearings kept full.

CHAPTER XXXVI.

THE QUALIFICATIONS OF A PATTERN-MAKER.

Specialisation of Work.—Woolwich Arsenal.—Mental Loss suffered by Machine Hands.—Variety in Pattern Work.—Book Knowledge.—Need of Technical Education.—The Relation of Study to Work.—Principles and Practice.—Projection.—Arithmetic.—Experience.—Antiquity of Pattern-making.—Its prospects.

Those who have perused the foregoing chapters will have observed that I have not written to give instruction in the manipulation of tools and timber. Such instruction could only have been imparted at the sacrifice of an equivalent of that more advanced knowledge which I have striven to embody therein. I have therefore assumed that those who would read this work were already in possession of a certain amount of elementary instruction in workshop practice. Hence I have written for the apprentice who has learned the first lessons of his craft, for the young workman whose experience has been limited and opportunities few, for the draughtsman who finds himself sadly crippled in designing new work through lack of knowledge of pattern-making and moulding, for the amateur who has learned how to handle tools and has a smattering of engineering construction, and also, I trust, for those workmen—a large class—who, in these days of extreme specialisation, have been accustomed to one kind of work only, without enjoying the opportunity of learning aught of any other. There are many men who, having been trained in a shop where special work only is done, cannot readily turn their hands to any other branch. In their special groove they get along very well; at all else they prove incompetent, simply on account of the initial difficulties which a little instruction would enable them to surmount. This evil increases year by year, and the praise a fitter once bestowed upon a fellow-workman, to the effect that he was "a first-class slide-valve hand," bears testimony to the manner in which work is being cut up, to the advantage of the purchaser, but to the corresponding intellectual disadvantage of the workman.

Take Woolwich Arsenal, for example, as a type of many a smaller factory. There, though one cannot help admiring the ingenuity displayed in the designing and perfecting of the numerous and valuable time-saving machines in use throughout the place, there is a mournful feeling that the workmen, unless their intellectual character be developed in some way or another outside and independently of their daily labour, must degenerate in time into mere machines also. Think of the mental loss suffered by the man who has to cut the dovetails in the ends of the cartridge-boxes all the year round—who does not even cut them by hand, but merely presents those ends to the automatic machine which takes them out. Or that mental *ennui* which must be endured by the man of monotonous occupation who glues these dovetailed corners together perpetually—pile after pile, hundreds of boxes in succession—from whose sense of responsibility even the risk of making a bad joint is eliminated by the use of a parallel screw clamp of metal. This mental loss is one factor in the heavy price we have to pay for our industrial superiority; hence the greater need for the cultivation of those technical, scientific, and literary aids and recreations which are now happily within the reach of every one.

This is somewhat of a digression, but it illustrates in rather an extreme manner the injury which our modern subdivision of labour does to the workman by robbing him of a useful range of experience—injury, not only because it renders almost unnecessary the continual exercise of his faculties, but also by making him incapable of accepting any other situation save one involving precisely the same routine of automatic labour as that to which he has been accustomed. Now, in the case of the pattern-maker, this danger does not exist to anything approaching the like degree, because even in a shop where but one class of work is done, whether it be locomotive or marine engines, cranes, pumps, or anything else, there is much variation in the different patterns for the different parts. But still there are very few shops indeed in the kingdom where the range of work done is so extensive as that which those chapters, now concluded, have embraced. Consequently, there are numbers of pattern-makers and draughtsmen who have never had a practical knowledge of so many classes of work. And now, having thus far treated of the general principles involved in those various types so fully that I think it would be impossible to name any special piece of work to which those general principles of construction would not apply, I propose devoting a last page to the discussion of the mental training which should proceed coincidently with the practical work of the shop.

Now I am not going to frighten my ambitious fellow-workmen who are desirous of becoming first-class craftsmen by marshalling before them a long array of studies. Book knowledge is not indeed really necessary, for I have known excellent workmen who were comparatively illiterate men; but then they were incapable of ever becoming anything more than mere men at the bench. But the time has gone by, I think, when the majority of young men were content to labour without an aspiration beyond journeyman's wage and the coming Saturday night. The workman's mental horizon has expanded, and the pleasures of literature and the marvels of the wonderland of science occupy the leisure which was once idled away in the streets or the public-house. And now, as ever, though the average man may not rise above the ranks, he is appreciated the more if he has learned the fundamental reasons of things, and so can proceed intelligently at his tasks.

But even when working at the bench no man knows how soon he may be thrown upon his own resources for rough, and, ready design. There is many a comfortable shop where one or two pattern-makers are kept for repairs, and where there is no draughtsman or designer—no one who can render him the least assistance. Yet if a man proves himself competent to cope with emergencies as they arise, and can do a job quickly and substantially without extraneous assistance, he generally has employment so long as he cares to keep it. So, too, in many pattern-shops a working foreman only is kept, and the men have much more scope for the exercise of their talents than in those larger establishments where draughtsmen and foremen arrange everything for them. In general shops again, the workman will often have new and strange jobs given him to do, unlike any that have been done in the shop before, for which he should be prepared by a study of the principles bearing thereon. In repair and jobbing shops, also, workmen, as well as foremen, are sometimes sent out to receive instructions relative to break-down work and proposed alterations. For these, and many more reasons, the pattern-maker's craft is not so easy of mastery as many others are, and it should be his aim to prepare himself for contingencies that may arise in the routine of bench work, and for duties which, if he ever becomes foreman, he will be called upon to perform every day.

It is of no use to think of becoming a good pattern-maker without becoming also, to some extent, a good engineer. A man ill-informed in the principles of design hesitates how to proceed with a new piece of work, or whether to proceed with it at all without calling in some extraneous assistance, simply because he does not know the elementary principles on which his work is based. A knowledge of the elements of geometry or mensuration would often enable him to mark out and cut away his stuff at once, instead of working slowly and doubtfully in the dark. A clear knowledge of the uses to which his work is to be put will enable him to bestow greater care on parts where the greater accuracy is desired, and to bestow less labour on the unimportant portions, and a knowledge of the mechanical laws on which his trade is based will give him a vast increase of interest in the details of the workshop. How delightful to the worker who has also become a student to see for the first time in books those things with which he has been familiar in the workshop, without knowing the why and the wherefore—to see them explained and illustrated, and to learn that the principles of his dull craft are founded on laws as immutable as those which guide the planets.

Briefly noting the studies by which he should qualify himself for his trade, first in the list of his requirements comes the statical portion of mechanics. Here he should well understand the Parallelogram of Forces, with its modifications of the triangle and polygon; the principle of the lever, and the methods of calculating leverages, since these have their applications in screws, gearing, belting, girder calculations, weighbridges, and so on. He should also be conversant with the fundamental properties of fluids, as bearing on liquid pressure and the flow and efflux of water; also of atmospheric pressure as affecting the construction of pumps and of steam-engines. Heat, also, as bearing on the expansion and contraction of metals, the warming of buildings, the economy of the steam-engine, and its equivalent in mechanical work should be studied. Mensuration of superficies and of solids is also a necessary acquirement, as are likewise the commoner problems in plane geometry. And now that electrical engineering is coming to the front, he might find it to his advantage to understand the principles of dynamical and statical electricity, and their application in the construction of the dynamo. All these will be studied best in the elementary and advanced classes held in all important provincial towns in connection with the South Kensington Department—supplemented, of course, by home reading. Neither will the pattern-maker find it so difficult to master the knowledge of these things as an unpractical person would do. For he sees the applications of their principles around him every day of his life. They are so perpetually before his eyes that he too often fails to observe or to regard them. He has only to walk through the factory with his eyes open to see dozens of instances of the application of the principles enunciated in his books. Hence, what is so dry and difficult of application to the mere student becomes instinct with life and fact, and plain and practical, to the observant workman.

A knowledge of drawing is one of the chief requirements of the pattern-maker. And by this I do not mean merely a skill in making drawings from copies. A mere tracer can do this after a few months' practice, without possessing any knowledge of that which his drawing represents. But by drawing I mean the principles of projection as applied to geometric figures, in plans, elevations, sections at various angles, and so forth. Mere copying of the so-called mechanical drawings provided in the schools of Art is of little or no value; but the student who has thoroughly mastered the principles of projection will never experience any serious difficulty either in making or in understanding an intricate drawing. The leisure of a few months devoted to this subject will be of invaluable service ever afterwards. Most of the drawing which the pattern-maker has to do is done to full size upon a chalked board, and therefore minute proportion and finish are neither looked for nor are they necessary. But he will be able to see through an intricate small-scaled general or detailed drawing rapidly and accurately, when he is thoroughly conversant with the principles by which its various views are projected.

The scientific knowledge of the studious worker has to be put to practical use, and for this information of a more technical character must be acquired. Knowing, for instance, how to calculate the strains due to the leverages in a certain piece of work, we also require to know something about the strength of the materials which enter into engineering construction—iron, gunmetal, copper, oak, red deal, pitch pine, &c.—and how to combine these with our arithmetic in the shape of multipliers, coefficients, &c., for tensile, compressive, and shearing strains. A knowledge of how to read the simpler algebraic formulæ—that is, the meaning of signs, brackets, associations of quantities, &c.—is necessary, though algebra and trigonometry themselves are not required in the pattern-shop. Common arithmetic will enable the workman to perform all the calculations he will have to do; and by common arithmetic I mean the elementary rules, together with proportion, decimals, and evolution of the square and cube roots.

Lastly, there is that experience which, in the course of time, bears the semblance of intuition—that experience which comes of close and long-continued observation, and is invaluable to its possessor. Such intuition is far superior to mere book learning—infinitely better than an exhaustive study of all the text-books without it. Yet when the two are harmoniously combined, the result is a full and ready workman who keeps his situation through slack as through busy times, because he has rendered himself so valuable to his employers that they are loth to let him go. Such it should be the aim of every workman to become, and even though he may not perhaps attain the highest prizes, he can never receive that contempt which is awarded freely to the indolent and incompetent.

I have ever loved the trade of my choice. I prefer it to any other with which I am acquainted, and I like it mainly because of the variety of employment which it affords, embracing as it does the whole range of the engineer's knowledge, designing, moulding, fitting, and the application of many branches of science beside. It would not do for us all to think alike; but I should not like to be making table-tops all my life, nor framing chests of drawers together year after year, nor French polishing till my hair turned grey. I love this trade because the continual change of work requires a constant exercise of the mental faculties, at once pleasing and healthful, and invests subjects apparently dry with an ever-new interest. My pattern-making is also of very high antiquity, since some Neolithic fellow-craftsman must have modelled the pattern of the metal mould, with its gate and runner and dowels, from which the first bronze user made his first hatchet or chisel of metal. And it can never be superseded, since no machine can ever take the place of intelligence in the construction of patterns whose types and dimensions are seldom exactly alike.

My task is done. From beginning to end mine has been a pleasant occupation. I have striven to make this volume supply a want which I have experienced in former years, and trust that it may be of service to others in years to come. The types of machinery are ever varying, but the *principles* which lie at the foundation of their pattern-making must ever remain the same.

CHAPTER XXXVII.

PATTERNS FOR PLATE MOULDING.

Turn-over Boards.—Various Types.—Plate Moulding.—Odd Side.—Wooden Plates.—Metal Plates.—Details of Fitting same.—Casting Plates.—Economies of Plating.—Examples.—Moulding Machines.

The basis of plate moulding is seen in the turn-over boards, which are also called bottom boards and joint boards. Their purpose is to assist the moulder either by economising his time, which would otherwise be wasted in levelling or jointing, or by rendering temporary support to a pattern which, but for that aid, would yield excessively to the rammer. In the former case the board has a plain surface; in the latter it follows the outline of the pattern, or moulder's joint, whatever that may chance to be. When the board is plain and the pattern in halves, the bottom half of the moulding box is laid upon the joint board, inclosing one half the pattern, which also has its joint upon the joint board, and is there rammed up (Fig. 383). Both

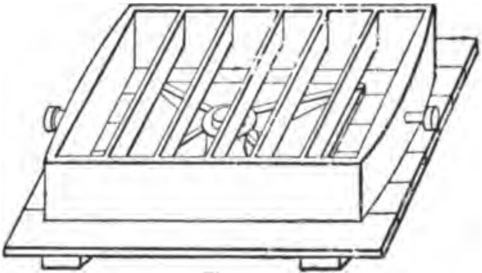


Fig. 383

joint and pattern are therefore true without the trouble of levelling with winding strips. The box then removed from the board and turned joint upwards, receives its top part and the other portion of the pattern for the completion of the ramming up.

A board of this kind should be made stout, of from 1½-inch to 3-inch stuff, according to size of work. Pitch-pine or red deal are better than yellow pine, because harder. The pieces of which it is composed should be narrow and open-jointed, to allow for the swelling and expansion in width which will take place in damp sand. They will be held in place with stout battens screwed underneath, 4 inches to 6 inches deep, by 2 inches or 3 inches thick.

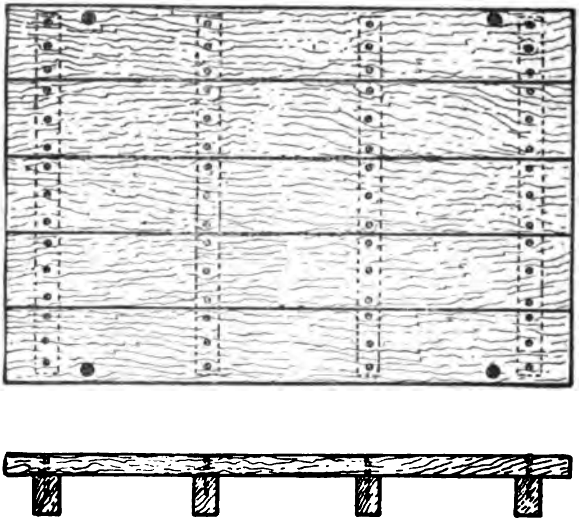


Fig. 384.

Fig. 384 shows such a board with the holes for the pins of the moulding box; Fig. 385 is another, used when the presence of battens would be objectionable, as when pattern parts are put on both sides. This board is made of two thicknesses of strips slightly open-jointed, crossing at an angle, and secured with wire nails. Strips of hoop iron are rebated into

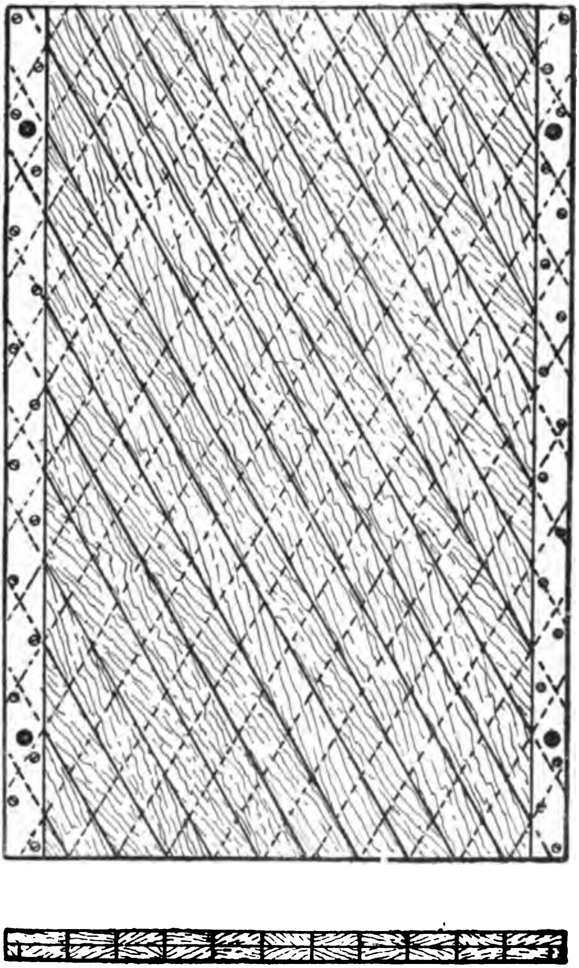


Fig. 325.

both faces next the edges and screwed on, serving to retain the strips at the edges, and to receive the holes for the pins of the moulding box. Such boards are made of large dimensions, both oblong and square.

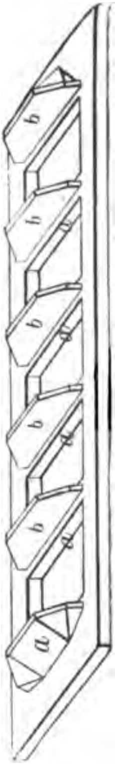


Fig. 386.

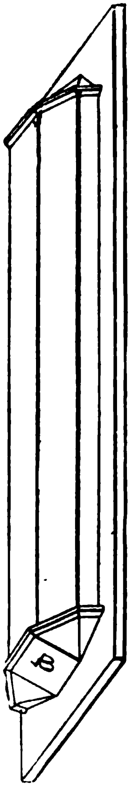


Fig. 387.

The turn-over board for the pattern of a gutter casting (Fig. 386) will afford an excellent illustration of that type which is framed to give temporary support to patterns too slight in themselves to retain their proper shape in the sand.

The bottom board in this case answers three useful purposes. Gutter castings are very thin, not more than ¼ inch, oftener $\frac{3}{16}$ inch, so we stay our otherwise weak pattern upon its blocking. Then, in consequence of their shape, they invariably curve in cooling, and we counteract this by imparting the amount which experience tells us they will curve, to the bottom board, but of course in the reverse way. Also we make the moulder's joint (Figs. 386, 387, *a*, *a*) at the gutter ends, and so save him the trouble of sleeking it every time he rams up the pattern. But for these precautions, the gutter ends; the flanges, or sockets and spigots, as the case may be, would be awry, and not match one another; and the castings would be hollow on the back, so that the water would always find a low place to lie in instead of running right away. In a gutter of the annexed section the open side must be made *hollow* in the pattern to bring the casting straight. In a 6-feet or 7-feet length the amount of concavity will range between ¼ inch and ⅜ inch, variable according to its depth; so we round the face of the bottom board by that amount, and the sketch (Fig. 386) shows how it is best made.

First there is a stout frame of, say, 3-inch stuff, mortised and tenoned, or else jointed with half lap joints. It must be both wide and long enough to leave a margin of sand beyond the sides and ends of the gutter, and to take in the moulding-box lugs besides, for the reception of whose pins holes are bored with a centre-bit. Blocks of stout wood are screwed on the cross ribs of the frame (Fig. 386, *b*, *b*) at intervals of 10 inches or 1 foot—of exactly the same shape as the inner cross section of the gutter. These being parallel and fastened on a curved surface, will partake of the gutter curve. At this stage the pattern is made, the thin strips which form its sides and bottom being glued edge to edge and bradded while in place—flanges (Fig. 387) or sockets and spigots being added at discretion. Then, for the convenience of the moulder, we screw the chamfered blocks at each end of the board, *a*, *a*, to form his joint. All is ready now; the pattern being laid upon the board, and the bottom box dropped over, the sand is rammed around, and forms the reverse of the outside of the gutter, with its terminal chamfered joints, and its longitudinal curved side ones also. The box with the gutter *in situ* is then lifted and turned over, the top part put on and rammed up. The box parts are afterwards separated and the pattern drawn. Thus both rapidity and accuracy are secured, which would have been impossible of attainment with an unsupported wood pattern.

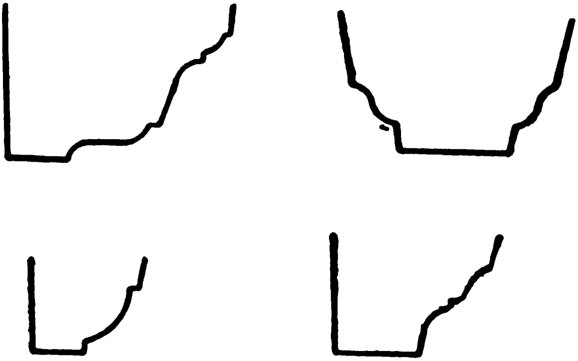


Fig. 388.

The section in Figs. 386, 387 is plain. Common sections are also shown in the group of Figs. 388. Patterns like these are almost of necessity made of metal, unless but a few castings are required. The thickness is only from $\frac{3}{16}$ inch to $\frac{1}{4}$ inch, and though the patterns can be built in wood upon the bottom board they are easily rammed out of truth in the spaces between the distance blocks *b b* in Fig. 386, while patterns of metal—properly of brass—will not yield under the rammer. The moulds for such patterns can be strickled up, or they are cast from rough wooden ones, double shrinkage being allowed in each case. The various strips of which a wooden pattern is built are glued and bradded along the edges. Curved sections are formed by steaming them and bending.

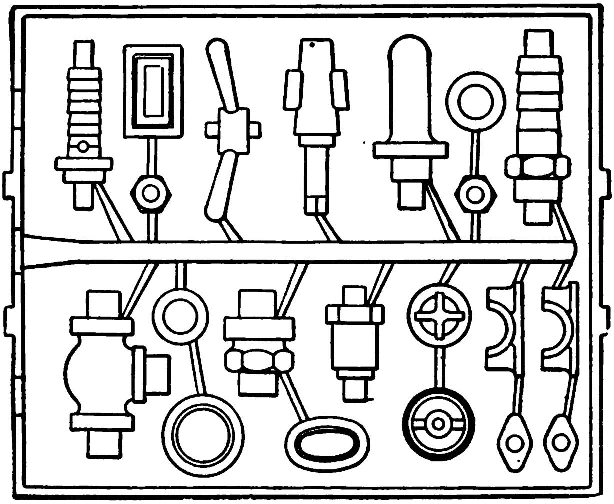


Fig. 389.

In plate moulding a still further economy is obtained, since the founder has not even to turn his mould over. The boxes are not, in fact, brought together until the mould is finished; neither are the runners cut by hand, since they form part of the pattern on the plates. Plate moulding is a system of a very elastic character. Some plates will have flat faces, others will have those of irregular outline, corresponding with the varied classes of joints required for different kinds of patterns and castings. Others will receive patterns on one face only, corresponding with that class of work that only requires a plain top; but many more will carry pattern parts on opposite faces; the patterns being either in halves or divided in unequal proportions. And instead of putting these portions on opposite sides of one plate they may be and are often put on one side only of two plates.

The methods of odd-side moulding will help us to understand the mounting of patterns on plates with uneven joints, and odd side also is often a preliminary stage in the making of such plates, an explanation of which will be given later, p. 330. The work of odd-side moulding is a half-way device to plate moulding. In this system patterns are selected of sizes suitable for filling a box, and embedded in an odd-side, see Fig. 389, which shows the odd-side with the patterns in place, and the runners also. This corresponds with that form of jointboard which is recessed to receive numerous small patterns. In the odd-side either hard-rammed sand, or a plaster mould, or a mixture of sand with other ingredients forms the matrix in which the patterns are embedded, taking the place of the recessed joint board. The odd-side also corresponds exactly with the dummy mould in which a pattern or patterns are bedded to form the first ramming face in moulding by turning over. The odd-side never forms a portion of the actual mould, but it serves to ram the first part of each mould—the bottom part—upon; and upon this last the top part is afterwards rammed. The odd-side is not thrown

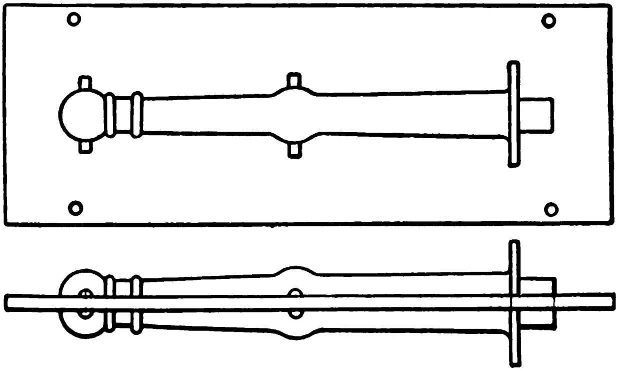


Fig. 390.

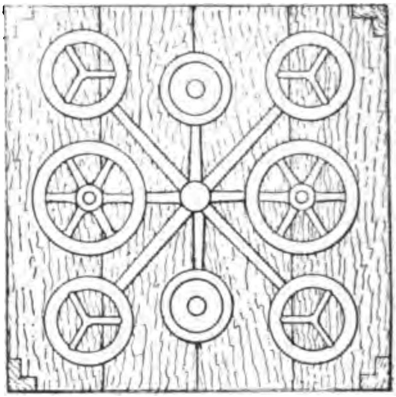


Fig. 391.

away until badly damaged by long service, but it saves the making of a first or false mould for all the moulds,—sometimes hundreds,—that are commenced on it.

When two odd-sides are used, there is a further economy, since two men can be working on the same mould, one ramming tops, the other bottoms, and the mould parts are not rammed together, or brought together at all until finished. The numerous analogies therefore between these methods, and plate- and machine-moulding are obvious.

The simplest plated mounting is that of patterns of wood on plates of wood, or in some cases metal patterns are mounted on wood. This is exactly like the fitting often done on bottom or joint boards with a view either (1) to retain a flimsy pattern in shape; or (2) to form an artificial joint, with or without runners, and so save the time of making these at each time of moulding. A pattern may then be contained wholly upon one side of one plate, or halves of a pattern may be carried on opposite sides of one plate, Fig. 390, or halves may be put on one side of two separate plates.

Figs. 391, 392 illustrate the latter arrangement — wooden plates with common lift valves, clack-box covers, and hand-wheels upon them. Fig. 391 is the plate which forms the

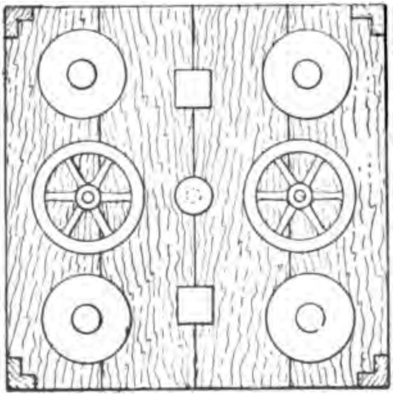


Fig. 392.

bottom of the mould, and upon it the deeper portions of the patterns are fastened if comparatively shallow, dowelled if deep, and the runners to each radiate from the central feeder or gate. The strips screwed at the corners of the plate are there for the purpose of clipping the moulding box without allowing any slop movement sideways. The next plate, Fig. 392, has upon it the top portions of the patterns, corresponding in position with those upon the lower plate, a central stud-hole being bored to receive the runner pin, shown in plan. It also has clips for the maintenance of the box in position. The two corresponding halves of a well-fitting moulding box are rammed, one on one plate, the other on its fellow. Being then put together by their pins, they form the complete mould ready for the pouring of the metal.

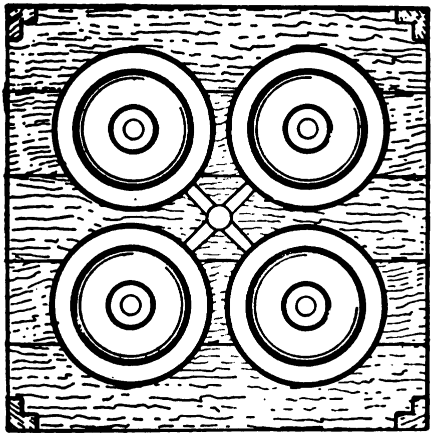


Fig. 393.

Patterns are often placed wholly on one side of a plate of wood. Thus Fig. 393 illustrates four roll patterns of metal put on a wooden plate, the latter fitting the box also by means of corner pieces, a method which is capable of wide application. In the case of the smaller sizes, a dozen, or three or four dozen patterns may sometimes be put on a single plate. All these variations and devices exist in metal patterns on metal plates, as well as in those of wood.

Then, further, the joint faces of the boards, instead of being in one level plane, often have to be of irregular contour to suit patterns which have irregular joint lines, present either in the pattern itself, or in the mould only, or in both. Patterns of this kind are sometimes made in wood and mounted on thick plates of wood which are cut out to form the irregularly shaped joints, this being a device the reverse of that shown in Figs. 386, 387, p. 318, where the joint faces *a*, *a*, are put on, and stand up from the board In many cases the two occur in combination, recessed portions and portions in relief.

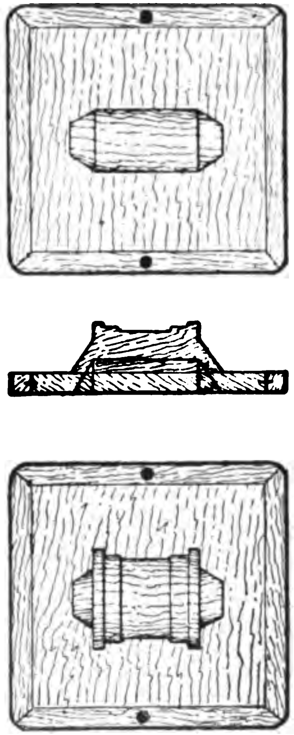


Fig. 394.

Fig. 394 shows how a common brass pattern is sometimes mounted solidly with its board, all alike being in wood. If a pattern is fitted thus to a plate the surface of which is of irregular contour to form the sand joints of the same form, it is not usually a case for woodwork; though fitted thus to a limited extent—the patterns and plates forming integral parts of each other. It is not a very strong affair, but if well made will last a good many mouldings. The pattern is glued and screwed to the plate, and the latter is cut out with the necessary recesses on one side, and raised blocks are fastened on the other side to correspond, or are cut in one with the pattern. If the depth of recessing is not great the plate is not weakened much, but if the wood is cut right through as in Fig. 394, and as must often be the case, we get short and weak grain. In such cases a metal plate and pattern are preferable. But it is not necessary to make a complete pattern of exactly the same shape from which to mould the metal one. The pattern or patterns are necessary, but the plated work can be prepared with less expense by the method to be described on a subsequent page.

Fig. 395 shows how a cap pattern of metal is mounted on a board with irregular joint faces. Figs. 396 and 397 illustrate the top and bottom parts of the moulds of brasses, thrown open in the joint faces with the patterns still in place, as though both in top and bottom. The sloping joints may be formed either by a recess cut in the board, as in Fig. 395, or the patterns are laid on curved blocks the ends of which form the joints. A difference between these examples is that Fig. 394 is a true plate, moulds of which are taken from opposite sides, while Fig. 395 is a bottom board, on which one-half the mould only is rammed and then turned over to have the top part rammed on it. But if two plates are made, the faces being like the moulding faces in Figs. 396, 397, we should have two moulding plates, on each of which one-half the mould would be rammed. Or if a single plate were made, the opposite faces of which were like Figs. 396, 397, including the pattern outlines, we should have the single plate of patterns similar to Fig. 394.

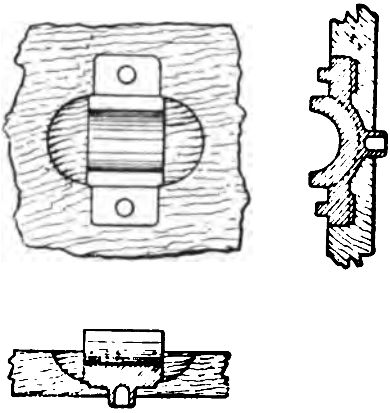


Fig. 395.

With regard to plating patterns it is obvious that the insertion of a plate between two portions of a pattern makes no more difference to the thickness of the casting than as though a plate were not used. Thus, in Fig. 398, the joint faces of the moulding box come against the faces, *a*, *b*, of the plate, and when the box parts come together, the joint faces, *a*, *b*, of the half patterns will be in contact as though the pattern had been moulded by turning over.

It is also evident from Fig. 398 that though the pattern parts are shown as being attached to each side of a plate, they might just as readily be cast in one with it. The first method is generally to be preferred when the joint faces are plain, the second when they are of irregular contour.

The range of dimensions within which it is permissible to put patterns on plates of wood or of metal is of very wide limits. The tendency now is to increase the dimensions of work put on machines, in which direction the Pridmore machines have gone farthest. But as regards the areas of patterns that can be plated to be moulded apart from machines, these have, within the writer's own experience, exceeded anything attempted on a machine. It has been found economical to plate columns from 12 feet to 14 feet in length, and the plates for water-tank bottoms up to 10 feet or 12 feet across, besides a good deal of work nearly approaching this in size. And apart from actual plating, meaning by that the fastening of patterns to their plates, there is practically no limit to the dimensions of bottom boards which are either kept stored for general service, or made specially for certain jobs often repeated.

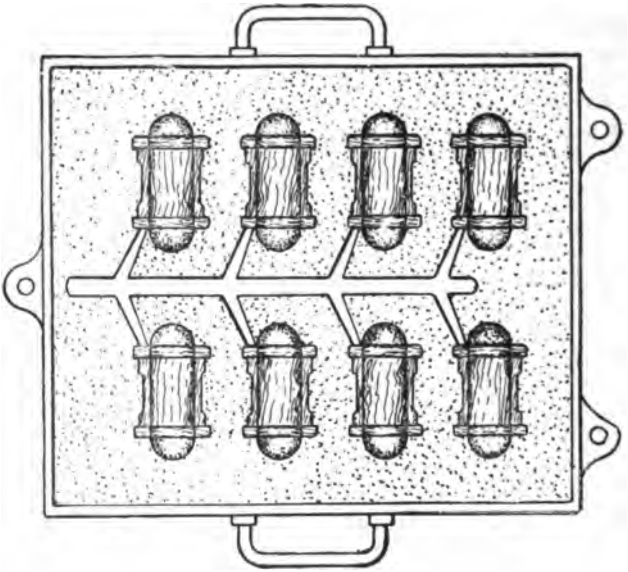


Fig. 396.

The work of plating patterns in wood is done by the pattern maker. That of plating in metal is also properly his work, because he knows best how to arrange the exact amount and place of taper in patterns and prints, and where and how to fit loose pieces when necessary, and to adapt core boxes to prints. If the work is done by machinists or fitters, any men should not be taken haphazard from the shop and sent to do this, but men specially trained in the intricacies of pattern making and moulding should be retained for the purpose. The following are concise instructions for the mounting of patterns on plates for use with hand moulding, and for putting on machines:—

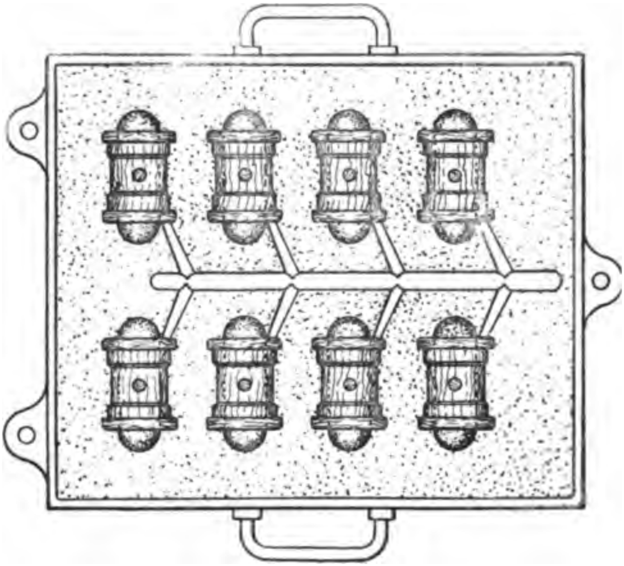


Fig. 397.

Since the thickness of a plate obviously has no effect on the pattern or mould, because the ramming takes place on its faces, the results would be the same whether its thickness were ½ inch or 2 inches. Considerations of strength and rigidity, therefore, to resist ramming without spring, govern the thickness. Generally plates of metal range from about ⅜ inch to

¾ inch thick. They are made of cast iron or steel plate. The thinner plates are frequently made of sheet iron or steel, which, if levelled carefully, avoids the necessity for planing the faces, which is done when cast-iron plates are used, as is more commonly the practice. Cast iron is more rigid, and it is easier to cast lugs on that than to cut them in sheet metal. In any case the plates must be true on both sides to provide level joint faces for the sand.

To mount patterns of wood on one side of one wooden plate is quite simple. The pattern is arranged suitably in relation to the moulding box, allowing proper width for sand, and is there screwed in place. To mount halves of patterns on opposite sides of one plate much more care is necessary, because a very slight degree of inaccuracy in setting the halves will result in overlapping joints in the mould and casting. Centre lines can be drawn on the board, and centre lines on the pattern parts, and good results obtained by this method. But the most certain method is to fit the pattern parts together first, apart from the plate, using dowells long enough to go through the thickness of the plate and into the hole half of the pattern. Then if holes are drilled in the board to correspond with these dowells, the two halves are bound to be in alignment on the opposite faces. If dowells, for any reason, are not adaptable to the work, the two portions of the pattern are fastened together with screws while away from the joint board. Then they can be separated and fastened together through the joint board by the same screws or by longer ones entering the same holes.

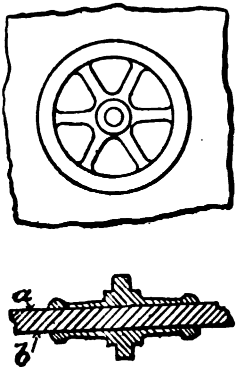


Fig. 398.

Metal patterns are mounted on metal plates by methods which resemble in the main those adopted in plating wooden patterns. But, in consequence of the greater importance of the metal pattern work, special care has to be observed and some differences made.

First, metal patterns must be tooled or filed all over with the utmost accuracy, especially when many thousands have to be moulded from them. Parts that can be turned, milled or planed should be so treated, and filing reserved only for those portions which by reason of their irregular shape do not admit of machining. When a pattern goes wholly in the bottom box there is no trouble with jointing, but when in top and bottom, the pattern parts have to be put together before any tooling is done upon them. It is not usual to fit them with long dowells, mentioned previously as suitable for wooden patterns. The best methods are those illustrated in Figs. 399, 400. In one, Fig. 399, stove screws unite both halves of the pattern, and these passing afterwards through holes drilled in the plate, retain the pattern parts in exactly the same relations. In the other, Fig. 400, plain holes are drilled right through the pattern parts, and these serve to unite the pattern to the plate by means of rivets, the heads of which are filed off flush afterwards.

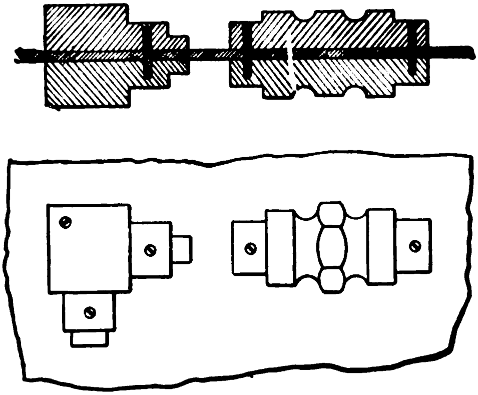


Fig. 399.

In numerous cases patterns are of such a shape that though portions come on opposite sides of a plate, they need not be separately prepared and fastened on. A hole through the plate, Figs. 401, 402, receives the pattern through it, and one portion appears on the bottom and one on the top face. Of course in such cases allowance must be made in the length of the pattern, or its print, as the case may be, for the plate thickness, the pattern or its print being lengthened by just that amount.

When pattern parts are placed on opposite sides of two separate boards, or iron plates, as is often done to economise time by employing two men—one ramming the top, the other the bottom boxes—this work requires even more care to avoid overlapping joints. Then centre lines squared carefully over from one plate to the other can be used to locate the pattern parts. Or the two plates can be fitted together. In this case the patterns will have been fitted with long dowells or screws, or with holes drilled through for long pins, and then these will be fastened on opposite sides of the plates while the latter are fastened together temporarily. Or the pattern parts can be lightly soldered with soft solder in their positions, by centre lines, and a mould and casting made, and then if necessary the positions of the plates can be readjusted and finally fixed with screws.

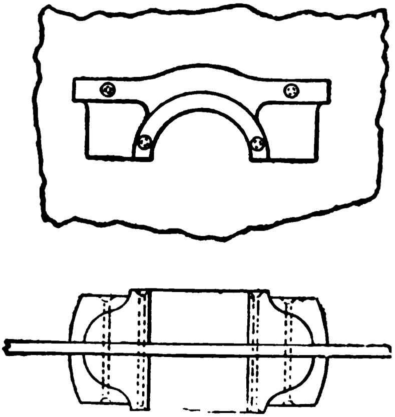


Fig 400.

When patterns are cast with their plates, which is most advantageous when the joint faces of the plates are irregular, the following are the methods adopted:—

A mould is made by any of the usual methods, just as though castings have to be poured therefrom. Thus, a bottom box may be rammed on an odd-side, the patterns put back into the bottom part, and the top rammed. Or a mould may be made by turning over, rather more time and care being spent on the joints than as though for an ordinary casting, because the joints will be permanent in the metal plate for hundreds or thousands of mouldings. In the case of a plain plate the pattern or patterns can be rammed up on a bottom board. In each case we now have top and bottom moulds prepared ready for the plate—say for four dished hand wheels, the section of one of which, cast with the plate, is seen in Fig. 403. A pattern frame is prepared, Fig. 404, A, of a suitable outline for the particular boxes, or the machine employed, and of a thickness proportionate to the area of the work, and this is laid round the mould on the face of the bottom box. This may be a standard pattern of metal or one of wood. Outside this frame is another, B, of the same thickness, and of such a size that it will leave sufficient sand space C for ramming round the edges of A, so containing and enclosing the mould for A. When A is withdrawn and the patterns lifted, the mould is seen to contain provision for casting the plate with pattern parts on top and bottom. Runners will be cut to be cast on the plate. During the pouring the frame B remains in place, keeping, with the sand C, the top and bottom boxes separated by that thickness. Instead of using the frame B separate strips of iron of the proper thickness can be laid round on the edges.

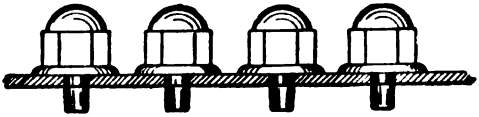


Fig. 401.

It is clear that in the preparation of plates of this kind much care must be exercised by the moulder if clean metal patterns and plates are to be obtained. If these, when turned out, are lumpy and imperfect, a good deal of labour will have to be spent in trimming them up with file and chisel. This is why the separate plate and pattern parts are better when plain joints are required. The plates can be planed, ground, or milled, and the patterns machined and filed much better separately than when they are cast in one piece. Besides the disadvantages of casting patterns with their plates by reason of the greater difficulty of cleaning up the patterns, another point is that no subsequent alterations can be made, or the plate used for any other patterns. But casting on is often the only practicable method, and these cases therefore stand by themselves.

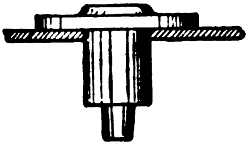


Fig. 402.

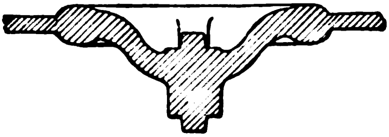


Fig 403.

The lugs of plates are fitted to the pins of moulding boxes or to suit the clamps or pins of moulding machines, details which are settled to suit circumstances. When fitted to boxes, a good plan is to make one of the round pins only to fit closely in a round hole, and make the other hole a slot hole as in Fig. 404 and Fig. 410, p. 337, in which the pins will fit sideways only, being free to adjust themselves in the other direction. This is just as secure as making all the holes round, and is much easier to fit. Such pins may be cast with their box lugs. The slot holes on the other sides are hand holes for lifting by.

The cutting of runners in ordinary moulds has to be repeated as often as the mould is made. When several patterns are embedded in one box, a runner has to be cut by hand to each pattern. Often, too, a spray of runners must be cut to a single pattern. By a system of plate moulding the cutting of many thousands of runners a year is avoided.

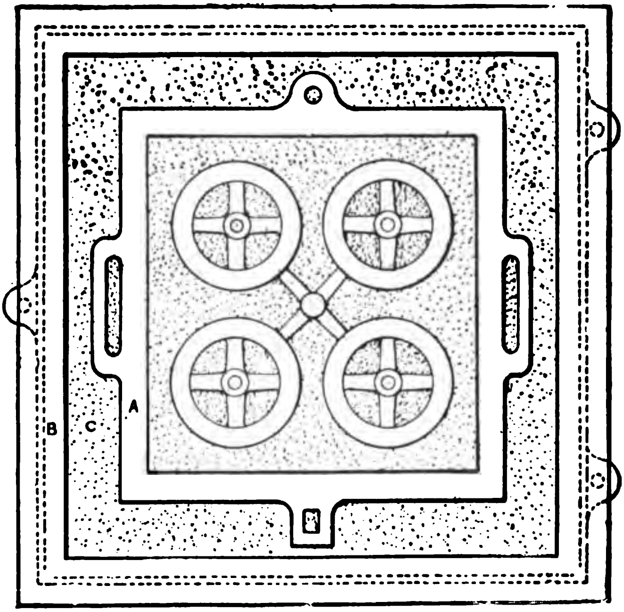


Fig 401.

In work which involves irregular jointing of mould faces much time is saved by plating. A moulder cutting and sleeking faces of this character will often occupy ten or fifteen minutes therein. This time is saved if the faces are formed on a plate. Figs. 396, 397, pp. 326, 327, show these in combination, runners, and irregular jointing being repeated for eight patterns of brasses. In moulding by common methods such half brasses are laid on the follow board on a little body of sand, which is sloped outwards and downwards to give a free delivery to the joint that follows the curve of the bore, and this has to be repeated for every mould, and the runners also have to be cut for each mould—time which is saved by plating. Moulds in which a square section merges into a circular one, as in much valve work, require a sloping joint, which must either be made up on the follow board or by bedding in a false mould—all saved in plate moulding.

In the average class of brass work, cored castings are frequent, and several cores will often be inserted in a single casting, and cores fitted into other cores, suitable vent channels being provided. When plated castings admit of the alternative of coring or of self-delivery, it is better to adopt the latter device. When holes have to be bored in rings, collars, shallow bushes, and the like, a little taper, sufficient in amount to ensure self delivery, is not detrimental, and such patterns are made like their castings. When holes must be perfectly parallel it is difficult to make them deliver, even though they are very shallow, and then a core is best. Thus, in Fig. 405, which represents three plated patterns, the shallow ring should not be cored, but the bush must be. The nut must also be cored, unless a rather large amount of taper is imparted.

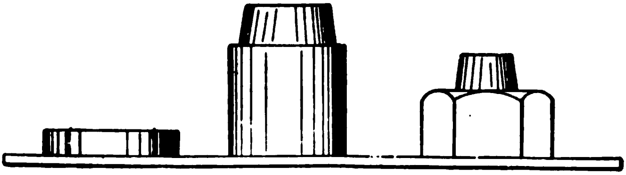


Fig. 405.

The stripping plate is a device used to permit of the withdrawal of deep patterns destitute of taper. It is cut in sheet metal, and makes a close fit outside the pattern. A familiar example is the plate that encircles the teeth of gear wheels moulded on machines, the same device being employed for most deep patterns where the putting of taper would be objectionable.

The labour involved in making stripping plates is sometimes avoided by the employment of what are termed vibrator machines. That is, the patterns are vibrated at the time of withdrawal by shaking or rapping a frame by power—by compressed air, which imparts a number of light shocks with great rapidity. But this is not a device suitable for patterns of great depth, for which the stripping plates are indispensable.

The expense of fitting stripping plates to patterns is usually great, depending on the pattern outlines. Only outlines that are regular, as circles, squares, etc., can be tooled cheaply, others have to be finished by hand labour. Stripping plates are useless unless they fit very closely round their patterns.

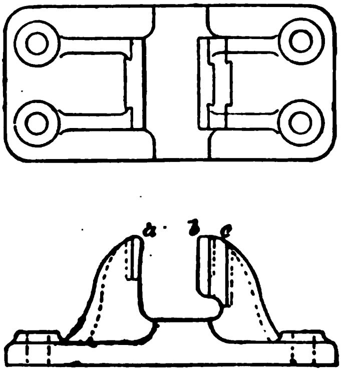


Fig. 406.

The objection to stripping plates on the ground of their expense only carries weight when the machine is used for relatively small quantities of work of a given kind. Where moderate numbers of small pieces are made, as in many shops of rather general character, then rapping the plates by hand is resorted to.

Railway chairs are examples of high-class metal patterns made without regard to expense, because hundreds of thousands of castings have to be moulded from them. They are moulded by two sets of men, one ramming the bottom, one the top boxes. They are put on plates, and often made on the floor without the aid of a machine. No coring is done, because that would cost too much, but everything delivers itself. Loose pieces, Fig. 406, are therefore involved. The pattern-maker will understand why one loose piece suffices on one side while two have to be fitted on the other. The overhang is so slight where the wood key fits that one loose piece, *a*, suffices, on the other the overhang is greater and one piece would be too thick to draw in, hence the jointing in two separate pieces, *b*, *c*. Note, too, the dovetail fitting of *a*, *b*, *c*, which ensures the maintenance of flush edges without any care or observation on the part of the moulder.

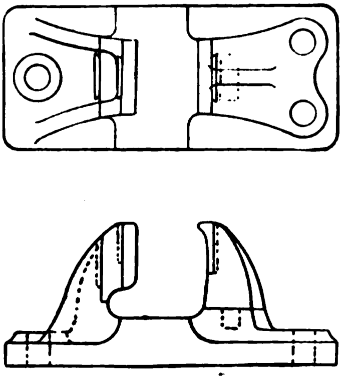


Fig. 407.

Fig. 407 is a chair of another pattern in which one of the horns is fitted to the foot with a tenon, with the idea of facilitating the withdrawal of the main body of the pattern. It possesses little or no advantage over the other method.

Fig. 408 illustrates a device of a different character. Here the removal of the loose pieces from the mould is facilitated by soldering strips of metal, A, A, to them. The strips pass through slot holes in the foot of the pattern. This helps the moulders' work. The loose piece, *a*, still has to be removed with the fingers, but it is on the horn where the space is widest, and the moulder can therefore get his fingers down more readily. The holes for the spikes deliver themselves. The section of the pattern also shows how the interior is lightened out to lessen the weight, the pattern being lifted by hand.

Fig. 409 shows the type of box used for moulding chairs, in which sand and time are economized by tapering the sides. The plates which carry the patterns are set on the box parts by the tenons and guides with which the boxes fit to one another.

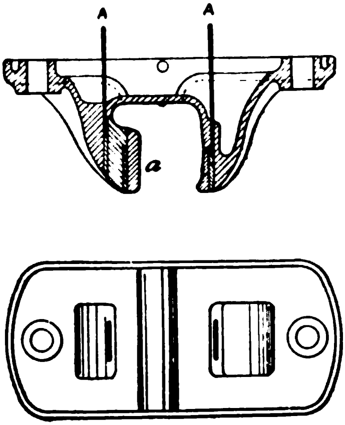


Fig 408.

Fig. 410 is a metal plate carrying ten nuts and their gates. The general forms and mountings of plates may be inferred from the foregoing. There yet remains the question of economy.

With regard to the economies of plate moulding, which is a point the pattern-maker often has to decide, there is a wide actual difference, and also much difference in the opinions held with regard to certain classes of work. We may disregard the latter, and look at the question from a broad common-sense point of view.

Primarily the proper case for plating patterns is when large numbers are in question. This is always the first consideration. When instead of two or three moulds having to be taken from one pattern, scores, hundreds, or thousands are wanted, there is a *prima-facie* case for plate moulding, to be done either with or without the aid of a machine. But though patterns of large dimensions may be plated with economy, they cannot usually be moulded on machines, because these of large size are exceptional. Then again the simplicity or otherwise of the work has a determining influence. Moulds that involve a deal of coring up would not show such economies as those of a plainer character, because the work of coring cannot be done by machine, but must be effected by hand alone. Plain patterns, that is those which are not complicated by loose

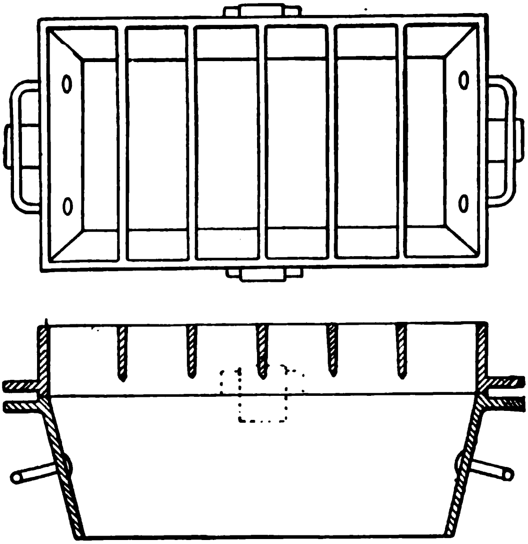


Fig. 409.

pieces, drawbacks, and numerous cores, are the best. Shallow patterns that deliver easily are also very suitable for plating; deep patterns present difficulties which can be got over by the device of a stripping plate—a rather expensive device, but which, nevertheless, enables deep patterns to be withdrawn without any appreciable amount of rapping, and without fracture of the sand. The greatest economies of plate moulding occur, when many patterns are put on one plate, when the runners are included thereon, and when the joint faces are not plain.

Many patterns are included on one plate in the smaller castings made in iron and in brass. These are usually arranged also to occupy the least room possible, hence the reason of the diagonal positions often given to the patterns, and of the insertion of small patterns in open spaces left between larger ones. In a well laid out plate not a bit of space is wasted or occupied by useless sand if a pattern can be put there. This is illustrated in the odd-side Fig. 389, p. 320, and in Figs. 391, 392, p. 322, Fig. 393, p. 323, Figs. 396, 397, pp. 326, 327. The ramming up of such a plate occupies very little longer than the ramming of a single pattern or of two or three patterns. If we include the work connected with making the runners in an ordinary mould it occupies less time, so that the output is multiplied often dozens of times when many small patterns are plated. Against this the cost of the plate and of the moulding machine, when such is used, has to be discounted. But these, though expensive, are mere trifles by comparison with the economies obtained in shops where the system of plate moulding is in constant operation.

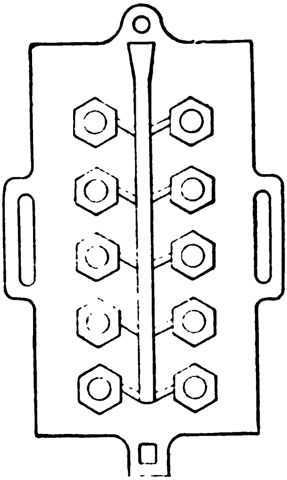


Fig. 410.

The advantages also of plating over the various joint boards are great. One of the very common devices in the brass foundry is the recessed turn-over board. Many small patterns are made without joints, in brassfinisher's work—as cocks, valves, plugs, and so forth. The mould, however, has to be jointed, though the patterns are not, and, since they are made in quantity, they are rammed up on a turn-over board which is *recessed out* to receive a number of such patterns at once. The patterns fit loosely into their recesses, and their centre joint lines correspond with the face of the board. The ramming up process is by turning over. Fig. 411 shows such a board, having some patterns, *a*, *b*, *c*, *d*, *e*, *f*, *g*, *h*, *in situ*, and some spaces, *i* and *j*, from which the patterns have been removed. A section through another board of this type is shown in Fig. 412. Patterns of the same size and class can be similarly arranged, but it is often more economical to have different patterns on a board and stop off those which are not required. No alteration can be made in such a board. The labour of recessing it out is considerable, and would go some way towards making a metal plate and patterns. But in using plates, whether of wood or metal, the patterns in each case may be put permanently on their boards or plates, or they can be attached temporarily and removed therefrom after service to make room for other patterns of dimensions suitable for those boards, and so several patterns may be thus interchangeable on one board or pair of boards. Not so the recessed boards.

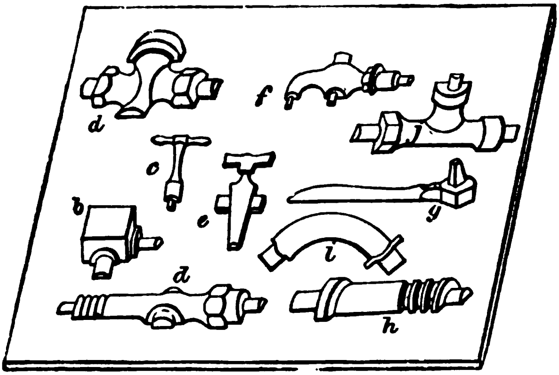


Fig. 411.

Moulding machines are either operated by power or by hand. They are also fixed or portable. For the generality of work, certainly for all deep work, some special cases excepted, the hand ramming machines are the most satisfactory.

When ramming patterns on a machine in which the sand is consolidated by pressure from a head pulled against the pattern by a lever, the following devices are adopted:—The sand is shovelled in to an inch or more in depth above the back edge of the box and confined at the sides by a temporary frame. A pressing board that just fits easily with the frame and its flask is laid upon it, and this is pulled against the board, consolidating the sand down to the level of the flask. Considerable force has to be exercised in large moulds, therefore the levers are of great length, or, as in the Tabor and some other machines, the force of compressed air or of steam is used. When a mould varies greatly in depth, the pressing board or plate is sometimes hollowed out to follow roughly the contour of the pattern, without which precaution the sand would be rammed harder over the shallow than the deeper

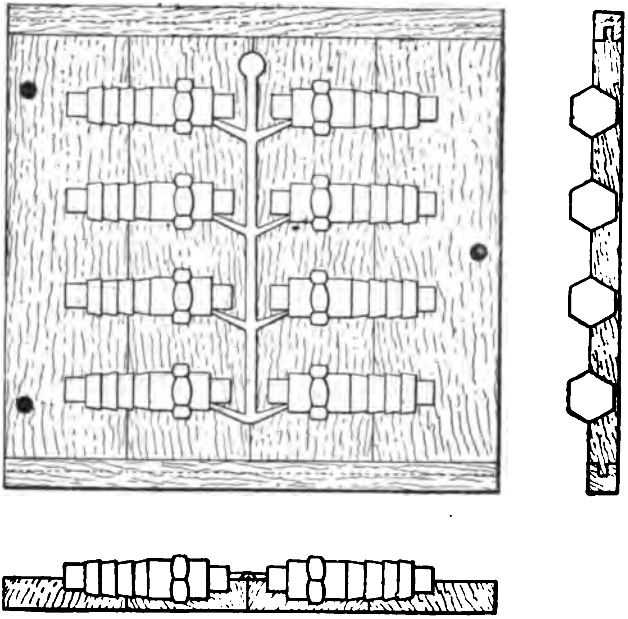


Fig. 412.

areas. In some cases provision is made by means of narrow strips for consolidating the sand next the edges of the flasks to afford support to that within, and to cause it to cling better to the sides.

There is undoubted advantage in making use of power ramming in some classes of work; for others it would not be suitable, or it could only be rendered suitable by employing some provisions too elaborate to be worth while adopting.

In some cases there would be an advantage in having portable machines, in others none. These are excellently adapted for handling the lighter classes of work and are therefore growing in favour. Being mounted on wheels they are moved on, leaving the finished moulds on the floor in the rear.

In some cases a single class of machine can best be installed throughout, but in others it will be advisable to have different types, as better adapted for the different kinds of work done. In all such questions it is well to take the advice of experts. Points which should have consideration in the selection of a moulding machine are to see that sand does not come into contact with working surfaces, as shafts, journals, bearings, or slides. It is well when such parts are above the sand instead of below. The position of the levers is a point of some importance. It is better that a lever should be in the horizontal position when the mould is being pressed, because in that position the operator is able to exert more pressure with less exertion than when it is in a vertical, or nearly vertical, position.

There are a few shops which deal with so varied and general a class of jobbing work that it would be injudicious to recommend the installation of moulding machines at all. But there are not many foundries, perhaps, in which some work cannot be put on a machine, and the number of the outside country jobbing firms is bound to diminish in time as manufacture of specialities increases.

CHAPTER XXXVIII.

THE STORAGE OF PATTERNS.

Storage in Sets.—Or by Classes of Work.—Shelving.—Registration.—Checking Patterns.

STANDARD patterns are rather expensive articles, and since they are worth making well, proper care should be taken of them. Many matters conduce to their due preservation. The chief one of course is the manner in which they have been made, and the quality of the timber used in their construction, —matters which need not be dwelt upon here. We assume that care is taken in regard to these, and that the problem is how to preserve such patterns for as great a length of time as possible in useful service.

They must be stored in a properly ventilated building. If they are just underneath hot tiles in the summer, the timber will warp and shrink badly. If kept under open sheds out of doors, they will suffer from snow and rain.

To counteract the effects of frequent swabbing in the foundry, the patterns must be treated with occasional applications of varnish, repeated as often as portions of their surfaces become roughened up. Damaged parts should not be allowed to go very badly, but ought to be renewed, and also any incipient cracks, or loosening of joints, must receive attention. In the preservation of patterns, as in other things, prevention is better than cure, and a stitch in time saves nine.

Proper storage of patterns involves something more than bundling them indiscriminately into a building. There are two systems of storage, two ways of arranging them in the stores. In one, all patterns belonging to one job are grouped together; in the other, the heavier, and the lighter patterns are kept in separate places, or patterns of a class are stored with other patterns of that class. There are advantages and drawbacks to each system, but the three main controlling factors are the bulk of the patterns, the material of which they are made, and the character of the work done, whether standard, or miscellaneous and jobbing.

With regard to the dimensions of patterns, there are few stores so happily situated as to have the patterns contained wholly on a ground floor, but most consist of two or more stories, on the upper floors of which it is impossible to get heavy patterns. Hence the general arrangement is to put bulky and heavy patterns on ground floors, and those of medium and small dimensions on the upper ones. There is not much disadvantage in this if a proper register is kept of the location of patterns.

With reference to the storage of patterns in sets *versus* storing them according to their class, both systems are usually adopted in shops—the first for absolutely standard work, the second for that of a miscellaneous character. There are great advantages in storing patterns for standard work separately from class work. Thus, if there is a set of patterns for an engine, or a set of pumps, or a crane, it facilitates the carrying through of work if these are kept apart from everything else, the heavy beds perhaps alone excepted. First, the patterns can at any time be taken from the stores *en masse*, and sent directly into the foundry, without the trouble of having to look them up in separate locations. Another advantage is that as such patterns are not altered to be used for miscellaneous orders, they need not be checked over carefully by the drawings before being sent into the foundry, as must be done when they are so used.

On the other hand, to store patterns by their classes has much to recommend it in shops that deal mostly with general and jobbing work. It seems right and natural to put all wheels and pinions together in one location, all engine cylinders in another, valves in another, glands in another, and so on. By this method the making of new patterns is often avoided, because something can be found in the stores that can be used with or without alteration. But this is done at a corresponding inconvenience, for it means that when sets of work have to be made up from the miscellaneous collections scattered about the stores, some considerable time is occupied in hunting up the separate parts, and then every pattern has to be checked carefully by the drawings as a safeguard, because the chances are that several of the patterns have been altered for other jobs. Nothing can be taken on trust in such a system, except at the risk of making serious blunders. From this point of view it is more economical to retain standard patterns for standard use only, to be kept with their work, and never altered for any other job, and never used for any other, except they are used absolutely unaltered. Alteration when made is often forgotten, and when the patterns are wanted again they are assumed to be correct, and so blunders are made.

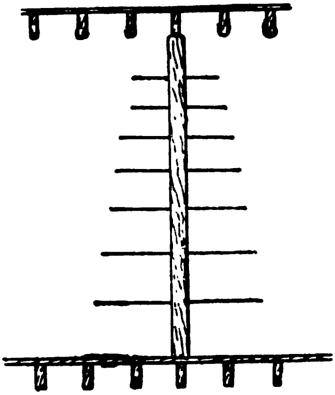


Fig. 413

For metal patterns it is usual to provide a separate stores on the ground floor, and plated patterns, for plate and machine moulding, are also usually kept separate from all others; but in the case of standard work, these also may be kept with their sets. The choice of these various methods must, however, be largely governed by the frequency of orders. When a set of work is wanted but seldom, it is hardly worth while keeping it absolutely distinct from everything else, and then the arrangement according to classes is preferable. But when the sets are often wanted, the separate system is the most economical. Between these extremes the judgment of the foreman must decide what is best to be done.

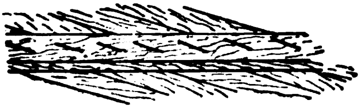


Fig 414.

In arranging patterns in stores different methods are adopted. The following are the best for an average range of work:—Remembering that one great point in planning a stores is to have everything visible and get-at-able. Shelves and racks must not be too deep, and avenues must be provided sufficiently wide to carry patterns along.

On the ground floor wooden posts are fixed at intervals to form supports for rails or iron bars, against which heavy patterns will be stood edgewise. This is better than piling patterns vertically, which involves lifting off the top ones to get at the lower ones.

Pipe and column patterns may be laid horizontally on iron bars (Fig. 413) that pass through the posts. Alternatively they may be stood on end at a slight angle, or perpendicularly if a hook is provided at the top to keep them from falling down.

Many patterns, as trolley wheels, wheel centres, pulleys, may, when ground floor area is limited, be hung with tar twine from rods (Fig. 414) driven into the joists beneath the floors. On the upper floor or floors shelving is best built in the manner shown in Figs. 415 or 416, and sets of patterns are parted off on these with movable strips. The larger patterns go on the floor and smaller ones on the shelves. It is best to put, as far as possible, only those on the upper shelves that are seldom wanted, keeping those in frequent use on the lower ones, where they are readily seen. Very small patterns are kept together best in shallow wooden boxes, of which large numbers may be utilised.

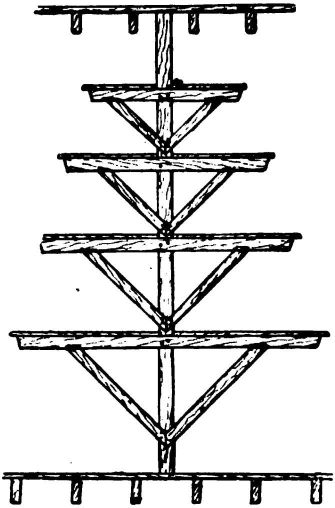


Fig. 415.

In classifying gear wheels, patterns should be kept distinct from toothed blocks and core boxes for machine service. The pinion patterns again must be separated from wheels. These are each grouped according to pitch on the shelves, beginning at the finest, and arranged progressively to the coarsest. In machine wheels it is better not to separate pinions and wheels, but to arrange by pitches simply. Both in patterns and blocks, classes of wheels must have distinct locations, spurs, bevels, worms, worm wheels being kept separate. Any wheel patterns that are not standard, but which have been made to match existing wheels, and bastard bevels, should be kept away from the standard work, and their particulars clearly stamped on patterns and blocks.

Unless order is observed in the storage of patterns they become unmanageable in time, and some cannot be found when wanted. The difficulty increases in proportion to the alterations made. Hence the value of a register sheet like that shown below:—

Pattern No.	Name	Drawing No.	Iron	Gun-Metal	Weight				Remarks	Shelf
					Tons.	Cwts.	Qrs.	Lbs.		
10464	Bedplate	6402	1		2	3	0	18	5 Core Boxes	25
10465	Standard	6403	2			18			1 Core Box	25

A "pattern number" is stamped upon every pattern, every loose piece, and every core box belonging to that pattern, so that the parts are readily assembled when they are returned from the foundry. The name of the pattern is entered in the register book, but is not usually stamped on the pattern itself. The "drawing number" indicates the particular drawing from which the pattern has been constructed. "Iron" and "gun-metal" indicate the metal in which the pattern is cast. and under one or the other the number of castings off per set is marked. If other alloys are used, as steel, phosphor bronze, etc., these are written under one of these columns. Under "Weight," the weight of each casting is entered. Under "Remarks," any information of value is inserted, as number of core boxes, notes about alterations, &c. The entry under "Shelf" indicates the location of the pattern in the stores. The pattern register should be a book of 1,000 pages, and as the volumes become filled they are kept for reference.

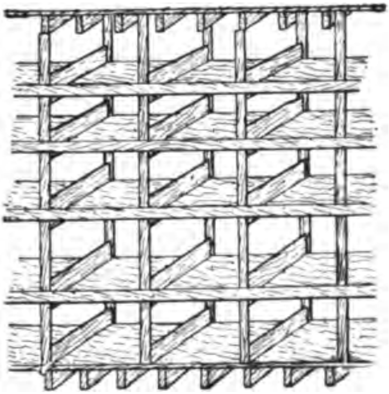


Fig. 416.

When patterns come from the foundry their various parts and core boxes should be assembled by the man in charge of the stores, and any necessity for repairs or replacements be notified to the foreman. When possible the patterns should be put together complete and ready for service before being stored.

APPENDIX.

Table of Diameters, Circumferences, and Areas of Circles.

Diameter.	Circumference.	Area.	Diameter.	Circumference.	Area.
⅛	·3927	·01227	3¼	10·210	8·2957
¼	·7854	·04909	3⅜	10·602	8·9462
⅜	1·1781	·1104	3½	10·995	9·6211
½	1·5708	·1963	3⅝	11·388	10·320
⅝	1·9635	·3068	3¾	11·781	11·044
¾	2·3562	·4417	3⅞	12·173	11·793
⅞	2·7489	·6013	4	12·566	12·566
1	3·1416	·7854	4⅛	12·959	13·364
1⅛	3·5343	·9940	4¼	13·351	14·186
1¼	3·9270	1·2271	4⅜	13·744	15·033
1⅜	4·3197	1·4848	4½	14·137	15·904
1½	4·7124	1·7671	4⅝	14·529	16·800
1⅝	5·1051	2·0739	4¾	14·922	17·720
1¾	5·4978	2·4052	4⅞	15·315	18·665
1⅞	5·8905	2·7611	5	15·708	19·635
2	6·2832	3·1416	5⅛	16·100	20·629
2⅛	6·6759	3·5465	5¼	16·493	21·647
2¼	7·0686	3·9760	5⅜	16·886	22·690
2⅜	7·4613	4·4302	5½	17·278	23·758
2½	7·8540	4·9087	5⅝	17·671	24·850
2⅝	8·2467	5·4119	5¾	18·064	25·967
2¾	8·6394	5·9395	5⅞	18·457	27·108
2⅞	9·0321	6·4918	6	18·849	28·274
3	9·4248	7·0686	6⅛	19·242	29·464
3⅛	9·8175	7·6699	6¼	19·635	30·679

Diameter.	Circumference.	Area.	Diameter.	Circumference.	Area.
6⅜	20·027	31·919	11½	36·128	103·869
6½	20·420	33·183	11⅝	36·521	106·139
6⅝	20·813	34·471	11¾	36·913	108·434
6¾	21·205	35·784	11⅞	37·306	110·753
6⅞	21·598	37·122	12	37·699	113·097
7	21·991	38·484	12⅛	38·091	115·466
7⅛	22·383	39·871	12¼	38·484	117·859
7¼	22·776	41·282	12⅜	38·877	120·276
7⅜	23·169	42·718	12½	39·270	122·718
7½	23·562	44·178	12⅝	39·662	125·184
7⅝	23·954	45·663	12¾	40·055	127·676
7¾	24·347	47·173	12⅞	40·448	130·192
7⅞	24·740	48·707	13	40·840	132·732
8	25·132	50·265	13⅛	41·233	135·297
8⅛	25·515	51·848	13¼	41·626	137·886
8¼	25·918	53·456	13⅜	42·018	140·500
8⅜	26·310	55·088	13½	42·411	143·139
8½	26·703	56·745	13⅝	42·804	145·802
8⅝	27·096	58·426	13¾	43·197	148·489
8¾	27·489	60·132	13⅞	43·589	151·201
8⅞	27·881	61·862	14	43·982	153·938
9	28·274	63·617	14⅛	44·375	156·699
9⅛	28·667	65·396	14¼	44·767	159·485
9¼	29·059	67·200	14⅜	45·160	162·295
9⅜	29·452	69·029	14½	45·553	165·130
9½	29·845	70·882	14⅝	45·945	167·989
9⅝	30·237	72·759	14¾	46·338	170·873
9¾	30·630	74·662	14⅞	46·731	173·782
9⅞	31·023	76·588	15	47·124	176·715
10	31·416	78·540	15⅛	47·516	179·672
10⅛	31·808	80·515	15¼	47·909	182·654
10¼	32·201	82·516	15⅜	48·302	185·661
10⅜	32·594	84·540	15½	48·694	188·692
10½	32·986	86·590	15⅝	49·087	191·748
10⅝	33·379	88·664	15¾	49·480	194·828
10¾	33·772	90·762	15⅞	49·872	197·933
10⅞	34·164	92·885	16	50·265	201·062
11	34·557	95·033	16⅛	50·658	204·216
11⅛	34·950	97·205	16¼	51·051	207·394
11¼	35·343	99·402	16⅜	51·443	210·597
11⅜	35·735	101·623	16½	51·836	213·825

Diameter.	Circumference.	Area.	Diameter.	Circumference.	Area.
16⅝	52·229	217·077	21¾	68·329	371·543
16¾	52·621	220·353	21⅞	68·722	375·826
16⅞	53·014	223·654	22	69·115	380·133
17	53·407	226·980	22⅛	69·507	384·465
17⅛	53·799	230·330	22¼	69·900	388·822
17¼	54·192	233·705	22⅜	70·293	393·203
17⅜	54·585	237·104	22½	70·686	397·608
17½	54·978	240·528	22⅝	71·078	402·038
17⅝	55·370	243·977	22¾	71·471	406·493
17¾	55·763	247·450	22⅞	71·864	410·972
17⅞	56·156	250·947	23	72·256	415·476
18	56·548	254·469	23⅛	72·649	420·004
18⅛	56·941	258·016	23¼	73·042	424·557
18¼	57·334	261·587	23⅜	73·434	429·135
18⅜	57·726	265·182	23½	73·827	433·731
18½	58·119	268·803	23⅝	74·220	438·363
18⅝	58·512	272·447	23¾	74·613	443·014
18¾	58·905	276·117	23⅞	75·005	447·699
18⅞	59·297	279·811	24	75·398	452·390
19	59·690	283·529	24¼	76·183	461·864
19⅛	60·083	287·272	24½	76·969	471·436
19¼	60·475	291·039	24¾	77·754	481·106
19⅜	60·868	294·831	25	78·540	490·875
19½	61·261	298·648	25¼	79·325	500·741
19⅝	61·653	302·489	25½	80·110	510·706
19¾	62·046	306·355	25¾	80·896	520·769
19⅞	62·439	310·245	26	81·681	530·930
20	62·832	314·160	26¼	82·467	541·189
20⅛	63·224	318·099	26½	83·252	551·547
20¼	63·617	322·063	26¾	84·037	562·002
20⅜	64·010	326·051	27	84·823	572·556
20½	64·402	330·064	27¼	85·608	583·208
20⅝	64·795	334·101	27½	86·394	593·958
20¾	65·188	338·163	27¾	87·179	604·807
20⅞	65·580	342·250	28	87·964	615·753
21	65·973	346·361	28¼	88·750	626·798
21⅛	66·366	350·497	28½	89·535	637·941
21¼	66·759	354·657	28¾	90·321	649·182
21⅜	67·151	358·841	29	91·106	660·521
21½	67·544	363·051	29¼	91·891	671·958
21⅝	67·937	367·284	29½	92·677	683·494

Diameter.	Circumference.	Area.	Diameter.	Circumference.	Area.
29¾	93·462	695·128	40	125·664	1256·64
30	94·248	706·860	40¼	126·449	1272·39
30¼	95·033	718·690	40½	127·234	1288·25
30½	95·818	730·618	40¾	128·020	1304·20
30¾	96·604	742·644	41	128·805	1320·25
31	97·389	754·769	41¼	129·591	1336·40
31¼	98·175	766·992	41½	130·376	1352·65
31½	98·968	779·313	41¾	131·161	1369·00
31¾	99·745	791·732	42	131·947	1385·44
32	100·531	804·249	42¼	132·732	1401·98
32¼	101·316	816·865	42½	133·518	1418·62
32½	102·102	829·578	42¾	134·303	1435·36
32¾	102·887	842·390	43	135·088	1452·20
33	103·672	855·30	43¼	135·874	1469·13
33¼	104·458	868·30	43½	136·659	1486·17
33½	105·243	881·41	43¾	137·445	1503·30
33¾	106·029	894·61	44	138·230	1520·53
34	106·814	907·92	44¼	139·015	1537·86
34¼	107·599	921·32	44½	139·801	1555·28
34½	108·385	934·82	44¾	140·586	1572·81
34¾	109·170	948·41	45	141·372	1590·43
35	109·956	962·11	45¼	142·157	1608·15
35¼	110·741	975·90	45½	142·942	1625·97
35½	111·526	989·80	45¾	143·728	1643·89
35¾	112·312	1003·78	46	144·513	1661·90
36	113·097	1017·87	46¼	145·299	1680·01
36¼	113·883	1032·06	46½	146·084	1698·23
36½	114·668	1046·35	46¾	146·869	1716·54
36¾	115·453	1060·73	47	147·655	1734·94
37	116·239	1075·21	47¼	148·440	1753·45
37¼	117·024	1089·79	47½	149·226	1772·05
37½	117·810	1104·46	47¾	150·011	1790·76
37¾	118·595	1119·24	48	150·796	1809·56
38	119·380	1134·11	48¼	151·582	1828·46
38¼	120·166	1149·08	48½	152·367	1847·45
38½	120·951	1164·15	48¾	153·153	1866·55
38¾	121·737	1179·32	49	153·938	1885·74
39	122·522	1194·59	49¼	154·723	1905·03
39¼	123·307	1209·95	49½	155·509	1924·42
39½	124·093	1225·42	49¾	156·294	1943·91
39¾	124·878	1240·98	50	157·080	1963·50

Diameter.	Circumference.	Area.	Diameter.	Circumference.	Area.
50¼	157·865	1983·18	60½	190·066	2874·76
50½	158·650	2002·96	60¾	190·852	2898·56
50¾	159·436	2022·84	61	191·637	2922·47
51	160·221	2042·82	61¼	192·423	2946·47
51¼	161·007	2062·90	61½	193·208	2970·57
51½	161·792	2083·07	61¾	193·993	2994·77
51¾	162·577	2103·35	62	194·779	3019·07
52	163·363	2123·72	62¼	195·564	3043·47
52¼	164·148	2144·19	62½	196·350	3067·96
52½	164·934	2164·75	62¾	197·135	3092·56
52¾	165·719	2185·42	63	197·920	3117.25
53	166·504	2206·18	63¼	198·706	3142 04
53¼	167·290	2227·05	63½	199·491	3166·92
53½	168·075	2248·01	63¾	200·277	3191·91
53¾	168·861	2269·06	64	201·062	3216·99
54	169·646	2290·22	64¼	201·847	3242·17
54¼	170·431	2311·48	64½	202·633	3267·46
54½	171·217	2332·83	64¾	203·418	3292·83
54¾	172·002	2354·28	65	204·204	3318·31
55	172·788	2375·83	65¼	204·989	3343·88
55¼	173·573	2397·48	65½	205·774	3369·56
55½	174·358	2419·22	65¾	206·560	3395·33
55¾	175·144	2441·07	66	207·345	3421·20
56	175·929	2463·01	66¼	208·131	3447·16
56¼	176·715	2485·05	66½	208·916	3473·23
56½	177·500	2507·19	66¾	209·701	3499·39
56¾	178·285	2529·42	67	210·487	3525·66
57	179·071	2551·76	67¼	211·272	3552·01
57¼	179·856	2574·19	67½	212·058	3578·47
57½	180·642	2596·72	67¾	212·843	3605·03
57¾	181·427	2619·35	68	213·628	3631·68
58	182·212	2642·08	68¼	214·414	3658·44
58¼	182·998	2664·91	68½	215·199	3685·29
58½	183·783	2687·83	68¾	215·985	3712·24
58¾	184·569	2710·85	69	216·770	3739·28
59	185·354	2733·97	69¼	217·555	3766·43
59¼	186·139	2757·19	69½	218·341	3793·67
59½	186·925	2780·51	69¾	219·126	3821·02
59¾	187·710	2803·92	70	219·912	3848·46
60	188·496	2827·44	70¼	220·697	3875·99
60¼	189·281	2851·05	70½	221·482	3903·63

Diameter.	Circumference.	Area.	Diameter.	Circumference.	Area.
70¾	222·268	3931·36	81	254·469	5153·00
71	223·053	3959·20	81¼	255·254	5184·84
71¼	223·839	3987·13	81½	256·040	5216·82
71½	224·624	4015·16	81¾	256·825	5248·84
71¾	225·409	4043 28	82	257·611	5281·02
72	226·195	4071·51	82¼	258·396	5313·28
72¼	226·980	4099·83	82½	259·182	5345·62
72½	227·766	4128·25	82¾	259·967	5378·04
72¾	228·551	4156·77	83	260·752	5410·62
73	229·336	4185·39	83¼	261·537	5443·24
73¼	230·122	4214·11	83½	262·323	5476·00
73½	230·907	4242·92	83¾	263·108	5508·84
73¾	231·693	4271·83	84	263·894	5541·78
74	232·478	4300·85	84¼	264·679	5574·80
74¼	233·263	4329·95	84½	265·465	5607·95
74½	234·049	4359·16	84¾	266·250	5641·16
74¾	234·834	4388·47	85	267·036	5674·51
75	235·620	4417·87	85¼	267·821	5707·92
75¼	236·405	4447·37	85½	268·606	5741·47
75½	237·190	4476·97	85¾	269·392	5775·09
75¾	237·976	4506·67	86	270·177	5808·81
76	238·761	4536·47	86¼	270·962	5842·60
76¼	239·547	4566·36	86½	271·748	5876·55
76½	240·332	4596·35	86¾	272·533	5910·52
76¾	241·117	4626·44	87	273·319	5944·69
77	241·903	4656·63	87¼	274·104	5978·88
77¼	242·688	4686·92	87½	274·890	6013·21
77½	243·474	4717·30	87¾	275·675	6047·60
77¾	244·259	4747·79	88	276·460	6082·13
78	245·044	4778·37	88¼	277·245	6116·72
78¼	245·830	4809·05	88½	278·031	6151·44
78½	246·615	4839·83	88¾	278·816	6186·20
78¾	247·401	4870·70	89	279·602	6221·15
79	248·186	4901·68	89¼	280·387	6256·12
79¼	248·971	4932·75	89½	281·173	6291·25
79½	249·757	4963·92	89¾	281·958	6326·44
79¾	250·542	4995·19	90	282·744	6361·74
80	251·328	5026·56	90¼	283·529	6399·12
80¼	252·113	5058·00	90½	284·314	6432·62
80½	252·898	5089·58	90¾	285·099	6468·16
80¾	253·683	5121·22	91	285·885	6503·89

Diameter.	Circumference.	Area.	Diameter.	Circumference.	Area.
91¼	286·670	6539·68	93¾	294·524	6882·92
91½	287·456	6573·56	94	295·310	6939·79
91¾	288·242	6611·52	94¼	296·095	6976·72
92	289·027	6647·62	94½	296·881	7013·81
92¼	289·812	6683·80	94¾	297·666	7050·92
92½	290·598	6720·07	95	298·452	7088·23
92¾	291·383	6756·40	95¼	299·237	7125·56
93	292·168	6792·92	95½	300·022	7163·04
93¼	292·953	6829·48	95¾	300·807	7200·56
93½	293·739	6866·16	96	301·593	7238·24

TABLE OF SQUARES, CUBES, SQUARE ROOTS, AND CUBE ROOTS.

Number.	Square.	Cube.	Square Root.	Cube Root.
1	1	1	1·0	1·0
2	4	8	1·41421	1·2599
3	9	27	1·73205	1·4423
4	16	64	2·0	1·5874
5	25	125	2·23607	1·7099
6	36	216	2·44949	1·8171
7	49	343	2·64575	1·9129
8	64	512	2·82843	2·0
9	81	729	3·0	2·0801
10	100	1000	3·16228	2·1544
11	121	1331	3·31663	2·2239
12	144	1728	3·46410	2·2894
13	169	2197	3·60555	2·3513
14	196	2744	3·74166	2·4101
15	225	3375	3·87298	2·4662
16	256	4096	4·0	2·5198
17	289	4913	4·12311	2·5713
18	324	5832	4·24264	2·6207
19	361	6859	4·35890	2·6684
20	400	8000	4·47214	2·7144

Number.	Square.	Cube.	Square Root.	Cube Root.
21	441	9261	4·58258	2·7589
22	484	10648	4·69042	2·8020
23	529	12167	4·79583	2·8439
24	576	13824	4·89898	2·8845
25	625	15625	5·0	2·9240
26	676	17576	5·09902	2·9625
27	729	19683	5·19615	3·0
28	784	21952	5·29150	3·0366
29	841	24389	5·38517	3·0723
30	900	27000	5·47723	3·1072
31	961	29791	5·56776	3·1414
32	1024	32768	5·65685	3·1748
33	1089	35937	5·74456	3·2075
34	1156	39304	5·83095	3·2396
35	1225	42875	5·91608	3·2711
36	1296	46656	6·0	3·3019
37	1369	50653	6·08276	3·3322
38	1444	54872	6·16441	3·3619
39	1521	59319	6·245	3·3912
40	1600	64000	6·32456	3·4199
41	1681	68921	6·40312	3·4482
42	1764	74088	6·48074	3·4760
43	1849	79507	6·55744	3·5034
44	1936	85184	6·63325	3·5303
45	2025	91125	6·70820	3·5569
46	2116	97336	6·78230	3·5830
47	2209	103823	6·85566	3·6088
48	2304	110592	6·92820	3·6342
49	2401	117649	7·0	3·6593
50	2500	125000	7·07107	3·6840
51	2601	132651	7·14143	3·7084
52	2704	140608	7·21110	3·7325
53	2809	148877	7·28011	3·7563
54	2916	157464	7·34847	3·7798
55	3025	166375	7·4162	3·8029
56	3136	175616	7·48332	3·8259
57	3249	185193	7·54983	3·8485
58	3364	195112	7·61577	3·8709
59	3481	205379	7·68115	3·8930
60	3600	216000	7·74597	3·9149
61	3721	226981	7·81025	3·9365
62	3844	238328	7·87401	3·9579

Number.	Square.	Cube.	Square Root.	Cube Root.
63	3969	250047	7·93725	3·9791
64	4096	262144	8·0	4·0
65	4225	274625	8·06226	4·0207
66	4356	287496	8·12404	4·0412
67	4489	300763	8·18535	4·0615
68	4624	314432	8·24621	4·0817
69	4761	328509	8·30662	4·1016
70	4900	343000	8·36660	4·1213
71	5041	357911	8·42615	4·1408
72	5184	373248	8·48528	4·1602
73	5329	389017	8·54400	4·1793
74	5476	405224	8·60233	4·1983
75	5625	421875	8·66025	4·2172
76	5776	438976	8·71779	4·2358
77	5929	456533	8·77496	4·2543
78	6084	474552	8·83176	4·2727
79	6241	493039	8·88819	4·2908
80	6400	512000	8·944	4·3089
81	6561	531441	9·0	4·3267
82	6724	551368	9·05589	4·3445
83	6889	571787	9·11043	4·3621
84	7056	592704	9·16515	4·3795
85	7225	614125	9·21955	4·3968
86	7396	636056	9·27362	4·4141
87	7569	658503	9·32738	4·4314
88	7744	681472	9·38083	4·4479
89	7921	704969	9·43398	4·4647
90	8100	729000	9·48683	4·4814
91	8281	753571	9·53939	4·4979
92	8464	778688	9·59166	4·5144
93	8649	804357	9·64365	4·5307
94	8836	830584	9·69536	4·5468
95	9025	857375	9·74679	4·5629
96	9216	884736	9·79796	4·5789
97	9409	912673	9·84886	4·5947
98	9604	941192	9·89949	4·6104
99	9801	970299	9·94987	4·6261
100	10000	1000000	10·0	4·6416

Table of the Weight of Cast-iron Balls.

Diam. in inches.	Weight in lbs.	Diam. in inches.	Weight in lbs.	Diam. in inches.	Weight in lbs.
2	1·10	6	29·72	10	137·71
2¼	1·57	6¼	33·62	10¼	148·28
2½	2·15	6½	37·80	10½	159·40
2¾	2·86	6¾	42·35	10¾	171·05
3	3·72	7	47·21	11	183·29
3¼	4·71	7¼	52·47	11¼	196·10
3½	5·80	7½	58·06	11½	209·43
3¾	7·26	7¾	64·09	11¾	223·40
4	8·81	8	70·49	12	237·94
4¼	10·57	8¼	77·32	12¼	253·13
4½	12·55	8½	84·56	12½	268·97
4¾	14·76	8¾	92·24	12¾	285·37
5	17·12	9	100·39	13	302·41
5¼	19·93	9¼	108·98	13¼	320·80
5½	22·91	9½	118·06	13½	338·81
5¾	26·18	9¾	127·63	13¾	357·93

Table of Dimensions for Pipe Flanges and Sockets.

Diameter of Pipe.	Diameter of Flange.	Thickness of Flange.	No. of Bolts.	Bore of Socket.	Depth of Socket.
Inches.	Inches.	Inches.		Inches.	Inches.
2	6 to 6½	½	4	3¼	2¾
3	7½ ,, 8	⅝	4	4½	3
4	8½ ,, 9	¾	4	5¾	3½
5	10 ,, 10½	¾	6	6¾	4
6	11 ,, 11½	¾	6	7¾	4½
7	12 ,, 13	⅞	6	8¾	4½
8	13 ,, 14	⅞	6	9¾	4½
9	14 ,, 15	⅞	6	11	4½
10	16	1	6	12	4½
11	17	1	6	13	4½
12	18	1	6	14	4½

The above dimensions are good, but not arbitrary. The usages of manufacturers differ, some making their flanges smaller, others larger than these. Obviously, too, the proportions and the number of bolts and flanges will vary with the strains the pipes have to bear.

TABLE OF DECIMAL EQUIVALENTS. ONE INCH THE INTEGER.

·96875 = $\frac{7}{8}$ and $\frac{3}{32}$
·9375 = $\frac{7}{8}$,, $\frac{1}{16}$
·90625 = $\frac{7}{8}$,, $\frac{1}{32}$
·875 = $\frac{7}{8}$
·84375 = $\frac{3}{4}$,, $\frac{3}{32}$
·8125 = $\frac{3}{4}$,, $\frac{1}{16}$
·78125 = $\frac{3}{4}$,, $\frac{1}{32}$
·75 = $\frac{3}{4}$
·71875 = $\frac{5}{8}$,, $\frac{3}{32}$
·6875 = $\frac{5}{8}$,, $\frac{1}{16}$
·65625 = $\frac{5}{8}$,, $\frac{1}{32}$
·625 = $\frac{5}{8}$
·59375 = $\frac{1}{2}$,, $\frac{3}{32}$
·5625 = $\frac{1}{2}$,, $\frac{1}{16}$
·53125 = $\frac{1}{2}$,, $\frac{1}{32}$
·5 = $\frac{1}{2}$

·46875 = $\frac{3}{8}$ and $\frac{3}{32}$
·4375 = $\frac{3}{8}$,, $\frac{1}{16}$
·40625 = $\frac{3}{8}$,, $\frac{1}{32}$
·375 = $\frac{3}{8}$
·34375 = $\frac{1}{4}$,, $\frac{3}{32}$
·3125 = $\frac{1}{4}$,, $\frac{1}{16}$
·28125 = $\frac{1}{4}$,, $\frac{1}{32}$
·25 = $\frac{1}{4}$
·21875 = $\frac{1}{8}$,, $\frac{3}{32}$
·1875 = $\frac{1}{8}$,, $\frac{1}{16}$
·15625 = $\frac{1}{8}$,, $\frac{1}{32}$
·125 = $\frac{1}{8}$
·09375 = $\frac{3}{32}$
·0625 = $\frac{1}{16}$
·03125 = $\frac{1}{32}$

TABLE OF DECIMAL EQUIVALENTS. ONE FOOT THE INTEGER.

·9166 = 11 inches.
·6338 = 10 ,,
·75 = 9 ,,
·6666 = 8 ,,
·5833 = 7 ,,
·5 = 6 ,,
·4166 = 5 ,,
·3333 = 4 ,,
·25 = 3 ,,

·1666 = 2 inches.
·0833 = 1 inch.
·07291 = $\frac{7}{8}$ of inch.
·0625 = $\frac{3}{4}$,,
·05208 = $\frac{5}{8}$,,
·04166 = $\frac{1}{2}$,,
·03125 = $\frac{3}{8}$,,
·02083 = $\frac{1}{4}$,,
·01041 = $\frac{1}{8}$,,

TABLE OF THE WEIGHT OF SOLID CYLINDERS IN CAST IRON, ONE FOOT LONG.

	Diameters in inches.								
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
Weight in lbs.	2·4	9·9	21·9	39·0	61·0	89·0	120·0	156·0	198·0

TABLE OF PITCHES, PITCH DIAMETERS, AND NUMBER OF TEETH OF WHEELS.

PITCH OF THE TEETH IN INCHES.

DIAMETER OF THE PITCH CIRCLE IN FEET AND INCHES.

No. of Teeth.	1 inch.		1⅛ inch.		1¼ inch.		1⅜ inch.		1½ inch.		1⅝ inch.		1¾ inch.		1⅞ inch.		2 inch.		2⅛ inch.		2¼ inch.		2½ inch.		2¾ inch.		3 inch.	
	ft.	in.	ft.	in.	ft.	in.	ft.	in.	ft.	in.	ft.	in.	ft.	in.	ft.	in.	ft.	in.	ft.	in.	ft.	in.	ft.	in.	ft.	in.	ft.	in.
10	0	3¼	0	3⅝	0	4	0	4½	0	4⅞	0	5¼	0	5⅝	0	6	0	6½	0	6⅞	0	7¼	0	8	0	8⅞	0	9⅝
11	0	3½	0	4	0	4⅜	0	5	0	5⅜	0	5¾	0	6¼	0	6⅝	0	7	0	7½	0	7⅞	0	8¾	0	9¾	0	10⅝
12	0	3⅞	0	4⅜	0	4⅞	0	5⅜	0	5⅞	0	6⅜	0	6¾	0	7⅛	0	7⅝	0	8⅛	0	8⅝	0	9⅝	0	10⅝	0	11½
13	0	4⅛	0	4¾	0	5¼	0	5¾	0	6¼	0	6⅞	0	7⅜	0	7⅞	0	8⅜	0	8⅞	0	9⅜	0	10⅜	0	11½	1	0½
14	0	4½	0	5	0	5⅝	0	6¼	0	6¾	0	7⅜	0	7⅞	0	8½	0	9	0	9½	0	10	0	11¼	1	0⅜	1	1½
15	0	4⅞	0	5⅜	0	6	0	6⅝	0	7¼	0	7⅞	0	8½	0	9	0	9⅝	0	10¼	0	10¾	1	0	1	1¼	1	2⅜
16	0	5⅛	0	5¾	0	6⅜	0	7	0	7⅝	0	8⅜	0	9	0	9⅝	0	10¼	0	10⅞	0	11½	1	0¾	1	2	1	3⅜
17	0	5½	0	6⅛	0	6¾	0	7½	0	8¼	0	8⅞	0	9⅝	0	10¼	0	10⅞	0	11½	1	0¼	1	1½	1	2⅞	1	4¼
18	0	5¾	0	6½	0	7⅛	0	8	0	8⅝	0	9⅜	0	10	0	10¾	0	11½	1	0¼	1	0⅞	1	2⅜	1	3¾	1	5¼
19	0	6	0	6⅞	0	7½	0	8⅜	0	9⅛	0	9⅞	0	10⅝	0	11⅜	1	0⅛	1	0⅞	1	1⅝	1	3⅛	1	4⅝	1	6¼
20	0	6⅜	0	7⅛	0	8	0	8⅞	0	9⅝	0	10⅜	0	11¼	1	0	1	0¾	1	1½	1	2⅜	1	4	1	5½	1	7⅛
21	0	6¾	0	7½	0	8⅜	0	9¼	0	10	0	11	0	11¾	1	0½	1	1½	1	2¼	1	3	1	4¾	1	6⅜	1	8⅛
22	0	7	0	7⅞	0	8¾	0	9⅝	0	10⅝	0	11½	1	0⅜	1	1⅛	1	2	1	2⅞	1	3¾	1	5½	1	7¼	1	9
23	0	7⅜	0	8¼	0	9⅛	0	10	0	11	1	0	1	0⅞	1	1¾	1	2⅝	1	3½	1	4½	1	6⅜	1	8	1	10
24	0	7⅝	0	8⅝	0	9½	0	10½	0	11½	1	0½	1	1½	1	2⅜	1	3⅜	1	4¼	1	5¼	1	7⅛	1	9	1	10⅞
25	0	8	0	9	0	10	0	11	1	0	1	1	1	2	1	2⅞	1	3⅞	1	4⅞	1	6	1	8	1	9⅞	1	11⅞
26	0	8¼	0	9¼	0	10⅜	0	11½	1	0½	1	1½	1	2½	1	3½	1	4½	1	5½	1	6⅝	1	8¾	1	10¾	2	0⅞
27	0	8⅝	0	9⅝	0	10¾	0	11⅞	1	1	1	2	1	3	1	4⅛	1	5¼	1	6¼	1	7⅜	1	9½	1	11⅝	2	1¾

28	0	9	0	10	0	11¼	1	0¼	1	1¼	1	2½	1	3⅝	1	4⅝	1	5¾	1	6⅞	1	8	1	10¼	2	0½	2	2¾
29	0	9¼	0	10⅜	0	11⅝	1	0¾	1	1⅞	1	3	1	4⅛	1	5⅜	1	6½	1	7⅝	1	8¾	1	11⅛	2	1⅜	2	3¾
30	0	9½	0	10¾	1	0	1	1⅛	1	2⅜	1	3½	1	4½	1	6	1	7⅛	1	8¼	1	9½	2	0	2	2¼	2	4⅝
31	0	9⅞	0	11⅛	1	0⅜	1	1⅝	1	2⅞	1	4	1	5⅜	1	6½	1	7¾	1	9	1	10¼	2	0¾	2	3⅛	2	5⅝
32	0	10¼	0	11½	1	0¾	1	2	1	3⅜	1	4⅝	1	5⅞	1	7⅛	1	8⅜	1	9⅝	1	11	2	1½	2	4	2	6½
33	0	10½	0	11⅞	1	1⅛	1	2½	1	3¾	1	5⅛	1	6½	1	7¾	1	9	1	10⅜	1	11⅝	2	2¼	2	4⅞	2	7½
34	0	10⅞	1	0⅛	1	1⅝	1	3	1	4¼	1	5⅝	1	7	1	8⅜	1	9⅝	1	11	2	0⅜	2	3	2	5¾	2	8½
35	0	11⅛	1	0⅝	1	2	1	3⅜	1	4¾	1	6⅛	1	7½	1	9	1	10⅛	1	11¾	2	1	2	3⅞	2	6⅝	2	9½
36	0	11½	1	1	1	2⅜	1	3¾	1	5¼	1	6⅝	1	8	1	9½	1	10⅞	2	0⅜	2	2	2	4⅝	2	7½	2	10⅜
37	0	11¾	1	1¼	1	2¾	1	4¼	1	5⅝	1	7¼	1	8⅝	1	10	1	11½	2	1	2	2½	2	5½	2	8⅜	2	11⅜
38	1	0⅛	1	1⅝	1	3¼	1	4⅝	1	6¼	1	7⅝	1	9¼	1	10¾	2	0¼	2	1¾	2	3¼	2	6¼	2	9¼	3	0¼
39	1	0⅜	1	2	1	3½	1	5	1	6⅝	1	8¼	1	9¾	1	11⅜	2	0⅞	2	2⅜	2	4	2	7	2	10⅛	3	1¼
40	1	0¾	1	2⅜	1	4	1	5½	1	7⅜	1	8¾	1	10⅜	1	11⅞	2	1½	2	3	2	4⅝	2	7⅞	2	10¾	3	2¼
41	1	1	1	2¾	1	4⅜	1	6	1	7⅝	1	9¼	1	10⅞	2	0½	2	2⅛	2	3¾	2	5⅜	2	8⅝	2	11⅞	3	3⅛
42	1	1⅜	1	3	1	4¾	1	6⅜	1	8	1	9¾	1	11½	2	1	2	2¾	2	4½	2	6	2	9⅜	3	0¾	3	4⅛
43	1	1⅝	1	3½	1	5⅛	1	6⅞	1	8⅝	1	10¼	2	0	2	1⅝	2	3⅜	2	5	2	6¾	2	10¼	3	1⅝	3	5
44	1	2	1	3¾	1	5⅝	1	7¼	1	9	1	10¾	2	0½	2	2¼	2	4	2	5¾	2	7½	2	11	3	2½	3	6
45	1	2⅜	1	4⅛	1	6	1	7¾	1	9½	1	11⅜	2	1	2	2⅞	2	4⅝	2	6½	2	8¼	2	11¾	3	3⅜	3	7
46	1	2⅝	1	4½	1	6⅜	1	8⅛	1	10	1	11⅞	2	1⅝	2	3½	2	5¼	2	7⅛	2	9	3	0⅝	3	4¼	3	7⅞
47	1	2⅞	1	4⅞	1	6¾	1	8⅝	1	10½	2	0⅜	2	1⅞	2	4	2	6	2	7⅞	2	9⅝	3	1½	3	5⅛	3	8⅞
48	1	3¼	1	5¼	1	7⅛	1	9	1	11	2	0⅞	2	2¾	2	4⅝	2	6½	2	8½	2	10⅜	3	2¼	3	6	3	9⅞
49	1	3½	1	5⅝	1	7½	1	9½	1	11½	2	1⅜	2	3⅜	2	5¼	2	7¼	2	9⅛	2	11	3	3	3	6⅞	3	10⅞
50	1	3⅞	1	6	1	8	1	9⅞	2	0	2	1⅞	2	3⅞	2	5⅞	2	7⅞	2	9¾	2	11¾	3	3¾	3	7¾	3	11¾
51	1	4¼	1	6¼	1	8⅜	1	10⅜	2	0⅜	2	2⅜	2	4½	2	6½	2	8½	2	10½	3	0½	3	4½	3	8⅝	4	¾
52	1	4½	1	6⅝	1	8¾	1	10¾	2	0⅞	2	2⅞	2	4⅞	2	7⅛	2	9⅛	2	11⅛	3	1¼	3	5⅜	3	9½	4	1⅝
53	1	4⅞	1	6⅞	1	9⅛	1	11¼	2	1¼	2	3⅜	2	5⅜	2	7⅝	2	9¾	2	11⅞	3	2	3	6¼	3	10½	4	2⅝
54	1	5¼	1	7¼	1	9½	1	11⅝	2	1¾	2	3⅞	2	6	2	8¼	2	10⅜	3	0½	3	2⅝	3	7	3	11	4	3½

No. of Teeth.	Pitch of the Teeth in Inches.																											
	1 inch.		1⅛ inch.		1¼ inch.		1⅜ inch.		1½ inch.		1⅝ inch.		1¾ inch.		1⅞ inch.		2 inch.		2⅛ inch.		2¼ inch.		2½ inch.		2¾ inch.		3 inch.	
	Diameter of the Pitch Circle—*continued.*																											
	ft.	in.	ft.	in.	ft.	in.	ft.	in.	ft.	in.	ft.	in.	ft.	in.	ft.	in.	ft.	in.	ft.	in.	ft.	in.	ft.	in.	ft.	in.	ft.	in.
55	1	5½	1	7¾	1	9⅞	2	0	2	2¼	2	4½	2	6⅝	2	8⅞	2	11	3	1¼	3	3⅜	3	7¾	4	0⅛	4	4½
56	1	5⅞	1	8⅛	1	10¼	2	0½	2	2¾	2	4⅞	2	7⅛	2	9⅜	2	11⅝	3	1⅞	3	4⅛	3	8½	4	1	4	5½
57	1	6⅛	1	8½	1	10⅝	2	0⅞	2	3¼	2	5¼	2	7¾	2	10	3	0¼	3	2½	3	4⅞	3	9⅜	4	1⅞	4	6⅜
58	1	6½	1	8¾	1	11	2	1⅜	2	3⅝	2	6	2	8¼	2	10⅝	3	0⅞	3	3¼	3	5½	3	10⅛	4	2¾	4	7⅜
59	1	6¾	1	9⅛	1	11½	2	1⅞	2	4⅛	2	6½	2	8⅞	2	11¼	3	1½	3	4	3	6¼	3	11⅛	4	3⅝	4	8⅜
60	1	7⅛	1	9⅜	1	11⅞	2	2¼	2	4⅝	2	7	2	9⅜	2	11¾	3	2¼	3	4⅝	3	7	3	11¾	4	4½	4	9¼
61	1	7½	1	9⅞	2	0¼	2	2¾	2	5¼	2	7½	2	10	3	0⅜	3	2⅞	3	5¼	3	7¾	4	0½	4	5⅜	4	10¼
62	1	7¾	1	10¼	2	0⅝	2	3⅛	2	5⅝	2	8	2	10½	3	1	3	3½	3	6	3	8½	4	1⅜	4	6¼	4	11¼
63	1	8	1	10½	2	1	2	3½	2	6	2	8⅝	2	11	3	1⅝	3	4⅛	3	6⅝	3	9⅛	4	2⅛	4	7⅛	5	0⅛
64	1	8⅜	1	10⅞	2	1½	2	4	2	6½	2	9⅛	2	11⅝	3	2¼	3	4¾	3	7¼	3	9⅞	4	3	4	8	5	1⅛
65	1	8⅝	1	11¼	2	1⅞	2	4½	2	7	2	9⅝	3	0¼	3	2⅞	3	5⅜	3	8	3	10½	4	3¾	4	8⅞	5	2
66	1	9	1	11⅝	2	2¼	2	4⅞	2	7½	2	10⅛	3	0⅞	3	3⅜	3	6	3	8⅝	3	11¼	4	4½	4	9¾	5	3
67	1	9⅜	2	0	2	2⅝	2	5¼	2	8	2	10⅝	3	1⅜	3	4	3	6½	3	9⅜	4	0	4	5⅜	4	10⅝	5	4
68	1	9⅝	2	0⅜	2	3	2	5¾	2	8½	2	11⅛	3	1¾	3	4⅝	3	7¼	3	10	4	0¾	4	6⅛	4	11½	5	5
69	1	9⅞	2	0¾	2	3½	2	6¼	2	8⅞	2	11¾	3	2⅜	3	5⅛	3	7⅞	3	10⅝	4	1½	4	7	5	0⅜	5	6
70	1	10¼	2	1	2	3⅞	2	6⅝	2	9⅜	3	0¼	3	3	3	5¾	3	8½	3	11⅜	4	2⅛	4	7¾	5	1¼	5	6⅞
71	1	10⅝	2	1½	2	4¼	2	7	2	9⅞	3	0¾	3	3½	3	6⅜	3	9¼	4	0	4	2⅞	4	8½	5	2⅛	5	7¾
72	1	10⅞	2	1¾	2	4⅝	2	7½	2	10⅜	3	1¼	3	4⅛	3	6¾	3	9⅞	4	0¾	4	3½	4	9¼	5	3	5	8¾
73	1	11¼	2	2⅛	2	5	2	8	2	10⅞	3	1¾	3	4⅝	3	7½	3	10½	4	1⅜	4	4¼	4	10	5	3⅞	5	9¾
74	1	11½	2	2½	2	5½	2	8⅜	2	11⅜	3	2¼	3	5¼	3	7⅞	3	11⅛	4	2	4	5	4	10⅞	5	4¾	5	10⅝

75	1	11⅞	2	2⅞	2	5⅞	2	8⅞	2	11⅞	3	2¾	3	5¾	3	8¾	3	11¾	4	2¾	4	5¾	4	11¾	5	5⅝	5	11⅝
76	2	0⅛	2	3¼	2	6¼	2	9¼	3	0¼	3	3¼	3	6⅜	3	9⅜	4	0⅜	4	3½	4	6½	5	0½	5	6½	6	0½
77	2	0½	2	3½	2	6⅝	2	9¾	3	0¾	3	3⅞	3	6⅞	3	9⅞	4	1	4	4	4	7⅛	5	1¼	5	7⅜	6	1½
78	2	0⅞	2	3⅞	2	7	2	10⅛	3	1½	3	4⅜	3	7½	3	10½	4	1⅝	4	4¾	4	7⅞	5	2	5	8¼	6	2½
79	2	1⅛	2	4⅛	2	7⅜	2	10½	3	1¾	3	4⅞	3	8	3	11⅛	4	2¼	4	5½	4	8½	5	2⅞	5	9⅛	6	3½
80	2	1½	2	4⅝	2	7¾	2	11	3	2¼	3	5⅜	3	8½	3	11¾	4	3	4	6⅛	4	9¼	5	3⅝	5	10	6	4⅜
81	2	1¾	2	5	2	8¼	2	11½	3	2⅝	3	5⅞	3	9⅛	4	0⅜	4	3½	4	6⅞	4	10	5	4½	5	10⅞	6	5⅜
82	2	2⅛	2	5⅜	2	8⅝	2	11⅞	3	3⅛	3	6⅜	3	9⅜	4	0⅞	4	4¼	4	7½	4	10¾	5	5¼	5	11¾	6	6⅜
83	2	2½	2	5¾	2	9	3	0⅜	3	3⅝	3	6⅞	3	10¼	4	1½	4	4⅞	4	8⅛	4	11½	5	6	6	0⅝	6	7¼
84	2	2¾	2	6	2	9⅜	3	0¾	3	4	3	7½	3	10¾	4	2⅛	4	5½	4	8⅞	5	0⅛	5	6⅞	6	1½	6	8⅛
85	2	3	2	6⅜	2	9¾	3	1¼	3	4½	3	7⅞	3	11¼	4	2¾	4	6⅛	4	9½	5	0⅞	5	7⅝	6	2⅜	6	9⅛
86	2	3⅜	2	6¾	2	10¼	3	1⅝	3	5¼	3	8½	3	11⅞	4	3¼	4	6¾	4	10⅛	5	1⅝	5	8½	6	3¼	6	10½
87	2	3⅝	2	7⅛	2	10⅝	3	2	3	5½	3	9	4	0½	4	3⅞	4	7⅜	4	10⅞	5	2¼	5	9¼	6	4⅛	6	11
88	2	4	2	7½	2	11	3	2½	3	6	3	9½	4	1	4	4½	4	8	4	11½	5	3	5	10	6	5	7	0
89	2	4⅜	2	7⅞	2	11⅜	3	2⅞	3	6½	3	10	4	1½	4	5⅛	4	8⅝	5	0¼	5	3¼	5	10¾	6	5⅞	7	1
90	2	4⅝	2	8¼	2	11¾	3	3¼	3	7	3	10½	4	2⅛	4	5¾	4	9¼	5	0⅞	5	4¼	5	11⅝	6	6¾	7	2
91	2	4⅞	2	8½	3	0¼	3	3⅞	3	7½	3	11	4	2¾	4	6¼	4	9⅞	5	1½	5	5⅛	6	0⅜	6	7⅝	7	2⅞
92	2	5¼	2	8⅞	3	0⅝	3	4¼	3	7⅞	3	11⅝	4	3¼	4	7	4	10½	5	2⅛	5	5⅞	6	1	6	8½	7	3⅞
93	2	5⅝	2	9¼	3	1	3	4¾	3	8⅜	4	0⅛	4	3⅞	4	7½	4	11¼	5	2⅞	5	6⅝	6	2	6	9⅜	7	4⅞
94	2	5⅞	2	9⅝	3	1⅜	3	5⅛	3	8⅞	4	0⅝	4	4⅜	4	8⅛	4	11¾	5	3½	5	7⅜	6	2¾	6	10¼	7	5¾
95	2	6¼	2	10	3	1¾	3	5½	3	9⅜	4	1⅛	4	4⅞	4	8¾	5	0½	5	4¼	5	8	6	3½	6	11⅛	7	6¾
96	2	6½	2	10⅜	3	2⅛	3	6	3	9¾	4	1⅝	4	5½	4	9⅜	5	1⅛	5	5	5	8¾	6	4⅜	7	0	7	7⅝
97	2	6⅞	2	10¾	3	2⅝	3	6½	3	10¼	4	2⅛	4	6	4	10	5	1¾	5	5⅝	5	9½	6	5¼	7	0⅞	7	8⅝
98	2	7⅛	2	11	3	3	3	6⅞	3	10¾	4	2⅝	4	6½	4	10½	5	2⅜	5	6¼	5	10⅛	6	6	7	1¾	7	9½
99	2	7½	2	11⅜	3	3⅜	3	7⅜	3	11¼	4	3¼	4	7⅛	4	11	5	3	5	7	5	11	6	6¾	7	2⅝	7	10½
100	2	7⅞	2	11⅞	3	3¾	3	7¾	3	11¾	4	3¾	4	7¾	4	11⅝	5	3⅝	5	7⅝	5	11⅝	6	7½	7	3⅝	7	11½

INDEX.

- ACACIA for cogs, 54
- Advantages of scientific knowledge, 311
- Advantages of green sand moulding, 273
- Air-vessel, 259
- Allowances for turning and planing, 280
- Angles in castings, 26
- Angle wheels, 68—70
- Antiquity of pattern-making, 313
- Apple-tree wood for cogs, 54
- Approximate formula for weights of wheels, 176
- Arcs of large radius, 269
- Areas of circles, Appendix, 317
- Arithmetic, 313
- Arms of wheels, 15, 25, 32, 41, 44, 47, 57, 196
- Arms of flywheels and pulleys, 121, 124, 142, 145
- Arms of road wheel, 129

- BALLS, cast-iron, weights of, Appendix, 356
- Band saws, 297, 298
- Bars of foundry boxes, 230 235
- Barrels for crane chains, 210
- Baseplates, 102
- Bearer for fire-bars, 277
- Bearing, engine-bed, 105
- Beech for cogs, 54
- Beeswax for metal patterns, 125
- Belt pulleys, 120
- Bends, 157-161
- Bevel-wheels, 29—33, 45—51
  - arms of, 32, 47, 196
  - building up of, 31, 33
  - marking out, 29, 30
  - machine-made, 45—51
  - turning, 31
- Blacklead and soap, a lubricant, 152
- Blades of screws, 223—228
- Blocks for working wheel teeth, 22, 23
  - for teeth of machine wheels, 40, 41, 47, 48, 51, 52
- Boards for striking barrels, 212—216
  - capstans, 192
  - cylinders, 98—100
  - flywheels, 115
  - pipes, 161, 162
  - machine-wheels, 42—51
- Boards, turn-over, 315—319
- Body flanges for pipes, 153
- Boiler fittings and mountains, 276—279
- Bosses of flywheels, 116, 119
  - pulleys, 122, 124
  - screws, 227
  - to distinguish from prints, 284
  - of water-wheels, 266
  - of cog-wheels, 16

Book knowledge, 311
Bottom boards, 315—319
    plate for loam work, 97
Boxes for moulding, 229
Boxing up of patterns, 104, 106, 239, 247
Bracket for gasholder, 180
Branch pipes, fitting of, 155
Brass, contraction of, 3
    dowels, 202
    faces for cocks, 260
    multiplier for, 178
    patterns, 125, 262
    to estimate weight of, 172
    work, 262 337
Brazing metal, 260
Breadth of wheel teeth, 16
Breaking strength of wheel teeth, 59
Bricking up of cylinders, 98
Broken castings, to mould from, 284
Buckling of castings, 111
Building up of patterns, 17, 27, 28, 33, 37, 114, 143
Bursting of mortise wheel rims, 45

CANTILEVERS, 59
Capstans, 190—194
Carbonic oxide in mould, 77
Cast iron (*See* IRON)
Cast-iron balls, weight of, Appendix, 356
Casting brass faces to cocks, 260
Castings, the use of hollows in, 26
    estimating weights of, 172—178
Calculating diameters and pitches of wheels, 60
Centre-plates, 205
    square, 207
Chain barrels, 210—216
Chaplets, 240
Check for loam joint, 98
Check for strickles, 161
Checking patterns, 286—290
Chequering of foot-plates, 281
Chilled work, 217—220
Chisels for turning, 19
Choice of rolling circles, 15
Chord of circle, 267
Circles, areas, circumferences of, Appendix, 347
Circular saws, 294—297
Clips used in chilling, 220
Cocks, 255—264
Cogs, driving and securing of, 55, 56
    woods used for, 54
Columns, fluted, 164—168
    octagonal, 169
    cores for, 168
Contraction of brass, 3
    iron, 3
    for metal patterns, 125
    rule, 3
Comparison of various methods of making wheel teeth, 23
Core-bars, 168
Core-boxes for cylinders, 84, 85, 93—96
    engine beds, 105, 108—111
    flywheel arms, 116, 119
    globe-valves, 263
    lathe beds, 248
    machine wheels, 39, 51
    mortise, 54
    of large diameter, 282
    pumps, 255—261
    road wheel, 128—131
    sheave-wheels, 144—149
    sluice-cocks, 260
    stock, 282
    turbines, 271, 272, 274
    water-wheels, 266
Core-prints, 71—77
Cores for strainers, 259
    strickling of, 161—163
    striking of, 168, 192

Cores, threading of, 168
    venting of, 77
Coring holes in flanges, 154
Countershafts, speeds of, 306
Crossheads, 139, 140
Crystals in iron, 26
Cubes, cube roots, table of, Appendix, 353
Curving of engine beds, 111—113
    gutters, 318
    name-plates, 281
    pulley arms, 121
Cutting wooden cogs, 55
Cycloidal teeth, 14
Cylinders, loam, 97—101
    pattern, 78—96
    solid, weight of, Appendix, 357

DEAD-PLATE for boiler, 276
    Decimal equivalents, table of, Appendix, 357
Decimals useful in calculations, 178
Decomposition of water in a mould, 77
Delivery-box, 256
Depth of prints, 72
Designing pulley arms, 121
    wheel teeth, 9—14
Development of screws, 221—227
Diagram of crystals in cast-iron, 26
Diagonals for worm, 35
    screw, 222
Diameters of wheels, to calculate, 60
    table of, Appendix, 358
    of circles, table of, Appendix, 347
    screws, 221
Discs for turbines, 272
Disproportioned castings, 120
Division of labour, 1
Door-frame for boiler, 277
    man-hole, 279
    mud-hole, 279
Dovetailing of teeth, 22
Double cylinder, 86—96
Dowels, 201—203
Dowelling, 203
Driving in of cogs, 55
Drawbacks, 179—187
Drawing-boards, 5
Drilling-machines, 242—244

ECCENTRIC sheaves, 132
    straps, 132
Eighth bends, 157
Engine beds, 102—113
    cylinders, 78—101
    work, miscellaneous, 132—140
Epicycloidal teeth, 7, 14
    mode of forming, 9, 14
Equivalents, decimal, table of, Appendix, 357
Estimating weights of castings, 172—178
Experience, the value of, 180, 313
Exhaust core-boxes, 85, 93, 94
Eyes in castings, 75

FACED and unfaced portions of castings, 284
Facings for brasses, 125
Fastening letters to name-plates, 281
Feet of cylinder, 83, 185
Fitting, allowances for, 247, 280
    dovetailed teeth, 22
    lignum vitæ bearings, 274
    wooden cogs, 55
Fire-bar, straight, 277
    sweeped, 279
Fire-door, 278
    frame, 277
Flanges, body, 153
    proportion of, table of, Appendix, 356

Flanges of columns, 167
    holes in, 154
    of pipes, 153
    stopping off, 197
Flasks, 229
Fluted columns, 164—171
Flutes, jointing of, 166
Foot-plates, chequering of, 281
Footstep bearing of turbine, 274
Force-pump, 261
Formulæ for calculating weights of wheels, 176
Formula for finding the versed sine, 269
    for pulley arms, 121
        bosses, 86, 122
    for wheel calculations, 15, 16
Foundry requisites, 229—236
Foundation for loam mould, 97
Fox's trimmer, 303—304
Framings of machines, 237
Friction of deep patterns, 204

GAP bed, 247
Gas engine, 304
Gases in a mould, 77
Gasholder bracket, 180
Gauge, long-toothed, 207
Gearing angle, 68—70
    bevel, 29—33, 45—51
    helical, 61—67
    machine-made, 39—52
    spur, 13—28, 39—45
    wooden, 55, 56
    worm, 34—38, 52
Generating circle, 13, 14
Girders, 183, 184
Glasspapering of teeth, 24, 38
Globe valve, 263, 264
Glue joints, 283
    making, 282
Gluing segments of wheels, 18
Gouge for turning, 19
Governor ring of turbine, 272
Gravity, specific, 173
Green sand moulding, 45, 273
Grids, 182
Grinding gouge, 19
Grooves in pulleys, 141
Gunmetal castings, 262
    contraction of, 3
    faces in valves, 260
    multiplier for, 178
    name-plates, 281
Gutters, 318
Guide-iron, 161
    line, 160
Guides for piston-rod, 139

H-SHAPED arm core-boxes, 40, 41
Half shrouding, 58
Head metal of cylinders, 80, 88
Heavy machine work, 237—244
Helical wheels, 61—67
Hints on study, 311—313
Holes, casting of, 71—77
Hollow framing of machines, 237
Hollows in castings, 26
Horizontal engine bed, 102—113
Hornbeam for cogs, 54
Hydraulic work, 255—275
Hydrogen in mould, 77

INVOLUTE teeth, 10
Iron balls, weight of, table of, Appendix, 356
Iron, contraction of, 3
    core-boxes, 282
    cylinders, weight of, 177; Appendix, 357
    crystals in, 26, 217
    dowels, 202
    lifting-plates, 204
    molten, temperature of, 77
    multiplier for, 172
    patterns, 124

Iron rapping-plates, 204
  sockets, 154
  unequal contraction of, 3
  weight of, 172

JAGGING of wrought-iron arms, 119
Joint boards, 315—319
Joints, glued, 283
  open, 37, 241 316
  sand, 182 332
Jointing of brass work, 262 338
  chills, 219, 220
  columns, 166, 169
  cylinders, 79, 86, 92, 101, 186
  drawbacks, 182
  flywheel cores, 117
  flutes, 166
  girders, 183, 184
  lathe beds, 188
  loam moulds, 98, 101, 214—216
  machine wheel moulds, 42—51
  pulleys, 123
  pumps, 256—258
  road wheel, 129
  screws, 221—228
  sheave wheels, 142—149
  slide valves, 134
  turbine guides, 270
  turned work, 206
  valves, 263

KEY boss, 121

LAGGING up of cylinders, 80, 88
  pipes, 151
Lap and lead, to mark on eccentric, 132
Lathe beds, 188, 245—249
  poppets, 254
Lathes for pattern shop, 291—294
  slide-rest, 250—252
Lathe standard, 253
Lead letters, 281
  multiplier for, 178
  in pattern-shop, 285
  patterns, 125
Lifting barrels, 210—216
  plates, 204
  straps, 205
Lignum vitæ for turbine step, 274
Loam boards—for barrels, 212—216
  capstan, 192
  columns, 165
  cylinders, 98—100
  pipes, 155
  pumps, 258
  turbines, 273
Loam bricks, 100
  moulds, 97, 155, 214
  patterns, 155, 160, 191, 211
  screws, 227
Long-toothed gauge, 207
Loose pieces, 195
Lubricant—soft soap, 152
Lugs—for moulding box, 230 235
  splitting wheels, 57

MACHINE-moulded wheels, 39—52
Machinery, care of, 306
  parts, 237—244
Mahogany for patterns, 4
Makeshift work, 284
Man-hole frame, 279
Measurement of wheel parts, 174
Mending up, 273
Metal patterns, 124 328—337
Metals, multipliers for, 178
Method of estimating weights, 172—178
Method of using Odontograph, 9
Mill gearing, 53

Millwrights, 1
Mitre-wheels, 29
Moisture in a mould, 77
Mortise-wheels, 53—58
Moulding-boxes, 229
  of barrels, 210—216
  capstans, 190—194
  columns, 164—171
  cylinders, 78—101
  engine beds, 102—113
  flywheels, 115—119
  lathe beds, 188, 245
  machine parts, 238—244
  wheels, 39—52
  pipes, 151—163
  pumps, 255—258
  screws, 221—228
  sheave-wheels, 141—150
  turbines, 269—275
  various ways of, 179—189
Mouldings on columns, 167
Moulds—green sand, 42, 273
  loam, 97—101, 214
Mud-hole frames, 279

NAME-PLATES, 281
  Nave of wheels, 16
Notes, workshop, 280—290
Number of teeth in wheels, table of, Appendix, 358
  to calculate, 60
Nut for sluice cock, 261

OAK for cogs, 54
  Object in jointing patterns, 151
Odontograph scale, 8
Open joints, 37, 241 316
Ornamental columns, 164—171
Oxygen in mould, 77

PAPER joints, 17
  templets, 36, 221
Paint for patterns, 284
Passages of cylinders, 84, 85, 92—95
Pattern register, 286 345
  screws, 221—225
  timber, 4, 285
  wheels, 17—38
Patterns, checking of, 286—290
Patterns for gunmetal, 262
  of metal, 124 328—337
  maker, qualifications of, 308—314
Pattern shop machinery, 291—306
  tools of, 2
  work, variety in, 309
Peg-and-cup dowels, 202
Pegs, wooden, 32
Pile screws, 223
Pine, yellow, for patterns, 4
Pinning of cogs, 55, 56
Pipe flanges, proportions of, table of, Appendix, 356
  sockets, 356
Pipes, strainer, 259
  estimating weight of, 177
  stopping off, 197
Piston-rod guides, 139
Pitch of bevel-wheels, 29
  spur-wheels, 7
  worm-wheels, 37
  screws, 221
  to calculate, 60
  diameters of wheels, table of, Appendix, 358
Planing, allowances for, 280
  a glue joint, 283
Planing-machine bed, 238
Planing machines for pattern shop, 300—303
  standard, 239
  table, 241
Plaster of Paris, 285
Plate dowels, 202
  moulding, 315—340
Plates for lifting and rapping, 204
  for splitting wheels, 57

Plates, tank, strickling of, 200
thickening of, in casting, 3
Plug for sluice-cock, 261
Pocket prints, 73
Pressure in mould, 229
Prevention of curving in engine beds, 113
in gutters, 318
Prints for mortise-wheels, 54
stopping off, 73, 197
thickness of, 73
to distinguish, 284
Projection of bevel-wheel teeth, 29
of wave-wheels, 148
value of, 312
Propeller screws, 226—228
Proportions of moulding-boxes, 229
pulley arms, 121
,, boss, 122
wheel arms, 15
,, boss, 16
,, rim, 15
,, teeth, 12
Pulleys, 120—124
Pumps, 255—259

QUALIFICATIONS of pattern-maker, 308—314
Qualities of iron as affecting contraction, 3
Quarter bends, 157

RACK struck with Odontograph, 34
Radial drill, 242—244
Radii of large size, 269
Radius finder, 208
Rapping of patterns, 173, 204
Rapping-plates, 204
Ratios of wheels, 60
Reasons why castings vary, 3, 201
Reducing pipe, 158, 163
Register of patterns, 286 345
Remarks on turning-tools, 19
Rest of lathe, 250—253, 292
Rims of bevel-wheels, 31
flywheels, 114, 115
machine wheels, 39—51
mortice-wheels, 53
pulleys, 120
spur-wheels, 15, 17
worm-wheels, 31, 35
Ring, moulding of, 199
Road wheel, 126—131
Roller, chilled, 219
Rolling circles, 7, 13
Rope-wheels, 147—149
Round-nose for turning, 19
Rounding of pulley rims, 121
Rule, contraction, 3
Rules for calculating wheel teeth, 60
Rusting of metal patterns, 125

S-PIPES, 160
Saddle of rest, 253, 254
Safety-valves, 279
shells of, 278
Sawing of cogs, 55
Saws, 294—298
Saws, band, 297, 298
Saws, circular, 294—297
Scale, Odontograph, 8
for proportions of wheel teeth, 12
Science, the study of, 311
Screws, 221—228
Screw barrels, 211—216
Screw wheels, 61—67, 68—70
Searing of rough patterns, 235
Seating of valve, 278
Segments for bevel wheels, 31
spur-wheels, 17
Segment screws, 223
of teeth, 268
Set squares, 262

Shape of wheel-teeth, 6
Sheave-wheels, 141—149
Shop tools, 205—209
Shrouding of turbines, 272
  water-wheels, 267
  wheel-teeth, 58
Shellac varnish, 283
Side chisel for turning, 19
Skeleton patterns, 198—200
Skewers, 76, 103
Slide-valves, 133—138
Sluice-cocks, 260
Small brass work, 262
Sockets of pipes, table of, Appendix, 356
Soft soap, a lubricant, 152
Specific gravities, 173
Specialities, 201—205
Special tools, 205—209
Specialisation of work, 1, 308
Splitting of pulleys, 124
  wheels, 56
Sprocket-wheels, 149, 150
Spur-wheels, 9—28
Squares, table of, Appendix, 353
Square roots, table of, Appendix, 353
Stamping of patterns, 286
Standard of planing-machine, 239
Staples, 206
Steady for lathe, 152
Steam cylinders, 78—101
Step of turbine, 274
Stopping off, 196—198
Strainer for pipes, 259
Straps for lifting, 205
Strap pulleys, 120—124
Strength of wheel teeth, 59
Strickling tank-plates, 200
Striking-boards for barrels, 212—216
  bends of pipes, 161
  capstans, 190—192
  cylinders, 97—101
  flywheels, 115
  machine wheels, 42—51
Stripping plates, 333
Study, course of, 311
  and work, 313
Suction-box, 255
Surface-plate, how moulded, 195
Sweep for flywheel, 118

TABLE of planing machine, 241
  Tables of—
  diameters, areas, and circumferences, Appendix, 347
  decimal equivalents, Appendix, 357
  square and cube roots, Appendix, 353
  squares and cubes, Appendix, 353
  dimensions of pipe flanges, Appendix, 356
  dimensions of pipe sockets, Appendix, 356
  pitches and pitch diameters, Appendix, 358
  weights of solid cylinders, Appendix, 357
  weights of iron balls, Appendix, 357
Tank-plates, strickling of, 200
Taper—of engine beds, 103
  lathe beds, 188, 247
  patterns, 239 333
  pile screws, 225
  prints, 72
  mortises, 53
  wheel rims, 21
Tar in foundry, 161
Technical knowledge, need of, 311
Tee-pipes, 156
Teeth—of bevel-wheels, 29
  cycloidal, 7, 14
  mortice-wheels, 55
  spur-wheels, 22
  worm-wheels, 34, 38
  calculating strength of, 59

Teeth—involute, 10
  methods of working, 22, 23
  to match old wheels, 15
  working contact of, 6
Temperature of moulds, 77
Templets—for bevel-wheels, 31
  circles for wheels, 13
  pipe flanges, 154
  screws, 227
  sheave-wheels, 143
  worm-wheels, 37
Three-throw pumps, 255—258
Timber—for pattern-making, 4
  warping of, 17, 152
Top prints, 74
Toothed blocks for machine use, 40, 48, 52, 62, 65
Toothed segment, 268
Tools—for pattern-making, 2
  shop use, 205—209
  turning, 19
Trammels, 268
Trimmer, 303—304
Truck centre for crane, 200
Turbine buckets, 270
  core-boxes for, 271, 272
  discs, 272
  guides, 272
  step, 274
Turn-over boards, 315—319
Turning, allowances for, 280
  bends of pipes, 157
  between centres, 206
  cylinders, 81
  hints on, 18—20
  pipes, 151
  rim of bevel-wheel, 31
  steady for, 152
  tools for, 19
Twist wheels, 68—70
Typical forms of core-prints, 71

UNDERCUT edges—on broken castings, 284
Undercut edges on columns, 171
Useful studies, 311

VALVE—globe, 263, 264
  safety, 278
  seatings, 278
  slide, 133—138
Variety in pattern work, 189, 309
Varnish—application of, 283
  as a cement, 281
  in metal patterns, 125, 285
  to make, 283
  use of, 284
Vee-strips, 188, 190, 199, 238, 247
Venting of cores and moulds, 77
Versed sine, 269
Vertical boilers, parts for, 279

WALL drill, 242
  Warping of timber, 17
Water-wheels, 265—269
Wave wheels, 147—149
Wedging of cogs, 55, 56
Weight of cast-iron balls, table of, Appendix, 356
Weight of cast-iron cylinders, table of, Appendix, 357
Weights of castings, to estimate, 172—178
Wheels—angle, 68—70
  broken to mould from, 285
  diameters, &c., table of, Appendix, 358
  arms of, 15, 24, 32
  bevel, 29—33, 40, 45—51
  bosses of, 16, 41, 47, 129, 150, 196
  chain, 141—147
  designing of, 7—14
  fly, 114, 119
  helical, 61—67
  machine, 39—52

Wheels—machines, the change they have effected, 39
  mortise, 53—58
  rims of, 21
  sheave, 141—149
  sprocket, 150
  spur, 9—28, 40—45
  teeth of, 7—15, 22—24, 29, 34, 38, 41, 49, 52, 58, 62, 67, 70
  water, 265—269
  wave, 147—149
Willis's Odontograph, 8
Wooden dowels, 202
Wooden pegs, 32
Woolwich Arsenal, 309
Workshop notes, 280—289
Worms, 34—37
Worm-wheels, 34—38, 51, 52
Worn castings, to mould from, 284
Wrought-iron arms, 118, 129, 143
  eyes, 75
  sprockets, 150

YELLOW pine for patterns, 4
  metal for name-plates, 281

LIBRARY THE TY

THE END.

PRINTED BY H. VIRTUE AND COMPANY, LIMITED, CITY ROAD, LONDON.

STATIONERS' HALL COURT, LONDON, E.C.

CROSBY LOCKWOOD & SON'S
Catalogue of
Scientific, Technical and Industrial Books.

	PAGE		PAGE
MECHANICAL ENGINEERING	1	CARPENTRY & TIMBER	28
CIVIL ENGINEERING	10	DECORATIVE ARTS	30
MARINE ENGINEERING, &c.	17	NATURAL SCIENCE	32
MINING & METALLURGY	19	CHEMICAL MANUFACTURES	34
COLLIERY WORKING, &c.	21	INDUSTRIAL ARTS	36
ELECTRICITY	23	COMMERCE, TABLES, &c.	41
ARCHITECTURE & BUILDING	25	AGRICULTURE & GARDENING	43
SANITATION & WATER SUPPLY	27	AUCTIONEERING, VALUING, &c.	46

LAW & MISCELLANEOUS . . . 47

MECHANICAL ENGINEERING, &c.

THE MECHANICAL ENGINEER'S POCKET-BOOK.

Comprising Tables, Formulæ, Rules, and Data: A Handy Book of Reference for Daily Use in Engineering Practice. By D. KINNEAR CLARK, M. Inst. C.E., Fourth Edition. Small 8vo, 700 pp., bound in flexible Leather Cover, rounded corners **6/0**

SUMMARY OF CONTENTS:—MATHEMATICAL TABLES.—MEASUREMENT OF SURFACES AND SOLIDS.—ENGLISH AND FOREIGN WEIGHTS AND MEASURES.—MONEYS.—SPECIFIC GRAVITY, WEIGHT, AND VOLUME.—MANUFACTURED METALS.—STEEL PIPES.—BOLTS AND NUTS.—SUNDRY ARTICLES IN WROUGHT AND CAST IRON, COPPER, BRASS, LEAD, TIN, ZINC.—STRENGTH OF TIMBER.—STRENGTH OF CAST IRON.—STRENGTH OF WROUGHT IRON.—STRENGTH OF STEEL.—TENSILE STRENGTH OF COPPER, LEAD, &c.—RESISTANCE OF STONES AND OTHER BUILDING MATERIALS.—RIVETED JOINTS IN BOILER PLATES.—BOILER SHELLS.—WIRE ROPES AND HEMP ROPES.—CHAINS AND CHAIN CABLES.—FRAMING.—HARDNESS OF METALS, ALLOYS, AND STONES.—LABOUR OF ANIMALS.—MECHANICAL PRINCIPLES.—GRAVITY AND FALL OF BODIES.—ACCELERATING AND RETARDING FORCES.—MILL GEARING, SHAFTING, &c.—TRANSMISSION OF MOTIVE POWER.—HEAT.—COMBUSTION: FUELS.—WARMING, VENTILATION, COOKING STOVES.—STEAM.—STEAM ENGINES AND BOILERS.—RAILWAYS.—TRAMWAYS.—STEAM SHIPS.—PUMPING STEAM ENGINES AND PUMPS.—COAL GAS, GAS ENGINES, &c.—AIR IN MOTION.—COMPRESSED AIR.—HOT AIR ENGINES.—WATER POWER.—SPEED OF CUTTING TOOLS.—COLOURS.—ELECTRICAL ENGINEERING.

"Mr. Clark manifests what is an innate perception of what is likely to be useful in a pocket-book, and he is really unrivalled in the art of condensation. It is very difficult to hit upon any mechanical engineering subject concerning which this work supplies no information, and the excellent index at the end adds to its utility. In one word, it is an exceedingly handy and efficient tool, possessed of which the engineer will be saved many a wearisome calculation, or yet more wearisome hunt through various text-books and treatises, and, as such, we can heartily recommend it to our readers."—*The Engineer.*

"It would be found difficult to compress more matter within a similar compass, or produce a book of 650 pages which should be more compact or convenient for pocket reference. . . . Will be appreciated by mechanical engineers of all classes."—*Practical Engineer.*

MR. HUTTON'S PRACTICAL HANDBOOKS

THE WORKS' MANAGER'S HANDBOOK.

Comprising Modern Rules, Tables, and Data. For Engineers, Millwrights, and Boiler Makers; Tool Makers, Machinists, and Metal Workers; Iron and Brass Founders, &c. By W. S. HUTTON, Civil and Mechanical Engineer, Author of "The Practical Engineer's Handbook." Sixth Edition, carefully Revised, with Additions. In One handsome Volume, medium 8vo, strongly bound. [*Just Published.* **15/0**

☞ *The Author having compiled Rules and Data for his own use in a great variety of modern engineering work, and having found his notes extremely useful, decided to publish them—revised to date—believing that a practical work, suited to the* DAILY REQUIREMENTS OF MODERN ENGINEERS, *would be favourably received.*

"Of this edition we may repeat the appreciative remarks we made upon the first and third Since the appearance of the latter very considerable modifications have been made, although the total number of pages remains almost the same. It is a very useful collection of rules, tables, and workshop and drawing office data."—*The Engineer*, May 10, 1895.

"The author treats every subject from the point of view of one who has collected workshop notes for application in workshop practice, rather than from the theoretical or literary aspect. The volume contains a great deal of that kind of information which is gained only by practical experience, and is seldom written in books."—*The Engineer*, June 5, 1885.

"The volume is an exceedingly useful one, brimful with engineer's notes, memoranda, and rules, and well worthy of being on every mechanical engineer's bookshelf."—*Mechanical World.*

"The information is precisely that likely to be required in practice. . . . The work forms a desirable addition to the library not only of the works' manager, but of any one connected with general engineering."—*Mining Journal.*

"Brimful of useful information, stated in a concise form, Mr. Hutton's books have met a pressing want among engineers. The book must prove extremely useful to every practical man possessing a copy."—*Practical Engineer.*

THE PRACTICAL ENGINEER'S HANDBOOK.

Comprising a Treatise on Modern Engines and Boilers, Marine, Locomotive, and Stationary. And containing a large collection of Rules and Practical Data relating to Recent Practice in Designing and Constructing all kinds of Engines, Boilers, and other Engineering work. The whole constituting a comprehensive Key to the Board of Trade and other Examinations for Certificates of Competency in Modern Mechanical Engineering. By WALTER S. HUTTON, Civil and Mechanical Engineer, Author of "The Works' Manager's Handbook for Engineers," &c. With upwards of 370 Illustrations. Fifth Edition, Revised with Additions. Medium 8vo, nearly 500 pp., strongly bound. [*Just Published.* **18/0**

☞ *This Work is designed as a companion to the Author's* "WORKS' MANAGER'S HANDBOOK." *It possesses many new and original features, and contains, like its predecessor, a quantity of matter not originally intended for publication but collected by the Author for his own use in the construction of a great variety of* MODERN ENGINEERING WORK.

The information is given in a condensed and concise form, and is illustrated by upwards of 370 Woodcuts; and comprises a quantity of tabulated matter of great value to all engaged in designing, constructing, or estimating for ENGINES, BOILERS, *and* OTHER ENGINEERING WORK.

"We have kept it at hand for several weeks, referring to it as occasion arose, and we have not on a single occasion consulted its pages without finding the information of which we were in quest." —*Athenæum.*

"A thoroughly good practical handbook, which no engineer can go through without learning something that will be of service to him."—*Marine Engineer.*

"An excellent book of reference for engineers, and a valuable text-book for students of engineering."—*Scotsman.*

"This valuable manual embodies the results and experience of the leading authorities on mechanical engineering."—*Building News.*

"The author has collected together a surprising quantity of rules and practical data, and has shown much judgment in the selections he has made. . . . There is no doubt that this book is one of the most useful of its kind published, and will be a very popular compendium."—*Engineer.*

"A mass of information set down in simple language, and in such a form that it can be easily referred to at any time. The matter is uniformly good and well chosen, and is greatly elucidated by the illustrations. The book will find its way on to most engineers' shelves, where it will rank as one of the most useful books of reference."—*Practical Engineer.*

"Full of useful information, and should be found on the office shelf of all practical engineers." —*English Mechanic.*

MR. HUTTON'S PRACTICAL HANDBOOKS—*continued.*

STEAM BOILER CONSTRUCTION.

A Practical Handbook for Engineers, Boiler-Makers, and Steam Users. Containing a large Collection of Rules and Data relating to Recent Practice in the Design, Construction, and Working of all Kinds of Stationary, Locomotive, and Marine Steam-Boilers. By WALTER S. HUTTON, Civil and Mechanical Engineer, Author of "The Works' Manager's Handbook," "The Practical Engineer's Handbook," &c. With upwards of 500 Illustrations. Third Edition, Revised and much Enlarged, medium 8vo, cloth . . **18/0**

☞ THIS WORK *is issued in continuation of the Series of Handbooks written by the Author, viz.:*—"THE WORKS' MANAGER'S HANDBOOK" *and* "THE PRACTICAL ENGINEER'S HANDBOOK," *which are so highly appreciated by engineers for the practical nature of their information; and is consequently written in the same style as those works.*

The Author believes that the concentration, in a convenient form for easy reference, of such a large amount of thoroughly practical information on Steam-Boilers, will be of considerable service to those for whom it is intended, and he trusts the book may be deemed worthy of as favourable a reception as has been accorded to its predecessors.

"One of the best, if not the best, books on boilers that has ever been published. The information is of the right kind, in a simple and accessible form. So far as generation is concerned, this is, undoubtedly, the standard book on steam practice."—*Electrical Review.*

"Every detail, both in boiler design and management, is clearly laid before the reader. The volume shows that boiler construction has been reduced to the condition of one of the most exact sciences; and such a book is of the utmost value to the *fin de siècle* Engineer and Works Manager."—*Marine Engineer.*

"There has long been room for a modern handbook on steam boilers; there is not that room now, because Mr. Hutton has filled it. It is a thoroughly practical book for those who are occupied in the construction, design, selection, or use of boilers."—*Engineer.*

"The book is of so important and comprehensive a character that it must find its way into the libraries of every one interested in boiler using or boiler manufacture if they wish to be thoroughly informed. We strongly recommend the book for the intrinsic value of its contents."—*Machinery Market.*

PRACTICAL MECHANICS' WORKSHOP COMPANION.

Comprising a great variety of the most useful Rules and Formulæ in Mechanical Science, with numerous Tables of Practical Data and Calculated Results for Facilitating Mechanical Operations. By WILLIAM TEMPLETON, Author of "The Engineer's Practical Assistant," &c., &c. Eighteenth Edition, Revised, Modernised, and considerably Enlarged by WALTER S. HUTTON, C.E., Author of "The Works' Manager's Handbook," "The Practical Engineer's Handbook," &c. Fcap. 8vo, nearly 500 pp., with 8 Plates and upwards of 250 Illustrative Diagrams, strongly bound for workshop or pocket wear and tear. **6/0**

"In its modernised form Hutton's 'Templeton' should have a wide sale, for it contains much valuable information which the mechanic will often find of use, and not a few tables and notes which he might look for in vain in other works. This modernised edition will be appreciated by all who have learned to value the original editions of 'Templeton.'"—*English Mechanic.*

"It has met with great success in the engineering workshop, as we can testify; and there are a great many men who, in a great measure, owe their rise in life to this little book."—*Building News.*

"This familiar text-book—well known to all mechanics and engineers—is of essential service to the every-day requirements of engineers, millwrights, and the various trades connected with engineering and building. The new modernised edition is worth its weight in gold."—*Building News.* (Second Notice.)

"This well-known and largely-used book contains information, brought up to date, of the sort so useful to the foreman and draughtsman. So much fresh information has been introduced as to constitute it practically a new book. It will be largely used in the office and workshop."—*Mechanical World.*

"The publishers wisely entrusted the task of revision of this popular, valuable, and useful book to Mr. Hutton, than whom a more competent man they could not have found."—*Iron.*

ENGINEER'S AND MILLWRIGHT'S ASSISTANT.

A Collection of Useful Tables, Rules, and Data. By WILLIAM TEMPLETON. Eighth Edition, with Additions. 18mo, cloth **2/6**

"Occupies a foremost place among books of this kind. A more suitable present to an apprentice to any of the mechanical trades could not possibly be made."—*Building News.*

A deservedly popular work. It should be in the 'drawer' of every mechanic."—*English Mechanic.*

THE MECHANICAL ENGINEER'S REFERENCE BOOK.

For Machine and Boiler Construction. In Two Parts. Part I. GENERAL ENGINEERING DATA. Part II. BOILER CONSTRUCTION. With 51 Plates and numerous Illustrations. By NELSON FOLEY, M.I.N.A. Second Edition, Revised throughout and much Enlarged. Folio, half-bound, net . **£3 3s.**

PART I.—MEASURES.—CIRCUMFERENCES AND AREAS, &c., SQUARES, CUBES, FOURTH POWERS.—SQUARE AND CUBE ROOTS.—SURFACE OF TUBES.—RECIPROCALS.—LOGARITHMS.—MENSURATION.—SPECIFIC GRAVITIES AND WEIGHTS.—WORK AND POWER.—HEAT.—COMBUSTION.—EXPANSION AND CONTRACTION.—EXPANSION OF GASES.—STEAM.—STATIC FORCES.—GRAVITATION AND ATTRACTION.—MOTION AND COMPUTATION OF RESULTING FORCES.—ACCUMULATED WORK.—CENTRE AND RADIUS OF GYRATION.—MOMENT OF INERTIA.—CENTRE OF OSCILLATION.—ELECTRICITY.—STRENGTH OF MATERIALS.—ELASTICITY.—TEST SHEETS OF METALS.—FRICTION.—TRANSMISSION OF POWER.—FLOW OF LIQUIDS.—FLOW OF GASES.—AIR PUMPS, SURFACE CONDENSERS, &c.—SPEED OF STEAMSHIPS.—PROPELLERS.—CUTTING TOOLS.—FLANGES.—COPPER SHEETS AND TUBES.—SCREWS, NUTS, BOLT HEADS, &c.—VARIOUS RECIPES AND MISCELLANEOUS MATTER.—WITH DIAGRAMS FOR VALVE-GEAR, BELTING AND ROPES, DISCHARGE AND SUCTION PIPES, SCREW PROPELLERS, AND COPPER PIPES.

PART II.—TREATING OF POWER OF BOILERS.—USEFUL RATIOS.—NOTES ON CONSTRUCTION.—CYLINDRICAL BOILER SHELLS.—CIRCULAR FURNACES.—FLAT PLATES.—STAYS.—GIRDERS.—SCREWS.—HYDRAULIC TESTS.—RIVETING.—BOILER SETTING, CHIMNEYS, AND MOUNTINGS.—FUELS, &c.—EXAMPLES OF BOILERS AND SPEEDS OF STEAMSHIPS.—NOMINAL AND NORMAL HORSE POWER.—WITH DIAGRAMS FOR ALL BOILER CALCULATIONS AND DRAWINGS OF MANY VARIETIES OF BOILERS.

"Mr. Foley is well fitted to compile such a work. . . . The diagrams are a great feature of the work. . . . Regarding the whole work, it may be very fairly stated that Mr. Foley has produced a volume which will undoubtedly fulfil the desire of the author and become indispensable to all mechanical engineers."—*Marine Engineer.*

"We have carefully examined this work, and pronounce it a most excellent reference book for the use of marine engineers."—*Journal of American Society of Naval Engineers.*

COAL AND SPEED TABLES.

A Pocket Book for Engineers and Steam Users. By NELSON FOLEY, Author of "The Mechanical Engineer's Reference Book." Pocket-size, cloth . **3/6**

TEXT-BOOK ON THE STEAM ENGINE.

With a Supplement on GAS ENGINES, and PART II. on HEAT ENGINES. By T. M. GOODEVE, M.A., Barrister-at-Law, Professor of Mechanics at the Royal College of Science, London; Author of "The Principles of Mechanics," "The Elements of Mechanism," &c. Fourteenth Edition. Crown 8vo, cloth . **6/0**

"Professor Goodeve has given us a treatise on the steam engine which will bear comparison with anything written by Huxley or Maxwell, and we can award it no higher praise."—*Engineer.*

ON GAS ENGINES.

With Appendix describing a Recent Engine with Tube Igniter. By T. M. GOODEVE, M.A. Crown 8vo, cloth **2/6**

"Like all Mr. Goodeve's writings, the present is no exception in point of general excellence. It is a valuable little volume."—*Mechanical World.*

THE GAS-ENGINE HANDBOOK.

A Manual of Useful Information for the Designer and the Engineer. By E. W. ROBERTS, M.E. With Forty Full-page Engravings. Small Fcap. 8vo, leather. [*Just Published. Net* **8/6**

A TREATISE ON STEAM BOILERS.

Their Strength, Construction, and Economical Working. By R. WILSON, C.E. Fifth Edition. 12mo, cloth **6/0**

"The best treatise that has ever been published on steam boilers."—*Engineer.*

"The author shows himself perfect master of his subject, and we heartily recommend all employing steam power to possess themselves of the work."—*Ryland's Iron Trade Circular.*

THE MECHANICAL ENGINEER'S COMPANION

of Areas, Circumferences, Decimal Equivalents, in inches and feet, millimetres, squares, cubes, roots, &c.; Weights, Measures, and other Data. Also Practical Rules for Modern Engine Proportions. By R. EDWARDS, M.Inst.C.E. Fcap. 8vo, cloth. [*Just Published.* **3/6**

"A very useful little volume. It contains many tables, classified data and memoranda, generally useful to engineers."—*Engineer.*

"What it professes to be, 'a handy office companion,' giving in a succinct form, a variety of information likely to be required by engineers in their everyday office work."—*Nature.*

A HANDBOOK ON THE STEAM ENGINE.

With especial Reference to Small and Medium-sized Engines. For the Use of Engine Makers, Mechanical Draughtsmen, Engineering Students, and users of Steam Power. By HERMAN HAEDER, C.E. Translated from the German with considerable additions and alterations, by H. H. P. POWLES, A.M.I.C.E., M.I.M.E. Second Edition, Revised. With nearly 1,100 Illustrations. Crown 8vo, cloth **9/0**

"A perfect encyclopædia of the steam engine and its details, and one which must take a permanent place in English drawing-offices and workshops."—*A Foreman Pattern-maker.*

"This is an excellent book, and should be in the hands of all who are interested in the construction and design of medium-sized stationary engines. . . . A careful study of its contents and the arrangement of the sections leads to the conclusion that there is probably no other book like it in this country. The volume aims at showing the results of practical experience, and it certainly may claim a complete achievement of this idea."—*Nature.*

"There can be no question as to its value. We cordially commend it to all concerned in the design and construction of the steam engine."—*Mechanical World.*

BOILER AND FACTORY CHIMNEYS.

Their Draught-Power and Stability. With a chapter on *Lightning Conductors.* By ROBERT WILSON, A.I.C.E., Author of "A Treatise on Steam Boilers," &c. Crown 8vo, cloth **3/6**

"A valuable contribution to the literature of scientific building."—*The Builder.*

BOILER MAKER'S READY RECKONER & ASSISTANT.

With Examples of Practical Geometry and Templating, for the Use of Platers, Smiths, and Riveters. By JOHN COURTNEY, Edited by D. K. CLARK, M.I.C.E. Third Edition, 480 pp., with 140 Illustrations. Fcap. 8vo . **7/0**

"No workman or apprentice should be without this book."—*Iron Trade Circular.*

REFRIGERATING & ICE-MAKING MACHINERY.

A Descriptive Treatise for the Use of Persons Employing Refrigerating and Ice-Making Installations, and others. By A. J. WALLIS-TAYLER, A.-M. Inst. C.E. Second Edition, Revised and Enlarged. With Illustrations. Crown 8vo, cloth. [*Just Published.* **7/6**

"Practical, explicit, and profusely illustrated."—*Glasgow Herald.*

"We recommend the book, which gives the cost of various systems and illustrations showing details of parts of machinery and general arrangements of complete installations."—*Builder.*

"May be recommended as a useful description of the machinery, the processes, and of the facts, figures, and tabulated physics of refrigerating. It is one of the best compilations on the subject."—*Engineer.*

TEA MACHINERY AND TEA FACTORIES.

A Descriptive Treatise on the Mechanical Appliances required in the Cultivation of the Tea Plant and the Preparation of Tea for the Market. By A. J. WALLIS-TAYLER, A.-M. Inst. C.E. Medium 8vo, 468 pp. With 218 Illustrations. [*Just Published. Net* **25/0**

SUMMARY OF CONTENTS:—MECHANICAL CULTIVATION OR TILLAGE OF THE SOIL.—PLUCKING OR GATHERING THE LEAF.—TEA FACTORIES.—THE DRESSING, MANUFACTURE OR PREPARATION OF TEA BY MECHANICAL MEANS.—ARTIFICIAL WITHERING OF THE LEAF.—MACHINES FOR ROLLING OR CURLING THE LEAF.—FERMENTING PROCESS.—MACHINES FOR THE AUTOMATIC DRYING OR FIRING OF THE LEAF.—MACHINES FOR NON-AUTOMATIC DRYING OR FIRING OF THE LEAF.—DRYING OR FIRING MACHINES.—BREAKING OR CUTTING, AND SORTING MACHINES.—PACKING THE TEA.—MEANS OF TRANSPORT ON TEA PLANTATIONS.—MISCELLANEOUS MACHINERY AND APPARATUS.—FINAL TREATMENT OF THE TEA.—TABLES AND MEMORANDA.

"The subject of tea machinery is now one of the first interest to a large class of people, to whom we strongly commend the volume."—*Chamber of Commerce Journal.*

"When tea planting was first introduced into the British possessions little, if any, machinery was employed, but now its use is almost universal. This volume contains a very full account of the machinery necessary for the proper outfit of a factory, and also a description of the processes best carried out by this machinery."—*Journal Society of Arts.*

ENGINEERING ESTIMATES, COSTS, AND ACCOUNTS.

A Guide to Commercial Engineering. With numerous examples of Estimates and Costs of Millwright Work, Miscellaneous Productions, Steam Engines and Steam Boilers; and a Section on the Preparation of Costs Accounts. By A GENERAL MANAGER. Second Edition. 8vo, cloth. [*Just Published.* **12/0**

"This is an excellent and very useful book, covering subject-matter in constant requisition in every factory and workshop. . . . The book is invaluable, not only to the young engineer, but also to the estimate department of every works."—*Builder.*

"We accord the work unqualified praise. The information is given in a plain, straightforward manner, and bears throughout evidence of the intimate practical acquaintance of the author with every phase of commercial engineering."—*Mechanical World.*

AERIAL OR WIRE-ROPE TRAMWAYS.

Their Construction and Management. By A. J. WALLIS-TAYLER, A.M.Inst.C.E. With 81 Illustrations. Crown 8vo, cloth. [*Just Published.* **7/6**

"This is in its way an excellent volume. Without going into the minutiæ of the subject, it yet lays before its readers a very good exposition of the various systems of rope transmission in use, and gives as well not a little valuable information about their working, repair, and management. We can safely recommend it as a useful general treatise on the subject."—*The Engineer.*

"Mr. Tayler has treated the subject as concisely as thoroughness would permit. The book will rank with the best on this useful topic, and we recommend it to those whose business is the transporting of minerals and goods."—*Mining Journal.*

MOTOR CARS OR POWER-CARRIAGES FOR COMMON ROADS.

By A. J. WALLIS-TAYLER, Assoc. Memb. Inst. C.E., Author of "Modern Cycles," &c. 212 pp., with 76 Illustrations. Crown 8vo, cloth . . **4/6**

"Mr. Wallis-Tayler's book is a welcome addition to the literature of the subject, as it is the production of an Engineer, and has not been written with a view to assist in the promotion of companies. . . . The book is clearly expressed throughout, and is just the sort of work that an engineer, thinking of turning his attention to motor-carriage work, would do well to read as a preliminary to starting operations."—*Engineering.*

PLATING AND BOILER MAKING.

A Practical Handbook for Workshop Operations. By JOSEPH G. HORNER, A.M.I.M.E. 380 pp. with 338 Illustrations. Crown 8vo, cloth . . **7/6**

"The latest production from the pen of this writer is characterised by that evidence of close acquaintance with workshop methods which will render the book exceedingly acceptable to the practical hand. We have no hesitation in commending the work as a serviceable and practical handbook on a subject which has not hitherto received much attention from those qualified to deal with it in a satisfactory manner."—*Mechanical World.*

PATTERN MAKING.

A Practical Treatise, embracing the Main Types of Engineering Construction, and including Gearing, both Hand and Machine-made, Engine Work, Sheaves and Pulleys, Pipes and Columns, Screws, Machine Parts, Pumps and Cocks, the Moulding of Patterns in Loam and Greensand, &c., together with the methods of estimating the weight of Castings; with an Appendix of Tables for Workshop Reference. By JOSEPH G. HORNER, A.M.I.M.E. Second Edition, Enlarged. With 450 Illustrations. Crown 8vo, cloth **7/6**

"A well-written technical guide, evidently written by a man who understands and has practised what he has written about. . . . We cordially recommend it to engineering students, young journeymen, and others desirous of being initiated into the mysteries of pattern-making."—*Builder.*

"An excellent *vade mecum* for the apprentice who desires to become master of his trade." —*English Mechanic.*

MECHANICAL ENGINEERING TERMS

(Lockwood's Dictionary of). Embracing those current in the Drawing Office, Pattern Shop, Foundry, Fitting, Turning, Smiths', and Boiler Shops, &c., &c. Comprising upwards of 6,000 Definitions. Edited by JOSEPH G. HORNER, A.M.I.M.E. Second Edition, Revised, with Additions. Crown 8vo, cloth **7/6**

"Just the sort of handy dictionary required by the various trades engaged in mechanical engineering. The practical engineering pupil will find the book of great value in his studies, and every foreman engineer and mechanic should have a copy."—*Building News.*

TOOTHED GEARING.

A Practical Handbook for Offices and Workshops. By JOSEPH HORNER, A.M.I.M.E. With 184 Illustrations. Crown 8vo, cloth . . . **6/0**

"We must give the book our unqualified praise for its thoroughness of treatment, and we can heartily recommend it to all interested as the most practical book on the subject yet written."—*Mechanical World.*

FIRE PROTECTION.

A Complete Manual of the Organisation, Machinery, Discipline and General Working of the Fire Brigade of London. By CAPTAIN EYRE M. SHAW, C.B., Chief Officer, Metropolitan Fire Brigade New and Revised Edition, Demy 8vo, cloth. . . . . *Net* **5/0**

FIRES, FIRE-ENGINES, AND FIRE BRIGADES.

With a History of Fire-Engines, their Construction, Use, and Management; Foreign Fire Systems; Hints on Fire-Brigades, &c. By CHARLES F. T. YOUNG, C.E. 8vo, cloth . . . . **£1 4s.**

"To such of our readers as are interested in the subject of fires and fire apparatus we can most heartily commend this book."—*Engineering.*

STONE-WORKING MACHINERY.

A Manual dealing with the Rapid and Economical Conversion of Stone. With Hints on the Arrangement and Management of Stone Works. By M. Powis Bale, M.I.M.E. Second Edition, enlarged. With Illustrations. Crown 8vo, cloth. [*Just Published.* **9/0**

"The book should be in the hands of every mason or student of stonework."—*Colliery Guardian.*

"A capital handbook for all who manipulate stone for building or ornamental purposes."—*Machinery Market.*

PUMPS AND PUMPING.

A Handbook for Pump Users. Being Notes on Selection, Construction, and Management. By M. Powis Bale, M.I.M.E. Fourth Edition. Crown 8vo, cloth. [*Just Published.* **3/6**

"The matter is set forth as concisely as possible. In fact, condensation rather than diffuseness has been the author's aim throughout; yet he does not seem to have omitted anything likely to be of use."—*Journal of Gas Lighting.*

"Thoroughly practical and simply and clearly written."—*Glasgow Herald.*

MILLING MACHINES AND PROCESSES.

A Practical Treatise on Shaping Metals by Rotary Cutters. Including Information on Making and Grinding the Cutters. By Paul N. Hasluck, Author of "Lathe-Work." 352 pp. With upwards of 300 Engravings. Large crown 8vo, cloth **12/6**

"A new departure in engineering literature. . . . We can recommend this work to all interested in milling machines; it is what it professes to be—a practical treatise."—*Engineer.*

"A capital and reliable book which will no doubt be of considerable service both to those who are already acquainted with the process as well as to those who contemplate its adoption."—*Industries.*

LATHE-WORK.

A Practical Treatise on the Tools, Appliances, and Processes employed in the Art of Turning. By Paul N. Hasluck. Seventh Edition. Crown 8vo, cloth. [*Just Published.* **5/0**

"Written by a man who knows not only how work ought to be done, but who also knows how to do it, and how to convey his knowledge to others. To all turners this book would be valuable."—*Engineering.*

"We can safely recommend the work to young engineers. To the amateur it will simply be invaluable. To the student it will convey a great deal of useful information."—*Engineer.*

SCREW-THREADS,

And Methods of Producing Them. With numerous Tables and complete Directions for using Screw-Cutting Lathes. By Paul N. Hasluck, Author of "Lathe-Work," &c. With Seventy-four Illustrations. Fifth Edition. Waistcoat-pocket size **1/6**

"Full of useful information, hints and practical criticism. Taps, dies, and screwing tools generally are illustrated and their actions described."—*Mechanical World.*

"It is a complete compendium of all the details of the screw-cutting lathe; in fact a *multum-in-parvo* on all the subjects it treats upon."—*Carpenter and Builder.*

TABLES AND MEMORANDA FOR ENGINEERS, MECHANICS, ARCHITECTS, BUILDERS, &c.

Selected and Arranged by Francis Smith. Sixth Edition, Revised, including Electrical Tables, Formulæ, and Memoranda. Waistcoat-pocket size, limp leather. [*Just Published.* **1/6**

"It would, perhaps, be as difficult to make a small pocket-book selection of notes and formulæ to suit ALL engineers as it would be to make a universal medicine; but Mr. Smith's waistcoat-pocket collection may be looked upon as a successful attempt."—*Engineer.*

"The best example we have ever seen of 270 pages of useful matter packed into the dimensions of a card-case."—*Building News.* "A veritable pocket treasury of knowledge."—*Iron.*

POCKET GLOSSARY OF TECHNICAL TERMS.

English-French, French-English; with Tables suitable for the Architectural, Engineering, Manufacturing, and Nautical Professions. By John James Fletcher, Engineer and Surveyor. Third Edition, 200 pp. Waistcoat-pocket size, limp leather. [*Just Published.* **1/6**

"It is a very great advantage for readers and correspondents in France and England to have so large a number of the words relating to engineering and manufacturers collected in a lilliputian volume. The little book will be useful both to students and travellers."—*Architect.*

"The glossary of terms is very complete, and many of the Tables are new and well arranged. We cordially commend the book."—*Mechanical World.*

THE ENGINEER'S YEAR BOOK FOR 1901.

Comprising Formulæ, Rules, Tables, Data and Memoranda in Civil, Mechanical, Electrical, Marine and Mine Engineering. By H. R. Kempe, A.M. Inst. C.E., M.I.E.E., Technical Officer of the Engineer-in-Chief's Office, General Post Office, London, Author of "A Handbook of Electrical Testing," "The Electrical Engineer's Pocket-Book," &c. With about 1,000 Illustrations, specially Engraved for the work. Crown 8vo, 800 pp., leather. [*Just Published.* **8/0**

"Represents an enormous quantity of work, and forms a desirable book of reference."—*The Engineer.*

"The volume is distinctly in advance of most similar publications in this country."—*Engineering.*

"This valuable and well-designed book of reference meets the demands of all descriptions of engineers."—*Saturday Review.*

"Teems with up-to-date information in every branch of engineering and construction."—*Building News.*

"The needs of the engineering profession could hardly be supplied in a more admirable, complete and convenient form. To say that it more than sustains all comparisons is praise of the highest sort, and that may justly be said of it."—*Mining Journal.*

"There is certainly room for the newcomer, which supplies explanations and directions, as well as formulæ and tables. It deserves to become one of the most successful of the technical annuals."—*Architect.*

"Brings together with great skill all the technical information which an engineer has to use day by day. It is in every way admirably equipped, and is sure to prove successful."—*Scotsman.*

"The up-to-dateness of Mr. Kempe's compilation is a quality that will not be lost on the busy people for whom the work is intended."—*Glasgow Herald.*

THE PORTABLE ENGINE.

A Practical Manual on its Construction and Management. For the use of Owners and Users of Steam Engines generally. By William Dyson Wansbrough. Crown 8vo, cloth **3/6**

"This is a work of value to those who use steam machinery. . . . Should be read by every one who has a steam engine, on a farm or elsewhere."—*Mark Lane Express.*

"We cordially commend this work to buyers and owners of steam-engines, and to those who have to do with their construction or use."—*Timber Trades Journal.*

"Such a general knowledge of the steam-engine as Mr. Wansbrough furnishes to the reader should be acquired by all intelligent owners and others who use the steam-engine."—*Building News.*

"An excellent text-book of this useful form of engine. The 'Hints to Purchasers' contain a good deal of common-sense and practical wisdom."—*English Mechanic.*

IRON AND STEEL.

A Work for the Forge, Foundry, Factory, and Office. Containing ready, useful, and trustworthy Information for Ironmasters and their Stock-takers; Managers of Bar, Rail, Plate, and Sheet Rolling Mills; Iron and Metal Founders; Iron Ship and Bridge Builders; Mechanical, Mining, and Consulting Engineers; Architects, Contractors, Builders, &c. By Charles Hoare, Author of "The Slide Rule," &c. Ninth Edition. 32mo, leather . **6/0**

"For comprehensiveness the book has not its equal."—*Iron.*

"One of the best of the pocket books."—*English Mechanic.*

CONDENSED MECHANICS.

A Selection of Formulæ, Rules, Tables, and Data for the Use of Engineering Students, Science Classes, &c. In accordance with the Requirements of the Science and Art Department. By W. G. Crawford Hughes, A.M.I.C.E. Crown 8vo, cloth **2/6**

"The book is well fitted for those who are either confronted with practical problems in their work, or are preparing for examination and wish to refresh their knowledge by going through their formulæ again."—*Marine Engineer.*

"It is well arranged, and meets the wants of those for whom it is intended."—*Railway News.*

THE SAFE USE OF STEAM.

Containing Rules for Unprofessional Steam Users. By an Engineer. Seventh Edition. Sewed . . . . **6d.**

"If steam-users would but learn this little book by heart, boiler explosions would become sensations by their rarity."—*English Mechanic.*

THE LOCOMOTIVE ENGINE.

The Autobiography of an Old Locomotive Engine. By ROBERT WEATHERBURN, M.I.M.E. With Illustrations and Portraits of GEORGE and ROBERT STEPHENSON. Crown 8vo, cloth. [*Just Published. Net* **2/6**

SUMMARY OF CONTENTS:—PROLOGUE.—CYLINDERS.—MOTIONS.—CONNECTING RODS.—FRAMES.—WHEELS.—PUMPS, CLACKS, &c.—INJECTORS.—BOILERS.—SMOKE BOX.—CHIMNEY.—WEATHER BOARD AND AWNING.—INTERNAL DISSENSIONS.—ENGINE DRIVERS, &c.

"It would be difficult to imagine anything more ingeniously planned, more cleverly worked out, and more charmingly written. Readers cannot fail to find the volume most enjoyable."—*Glasgow Herald.*

THE LOCOMOTIVE ENGINE AND ITS DEVELOPMENT.

A Popular Treatise on the Gradual Improvements made in Railway Engines between 1803 and 1896. By CLEMENT E. STRETTON, C.E. Fifth Edition, Enlarged. With 120 Illustrations. Crown 8vo, cloth. [*Just Published.* **3/6**

"Students of railway history and all who are interested in the evolution of the modern locomotive will find much to attract and entertain in this volume."—*The Times.*

LOCOMOTIVE ENGINE DRIVING.

A Practical Manual for Engineers in Charge of Locomotive Engines. By MICHAEL REYNOLDS, Member of the Society of Engineers, formerly Locomotive Inspector, L. B. & S. C. R. Ninth Edition. Including a KEY TO THE LOCOMOTIVE ENGINE. Crown 8vo, cloth **4/6**

"Mr. Reynolds has supplied a want, and has supplied it well. We can confidently recommend the book not only to the practical driver, but to everyone who takes an interest in the performance of locomotive engines."—*The Engineer.*

"Mr. Reynolds has opened a new chapter in the literature of the day. His treatise is admirable."—*Athenæum.*

THE MODEL LOCOMOTIVE ENGINEER,

Fireman, and Engine-Boy. Comprising a Historical Notice of the Pioneer Locomotive Engines and their Inventors. By MICHAEL REYNOLDS. Second Edition, with Revised Appendix. Crown 8vo, cloth. [*Just Published.* **4/6**

"From the technical knowledge of the author, it will appeal to the railway man of to-day more forcibly than anything written by Dr. Smiles. . . . The volume contains information of a technical kind, and facts that every driver should be familiar with."—*English Mechanic.*

"We should be glad to see this book in the possession of everyone in the kingdom who has ever laid, or is to lay, hands on a locomotive engine."—*Iron.*

CONTINUOUS RAILWAY BRAKES.

A Practical Treatise on the several Systems in Use in the United Kingdom: their Construction and Performance. With copious Illustrations and numerous Tables. By MICHAEL REYNOLDS. 8vo, cloth **9/0**

"A popular explanation of the different brakes. It will be of great assistance in forming public opinion, and will be studied with benefit by those who take an interest in the brake."—*English Mechanic*

STATIONARY ENGINE DRIVING.

A Practical Manual for Engineers in Charge of Stationary Engines. By MICHAEL REYNOLDS. Sixth Edition. Crown 8vo, cloth . . . **4/6**

"The author is thoroughly acquainted with his subjects, and his advice on the various points treated is clear and practical. . . . He has produced a manual which is an exceedingly useful one for the class for whom it is specially intended."—*Engineering.*

"Our author leaves no stone unturned. He is determined that his readers shall not only know something about the stationary engine, but all about it."—*Engineer.*

ENGINE-DRIVING LIFE.

Stirring Adventure and Incidents in the Lives of Locomotive Engine-Drivers. By MICHAEL REYNOLDS. Third Edition. Crown 8vo, cloth . **1/6**

"Perfectly fascinating. Wilkie Collins's most thrilling conceptions are thrown into the shade by true incidents, endless in their variety, related in every page."—*North British Mail.*

THE ENGINEMAN'S POCKET COMPANION,

And Practical Educator for Enginemen, Boiler Attendants, and Mechanics. By MICHAEL REYNOLDS. With 45 Illustrations and numerous Diagrams. Fourth Edition, Revised. Royal 18mo, strongly bound for pocket wear **3/6**

"This admirable work is well suited to accomplish its object, being the honest workmanship of a competent engineer."—*Glasgow Herald.*

CIVIL ENGINEERING, SURVEYING, &c.

LIGHT RAILWAYS FOR THE UNITED KINGDOM, INDIA, AND THE COLONIES.

A Practical Handbook setting forth the Principles on which Light Railways should be Constructed, Worked, and Financed; and detailing the Cost of Construction, Equipment, Revenue and Working Expenses of Local Railways already established in the above-mentioned countries, and in Belgium, France, Switzerland, &c. By J. C. Mackay, F.G.S., A.M. Inst. C.E. Illustrated with Plates and Diagrams. Medium 8vo, cloth. [*Just Published.* **15/0**

"Mr. Mackay's volume is clearly and concisely written, admirably arranged, and freely illustrated. The book is exactly what has been long wanted. We recommend it to all interested in the subject. It is sure to have a wide sale."—*Railway News.*

TUNNELLING.

A Practical Treatise. By Charles Prelini, C.E. With additions by Charles S. Hill, C.E. Including 150 Diagrams and Illustrations. Royal 8vo, cloth. [*Just Published. Net* **16/0**

PRACTICAL TUNNELLING.

Explaining in detail Setting-out the Works, Shaft-sinking, and Heading-driving, Ranging the Lines and Levelling underground, Sub-Excavating, Timbering and the Construction of the Brickwork of Tunnels, with the amount of Labour required for, and the Cost of, the various portions of the work. By Frederick W. Simms, M. Inst. C.E. Fourth Edition, Revised and Further Extended, including the most recent (1895) Examples of Sub-aqueous and other Tunnels, by D. Kinnear Clark, M. Inst. C.E. Imperial 8vo, with 34 Folding Plates and other Illustrations. Cloth. [*Just Published.* **£2 2s.**

"The present (1896) edition has been brought right up to date, and is thus rendered a work to which civil engineers generally should have ready access, and to which engineers who have construction work can hardly afford to be without, but which to the younger members of the profession is invaluable, as from its pages they can learn the state to which the science of tunnelling has attained."—*Railway News.*

"The estimation in which Mr. Simms's book has been held for many years cannot be more truly expressed than in the words of the late Prof. Rankine: 'The best source of information on the subject of tunnels is Mr. F. W. Simms's work on Practical Tunnelling.'"—*Architect.*

THE WATER SUPPLY OF TOWNS AND THE CONSTRUCTION OF WATER-WORKS.

A Practical Treatise for the Use of Engineers and Students of Engineering. By W. K. Burton, A.M. Inst. C.E., Professor of Sanitary Engineering in the Imperial University, Tokyo, Japan, and Consulting Engineer to the Tokyo Water-works. Second Edition, Revised and Extended. With numerous Plates and Illustrations. Super-royal 8vo, buckram. [*Just Published.* **25/0**

I. Introductory.—II. Different Qualities of Water.—III. Quantity of Water to be Provided.—IV. On Ascertaining whether a Proposed Source of Supply is Sufficient.—V. On Estimating the Storage Capacity Required to be Provided.—VI. Classification of Water-Works.—VII. Impounding Reservoirs.—VIII. Earthwork Dams.—IX. Masonry Dams.—X. The Purification of Water.—XI. Settling Reservoirs.—XII. Sand Filtration.—XIII. Purification of Water by Action of Iron, Softening of Water by Action of Lime, Natural Filtration.—XIV. Service or Clean Water Reservoirs—Water Towers—Stand Pipes.—XV. The Connection of Settling Reservoirs, Filter Beds and Service Reservoirs.—XVI. Pumping Machinery.—XVII. Flow of Water in Conduits—Pipes and Open Channels.—XVIII. Distribution Systems.—XIX. Special Provisions for the Extinction of Fire.—XX. Pipes for Water-Works.—XXI. Prevention of Waste of Water.—XXII. Various Applications used in Connection with Water-Works.

Appendix I. By Prof. John Milne, F.R.S.—Considerations concerning the Probable Effects of Earthquakes on Water-Works, and the Special Precautions to be taken in Earthquake Countries.

Appendix II. By John de Rijke, C.E.—On Sand Dunes and Dune Sand as a Source of Water Supply.

"The chapter upon filtration of water is very complete, and the details of construction well illustrated. . . . The work should be specially valuable to civil engineers engaged in work in Japan, but the interest is by no means confined to that locality."—*Engineer.*

"We congratulate the author upon the practical commonsense shown in the preparation of this work. . . . The plates and diagrams have evidently been prepared with great care, and cannot fail to be of great assistance to the student."—*Builder.*

"The whole art of water-works construction is dealt with in a clear and comprehensive fashion in this handsome volume. . . . Mr. Burton's practical treatise shows in all its sections the fruit of independent study and individual experience. It is largely based upon his own practice in the branch of engineering of which it treats."—*Saturday Review.*

THE WATER SUPPLY OF CITIES AND TOWNS.

By William Humber, A. M. Inst. C.E., and M. Inst M.E., Author of "Cast and Wrought Iron Bridge Construction," &c., &c. Illustrated with 50 Double Plates, 1 Single Plate, Coloured Frontispiece, and upwards of 250 Woodcuts, and containing 400 pp. of Text. Imp. 4to, elegantly and substantially half-bound in morocco . . . . *Net* **£6 6s.**

List of Contents.

I. HISTORICAL SKETCH OF SOME OF THE MEANS THAT HAVE BEEN ADOPTED FOR THE SUPPLY OF WATER TO CITIES AND TOWNS.—II. WATER AND THE FOREIGN MATTER USUALLY ASSOCIATED WITH IT.—III. RAINFALL AND EVAPORATION.—IV. SPRINGS AND THE WATER-BEARING FORMATIONS OF VARIOUS DISTRICTS.—V. MEASUREMENT AND ESTIMATION OF THE FLOW OF WATER.—VI. ON THE SELECTION OF THE SOURCE OF SUPPLY.—VII. WELLS.—VIII. RESERVOIRS.—IX. THE PURIFICATION OF WATER.—X. PUMPS.—XI. PUMPING MACHINERY.—XII. CONDUITS.—XIII. DISTRIBUTION OF WATER.—XIV. METERS, SERVICE PIPES, AND HOUSE FITTINGS.—XV. THE LAW OF ECONOMY OF WATER-WORKS.—XVI. CONSTANT AND INTERMITTENT SUPPLY.—XVII. DESCRIPTION OF PLATES.—APPENDICES, GIVING TABLES OF RATES OF SUPPLY, VELOCITIES, &c., &c., TOGETHER WITH SPECIFICATIONS OF SEVERAL WORKS ILLUSTRATED, AMONG WHICH WILL BE FOUND: ABERDEEN, BIDEFORD, CANTERBURY, DUNDEE, HALIFAX, LAMBETH, ROTHERHAM, DUBLIN, AND OTHERS.

"The most systematic and valuable work upon water supply hitherto produced in English, or in any other language. It is characterised almost throughout by an exhaustiveness much more distinctive of French and German than of English technical treatises."—*Engineer.*

RURAL WATER SUPPLY.

A Practical Handbook on the Supply of Water and Construction of Waterworks for small Country Districts. By Allan Greenwell, A.M.I.C.E., and W. T. Curry, A.M.I.C.E., F.G.S. With Illustrations. Second Edition, Revised. Crown 8vo, cloth. [*Just Published.* **5/0**

"We conscientiously recommend it as a very useful book for those concerned in obtaining water for small districts, giving a great deal of practical information in a small compass."—*Builder.*

"The volume contains valuable information upon all matters connected with water supply. . . . Full of details on points which are continually before water-works engineers."—*Nature.*

HYDRAULIC POWER ENGINEERING.

A Practical Manual on the Concentration and Transmission of Power by Hydraulic Machinery. By G. Croydon Marks, A.M. Inst. C.E. With nearly 200 Illustrations. 8vo, cloth. [*Just Published. Net* **9/0**

SUMMARY OF CONTENTS:—PRINCIPLES OF HYDRAULICS.—THE OBSERVED FLOW OF WATER.—HYDRAULIC PRESSURES, MATERIAL.—TEST LOAD PACKINGS FOR SLIDING SURFACES.—PIPE JOINTS.—CONTROLLING VALVES.—PLATFORM LIFTS.—WORKSHOP, FACTORY, AND DOCK CRANES.—HYDRAULIC ACCUMULATORS.—PRESSES.—SHEET METAL WORKING AND FORGING MACHINERY.—HYDRAULIC RIVETTERS.—HAND, POWER, AND STEAM PUMPS.—TURBINES.—IMPULSE AND RE-ACTION TURBINES.—DESIGN OF TURBINES.—WATER WHEELS.—HYDRAULIC ENGINES.—RECENT ACHIEVEMENTS.—TABLES.

"We have nothing but praise for this thoroughly valuable work. The author has succeeded in rendering his subject interesting as well as instructive."—*Practical Engineer.*

"Can be unhesitatingly recommended as a useful and up-to-date manual on hydraulic transmission and utilisation of power."—*Mechanical World.*

HYDRAULIC TABLES, CO-EFFICIENTS, & FORMULÆ.

For Finding the Discharge of Water from Orifices, Notches, Weirs, Pipes, and Rivers. With New Formulæ, Tables, and General Information on Rain-fall, Catchment-Basins, Drainage, Sewerage, Water Supply for Towns and Mill Power. By John Neville, Civil Engineer, M.R.I.A. Third Edition, revised, with additions. Numerous Illustrations. Crown 8vo, cloth . **14/0**

"It is, of all English books on the subject, the one nearest to completeness."—*Architect.*

HYDRAULIC MANUAL.

Consisting of Working Tables and Explanatory Text. Intended as a Guide in Hydraulic Calculations and Field Operations. By Lowis D'A. Jackson, Author of "Aid to Survey Practice," "Modern Metrology," &c. Fourth Edition, Enlarged. Large crown 8vo, cloth **16/0**

"The author has constructed a manual which may be accepted as a trustworthy guide to this branch of the engineer's profession."—*Engineering.*

WATER ENGINEERING.

A Practical Treatise on the Measurement, Storage, Conveyance, and Utilisation of Water for the Supply of Towns, for Mill Power, and for other Purposes. By C. Slagg, A. M. Inst. C.E. Second Edition. Crown 8vo, cloth . **7/6**

"As a small practical treatise on the water supply of towns, and on some applications of waterpower, the work is in many respects excellent."—*Engineering.*

THE RECLAMATION OF LAND FROM TIDAL WATERS.

A Handbook for Engineers, Landed Proprietors, and others interested in Works of Reclamation. By ALEXANDER BEAZELEY, M.Inst. C.E. With Illustrations. 8vo, cloth. [*Just Published. Net* **10/6**

"The book shows in a concise way what has to be done in reclaiming land from the sea, and the best way of doing it. The work contains a great deal of practical and useful information which cannot fail to be of service to engineers entrusted with the enclosure of salt marshes, and to land-owners intending to reclaim land from the sea."—*The Engineer.*

"The author has carried out his task efficiently and well, and his book contains a large amount of information of great service to engineers and others interested in works of reclamation."—*Nature.*

MASONRY DAMS FROM INCEPTION TO COMPLETION.

Including numerous Formulæ, Forms of Specification and Tender, Pocket Diagram of Forces, &c. For the use of Civil and Mining Engineers. By C. F. COURTNEY, M. Inst. C.E. 8vo, cloth. [*Just Published.* **9/0**

"The volume contains a good deal of valuable data, and furnishes the engineer with practical advice. The author deals with his subject from the inception to the finish. Many useful suggestions will be found in the remarks on site and position, location of dam, foundations and construction."—*Building News.*

RIVER BARS.

The Causes of their Formation, and their Treatment by "Induced Tidal Scour"; with a Description of the Successful Reduction by this Method of the Bar at Dublin. By I. J. MANN, Assist. Eng. to the Dublin Port and Docks Board. Royal 8vo, cloth **7/6**

"We recommend all interested in harbour works—and, indeed, those concerned in the improvements of rivers generally—to read Mr. Mann's interesting work."—*Engineer.*

TRAMWAYS: THEIR CONSTRUCTION AND WORKING.

Embracing a Comprehensive History of the System; with an exhaustive Analysis of the Various Modes of Traction, including Horse Power, Steam, Cable Traction, Electric Traction, &c.; a Description of the Varieties of Rolling Stock; and ample Details of Cost and Working Expenses. New Edition, Thoroughly Revised, and Including the Progress recently made in Tramway Construction, &c., &c. By D. KINNEAR CLARK, M. Inst. C.E. With 400 Illustrations. 8vo, 780 pp., buckram. [*Just Published.* **28/0**

"The new volume is one which will rank, among tramway engineers and those interested in tramway working, with the Author's world-famed book on railway machinery."—*The Engineer*

PRACTICAL SURVEYING.

A Text-Book for Students preparing for Examinations or for Survey-work in the Colonies. By GEORGE W. USILL, A.M.I.C.E. With 4 Plates and upwards of 330 Illustrations. Sixth Edition. Including Tables of Natural Sines, Tangents, Secants, &c. Crown 8vo, cloth **7/6**; or, on THIN PAPER, leather, gilt edges, for pocket use. **12/6**

"The best forms of instruments are described as to their construction, uses and modes of employment, and there are innumerable hints on work and equipment such as the author, in his experience as surveyor, draughtsman and teacher, has found necessary, and which the student in his inexperience will find most serviceable."—*Engineer.*

"The latest treatise in the English language on surveying, and we have no hesitation in saying that the student will find it a better guide than any of its predecessors. Deserves to be recognised as the first book which should be put in the hands of a pupil of Civil Engineering."—*Architect.*

SURVEYING WITH THE TACHEOMETER.

A practical Manual for the use of Civil and Military Engineers and Surveyors. Including two series of Tables specially computed for the Reduction of Readings in Sexagesimal and in Centesimal Degrees. By NEIL KENNEDY, M. Inst. C.E. With Diagrams and Plates. Demy 8vo, cloth. [*Just Published. Net* **10/6**

"The work is very clearly written, and should remove all difficulties in the way of any surveyor desirous of making use of this useful and rapid instrument."—*Nature.*

AID TO SURVEY PRACTICE.

For Reference in Surveying, Levelling, and Setting-out; and in Route Surveys of Travellers by Land and Sea. With Tables, Illustrations, and Records. By LOWIS D'A. JACKSON, A.M.I.C.E. 8vo, cloth **12/6**

"A valuable *vade-mecum* for the surveyor. We recommend this book as containing an admirable supplement to the teaching of the accomplished surveyor."—*Athenæum.*

"The author brings to his work a fortunate union of theory and practical experience which, aided by a clear and lucid style of writing, renders the book a very useful one."—*Builder.*

ENGINEER'S & MINING SURVEYOR'S FIELD BOOK.

Consisting of a Series of Tables, with Rules, Explanations of Systems, and use of Theodolite for Traverse Surveying and plotting the work with minute accuracy by means of Straight Edge and Set Square only; Levelling with the Theodolite, Casting-out and Reducing Levels to Datum, and Plotting Sections in the ordinary manner; Setting-out Curves with the Theodolite by Tangential Angles and Multiples with Right and Left-hand Readings of the Instrument; Setting-out Curves without Theodolite on the System of Tangential Angles by Sets of Tangents and Offsets; and Earthwork Tables to 80 feet deep, calculated for every 6 inches in depth. By W. DAVIS HASKOLL, C.E. With numerous Woodcuts. Fourth Edition, Enlarged. Crown 8vo, cloth . **12/0**

"The book is very handy; the separate tables of sines and tangents to every minute will make it useful for many other purposes, the genuine traverse tables existing all the same."—*Athenæum.*

"Every person engaged in engineering field operations will estimate the importance of such a work and the amount of valuable time which will be saved by reference to a set of reliable tables prepared with the accuracy and fulness of those given in this volume."—*Railway News.*

LAND AND MARINE SURVEYING.

In Reference to the Preparation of Plans for Roads and Railways; Canals, Rivers, Towns' Water Supplies; Docks and Harbours. With Description and Use of Surveying Instruments. By W. DAVIS HASKOLL, C.E. Second Edition, Revised, with Additions. Large crown 8vo, cloth . . . **9/0**

"This book must prove of great value to the student. We have no hesitation in recommending it, feeling assured that it will more than repay a careful study."—*Mechanical World.*

"A most useful book for the student. We strongly recommend it as a carefully-written and valuable text-book. It enjoys a well-deserved repute among surveyors."—*Builder.*

"This volume cannot fail to prove of the utmost practical utility. It may be safely recommended to all students who aspire to become clean and expert surveyors."—*Mining Journal.*

PRINCIPLES AND PRACTICE OF LEVELLING.

Showing its Application to Purposes of Railway and Civil Engineering in the Construction of Roads; with Mr. TELFORD'S Rules for the same. By FREDERICK W. SIMMS, F.G.S., M. Inst. C.E. Eighth Edition, with the addition of LAW'S Practical Examples for Setting-out Railway Curves, and TRAUTWINE'S Field Practice of Laying-out Circular Curves. With 7 Plates and numerous Woodcuts, 8vo, cloth **8/6**

⁂ TRAUTWINE on CURVES may be had separate **5/0**

"The text-book on levelling in most of our engineering schools and colleges."—*Engineer.*

"The publishers have rendered a substantial service to the profession, especially to the younger members, by bringing out the present edition of Mr. Simms's useful work."—*Engineering.*

AN OUTLINE OF THE METHOD OF CONDUCTING A TRIGONOMETRICAL SURVEY.

For the Formation of Geographical and Topographical Maps and Plans, Military Reconnaissance, LEVELLING, &c., with Useful Problems, Formulæ, and Tables. By Lieut.-General FROME, R.E. Fourth Edition, Revised and partly Re-written by Major-General Sir CHARLES WARREN, G.C.M.G., R.E. With 19 Plates and 115 Woodcuts, royal 8vo, cloth **16/0**

"No words of praise from us can strengthen the position so well and so steadily maintained by this work. Sir Charles Warren has revised the entire work, and made such additions as were necessary to bring every portion of the contents up to the present date."—*Broad Arrow.*

TABLES OF TANGENTIAL ANGLES AND MULTIPLES FOR SETTING-OUT CURVES.

From 5 to 200 Radius. By A. BEAZELEY, M. Inst. C.E. 6th Edition, Revised. With an Appendix on the use of the Tables for Measuring up Curves. Printed on 50 Cards, and sold in a cloth box, waistcoat-pocket size. [*Just Published.* **3/6**

"Each table is printed on a card, which, placed on the theodolite, leaves the hands free to manipulate the instrument—no small advantage as regards the rapidity of work."—*Engineer.*

"Very handy: a man may know that all his day's work must fall on two of these cards, which he puts into his own card-case, and leaves the rest behind."—*Athenæum.*

HANDY GENERAL EARTH-WORK TABLES.

Giving the Contents in Cubic Yards of Centre and Slopes of Cuttings and Embankments from 3 inches to 80 feet in Depth or Height, for use with either 66 feet Chain or 100 feet Chain. By J. H. WATSON BUCK, M. Inst. C.E. On a Sheet mounted in cloth case. [*Just Published.* **3/6**

EARTHWORK TABLES.

Showing the Contents in Cubic Yards of Embankments, Cuttings, &c., of Heights or Depths up to an average of 80 feet. By JOSEPH BROADBENT, C.E., and FRANCIS CAMPIN, C.E. Crown 8vo, cloth **5/0**

"The way in which accuracy is attained, by a simple division of each cross section into three elements, two in which are constant and one variable, is ingenious."—*Athenæum.*

A MANUAL ON EARTHWORK.

By ALEX. J. S. GRAHAM, C.E. With numerous Diagrams. Second Edition. 18mo, cloth **2/6**

THE CONSTRUCTION OF LARGE TUNNEL SHAFTS.

A Practical and Theoretical Essay. By J. H. WATSON BUCK, M. Inst. C.E., Resident Engineer, L. and N. W. R. With Folding Plates, 8vo, cloth **12/0**

"Many of the methods given are of extreme practical value to the mason, and the observations on the form of arch, the rules for ordering the stone, and the construction of the templates, will be found of considerable use. We commend the book to the engineering profession."—*Building News.*

"Will be regarded by civil engineers as of the utmost value, and calculated to save much time and obviate many mistakes."—*Colliery Guardian.*

CAST & WROUGHT IRON BRIDGE CONSTRUCTION

(A Complete and Practical Treatise on), including Iron Foundations. In Three Parts.—Theoretical, Practical, and Descriptive. By WILLIAM HUMBER, A. M. Inst. C.E., and M. Inst. M.E. Third Edition, revised and much improved, with 115 Double Plates (20 of which now first appear in this edition), and numerous Additions to the Text. In 2 vols., imp. 4to, half-bound in morocco . . . . **£6 16s. 6d.**

"A very valuable contribution to the standard literature of civil engineering. In addition to elevations, plans, and sections, large scale details are given, which very much enhance the instructive worth of those illustrations."—*Civil Engineer and Architect's Journal.*

"Mr. Humber's stately volumes, lately issued—in which the most important bridges erected during the last five years, under the direction of the late Mr. Brunel, Sir W. Cubitt, Mr. Hawkshaw, Mr. Page, Mr. Fowler, Mr. Hemans, and others among our most eminent engineers, are drawn and specified in great detail."—*Engineer.*

ESSAY ON OBLIQUE BRIDGES

(Practical and Theoretical). With 13 large Plates. By the late GEORGE WATSON BUCK, M.I.C.E. Fourth Edition, revised by his Son, J. H. WATSON BUCK, M.I.C.E.; and with the addition of Description to Diagrams for Facilitating the Construction of Oblique Bridges, by W. H. BARLOW, M.I.C.E. Royal 8vo, cloth **12/0**

"The standard text-book for all engineers regarding skew arches is Mr. Buck's treatise, and it would be impossible to consult a better."—*Engineer.*

"Mr. Buck's treatise is recognised as a standard text-book, and his treatment has divested the subject of many of the intricacies supposed to belong to it. As a guide to the engineer and architect, on a confessedly difficult subject, Mr. Buck's work is unsurpassed."—*Building News.*

THE CONSTRUCTION OF OBLIQUE ARCHES

(A Practical Treatise on). By JOHN HART. Third Edition, with Plates. Imperial 8vo, cloth **8/0**

GRAPHIC AND ANALYTIC STATICS.

In their Practical Application to the Treatment of Stresses in Roofs, Solid Girders, Lattice, Bowstring, and Suspension Bridges, Braced Iron Arches and Piers, and other Frameworks. By R. HUDSON GRAHAM, C.E. Containing Diagrams and Plates to Scale. With numerous Examples, many taken from existing Structures. Specially arranged for Class-work in Colleges and Universities. Second Edition, Revised and Enlarged. 8vo, cloth . **16/0**

"Mr. Graham's book will find a place wherever graphic and analytic statics are used or studied."—*Engineer.*

"The work is excellent from a practical point of view, and has evidently been prepared with much care. The directions for working are simple, and are illustrated by an abundance of well-selected examples. It is an excellent text-book for the practical draughtsman."—*Athenæum.*

WEIGHTS OF WROUGHT IRON & STEEL GIRDERS.

A Graphic Table for Facilitating the Computation of the Weights of Wrought Iron and Steel Girders, &c., for Parliamentary and other Estimates. By J. H. WATSON BUCK, M. Inst. C.E. On a Sheet **2/6**

PRACTICAL GEOMETRY.

For the Architect, Engineer, and Mechanic. Giving Rules for the Delineation and Application of various Geometrical Lines, Figures, and Curves. By E. W. TARN, M.A., Architect. 8vo, cloth **9/0**

"No book with the same objects in view has ever been published in which the clearness of the rules laid down and the illustrative diagrams have been so satisfactory."—*Scotsman.*

THE GEOMETRY OF COMPASSES.

Or, Problems Resolved by the mere Description of Circles and the Use of Coloured Diagrams and Symbols. By OLIVER BYRNE. Coloured Plates. Crown 8vo, cloth **3/6**

HANDY BOOK FOR THE CALCULATION OF STRAINS

In Girders and Similar Structures and their Strength. Consisting of Formulæ and Corresponding Diagrams, with numerous details for Practical Application, &c. By WILLIAM HUMBER, A. M. Inst. C.E., &c. Fifth Edition. Crown 8vo, with nearly 100 Woodcuts and 3 Plates, cloth . . . **7/6**

"The formulæ are neatly expressed, and the diagrams good."—*Athenæum.*

"We heartily commend this really *handy* book to our engineer and architect readers."—*English Mechanic.*

TRUSSES OF WOOD AND IRON.

Practical Applications of Science in Determining the Stresses, Breaking Weights, Safe Loads, Scantlings, and Details of Construction. With Complete Working Drawings. By WILLIAM GRIFFITHS, Surveyor. 8vo, cloth. **4/6**

"This handy little book enters so minutely into every detail connected with the construction of roof trusses that no student need be ignorant of these matters."—*Practical Engineer.*

THE STRAINS ON STRUCTURES OF IRONWORK.

With Practical Remarks on Iron Construction. By F. W. SHEILDS, M.I.C.E. 8vo, cloth **5/0**

A TREATISE ON THE STRENGTH OF MATERIALS.

With Rules for Application in Architecture, the Construction of Suspension Bridges, Railways, &c. By PETER BARLOW, F.R.S. A new Edition, revised by his Sons, P. W. BARLOW, F.R.S., and W. H. BARLOW, F.R.S.; to which are added, Experiments by HODGKINSON, FAIRBAIRN, and KIRKALDY; and Formulæ for calculating Girders, &c. Arranged and Edited by WM. HUMBER, A. M. Inst. C.E. 8vo, cloth **18/0**

"Valuable alike to the student tyro, and the experienced practitioner, it will always rank in future as it has hitherto done, as the standard treatise on that particular subject."—*Engineer.*

"As a scientific work of the first class, it deserves a foremost place on the bookshelves of every civil engineer and practical mechanic."—*English Mechanic.*

SAFE RAILWAY WORKING.

A Treatise on Railway Accidents, their Cause and Prevention; with a Description of Modern Appliances and Systems. By CLEMENT E. STRETTON, C.E., Vice-President and Consulting Engineer, Amalgamated Society of Railway Servants. With Illustrations and Coloured Plates. Third Edition, Enlarged. Crown 8vo, cloth **3/6**

"A book for the engineer, the directors, the managers; and, in short, all who wish for information on railway matters will find a perfect encyclopædia in 'Safe Railway Working.'"—*Railway Review.*

"We commend the remarks on railway signalling to all railway managers, especially where a uniform code and practice is advocated."—*Herepath's Railway Journal.*

EXPANSION OF STRUCTURES BY HEAT.

By JOHN KEILY, C.E., late of the Indian Public Works Department. Crown 8vo, cloth **3/6**

"The aim the author has set before him, viz., to show the effects of heat upon metallic and other structures, is a laudable one, for this is a branch of physics upon which the engineer or architect can find but little reliable and comprehensive data in books."—*Builder.*

THE PROGRESS OF MODERN ENGINEERING.

Complete in Four Volumes, imperial 4to, half-morocco, price **£12 12s.**
Each volume sold separately, as follows:—

First Series, Comprising Civil, Mechanical, Marine, Hydraulic, Railway, Bridge, and other Engineering Works, &c. By William Humber, A. M. Inst. C.E., &c. Imp. 4to, with 36 Double Plates, drawn to a large scale, Photographic Portrait of John Hawkshaw, C.E., F.R.S., &c., and copious descriptive Letterpress, Specifications, &c. Half-morocco . . **£3 3s.**

List of the Plates and Diagrams.

Victoria Station and Roof, L. B. & S. C. R. (8 plates); Southport Pier (2 plates); Victoria Station and Roof, L. C. & D. and G. W. R. (6 plates); Roof of Cremorne Music Hall; Bridge over G. N. Railway; Roof of Station, Dutch Rhenish Rail (2 plates); Bridge over the Thames, West London Extension Railway (5 plates); Armour Plates; Suspension Bridge, Thames (4 plates); The Allen Engine; Suspension Bridge, Avon (3 plates); Underground Railway (3 plates).

HUMBER'S MODERN ENGINEERING.

Second Series. Imp. 4to, with 3 Double Plates, Photographic Portrait of Robert Stephenson, C.E., M.P., F.R.S., &c., and copious descriptive Letterpress, Specifications, &c. Half-morocco . . . . **£3 3s.**

List of the Plates and Diagrams.

Birkenhead Docks, Low Water Basin (15 plates); Charing Cross Station Roof, C. C. Railway (3 plates); Digswell Viaduct, Great Northern Railway; Robbery Wood Viaduct, Great Northern Railway; Iron Permanent Way; Clydach Viaduct, Merthyr, Tredegar, and Abergavenny Railway; Ebbw Viaduct, Merthyr, Tredegar, and Abergavenny Railway; College Wood Viaduct, Cornwall Railway; Dublin Winter Palace Roof (3 plates); Bridge over the Thames, L. C. & D. Railway (6 plates); Albert Harbour, Greenock (4 plates).

HUMBER'S MODERN ENGINEERING.

Third Series. Imp. 4to, with 40 Double Plates, Photographic Portrait of J. R. M'Clean, late Pres. Inst. C.E., and copious descriptive Letterpress, Specifications, &c. Half-morocco . . . . **£3 3s.**

List of the Plates and Diagrams.

Main Drainage, Metropolis.—*North Side.*—Map showing Interception of Sewers; Middle Level Sewer (2 plates); Outfall Sewer, Bridge over River Lea (3 plates); Outfall Sewer, Bridge over Marsh Lane, North Woolwich Railway, and Bow and Barking Railway Junction; Outfall Sewer, Bridge over Bow and Barking Railway (3 plates); Outfall Sewer, Bridge over East London Water-works' Feeder (2 plates); Outfall Sewer Reservoir (2 plates); Outfall Sewer, Tumbling Bay and Outlet; Outfall Sewer, Penstocks. *South Side.*—Outfall Sewer, Bermondsey Branch (2 plates); Outfall Sewer, Reservoir and Outlet (4 plates); Outfall Sewer, Filth Hoist; Sections of Sewers North and South Sides).

Thames Embankment.—Section of River Wall; Steamboat Pier, Westminster (2 plates); Landing Stairs between Charing Cross and Waterloo Bridges; York Gate (2 plates); Overflow and Outlet at Savoy Street Sewer (3 plates); Steamboat Pier, Waterloo Bridge (3 plates); Junction of Sewers, Plans and Sections; Gullies, Plans and Sections; Rolling Stock; Granite and Iron Forts.

HUMBER'S MODERN ENGINEERING.

Fourth Series. Imp. 4to, with 36 Double Plates, Photographic Portrait of John Fowler, late Pres. Inst. C.E., and copious descriptive Letterpress, Specifications, &c. Half-morocco . . . . **£3 3s.**

List of the Plates and Diagrams.

Abbey Mills Pumping Station, Main Drainage, Metropolis (4 plates); Barrow Docks (5 plates); Manquis Viaduct, Santiago and Valparaiso Railway, (2 plates); Adam's Locomotive, St. Helen's Canal Railway (2 plates); Cannon Street Station Roof, Charing Cross Railway (3 plates); Road Bridge over the River Moka (2 plates); Telegraphic Apparatus for Mesopotamia; Viaduct over the River Wye, Midland Railway (3 plates); St. Germans Viaduct, Cornwall Railway (2 plates); Wrought-Iron Cylinder for Diving Bell; Millwall Docks (6 plates); Milroy's Patent Excavator; Metropolitan District Railway (6 plates); Harbours, Ports, and Breakwaters (3 plates).

MARINE ENGINEERING, SHIPBUILDING, NAVIGATION, &c.

THE NAVAL ARCHITECT'S AND SHIPBUILDER'S

POCKET-BOOK of Formulæ, Rules, and Tables, and Marine Engineer's and Surveyor's Handy Book of Reference. By Clement Mackrow, M.I.N.A. Seventh Edition, 700 pp., with 300 Illustrations. Fcap., leather . . **12/6**

Summary of Contents:—Signs and Symbols, Decimal Fractions.—Trigonometry.—Practical Geometry.—Mensuration.—Centres and Moments of Figures.—Moments of Inertia and Radii of Gyration.—Algebraical Expressions for Simpson's Rules.—Mechanical Principles.—Centre of Gravity.—Laws of Motion.—Displacement, Centre of Buoyancy.—Centre of Gravity of Ship's Hull.—Stability Curves and Metacentres.—Sea and Shallow-water Waves.—Rolling of Ships.—Propulsion and Resistance of Vessels.—Speed Trials.—Sailing, Centre of Effort.—Distances down Rivers, Coast Lines.—Steering and Rudders of Vessels.—Launching Calculations and Velocities.—Weight of Material and Gear.—Gun Particulars and Weight.—Standard Gauges.—Riveted Joints and Riveting.—Strength and Tests of Materials.—Binding and Shearing Stresses, &c.—Strength of Shafting, Pillars, Wheels, &c.—Hydraulic Data, &c.—Conic Sections, Catenarian Curves.—Mechanical Powers, Work.—Board of Trade Regulations for Boilers and Engines.—Board of Trade Regulations for Ships.—Lloyd's Rules for Boilers.—Lloyd's Weight of Chains.—Lloyd's Scantlings for Ships.—Data of Engines and Vessels.—Ships' Fittings and Tests.—Seasoning Preserving Timber.—Measurement of Timber.—Alloys, Paints, Varnishes.—Data for Stowage.—Admiralty Transport Regulations.—Rules for Horse-power, Screw Propellers, &c.—Percentages for Butt Straps, &c.—Particulars of Yachts.—Masting and Rigging Vessels.—Distances of Foreign Ports.—Tonnage Tables.—Vocabulary of French and English Terms.—English Weights and Measures.—Foreign Weights and Measures.—Decimal Equivalents.—Foreign Money.—Discount and Wages Tables.—Useful Numbers and Ready Reckoners.—Tables of Circular Measures.—Tables of Areas of and Circumferences of Circles.—Tables of Areas of Segments of Circles.—Tables of Squares and Cubes and Roots of Numbers.—Tables of Logarithms of Numbers.—Tables of Hyperbolic Logarithms.—Tables of Natural Sines, Tangents, &c.—Tables of Logarithmic Sines, Tangents, &c.

"In these days of advanced knowledge a work like this is of the greatest value. It contains a vast amount of information. We unhesitatingly say that it is the most valuable compilation for its specific purpose that has ever been printed. No naval architect, engineer, surveyor, or seaman, wood or iron shipbuilder, can afford to be without this work."—*Nautical Magazine.*

"Should be used by all who are engaged in the construction or design of vessels. . . . Will be found to contain the most useful tables and formulæ required by shipbuilders, carefully collected from the best authorities, and put together in a popular and simple form. The book is one of exceptional merit."—*Engineer.*

"The professional shipbuilder has now, in a convenient and accessible form, reliable data for solving many of the numerous problems that present themselves in the course of his work."—*Iron.*

"There is no doubt that a pocket-book of this description must be a necessity in the shipbuilding trade. . . The volume contains a mass of useful information clearly expressed and presented in a handy form."—*Marine Engineer.*

WANNAN'S MARINE ENGINEER'S GUIDE

To Board of Trade Examinations for Certificates of Competency. Containing all Latest Questions to Date, with Simple, Clear, and Correct Solutions; Elementary and Verbal Questions and Answers; complete Set of Drawings with Statements completed. By A. C. Wannan, C.E., and E. W. I. Wannan, M.I.M.E. Illustrated with numerous Engravings. Crown 8vo, 370 pp., cloth **8/6**

"The book is clearly and plainly written and avoids unnecessary explanations and formulas, and we consider it a valuable book for students of marine engineering."—*Nautical Magazine.*

WANNAN'S MARINE ENGINEER'S POCKET-BOOK.

Containing the Latest Board of Trade Rules and Data for Marine Engineers. By A. C. Wannan. Second Edition, carefully Revised. Square 18mo, with thumb Index, leather **5/0**

"There is a great deal of useful information in this little pocket-book. It is of the rule-of-thumb order, and is, on that account, well adapted to the uses of the sea-going engineer."—*Engineer.*

MARINE ENGINES AND STEAM VESSELS.

A Treatise on. By ROBERT MURRAY, C.E. Eighth Edition, thoroughly Revised, with considerable Additions by the Author and by GEORGE CARLISLE, C.E., Senior Surveyor to the Board of Trade. 12mo, cloth . **4/6**

SEA TERMS, PHRASES, AND WORDS

(Technical Dictionary of) used in the English and French Languages (English-French, French-English). For the Use of Seamen, Engineers, Pilots, Shipbuilders, Shipowners, and Ship-brokers. Compiled by W. PIRRIE, late of the African Steamship Company. Fcap. 8vo, cloth limp **5/0**

"This volume will be highly appreciated by seamen, engineers, pilots, shipbuilders and shipowners. It will be found wonderfully accurate and complete."—*Scotsman.*

"A very useful dictionary, which has long been wanted by French and English engineers, masters, officers and others."—*Shipping World.*

ELECTRIC SHIP-LIGHTING.

A Handbook on the Practical Fitting and Running of Ships' Electrical Plant, for the Use of Shipowners and Builders, Marine Electricians and Sea-going Engineers in Charge. By J. W. URQUHART, Author of "Electric Light," "Dynamo Construction," &c. Second Edition, Revised and Extended. 326 pp., with 88 Illustrations. Crown 8vo, cloth. [*Just Published.* **7/6**

MARINE ENGINEER'S POCKET-BOOK.

Consisting of useful Tables and Formulæ. By FRANK PROCTOR, A.I.N.A. Third Edition. Royal 32mo, leather, gilt edges, with strap **4/0**

"We recommend it to our readers as going far to supply a long-felt want."—*Naval Science.*

"A most useful companion to all marine engineers."—*United Service Gazette.*

ELEMENTARY ENGINEERING.

A Manual for Young Marine Engineers and Apprentices. In the Form of Questions and Answers on Metals, Alloys, Strength of Materials, Construction and Management of Marine Engines and Boilers, Geometry, &c., &c. With an Appendix of Useful Tables. By J. S. BREWER. Crown 8vo, cloth . **1/6**

"Contains much valuable information for the class for whom it is intended, especially in the chapters on the management of boilers and engines."—*Nautical Magazine.*

PRACTICAL NAVIGATION.

Consisting of THE SAILOR'S SEA-BOOK, by JAMES GREENWOOD and W. H. ROSSER; together with the exquisite Mathematical and Nautical Tables for the Working of the Problems, by HENRY LAW, C.E., and Professor J. R. YOUNG. Illustrated. 12mo, strongly half-bound **7/0**

THE ART AND SCIENCE OF SAILMAKING.

By SAMUEL B. SADLER, Practical Sailmaker, late in the employment of Messrs. Ratsey and Lapthorne, of Cowes and Gosport. With Plates and other Illustrations. Small 4to, cloth **12/6**

"This extremely practical work gives a complete education in all the branches of the manufacture, cutting out, roping, seaming, and goring. It is copiously illustrated, and will form a first-rate text-book and guide."—*Portsmouth Times.*

CHAIN CABLES AND CHAINS.

Comprising Sizes and Curves of Links, Studs, &c., Iron for Cables and Chains, Chain Cable and Chain Making, Forming and Welding Links, Strength of Cables and Chains, Certificates for Cables, Marking Cables, Prices of Chain Cables and Chains, Historical Notes, Acts of Parliament, Statutory Tests, Charges for Testing, List of Manufacturers of Cables, &c., &c. By THOMAS W. TRAILL, F.E.R.N., M.Inst.C.E., Engineer-Surveyor-in-Chief, Board of Trade, Inspector of Chain Cable and Anchor Proving Establishments, and General Superintendent Lloyd's Committee on Proving Establishments. With numerous Tables, Illustrations, and Lithographic Drawings. Folio, cloth, bevelled boards . . . . **£2 2s.**

"It contains a vast amount of valuable information. Nothing seems to be wanting to make it a complete and standard work of reference on the subject."—*Nautical Magazine.*

MINING, METALLURGY, AND COLLIERY WORKING.

THE METALLURGY OF GOLD.

A Practical Treatise on the Metallurgical Treatment of Gold-bearing Ores. Including the Assaying, Melting, and Refining of Gold. By M. EISSLER, Mining Engineer, A.I.M.E., Member of the Institute of Mining and Metallurgy. Author of "Modern High Explosives," "The Metallurgy of Silver," &c., &c. Fifth Edition, Enlarged and Re-arranged. With over 300 illustrations and numerous Folding Plates. Medium 8vo, cloth.
[*Just Published. Net* **21/0**

"This book thoroughly deserves its title of a 'Practical Treatise.' The whole process of gold milling, from the breaking of the quartz to the assay of the bullion, is described in clear and orderly narrative and with much, but not too much, fulness of detail."—*Saturday Review.*

"The work is a storehouse of information and valuable data, and we strongly recommend it to all professional men engaged in the gold-mining industry."—*Mining Journal.*

THE CYANIDE PROCESS OF GOLD EXTRACTION.

Including its Practical Application on the Witwatersrand Gold Fields in South Africa. By M. EISSLER, M.E., Author of "The Metallurgy of Gold," &c. With Diagrams and Working Drawings. Second Edition, Revised and Enlarged. 8vo, cloth **7/6**

"This book is just what was needed to acquaint mining men with the actual working of a process which is not only the most popular, but is, as a general rule, the most successful for the extraction of gold from tailings."—*Mining Journal.*

"The work will prove invaluable to all interested in gold mining, whether metallurgists or as investors."—*Chemical News.*

DIAMOND DRILLING FOR GOLD & OTHER MINERALS.

A Practical Handbook on the Use of Modern Diamond Core Drills in Prospecting and Exploiting Mineral-Bearing Properties, including Particulars of the Costs of Apparatus and Working. By G. A. DENNY, M.N.E. Inst. M.E., M.I.M. and M. Author of "The Klerksdorp Goldfields." Medium 8vo, 168 pp., with Illustrative Diagrams. [*Just Published.* **12/6**

"There is certainly scope for a work on diamond drilling, and Mr. Denny deserves grateful recognition for supplying a decided want. We strongly recommend every board of directors to carefully peruse the pages treating of the applicability of diamond drilling to auriferous deposits, and, under certain conditions, its advantages over shaft sinking for systematic prospecting, both from the surface and underground. The author has given us a valuable volume of eminently practical data that should be in the possession of those interested in mining."—*Mining Journal.*

"Mr. Denny's handbook is the first English work to give a detailed account of the use of modern diamond core-drills in searching for mineral deposits. The work contains much information of a practical character, including particulars of the cost of apparatus and of working."—*Nature.*

FIELD TESTING FOR GOLD AND SILVER.

A Practical Manual for Prospectors and Miners. By W. H. MERRITT, M.N.E. Inst. M.E., A.R.S.M., &c. With Photographic Plates and other Illustrations. Fcap. 8vo, leather. [*Just Published. Net* **5/0**

"As an instructor of prospectors' classes Mr. Merritt has the advantage of knowing exactly the information likely to be most valuable to the miner in the field. The contents cover all the details of sampling and testing gold and silver ores. The work will be a useful addition to a prospector's kit."—*Mining Journal.*

"It gives the gist of the author's experience as a teacher of prospectors, and is a book which no prospector could use habitually without finding it pan out well."—*Scotsman.*

THE PROSPECTOR'S HANDBOOK.

A Guide for the Prospector and Traveller in search of Metal-Bearing or other Valuable Minerals. By J. W. ANDERSON, M.A. (Camb.), F.R.G.S., Author of "Fiji and New Caledonia." Eighth Edition, thoroughly Revised and much Enlarged. Small crown 8vo, cloth, **3/6**; or, leather, pocket-book form, with tuck. [*Just Published.* **4/6**

"Will supply a much-felt want, especially among Colonists, in whose way are so often thrown many mineralogical specimens the value of which it is difficult to determine."—*Engineer.*

"How to find commercial minerals, and how to identify them when they are found, are the leading points to which attention is directed. The author has managed to pack as much practical detail into his pages as would supply material for a book three times its size."—*Mining Journal.*

THE METALLURGY OF SILVER.

A Practical Treatise on the Amalgamation, Roasting, and Lixiviation of Silver Ores. Including the Assaying, Melting, and Refining of Silver Bullion. By M. EISSLER, Author of "The Metallurgy of Gold," &c. Third Edition. Crown 8vo, cloth **10/6**

"A practical treatise, and a technical work which we are convinced will supply a long-felt want amongst practical men, and at the same time be of value to students and others indirectly connected with the industries."—*Mining Journal.*

"From first to last the book is thoroughly sound and reliable."—*Colliery Guardian.*

"For chemists, practical miners, assayers, and investors alike we do not know of any work on the subject so handy and yet so comprehensive."—*Glasgow Herald.*

THE METALLURGY OF ARGENTIFEROUS LEAD.

A Practical Treatise on the Smelting of Silver-Lead Ores and the Refining of Lead Bullion. Including Reports on various Smelting Establishments and Descriptions of Modern Smelting Furnaces and Plants in Europe and America. By M. EISSLER, M.E., Author of "The Metallurgy of Gold," &c. Crown 8vo, 400 pp., with 183 Illustrations, cloth **12/6**

"The numerous metallurgical processes, which are fully and extensively treated of, embrace all the stages experienced in the passage of the lead from the various natural states to its issue from the refinery as an article of commerce."—*Practical Engineer.*

"The present volume fully maintains the reputation of the author. Those who wish to obtain a thorough insight into the present state of this industry cannot do better than read this volume, and all mining engineers cannot fail to find many useful hints and suggestions in it."—*Industries.*

METALLIFEROUS MINERALS AND MINING.

By D. C. DAVIES, F.G.S., Mining Engineer. Sixth Edition, thoroughly Revised and much Enlarged by his Son, E. HENRY DAVIES, M.E., F.G.S. 600 pp., with 173 Illustrations. Large crown 8vo, cloth

[*Just Published. Net* **12/6**

"Neither the practical miner nor the general reader, interested in mines, can have a better book for his companion and his guide."—*Mining Journal.*

"We are doing our readers a service in calling their attention to this valuable work."—*Mining World.*

"As a history of the present state of mining throughout the world this book has a real value, and it supplies an actual want."—*Athenæum.*

MACHINERY FOR METALLIFEROUS MINES.

A Practical Treatise for Mining Engineers, Metallurgists, and Managers of Mines. By E. HENRY DAVIES, M.E., F.G.S. Crown 8vo, 580 pp., with upwards of 300 Illustrations, cloth. **12/6**

"Mr. Davies, in this handsome volume, has done the advanced student and the manager of mines good service. Almost every kind of machinery in actual use is carefully described, and the woodcuts and plates are good."—*Athenæum.*

"From cover to cover the work exhibits all the same characteristics which excite the confidence and attract the attention of the student as he peruses the first page. The work may safely be recommended. By its publication the literature connected with the industry will be enriched and the reputation of its author enhanced."—*Mining Journal.*

EARTHY AND OTHER MINERALS AND MINING.

By D. C. DAVIES, F.G.S., Author of "Metalliferous Minerals," &c. Third Edition, Revised and Enlarged by his Son, E. HENRY DAVIES, M.E., F.G.S. With about 100 Illustrations. Crown 8vo, cloth **12/6**

"We do not remember to have met with any English work on mining matters that contains the same amount of information packed in equally convenient form."—*Academy.*

"We should be inclined to rank it as among the very best of the handy technical and trades manuals which have recently appeared."—*British Quarterly Review.*

BRITISH MINING.

A Treatise on the History, Discovery, Practical Development, and Future Prospects of Metalliferous Mines in the United Kingdom. By ROBERT HUNT, F.R.S., late Keeper of Mining Records. Upwards of 950 pp., with 230 Illustrations. Second Edition, Revised. Super-royal 8vo, cloth **£2 2s.**

"The book is a treasure-house of statistical information on mining subjects, and we know of no other work embodying so great a mass of matter of this kind. Were this the only merit of Mr. Hunt's volume it would be sufficient to render it indispensable in the library of every one interested in the development of the mining and metallurgical industries of this country."—*Athenæum.*

POCKET-BOOK FOR MINERS AND METALLURGISTS.

Comprising Rules, Formulæ, Tables, and Notes for Use in Field and Office Work. By F. Danvers Power, F.G.S., M.E. Second Edition, Corrected. Fcap. 8vo, leather. [*Just Published.* **9/0**

"This excellent book is an admirable example of its kind, and ought to find a large sale amongst English-speaking prospectors and mining engineers."—*Engineering.*

THE MINER'S HANDBOOK.

A Handy Book of Reference on the subjects of Mineral Deposits, Mining Operations, Ore Dressing, &c. For the Use of Students and others interested in Mining Matters. By John Milne, F.R.S., Professor of Mining in the Imperial University of Japan. Revised Edition. Fcap. 8vo, leather . **7/6**

"Professor Milne's handbook is sure to be received with favour by all connected with mining, and will be extremely popular among students."—*Athenæum.*

THE IRON ORES of GREAT BRITAIN and IRELAND.

Their Mode of Occurrence, Age and Origin, and the Methods of Searching for and Working Them. With a Notice of some of the Iron Ores of Spain. By J. D. Kendall, F.G.S., Mining Engineer. Crown 8vo, cloth . . **16/0**

"The author has a thorough practical knowledge of his subject, and has supplemented a careful study of the available literature by unpublished information derived from his own observations. The result is a very useful volume, which cannot fail to be of value to all interested in the iron industry of the country."—*Industries.*

MINE DRAINAGE.

A Complete Practical Treatise on Direct-Acting Underground Steam Pumping Machinery. By Stephen Michell. Second Edition, Re-written and Enlarged, 390 pp. With about 250 Illustrations. Royal 8vo, cloth. [*Just Published. Net* **25/0**

SUMMARY OF CONTENTS:—HORIZONTAL PUMPING ENGINES.—ROTARY AND NON-ROTARY HORIZONTAL ENGINES.—SIMPLE AND COMPOUND STEAM PUMPS.—VERTICAL PUMPING ENGINES.—ROTARY AND NON-ROTARY VERTICAL ENGINES.—SIMPLE AND COMPOUND STEAM PUMPS.—TRIPLE-EXPANSION STEAM PUMPS.—PULSATING STEAM PUMPS.—PUMP VALVES.—SINKING PUMPS, &c., &c.

"This volume contains an immense amount of important and interesting new matter. The book should undoubtedly prove of great use to all who wish for information on the subject, inasmuch as the different patterns of steam pumps are not alone lucidly described and clearly illustrated, but in addition numerous tables are supplied, in which their sizes, capacity, price, &c., are set forth, hence facilitating immensely the rational selection of a pump to suit any purpose that the reader may desire, or, on the other hand, supplying him with useful information about any of the pumps that come within the scope of the volume."—*The Engineer.*

THE COLLIERY MANAGER'S HANDBOOK.

A Comprehensive Treatise on the Laying-out and Working of Collieries, Designed as a Book of Reference for Colliery Managers, and for the Use of Coal Mining Students preparing for First-class Certificates. By Caleb Pamely, Mining Engineer and Surveyor; Member of the North of England Institute of Mining and Mechanical Engineers; and Member of the South Wales Institute of Mining Engineers. With 700 Plans, Diagrams, and other Illustrations. Fourth Edition, Revised and Enlarged, medium 8vo, over 900 pp. Strongly bound . . . . **£1 5s.**

SUMMARY OF CONTENTS:—GEOLOGY.—SEARCH FOR COAL.—MINERAL LEASES AND OTHER HOLDINGS.—SHAFT SINKING.—FITTING UP THE SHAFT AND SURFACE ARRANGEMENTS.—STEAM BOILERS AND THEIR FITTINGS.—TIMBERING AND WALLING.—NARROW WORK AND METHODS OF WORKING.—UNDERGROUND CONVEYANCE.—DRAINAGE.—THE GASES MET WITH IN MINES; VENTILATION.—ON THE FRICTION OF AIR IN MINES.—THE PRIESTMAN OIL ENGINE; PETROLEUM AND NATURAL GAS.—SURVEYING AND PLANNING.—SAFETY LAMPS AND FIREDAMP DETECTORS.—SUNDRY AND INCIDENTAL OPERATIONS AND APPLIANCES.—COLLIERY EXPLOSIONS.—MISCELLANEOUS QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS.—*Appendix:* SUMMARY OF REPORT OF H.M. COMMISSIONERS ON ACCIDENTS IN MINES.

"Mr. Pamely has not only given us a comprehensive reference book of a very high order, suitable to the requirements of mining engineers and colliery managers, but has also provided mining students with a class-book that is as interesting as it is instructive."—*Colliery Manager.*

"Mr. Pamely's work is eminently suited to the purpose for which it is intended, being clear, interesting, exhaustive, rich in detail, and up to date, giving descriptions of the latest machines in every department. A mining engineer could scarcely go wrong who followed this work."—*Colliery Guardian.*

"This is the most complete 'all-round' work on coal-mining published in the English language. . . . No library of coal-mining books is complete without it."—*Colliery Engineer* (Scranton, Pa., U.S.A.).

COLLIERY WORKING AND MANAGEMENT.

Comprising the Duties of a Colliery Manager, the Oversight and Arrangement of Labour and Wages, and the different Systems of Working Coal Seams. By H. F. Bulman and R. A. S. Redmayne. 350 pp., with 28 Plates and other Illustrations, including Underground Photographs. Medium 8vo, cloth. [*Just Published.* **15/0**

"This is, indeed, an admirable Handbook for Colliery Managers, in fact it is an indispensable adjunct to a Colliery Manager's education, as well as being a most useful and interesting work on the subject for all who in any way have to do with coal mining. The underground photographs are an attractive feature of the work, being very lifelike and necessarily true representations of the scenes they depict."—*Colliery Guardian.*

"Mr. Bulman and Mr. Redmayne, who are both experienced Colliery Managers of great literary ability, are to be congratulated on having supplied an authoritative work dealing with a side of the subject of coal mining which has hitherto received but scant treatment. The authors elucidate their text by 119 woodcuts and 28 plates, most of the latter being admirable reproductions of photographs taken underground with the aid of the magnesium flash-light. These illustrations are excellent."—*Nature.*

COAL AND COAL MINING.

By the late Sir Warington W. Smyth, F.R.S., Chief Inspector of the Mines of the Crown. Eighth Edition, Revised and Extended by T. Forster Brown, Mining Engineer, Chief Inspector of the Mines of the Crown and of the Duchy of Cornwall. Crown 8vo, cloth. [*Just Published.* **3/6**

"As an outline is given of every known coal-field in this and other countries, as well as of the principal methods of working, the book will doubtless interest a very large number of readers."—*Mining Journal.*

NOTES AND FORMULÆ FOR MINING STUDENTS.

By John Herman Merivale, M.A., Late Professor of Mining in the Durham College of Science, Newcastle-upon-Tyne. Fourth Edition, Revised and Enlarged. By H. F. Bulman, A.M.Inst.C.E. Small crown 8vo, cloth. **2/6**

"The author has done his work in a creditable manner, and has produced a book that will be of service to students and those who are practically engaged in mining operations."—*Engineer.*

INFLAMMABLE GAS AND VAPOUR IN THE AIR

(The Detection and Measurement of). By Frank Clowes, D.Sc., Lond., F.I.C., Prof. of Chemistry in the University College, Nottingham. With a Chapter on The Detection and Measurement of Petroleum Vapour by Boverton Redwood, F.R.S.E., Consulting Adviser to the Corporation of London under the Petroleum Acts. Crown 8vo, cloth. *Net* **5/0**

"Professor Clowes has given us a volume on a subject of much industrial importance . . . Those interested in these matters may be recommended to study this book, which is easy of comprehension and contains many good things."—*The Engineer.*

"A book that no mining engineer—certainly no coal miner—can afford to ignore or to leave unread."—*Mining Journal.*

COAL & IRON INDUSTRIES of the UNITED KINGDOM.

Comprising a Description of the Coal Fields, and of the Principal Seams of Coal, with Returns of their Produce and its Distribution, and Analyses of Special Varieties. Also, an Account of the Occurrence of Iron Ores in Veins or Seams; Analyses of each Variety; and a History of the Rise and Progress of Pig Iron Manufacture. By Richard Meade. 8vo, cloth . . **£1 8s.**

"Of this book we may unreservedly say that it is the best of its class which we have ever met. . . . A book of reference which no one engaged in the iron or coal trades should omit from his library."—*Iron and Coal Trades Review.*

ASBESTOS AND ASBESTIC.

Their Properties, Occurrence, and Use. By Robert H. Jones, F.S.A., Mineralogist, Hon. Mem. Asbestos Club, Black Lake, Canada. With Ten Collotype Plates and other Illustrations. Demy 8vo, cloth. [*Just Published.* **16/0**

"An interesting and invaluable work."—*Colliery Guardian.*

GRANITES AND OUR GRANITE INDUSTRIES.

By George F. Harris, F.G.S., Membre de la Société Belge de Géologie, Lecturer on Economic Geology at the Birkbeck Institution, &c. With Illustrations. Crown 8vo, cloth **2/6**

"A clearly and well-written manual for persons engaged or interested in the granite industry."—*Scotsman.*

TRAVERSE TABLES.

For use in Mine Surveying. By W. Lintern, Mining Engineer. Crown 8vo, cloth. [*Just Published.* *Net* **3/0**

ELECTRICITY, ELECTRICAL ENGINEERING, &c.

SUBMARINE TELEGRAPHS.

Their History, Construction, and Working. Founded in part on WÜNSCHENDORFF's "Traité de Télégraphie Sous-Marine," and Compiled from Authoritative and Exclusive Sources. By CHARLES BRIGHT, F.R.S.E. Super-royal 8vo, about 780 pp., fully Illustrated, including Maps and Folding Plates. [*Just Published. Net* **£3 3s.**

"There are few, if any, persons more fitted to write a treatise on submarine telegraphy than Mr. Charles Bright. The author has done his work admirably, and has written in a way which will appeal as much to the layman as to the engineer. This admirable volume must, for many years to come, hold the position of the English classic on submarine telegraphy."—*Engineer.*

"This book is full of information. It makes a book of reference which should be in every engineer's library."—*Nature.*

"Mr. Bright's interestingly written and admirably illustrated book will meet with a welcome reception from cable men."—*Electrician.*

"The author deals with his subject from all points of view—political and strategical as well as scientific. The work will be of interest, not only to men of science, but to the general public. We can strongly recommend it."—*Athenæum.*

"The work contains a great store of technical information concerning the making and work of submarine telegraphs. In bringing together the most valuable results relating to the evolution of the telegraph, the author has rendered a service that will be very widely appreciated."—*Morning Post.*

DYNAMO ELECTRIC MACHINERY.

Its Construction, Design, and Operation (Direct Current Machines). By SAMUEL SHELDON, A.M., Ph.D., assisted by H. MASON, B.S. Second Edition, Revised. Large crown 8vo, cloth. With 202 illustrations. [*Just Published. Net* **10/6**

THE ELECTRICAL ENGINEER'S POCKET-BOOK.

Consisting of Modern Rules, Formulæ, Tables, and Data. By H. R. KEMPE, M.Inst.E.E., A.M.Inst.C.E., Technical Officer Postal Telegraphs, Author of "A Handbook of Electrical Testing," "The Engineer's Year-Book," &c. Second Edition, thoroughly Revised, with Additions. With numerous Illustrations. Royal 32mo, oblong, leather **5/0**

"It is the best book of its kind."—*Electrical Engineer.*

"The Electrical Engineer's Pocket-Book is a good one."—*Electrician.*

"Strongly recommended to those engaged in the electrical industries."—*Electrical Review.*

ELECTRIC LIGHT FITTING.

A Handbook for Working Electrical Engineers, embodying Practical Notes on Installation Management. By J. W. URQUHART, Electrician, Author of "Electric Light," &c. With numerous Illustrations. Third Edition, Revised, with Additions. Crown 8vo, cloth. [*Just Published.* **5/0**

"This volume deals with what may be termed the mechanics of electric lighting, and is addressed to men who are already engaged in the work, or are training for it. The work traverses a great deal of ground, and may be read as a sequel to the same author's useful work on 'Electric Light.'"—*Electrician.*

ELECTRIC LIGHT.

Its Production and Use, Embodying Plain Directions for the Treatment of Dynamo-Electric Machines, Batteries, Accumulators, and Electric Lamps. By J. W. URQUHART, C.E. Sixth Edition, Revised, with Additions and 145 Illustrations. Crown 8vo, cloth. [*Just Published.* **7/6**

"The whole ground of electric lighting is more or less covered and explained in a very clear and concise manner."—*Electrical Review.*

"A *vade-mecum* of the salient facts connected with the science of electric lighting."—*Electrician.*

DYNAMO CONSTRUCTION.

A Practical Handbook for the Use of Engineer-Constructors and Electricians-in-Charge. Embracing Framework Building, Field Magnet and Armature Winding and Grouping, Compounding, &c. By J. W. URQUHART. Second Edition, Enlarged. Crown 8vo, cloth **7/6**

"Mr. Urquhart's book is the first one which deals with these matters in such a way that the engineering student can understand them. The book is very readable, and the author leads his readers up to difficult subjects by reasonably simple tests."—*Engineering Review.*

THE MANAGEMENT OF DYNAMOS.

A Handy Book of Theory and Practice for the Use of Mechanics, Engineers Students, and others in Charge of Dynamos. By G. W. LUMMIS-PATERSON. Second Edition, thoroughly Revised and Enlarged. With numerous Illustrations. Crown 8vo, cloth. [*Just Published.* **4/6**

"An example which deserves to be taken as a model by other authors. The subject is treated in a manner which any intelligent man who is fit to be entrusted with charge of an engine should be able to understand. It is a useful book to all who make, tend, or employ electric machinery. —*Architect.*

THE STANDARD ELECTRICAL DICTIONARY.

A Popular Encyclopædia of Words and Terms Used in the Practice of Electrical Engineering. By T. O'CONOR SLOANE, A.M., Ph.D. Second Edition, with Appendix to date. Crown 8vo, 680 pp., 390 Illustrations, cloth. [*Just Published.* **7/6**

"The work has many attractive features in it, and is, beyond doubt, a well put together and useful publication. The amount of ground covered may be gathered from the fact that in the index about 5,600 references will be found."—*Electrical Review.*

ELECTRIC SHIP-LIGHTING.

A Handbook on the Practical Fitting and Running of Ships' Electrical Plant. For the Use of Shipowners and Builders, Marine Electricians, and Seagoing Engineers-in-Charge. By J. W. URQUHART, C.E. Second Edition, Revised and Extended. 326 pp., with 88 Illustrations, Crown 8vo, cloth. [*Just Published.* **7/6**

"The subject of ship electric lighting is one of vast importance, and Mr. Urquhart is to be highly complimented for placing such a valuable work at the service of marine electricians."—*The Steamship.*

ELECTRIC LIGHT FOR COUNTRY HOUSES.

A Practical Handbook on the Erection and Running of Small Installations, with Particulars of the Cost of Plant and Working. By J. H. KNIGHT. Third Edition, Revised. Crown 8vo, wrapper. [*Just Published.* **1/0**

"The book contains excellent advice and many practical hints for the help of those who wish to light their own houses."—*Building News.*

ELECTRIC LIGHTING (ELEMENTARY PRINCIPLES OF).

By ALAN A. CAMPBELL SWINTON, M.Inst.C.E., M.Inst.E.E. Fourth Edition, Revised. With 16 Illustrations. Crown 8vo, cloth. [*Just Published.* **1/6**

"Any one who desires a short and thoroughly clear exposition of the elementary principles of electric lighting cannot do better than read this little work."—*Bradford Observer.*

DYNAMIC ELECTRICITY AND MAGNETISM.

By PHILIP ATKINSON, A.M., Ph.D., Author of "Elements of Static Electricity," &c. Crown 8vo, 417 pp., with 120 Illustrations, cloth . **10/6**

POWER TRANSMITTED BY ELECTRICITY

And applied by the Electric Motor, including Electric Railway Construction. By P. ATKINSON, A.M., Ph.D. With 96 Illustrations. Crown 8vo, cloth **7/6**

HOW TO MAKE A DYNAMO.

A Practical Treatise for Amateurs. Containing numerous Illustrations and Detailed Instructions for Constructing a Small Dynamo to Produce the Electric Light. By ALFRED CROFTS. Sixth Edition, Revised and Enlarged Crown 8vo, cloth. [*Just Published.* **2/0**

"The instructions given in this unpretentious little book are sufficiently clear and explicit to enable any amateur mechanic possessed of average skill and the usual tools to be found in an amateur's workshop to build a practical dynamo machine."—*Electrician.*

THE STUDENT'S TEXT-BOOK OF ELECTRICITY.

By H. M. NOAD, F.R.S. Cheaper Edition. 650 pp., with 470 Illustrations. Crown 8vo, cloth **9/0**

ARCHITECTURE, BUILDING, &c.

PRACTICAL BUILDING CONSTRUCTION.

A Handbook for Students Preparing for Examinations, and a Book of Reference for Persons Engaged in Building. By JOHN PARNELL ALLEN, Surveyor, Lecturer on Building Construction at the Durham College of Science, Newcastle-on-Tyne. Third Edition, Revised and Enlarged. Medium 8vo, 450 pp., with 1,000 Illustrations, cloth. [*Just Published.* **7/6**

"The most complete exposition of building construction we have seen. It contains all that is necessary to prepare students for the various examinations in building construction."—*Building News.*

"The author depends nearly as much on his diagrams as on his type. The pages suggest the hand of a man of experience in building operations—and the volume must be a blessing to many teachers as well as to students."—*The Architect.*

"The work is sure to prove a formidable rival to great and small competitors alike, and bids fair to take a permanent place as a favourite student's text-book. The large number of illustrations deserve particular mention for the great merit they possess for purposes of reference in exactly corresponding to convenient scales."—*Journal of the Royal Institute of British Architects*

PRACTICAL MASONRY.

A Guide to the Art of Stone Cutting. Comprising the Construction, Setting Out, and Working of Stairs, Circular Work, Arches, Niches, Domes, Pendentives, Vaults, Tracery Windows, &c., &c. For the Use of Students, Masons, and other Workmen. By WILLIAM R. PURCHASE, Building Inspector to the Borough of Hove. Third Edition, with Glossary of Terms. Royal 8vo, 142 pp., with 52 Lithographic Plates, comprising nearly 400 separate Diagrams, cloth. [*Just Published.* **7/6**

"Mr. Purchase's 'Practical Masonry' will undoubtedly be found useful to all interested in this important subject, whether theoretically or practically. Most of the examples given are from actual work carried out, the diagrams being carefully drawn. The book is a practical treatise on the subject, the author himself having commenced as an operative mason, and afterwards acted as foreman mason on many large and important buildings prior to the attainment of his present position. It should be found of general utility to architectural students and others, as well as to those to whom it is specially addressed."—*Journal of the Royal Institute of British Architects.*

MODERN PLUMBING, STEAM AND HOT WATER HEATING.

A New Practical Work for the Plumber, the Heating Engineer, the Architect, and the Builder. By J. J. LAWLER, Author of "American Sanitary Plumbing," &c. With 284 Illustrations and Folding Plates. 4to, cloth. [*Just Published. Net* **21/-**

HEATING BY HOT WATER.

With Information and Suggestions on the best Methods of Heating Public, Private and Horticultural Buildings. By WALTER JONES. Second Edition. With 96 Illustrations, crown 8vo, cloth . . . . *Net* **2/6**

"We confidently recommend all interested in heating by hot water to secure a copy of this valuable little treatise."—*The Plumber and Decorator.*

CONCRETE: ITS NATURE AND USES.

A Book for Architects, Builders, Contractors, and Clerks of Works. By GEORGE L. SUTCLIFFE, A.R.I.B.A. 350 pp., with numerous Illustrations. Crown 8vo, cloth **7/6**

"The author treats a difficult subject in a lucid manner. The manual fills a long-felt gap. It is careful and exhaustive; equally useful as a student's guide and an architect's book of reference."—*Journal of the Royal Institute of British Architects.*

"There is room for this new book, which will probably be for some time the standard work on the subject for a builder's purpose."—*Glasgow Herald.*

LOCKWOOD'S BUILDER'S PRICE BOOK for 1901.

A Comprehensive Handbook of the Latest Prices and Data for Builders, Architects, Engineers, and Contractors. Re-constructed, Re-written, and Greatly Enlarged. By FRANCIS T. W. MILLER. 800 closely-printed pages, crown 8vo, cloth **4/0**

"This book is a very useful one, and should find a place in every English office connected with the building and engineering professions."—*Industries.*

"An excellent book of reference."—*Architect.*

"In its new and revised form this Price Book is what a work of this kind should be—comprehensive, reliable, well arranged, legible, and well bound —*British Architect.*

THE DECORATIVE PART OF CIVIL ARCHITECTURE.

By Sir William Chambers, F.R.S. With Portrait, Illustrations, Notes, and an Examination of Grecian Architecture, by Joseph Gwilt, F.S.A. Revised and Edited by W. H. Leeds. 66 Plates, 4to, cloth . . **21/0**

THE MECHANICS OF ARCHITECTURE.

A Treatise on Applied Mechanics, especially Adapted to the Use of Architects. By E. W. Tarn, M.A., Author of "The Science of Building," &c. Second Edition, Enlarged. Illustrated with 125 Diagrams. Crown 8vo, cloth **7/6**

"The book is a very useful and helpful manual of architectural mechanics."—*Builder.*

A HANDY BOOK OF VILLA ARCHITECTURE.

Being a Series of Designs for Villa Residences in various Styles. With Outline Specifications and Estimates. By C. Wickes, Architect. 61 Plates, 4to, half-morocco, gilt edges . . . . **£1 11s. 6d.**

"The whole of the designs bear evidence of their being the work of an artistic architect, and they will prove very valuable and suggestive."—*Building News.*

THE ARCHITECT'S GUIDE.

Being a Text-book of Useful Information for Architects, Engineers, Surveyors, Contractors, Clerks of Works, &c., &c. By Frederick Rogers, Architect. Third Edition. Crown 8vo, cloth **3/6**

ARCHITECTURAL PERSPECTIVE.

The whole Course and Operations of the Draughtsman in Drawing a Large House in Linear Perspective. Illustrated by 43 Folding Plates. By F. O. Ferguson. Second Edition, Enlarged. 8vo, boards **3/6**

"It is the most intelligible of the treatises on this ill-treated subject that I have met with."—E. Ingress Bell, Esq., in the *R.I.B.A. Journal.*

PRACTICAL RULES ON DRAWING.

For the Operative Builder and Young Student in Architecture. By George Pyne. 14 Plates, 4to, boards **7/6**

MEASURING AND VALUING ARTIFICER'S WORK

(The Student's Guide to the Practice of). Containing Directions for taking Dimensions, Abstracting the same, and bringing the Quantities into Bill, with Tables of Constants for Valuation of Labour, and for the Calculation of Areas and Solidities. Originally edited by E. Dobson, Architect. With Additions by E. W. Tarn, M.A. Seventh Edition, Revised. With 8 Plates and 63 Woodcuts. Crown 8vo, cloth. [*Just Published.* **7/6**

"This edition will be found the most complete treatise on the principles of measuring and valuing artificer's work that has yet been published."—*Building News.*

TECHNICAL GUIDE, MEASURER, AND ESTIMATOR.

For Builders and Surveyors. Containing Technical Directions for Measuring Work in all the Building Trades, Complete Specifications for Houses, Roads, and Drains, and an Easy Method of Estimating the parts of a Building collectively. By A. C. Beaton. Ninth Edition. Waistcoat-pocket size, gilt edges **1/6**

"No builder, architect, surveyor, or valuer should be without his 'Beaton.'"—*Building News.*

SPECIFICATIONS FOR PRACTICAL ARCHITECTURE.

A Guide to the Architect, Engineer, Surveyor, and Builder. With an Essay on the Structure and Science of Modern Buildings. Upon the Basis of the Work by Alfred Bartholomew, thoroughly Revised, Corrected, and greatly added to by Frederick Rogers, Architect. Third Edition, Revised. 8vo, cloth **15/0**

"The work is too well known to need any recommendation from us. It is one of the books with which every young architect must be equipped."—*Architect.*

THE HOUSE-OWNER'S ESTIMATOR.

Or, What will it Cost to Build, Alter, or Repair? A Price Book for Unprofessional People as well as the Architectural Surveyor and Builder. By J. D. Simon. Edited by F. T. W. Miller, A.R.I.B.A. Fifth Edition, Carefully Revised. Crown 8vo, cloth. [*Just Published. Net* **3/6**

"In two years it will repay its cost a hundred times over."—*Field.*

SANITATION AND WATER SUPPLY.

THE PURIFICATION OF SEWAGE.

Being a Brief Account of the Scientific Principles of Sewage Purification, and their Practical Application. By Sidney Barwise, M.D. (Lond.), M.R.C.S., D.P.H. (Camb.), Fellow of the Sanitary Institute, Medical Officer of Health to the Derbyshire County Council. Crown 8vo, cloth. [*Just Published.* **5/0**

"'What process shall we adopt to purify our sewage?' This question has rarely been treated from so many points of view in one book. This volume teems with practical hints, which show the intimate knowledge the author has of his subject."—*The Engineer.*

WATER AND ITS PURIFICATION.

A Handbook for the Use of Local Authorities, Sanitary Officers, and others interested in Water Supply. By S. Rideal, D.Sc. Lond., F.I.C. With numerous Illustrations and Tables. Crown 8vo, cloth. [*Just Published.* **7/6**

"Dr. Rideal's book is both interesting and accurate, and contains a most useful *résumé* of the latest knowledge upon the subject of which it treats."—*The Engineer.*

RURAL WATER SUPPLY.

A Practical Handbook on the Supply of Water and Construction of Waterworks for Small Country Districts. By Allan Greenwell, A.M.I.C.E., and W. T. Curry, A.M.I.C.E. Revised Edition. Crown 8vo, cloth **5/0**

"We conscientiously recommend it as a very useful book for those concerned in obtaining water for small districts, giving a great deal of practical information in a small compass."—*Builder.*

THE WATER SUPPLY OF CITIES AND TOWNS.

By William Humber, A.M. Inst. C.E., and M.Inst. M.E. Imp. 4to, half-bound morocco. (See page 11.) . . . . *Net* **£6 6s.**

THE WATER SUPPLY OF TOWNS AND THE CONSTRUCTION OF WATER-WORKS.

By Professor W. K. Burton, A.M. Inst. C.E. Second Edition, Revised and Extended. Royal 8vo, cloth. (See page 10.) **25/0**

WATER ENGINEERING.

A Practical Treatise on the Measurement, Storage, Conveyance, and Utilisation of Water for the Supply of Towns. By C. Slagg, A.M. Inst. C.E. **7/6**

SANITARY WORK IN SMALL TOWNS AND VILLAGES.

By Charles Slagg, A. M. Inst. C.E. Crown 8vo, cloth . . . **3/0**

SANITARY ARRANGEMENT OF DWELLING-HOUSES.

By A. J. Wallis-Tayler, A.M.Inst.C.E. Crown 8vo, cloth . . **2/6**

MODERN PLUMBING, STEAM AND HOT WATER HEATING.

A New Practical Work for the Plumber, the Heating Engineer, the Architect, and the Builder. By J. J. Lawler, Author of "American Sanitary Plumbing," &c. With 284 Illustrations and Folding Plates. 4to, cloth.
[*Just Published* (see page 25). *Net* **21/-**

PLUMBING.

A Text-book to the Practice of the Art or Craft of the Plumber. By W. P. Buchan, R.P. Eighth Edition, Enlarged. Crown 8vo, cloth . . **3/6**

VENTILATION.

A Text-book to the Practice of the Art of Ventilating Buildings. By W. P. Buchan, R.P. Crown 8vo, cloth **3/6**

THE HEALTH OFFICER'S POCKET-BOOK.

A Guide to Sanitary Practice and Law. For Medical Officers of Health, Sanitary Inspectors, Members of Sanitary Authorities, &c. By Edward F. Willoughby, M.D. (Lond.), &c. Fcap. 8vo, cloth **7/6**

"A mine of condensed information of a pertinent and useful kind on the various subjects of which it treats. The different subjects are succinctly but fully and scientifically dealt with."—*The Lancet.*

CARPENTRY, TIMBER, &c.

THE ELEMENTARY PRINCIPLES OF CARPENTRY.

A Treatise on the Pressure and Equilibrium of Timber Framing, the Resistance of Timber, and the Construction of Floors, Arches, Bridges, Roofs, Uniting Iron and Stone with Timber, &c. To which is added an Essay on the Nature and Properties of Timber, &c., with Descriptions of the kinds of Wood used in Building; also numerous Tables of the Scantlings of Timber for different purposes, the Specific Gravities of Materials, &c. By THOMAS TREDGOLD, C.E. With an Appendix of Specimens of Various Roofs of Iron and Stone, Illustrated. Seventh Edition, thoroughly Revised and considerably Enlarged by E. WYNDHAM TARN, M.A., Author of "The Science of Building," &c. With 61 Plates, Portrait of the Author, and several Woodcuts. In One large Vol., 4to, cloth **25/0**

"Ought to be in every architect's and every builder's library."—*Builder*

"A work whose monumental excellence must commend it wherever skilful carpentry is concerned. The author's principles are rather confirmed than impaired by time. The additional plates are of great intrinsic value."—*Building News.*

WOODWORKING MACHINERY.

Its Rise, Progress, and Construction. With Hints on the Management of Saw Mills and the Economical Conversion of Timber. Illustrated with Examples of Recent Designs by leading English, French, and American Engineers. By M. POWIS BALE, A.M.Inst.C.E., M.I.M.E. Second Edition, Revised, with large Additions, large crown 8vo, 440 pp., cloth **9/0**

"Mr. Bale is evidently an expert on the subject, and he has collected so much information that his book is all-sufficient for builders and others engaged in the conversion of timber."—*Architect.*

"The most comprehensive compendium of wood-working machinery we have seen. The author is a thorough master of his subject."—*Building News.*

SAW MILLS.

Their Arrangement and Management, and the Economical Conversion of Timber. By M. POWIS BALE, A.M.Inst.C.E. Second Edition, Revised. Crown 8vo, cloth. [*Just Published.* **10/6**

"The *administration* of a large sawing establishment is discussed, and the subject examined from a financial standpoint. Hence the size, shape, order, and disposition of saw mills and the like are gone into in detail, and the course of the timber is traced from its reception to its delivery in its converted state. We could not desire a more complete or practical treatise."—*Builder.*

THE CARPENTER'S GUIDE.

Or, Book of Lines for Carpenters; comprising all the Elementary Principles essential for acquiring a knowledge of Carpentry. Founded on the late PETER NICHOLSON'S standard work. A New Edition, Revised by ARTHUR ASHPITEL, F.S.A. Together with Practical Rules on Drawing, by GEORGE PYNE. With 74 Plates, 4to, cloth . . . . **£1 1s.**

A PRACTICAL TREATISE ON HANDRAILING.

Showing New and Simple Methods for Finding the Pitch of the Plank, Drawing the Moulds, Bevelling, Jointing-up, and Squaring the Wreath. By GEORGE COLLINGS. Second Edition, Revised and Enlarged, to which is added A TREATISE ON STAIR-BUILDING. With Plates and Diagrams . . **2/6**

"Will be found of practical utility in the execution of this difficult branch of joinery."—*Builder.*

"Almost every difficult phase of this somewhat intricate branch of joinery is elucidated by the aid of plates and explanatory letterpress."—*Furniture Gazette.*

CIRCULAR WORK IN CARPENTRY AND JOINERY.

A Practical Treatise on Circular Work of Single and Double Curvature. By GEORGE COLLINGS. With Diagrams. Third Edition, 12mo, cloth . **2/6**

"An excellent example of what a book of this kind should be. Cheap in price, clear in definition, and practical in the examples selected."—*Builder.*

THE CABINET-MAKER'S GUIDE TO THE ENTIRE CONSTRUCTION OF CABINET WORK.

By RICHARD BITMEAD. Illustrated with Plans, Sections and Working Drawings. Crown 8vo, cloth. [*Just Published.* **2/6**

HANDRAILING COMPLETE IN EIGHT LESSONS.

On the Square-Cut System. By J. S. Goldthorp, Head of Building Department, Halifax Technical School. With Eight Plates and over 150 Practical Exercises. 4to, cloth **3/6**

"Likely to be of considerable value to joiners and others who take a pride in good work. The arrangement of the book is excellent. We heartily commend it to teachers and students"—*Timber Trades Journal.*

TIMBER MERCHANT'S and BUILDER'S COMPANION.

Containing New and Copious Tables of the Reduced Weight and Measurement of Deals and Battens, of all sizes, from One to a Thousand Pieces, and the relative Price that each size bears per Lineal Foot to any given Price per Petersburgh Standard Hundred; the Price per Cube Foot of Square Timber to any given Price per Load of 50 Feet, &c., &c. By William Dowsing. Fourth Edition, Revised and Corrected. Crown 8vo, cloth . . . **3/0**

"We are glad to see a fourth edition of these admirable tables, which for correctness and simplicity of arrangement leave nothing to be desired."—*Timber Trades Journal.*

THE PRACTICAL TIMBER MERCHANT.

A Guide for the Use of Building Contractors, Surveyors, Builders, &c., comprising useful Tables for all purposes connected with the Timber Trade, Marks of Wood, Essay on the Strength of Timber, Remarks on the Growth of Timber, &c. By W. Richardson. Second Edition. Fcap. 8vo, cloth . **3/6**

"Contains much valuable information for timber merchants, builders, foresters, and all others connected with the growth, sale, and manufacture of timber."—*Journal of Forestry.*

PACKING-CASE TABLES.

Showing the number of Superficial Feet in Boxes or Packing-Cases, from six inches square and upwards. By W. Richardson, Timber Broker. Third Edition. Oblong 4to, cloth **3/6**

"Invaluable labour-saving tables."—*Ironmonger.*

GUIDE TO SUPERFICIAL MEASUREMENT.

Tables calculated from 1 to 200 inches in length by 1 to 108 inches in breadth. For the use of Architects, Surveyors, Engineers, Timber Merchants, Builders, &c. By James Hawkings. Fourth Edition. Fcap., cloth. **3/6**

"A useful collection of tables to facilitate rapid calculation of surfaces. The exact area of any surface of which the limits have been ascertained can be instantly determined. The book will be found of the greatest utility to all engaged in building operations."—*Scotsman.*

PRACTICAL FORESTRY.

And its Bearing on the Improvement of Estates. By Charles E. Curtis, F.S.I., Professor of Forestry, Field Engineering, and General Estate Management, at the College of Agriculture, Downton. Second Edition, Revised. Crown 8vo, cloth. [*Just Published.* **3/6**

Summary of Contents:—Prefatory Remarks.—Objects of Planting.—Choice of a Forester.—Choice of Soil and Site.—Laying out of Land for Plantations.—Preparation of the Ground for Planting.—Drainage.—Planting.—Distances and Distribution of Trees in Plantations.—Trees and Ground Game.—Attention after Planting.—Thinning of Plantations.—Pruning of Forest Trees.—Realization.—Methods of Sale.—Measurement of Timber.—Measurement and Valuation of Larch Plantation.—Fire Lines.—Cost of Planting.

"Mr. Curtis has in the course of a series of short pithy chapters afforded much information of a useful and practical character on the planting and subsequent treatment of trees."—*Illustrated Carpenter and Builder.*

THE ELEMENTS OF FORESTRY.

Designed to afford Information concerning the Planting and Care of Forest Trees for Ornament or Profit, with suggestions upon the Creation and Care of Woodlands. By F. B. Hough. Large crown 8vo, cloth . . . **10/0**

THE TIMBER IMPORTER'S, TIMBER MERCHANT'S, AND BUILDER'S STANDARD GUIDE.

By Richard E. Grandy. Comprising:—An Analysis of Deal Standards, Home and Foreign, with Comparative Values and Tabular Arrangements for fixing Net Landed Cost on Baltic and North American Deals, including all intermediate Expenses, Freight, Insurance, &c.; together with copious Information for the Retailer and Builder. Third Edition. 12mo, cloth . . **2/0**

DECORATIVE ARTS, &c.

SCHOOL OF PAINTING FOR THE IMITATION OF WOODS AND MARBLES.

As Taught and Practised by A. R. VAN DER BURG and P. VAN DER BURG Directors of the Rotterdam Painting Institution. Royal folio, 18½ by 12½ in., Illustrated with 24 full-size Coloured Plates; also 12 plain Plates, comprising 154 Figures. Third Edition, cloth. [*Just Published.* **£1 11s. 6d.**

LIST OF PLATES:—1. VARIOUS TOOLS REQUIRED FOR WOOD PAINTING.—2, 3. WALNUT PRELIMINARY STAGES OF GRAINING AND FINISHED SPECIMEN.—4. TOOLS USED FOR MARBLE PAINTING AND METHOD OF MANIPULATION.—5, 6. ST. REMI MARBLE; EARLIER OPERATIONS AND FINISHED SPECIMEN.—7. METHODS OF SKETCHING DIFFERENT GRAINS, KNOTS, &c.—8, 9. ASH: PRELIMINARY STAGES AND FINISHED SPECIMEN.—10. METHODS OF SKETCHING MARBLE GRAINS.—11, 12. BRECHE MARBLE; PRELIMINARY STAGES OF WORKING AND FINISHED SPECIMEN.—13. MAPLE; METHODS OF PRODUCING THE DIFFERENT GRAINS.—14, 15. BIRD'S-EYE MAPLE; PRELIMINARY STAGES AND FINISHED SPECIMEN.—16. METHODS OF SKETCHING THE DIFFERENT SPECIES OF WHITE MARBLE.—17, 18. WHITE MARBLE; PRELIMINARY STAGES OF PROCESS AND FINISHED SPECIMEN.—19. MAHOGANY; SPECIMENS OF VARIOUS GRAINS AND METHODS OF MANIPULATION.—20, 21. MAHOGANY; EARLIER STAGES AND FINISHED SPECIMEN.—22, 23, 24. SIENNA MARBLE; VARIETIES OF GRAIN, PRELIMINARY STAGES AND FINISHED SPECIMEN.—25, 26, 27. JUNIPER WOOD; METHODS OF PRODUCING GRAIN, &c.; PRELIMINARY STAGES AND FINISHED SPECIMEN.—28, 29, 30. VERT DE MER MARBLE; VARIETIES OF GRAIN AND METHODS OF WORKING, UNFINISHED AND FINISHED SPECIMENS.—31, 32, 33. OAK; VARIETIES OF GRAIN, TOOLS EMPLOYED AND METHODS OF MANIPULATION, PRELIMINARY STAGES AND FINISHED SPECIMEN.—34, 35, 36. WAULSORT MARBLE; VARIETIES OF GRAIN, UNFINISHED AND FINISHED SPECIMENS.

"Those who desire to attain skill in the art of painting woods and marbles will find advantage in consulting this book. . . . Some of the Working Men's Clubs should give their young men the opportunity to study it."—*Builder.*

"A comprehensive guide to the art. The explanations of the processes, the manipulation and management of the colours, and the beautifully executed plates will not be the least valuable to the student who aims at making his work a faithful transcript of nature."—*Building News.*

"Students and novices are fortunate who are able to become the possessors of so noble a work."—*The Architect.*

ELEMENTARY DECORATION.

A Guide to the Simpler Forms of Everyday Art. Together with PRACTICAL HOUSE DECORATION. By JAMES W. FACEY. With numerous Illustrations. In One Vol., strongly half-bound **5/0**

HOUSE PAINTING, GRAINING, MARBLING, AND SIGN WRITING.

A Practical Manual of. By ELLIS A. DAVIDSON. Eighth Edition. With Coloured Plates and Wood Engravings. 12mo, cloth boards **6/0**

"A mass of information of use to the amateur and of value to the practical man."—*English Mechanic.*

THE DECORATOR'S ASSISTANT.

A Modern Guide for Decorative Artists and Amateurs, Painters, Writers, Gilders, &c. Containing upwards of 600 Receipts, Rules, and Instructions; with a variety of Information for General Work connected with every Class of Interior and Exterior Decorations, &c. Seventh Edition. 152 pp., cr. 8vo. **1/0**

"Full of receipts of value to decorators, painters, gilders, &c. The book contains the gist of larger treatises on colour and technical processes. It would be difficult to meet with a work so full of varied information on the painter's art."—*Building News.*

MARBLE DECORATION

And the Terminology of British and Foreign Marbles. A Handbook for Students. By GEORGE H. BLAGROVE, Author of "Shoring and its Application," &c. With 28 Illustrations. Crown 8vo, cloth **3/6**

"This most useful and much wanted handbook should be in the hands of every architect and builder."—*Building World.*

"A carefully and usefully written treatise; the work is essentially practical."—*Scotsman.*

DELAMOTTE'S WORKS ON ALPHABETS AND ILLUMINATION.

ORNAMENTAL ALPHABETS, ANCIENT & MEDIÆVAL.

From the Eighth Century, with Numerals; including Gothic, Church-Text, large and small, German, Italian, Arabesque, Initials for Illumination, Monograms, Crosses, &c., &c., for the use of Architectural and Engineering Draughtsmen, Missal Painters, Masons, Decorative Painters, Lithographers, Engravers, Carvers, &c., &c. Collected and Engraved by F. Delamotte, and printed in Colours. New and Cheaper Edition. Royal 8vo, oblong, ornamental boards **2/6**

"For those who insert enamelled sentences round gilded chalices, who blazon shop legends over shop-doors, who letter church walls with pithy sentences from the Decalogue, this book will be useful."—*Athenæum.*

MODERN ALPHABETS, PLAIN AND ORNAMENTAL.

Including German, Old English, Saxon, Italic, Perspective, Greek, Hebrew, Court Hand, Engrossing, Tuscan, Riband, Gothic, Rustic, and Arabesque; with several Original Designs, and an Analysis of the Roman and Old English Alphabets, large and small, and Numerals, for the use of Draughtsmen, Surveyors, Masons, Decorative Painters, Lithographers, Engravers, Carvers, &c. Collected and Engraved by F. Delamotte, and printed in Colours. New and Cheaper Edition. Royal 8vo, oblong, ornamental boards . **2/6**

"There is comprised in it every possible shape into which the letters of the alphabet and numerals can be formed, and the talent which has been expended in the conception of the various plain and ornamental letters is wonderful."—*Standard.*

MEDIÆVAL ALPHABETS AND INITIALS FOR ILLUMINATORS.

By F. G. Delamotte. Containing 21 Plates and Illuminated Title, printed in Gold and Colours. With an Introduction by J. Willis Brooks. Fourth and Cheaper Edition. Small 4to, ornamental boards **4/0**

"A volume in which the letters of the alphabet come forth glorified in gilding and all the colours of the prism interwoven and intertwined and intermingled."—*Sun.*

A PRIMER OF THE ART OF ILLUMINATION.

For the Use of Beginners; with a Rudimentary Treatise on the Art, Practical Directions for its Exercise, and Examples taken from Illuminated MSS., printed in Gold and Colours. By F. Delamotte. New and Cheaper Edition. Small 4to, ornamental boards **6/0**

"The examples of ancient MSS. recommended to the student, which, with much good sense, the author chooses from collections accessible to all, are selected with judgment and knowledge as well as taste."—*Athenæum.*

THE EMBROIDERER'S BOOK OF DESIGN.

Containing Initials, Emblems, Cyphers, Monograms, Ornamental Borders, Ecclesiastical Devices, Mediæval and Modern Alphabets, and National Emblems. Collected by F. Delamotte, and printed in Colours. Oblong royal 8vo, ornamental wrapper **1/6**

"The book will be of great assistance to ladies and young children who are endowed with the art of plying the needle in this most ornamental and useful pretty work."—*East Anglian Times.*

INSTRUCTIONS IN WOOD-CARVING FOR AMATEURS.

With Hints on Design. By A Lady. With 10 Plates. New and Cheaper Edition. Crown 8vo, in emblematic wrapper **2/0**

"The handicraft of the wood-carver, so well as a book can impart it, may be learnt from 'A Lady's' publication."—*Athenæum.*

PAINTING POPULARLY EXPLAINED.

By Thomas John Gullick, Painter, and John Timbs, F.S.A. Including Fresco, Oil, Mosaic, Water-Colour, Water-Glass, Tempera, Encaustic, Miniature, Painting on Ivory, Vellum, Pottery, Enamel, Glass, &c. Fifth Edition. Crown 8vo, cloth **5/0**

⁂ *Adopted as a Prize Book at South Kensington.*

"Much may be learned, even by those who fancy they do not require to be taught, from the careful perusal of this unpretending but comprehensive treatise."—*Art Journal.*

NATURAL SCIENCE, &c.

THE VISIBLE UNIVERSE.

Chapters on the Origin and Construction of the Heavens. By J. E. GORE, F.R.A.S., Author of "Star Groups," &c. Illustrated by 6 Stellar Photographs and 12 Plates. Demy 8vo, cloth **16/0**

"A valuable and lucid summary of recent astronomical theory, rendered more valuable and attractive by a series of stellar photographs and other illustrations."—*The Times.*

"In presenting a clear and concise account of the present state of our knowledge Mr. Gore has made a valuable addition to the literature of the subject."—*Nature.*

"Mr. Gore's 'Visible Universe' is one of the finest works on astronomical science that have recently appeared in our language. In spirit and in method it is scientific from cover to cover, but the style is so clear and attractive that it will be as acceptable and as readable to those who make no scientific pretensions as to those who devote themselves specially to matters astronomical."—*Leeds Mercury.*

STAR GROUPS.

A Student's Guide to the Constellations. By J. ELLARD GORE, F.R.A.S., M.R.I.A., &c., Author of "The Visible Universe," "The Scenery of the Heavens," &c. With 30 Maps. Small 4to, cloth **5/0**

"The volume contains thirty maps showing stars of the sixth magnitude—the usual naked-eye limit—and each is accompanied by a brief commentary adapted to facilitate recognition and bring to notice objects of special interest. For the purpose of a preliminary survey of the 'midnight pomp' of the heavens nothing could be better than a set of delineations averaging scarcely twenty square inches in area and including nothing that cannot at once be identified."—*Saturday Review.*

AN ASTRONOMICAL GLOSSARY.

Or, Dictionary of Terms used in Astronomy. With Tables of Data and Lists of Remarkable and Interesting Celestial Objects. By J. ELLARD GORE, F.R.A.S., Author of "The Visible Universe," &c. Small crown 8vo, cloth. **2/6**

"A very useful little work for beginners in astronomy, and not to be despised by more advanced students."—*The Times.*

"A very handy book . . . the utility of which is much increased by its valuable tables of astronomical data."—*Athenæum.*

THE MICROSCOPE.

Its Construction and Management. Including Technique, Photo-micrography, and the Past and Future of the Microscope. By Dr. HENRI VAN HEURCK. Re-Edited and Augmented from the Fourth French Edition, and Translated by WYNNE E. BAXTER, F.G.S. 400 pp., with upwards of 250 Woodcuts, imp. 8vo, cloth **18/0**

"A translation of a well-known work, at once popular and comprehensive."—*Times.*

"The translation is as felicitous as it is accurate."—*Nature.*

ASTRONOMY.

By the late Rev. ROBERT MAIN, M.A., F.R.S Third Edition, Revised by WILLIAM THYNNE LYNN, B.A., F.R.A.S., formerly of the Royal Observatory, Greenwich. 12mo, cloth **2/0**

"A sound and simple treatise, very carefully edited, and a capital book for beginners."—*Knowledge.*

"Accurately brought down to the requirements of the present time by Mr. Lynn."—*Educational Times.*

A MANUAL OF THE MOLLUSCA.

A Treatise on Recent and Fossil Shells. By S. P. WOODWARD, A.L.S., F.G.S. With an Appendix on RECENT AND FOSSIL CONCHOLOGICAL DISCOVERIES, by RALPH TATE, A.L.S., F.G.S. With 23 Plates and upwards of 300 Woodcuts. Reprint of Fourth Edition (1880). Crown 8vo, cloth **7/6**

"A most valuable storehouse of conchological and geological information."—*Science Gossip.*

THE TWIN RECORDS OF CREATION.

Or, Geology and Genesis, their Perfect Harmony and Wonderful Concord. By G. W. V. LE VAUX. 8vo, cloth **5/0**

"A valuable contribution to the evidences of Revelation, and disposes very conclusively of the arguments of those who would set God's Works against God's Word. No real difficulty is shirked, and no sophistry is left unexposed."—*The Rock.*

HANDBOOK OF MECHANICS.

By Dr. LARDNER. Enlarged and re-written by BENJAMIN LOEWY, F.R.A.S. 378 Illustrations. Post 8vo, cloth **6/0**

"The perspicuity of the original has been retained, and chapters which had become obsolete have been replaced by others of more modern character. The explanations throughout are studiously popular, and care has been taken to show the application of the various branches of physics to the industrial arts, and to the practical business of life."—*Mining Journal.*

HANDBOOK OF HYDROSTATICS AND PNEUMATICS.

By Dr. LARDNER. New Edition, Revised and Enlarged by BENJAMIN LOEWY. F.R.A.S. With 236 Illustrations. Post 8vo, cloth **5/0**

"For those 'who desire to attain an accurate knowledge of physical science without the profound methods of mathematical investigation,' this work is well adapted."—*Chemical News.*

HANDBOOK OF HEAT.

By Dr. LARDNER. Edited and re-written by BENJAMIN LOEWY, F.R.A.S., &c. 117 Illustrations. Post 8vo, cloth **6/0**

"The style is always clear and precise, and conveys instruction without leaving any cloudiness or lurking doubts behind."—*Engineering.*

HANDBOOK OF OPTICS.

By Dr. LARDNER. New Edition. Edited by T. OLVER HARDING, B.A. Lond. With 298 Illustrations. Small 8vo, 448 pp., cloth **5/0**

"Written by one of the ablest English scientific writers, beautifully and elaborately illustrated." —*Mechanics' Magazine.*

ELECTRICITY, MAGNETISM, AND ACOUSTICS.

By Dr. LARDNER. Edited by GEO. CAREY FOSTER, B.A., F.C.S. With 400 Illustrations. Small 8vo, cloth **5/0**

"The book could not have been entrusted to any one better calculated to preserve the terse and lucid style of Lardner, while correcting his errors and bringing up his work to the present state of scientific knowledge."—*Popular Science Review.*

HANDBOOK OF ASTRONOMY.

By Dr. LARDNER. Fourth Edition. Revised and Edited by EDWIN DUNKIN, F.R.A.S., Royal Observatory, Greenwich. With 38 Plates and upwards of 100 Woodcuts. 8vo, cloth **9/6**

"Probably no other book contains the same amount of information in so compendious and well arranged a form—certainly none at the price at which this is offered to the public."—*Athenæum.*

"We can do no other than pronounce this work a most valuable manual of astronomy, and we strongly recommend it to all who wish to acquire a general—but at the same time correct—acquaintance with this sublime science."—*Quarterly Journal of Science.*

MUSEUM OF SCIENCE AND ART.

Edited by Dr. LARDNER. With upwards of 1,200 Engravings on Wood. In Six Double Volumes, **£1 1s.** in a new and elegant cloth binding; or handsomely bound in half-morocco . . . . **£1 11s. 6d.**

"A cheap and interesting publication, alike informing and attractive. The papers combine subjects of importance and great scientific knowledge, considerable inductive powers, and a popular style of treatment."—*Spectator.*

Separate books formed from the above.

Common Things Explained. 5*s.*
The Microscope. 2*s.* cloth.
Popular Geology. 2*s.* 6*d.* cloth.
Popular Physics. 2*s.* 6*d.* cloth.
Steam and its Uses. 2*s.* cloth.
Popular Astronomy. 4*s.* 6*d.* cloth.
The Bee and White Ants. 2*s.* cloth.
The Electric Telegraph. 1*s.* 6*d.*

NATURAL PHILOSOPHY FOR SCHOOLS.

By Dr. LARDNER. Fcap. 8vo **3/6**

"A very convenient class book for junior students in private schools."—*British Quarterly Review.*

ANIMAL PHYSIOLOGY FOR SCHOOLS.

By Dr. LARDNER. Fcap. 8vo **3/6**

"Clearly written, well arranged, and excellently illustrated."—*Gardener's Chronicle.*

THE ELECTRIC TELEGRAPH.

By Dr. LARDNER. Revised by E. B. BRIGHT, F.R.A.S. Fcap. 8vo. . **2/6**

"One of the most readable books extant on the Electric Telegraph."—*English Mechanic.*

CHEMICAL MANUFACTURES, CHEMISTRY, &c.

THE GAS ENGINEER'S POCKET-BOOK.

Comprising Tables, Notes and Memoranda relating to the Manufacture, Distribution and Use of Coal Gas and the Construction of Gas Works. By H. O'Connor, A.M.Inst.C.E. Second Edition, Revised. 470 pp., crown 8vo, fully Illustrated, leather. [*Just Published.* **10/6**

"The book contains a vast amount of information. The author goes consecutively through the engineering details and practical methods involved in each of the different processes or parts of a gas-works. He has certainly succeeded in making a compilation of hard matters of fact absolutely interesting to read."—*Gas World.*

"A useful work of reference for the gas engineer and all interested in lighting or heating by gas, while the analyses of the various descriptions of gas will be of value to the technical chemist. All matter in any way connected with the manufacture and use of gas is dealt with. The book has evidently been carefully compiled, and certainly constitutes a useful addition to gas literature."—*Builder.*

"The volume contains a great quantity of specialised information, compiled, we believe, from trustworthy sources, which should make it of considerable value to those for whom it is specifically produced."—*Engineer.*

LIGHTING BY ACETYLENE

Generators, Burners, and Electric Furnaces. By William E. Gibbs, M.E. With 66 Illustrations. Crown 8vo, cloth. [*Just Published.* **7/6**

ENGINEERING CHEMISTRY.

A Practical Treatise for the Use of Analytical Chemists, Engineers, Iron Masters, Iron Founders, Students and others. Comprising Methods of Analysis and Valuation of the Principal Materials used in Engineering Work, with Analyses, Examples and Suggestions. By H. J. Phillips, F.I.C., F.C.S. Second Edition, Enlarged. Crown 8vo, 400 pp., with Illustrations, cloth **10/6**

"In this work the author has rendered no small service to a numerous body of practical men. . . . The analytical methods may be pronounced most satisfactory, being as accurate as the despatch required of engineering chemists permits."—*Chemical News.*

"Full of good things. As a handbook of technical analysis, it is very welcome."—*Builder.*

"The analytical methods given are, as a whole, such as are likely to give rapid and trustworthy results in experienced hands. . . . There is much excellent descriptive matter in the work, the chapter on 'Oils and Lubrication' being specially noticeable in this respect."—*Engineer.*

NITRO-EXPLOSIVES.

A Practical Treatise concerning the Properties, Manufacture, and Analysis of Nitrated Substances, including the Fulminates, Smokeless Powders, and Celluloid. By P. G. Sanford, F.I.C., Consulting Chemist to the Cotton Powder Company, &c. With Illustrations. Crown 8vo, cloth. [*Just Published.* **9/0**

"Any one having the requisite apparatus and materials could make nitro-glycerine or gun-cotton, to say nothing of other explosives, by the aid of the instructions in this volume. This is one of the very few text-books in which can be found just what is wanted. Mr. Sanford goes through the whole list of explosives commonly used, names any given explosive, and tells us of what it is composed and how it is manufactured. The book is excellent throughout."—*Engineer.*

A HANDBOOK ON MODERN EXPLOSIVES.

A Practical Treatise on the Manufacture and Use of Dynamite, Gun-Cotton, Nitro-Glycerine and other Explosive Compounds, including Collodion-Cotton. With Chapters on Explosives in Practical Application. By M. Eissler, Mining Engineer and Metallurgical Chemist. Second Edition, Enlarged. With 150 Illustrations. Crown 8vo, cloth. [*Just Published.* **12/6**

"Useful not only to the miner, but also to officers of both services to whom blasting and the use of explosives generally may at any time become a necessary auxiliary."—*Nature.*

DANGEROUS GOODS.

Their Sources and Properties, Modes of Storage and Transport. With Notes and Comments on Accidents arising therefrom, together with the Government and Railway Classifications, Acts of Parliament, &c. A Guide for the Use of Government and Railway Officials, Steamship Owners, Insurance Companies and Manufacturers, and Users of Explosives and Dangerous Goods. By H. Joshua Phillips, F.I.C., F.C.S. Crown 8vo, 374 pp., cloth . . **9/0**

"Merits a wide circulation, and an intelligent, appreciative study."—*Chemical News.*

A MANUAL OF THE ALKALI TRADE.

Including the Manufacture of Sulphuric Acid, Sulphate of Soda, and Bleaching Powder. By JOHN LOMAS, Alkali Manufacturer, Newcastle-upon-Tyne and London. 390 pp. of Text. With 232 Illustrations and Working Drawings, Second Edition, with Additions. Super-royal 8vo, cloth . . **£1 10s.**

"This book is written by a manufacturer for manufacturers. The working details of the most approved forms of apparatus are given, and these are accompanied by no less than 232 wood engravings, all of which may be used for the purposes of construction. Every step in the manufacture is very fully described in this manual, and each improvement explained."—*Athenæum.*

"We find not merely a sound and luminous explanation of the chemical principles of the trade, but a notice of numerous matters which have a most important bearing on the successful conduct of alkali works, but which are generally overlooked by even experienced technological authors."—*Chemical Review.*

THE BLOWPIPE IN CHEMISTRY, MINERALOGY, AND GEOLOGY.

Containing all known Methods of Anhydrous Analysis, many Working Examples, and Instructions for Making Apparatus. By Lieut.-Colonel W. A. Ross, R.A., F.G.S. With 120 Illustrations. Second Edition, Enlarged. Crown 8vo, cloth **5/0**

"The student who goes conscientiously through the course of experimentation here laid down will gain a better insight into inorganic chemistry and mineralogy than if he had 'got up' any of the best text-books of the day, and passed any number of examinations in their contents."—*Chemical News.*

THE MANUAL OF COLOURS AND DYE-WARES.

Their Properties, Applications, Valuations, Impurities and Sophistications. For the Use of Dyers, Printers, Drysalters, Brokers, &c. By J. W. SLATER. Second Edition, Revised and greatly Enlarged. Crown 8vo, cloth . **7/6**

"A complete encyclopædia of the *materia tinctoria*. The information given respecting each article is full and precise, and the methods of determining the value of articles such as these, so liable to sophistication, are given with clearness, and are practical as well as valuable."—*Chemist and Druggist.*

"There is no other work which covers precisely the same ground. To students preparing for examinations in dyeing and printing it will prove exceedingly useful."—*Chemical News.*

A HANDY BOOK FOR BREWERS.

Being a Practical Guide to the Art of Brewing and Malting. Embracing the Conclusions of Modern Research which bear upon the Practice of Brewing. By HERBERT EDWARDS WRIGHT, M.A. Second Edition, Enlarged. Crown 8vo, 530 pp., cloth. [*Just Published.* **12/6**

"May be consulted with advantage by the student who is preparing himself for examinational tests, while the scientific brewer will find in it a *résumé* of all the most important discoveries of modern times. The work is written throughout in a clear and concise manner, and the author takes great care to discriminate between vague theories and well-established facts."—*Brewers' Journal.*

"We have great pleasure in recommending this handy book, and have no hesitation in saying that it is one of the best—if not the best—which has yet been written on the subject of beer-brewing in this country; it should have a place on the shelves of every brewer's library."—*Brewers' Guardian.*

"Although the requirements of the student are primarily considered, an acquaintance of half-an-hour's duration cannot fail to impress the practical brewer with the sense of having found a trustworthy guide and practical counsellor in brewery matters."—*Chemical Trade Journal.*

FUELS: SOLID, LIQUID, AND GASEOUS.

Their Analysis and Valuation. For the Use of Chemists and Engineers. By H. J. PHILLIPS, F.C.S., formerly Analytical and Consulting Chemist to the G.E. Rlwy. Third Edition, Revised and Enlarged. Crown 8vo, cloth **2/0**

"Ought to have its place in the laboratory of every metallurgical establishment and wherever fuel is used on a large scale."—*Chemical News.*

THE ARTISTS' MANUAL OF PIGMENTS.

Showing their Composition, Conditions of Permanency, Non-Permanency, and Adulterations; Effects in Combination with Each Other and with Vehicles; and the most Reliable Tests of Purity. By H. C. STANDAGE. Crown 8vo. **2/6**

"This work is indeed *multum-in-parvo*, and we can, with good conscience, recommend it to all who come in contact with pigments, whether as makers, dealers, or users."—*Chemical Review.*

A POCKET-BOOK OF MENSURATION AND GAUGING.

Containing Tables, Rules, and Memoranda for Revenue Officers, Brewers, Spirit Merchants, &c. By J. B. MANT, Inland Revenue. Second Edition, Revised. 18mo, leather **4/0**

"This handy and useful book is adapted to the requirements of the Inland Revenue Department, and will be a favourite book of reference."—*Civilian.*

"Should be in the hands of every practical brewer."—*Brewers' Journal.*

INDUSTRIAL ARTS, TRADES, AND MANUFACTURES.

TEA MACHINERY AND TEA FACTORIES.

A Descriptive Treatise on the Mechanical Appliances required in the Cultivation of the Tea Plant and the Preparation of Tea for the Market. By A. J. WALLIS-TAYLER, A. M. Inst. C.E. Medium 8vo, 468 pp. With 218 Illustrations. [*Just Published. Net* **25/0**

SUMMARY OF CONTENTS:—MECHANICAL CULTIVATION OR TILLAGE OF THE SOIL.—PLUCKING OR GATHERING THE LEAF.—TEA FACTORIES.—THE DRESSING, MANUFACTURE, OR PREPARATION OF TEA BY MECHANICAL MEANS.—ARTIFICIAL WITHERING OF THE LEAF.—MACHINES FOR ROLLING OR CURLING THE LEAF.—FERMENTING PROCESS.—MACHINES FOR THE AUTOMATIC DRYING OR FIRING OF THE LEAF.—MACHINES FOR NON-AUTOMATIC DRYING OR FIRING OF THE LEAF.—DRYING OR FIRING MACHINES.—BREAKING OR CUTTING, AND SORTING MACHINES.—PACKING THE TEA.—MEANS OF TRANSPORT ON TEA PLANTATIONS.—MISCELLANEOUS MACHINERY AND APPARATUS.—FINAL TREATMENT OF THE TEA.—TABLES AND MEMORANDA.

"The subject of tea machinery is now one of the first interest to a large class of people, to whom we strongly commend the volume."—*Chamber of Commerce Journal.*

"When tea planting was first introduced into the British possessions little, if any, machinery was employed, but now its use is almost universal. This volume contains a very full account of the machinery necessary for the proper outfit of a factory, and also a description of the processes best carried out by this machinery."—*Journal Society of Arts.*

FLOUR MANUFACTURE.

A Treatise on Milling Science and Practice. By FRIEDRICH KICK, Imperial Regierungsrath, Professor of Mechanical Technology in the Imperial German Polytechnic Institute, Prague. Translated from the Second Enlarged and Revised Edition with Supplement. By H. H. P. POWLES, Assoc. Memb. Institution of Civil Engineers. Nearly 400 pp. Illustrated with 28 Folding Plates, and 167 Woodcuts. Royal 8vo, cloth . . . . . . **£1 5s.**

"This valuable work is, and will remain, the standard authority on the science of milling. . . . The miller who has read and digested this work will have laid the foundation, so to speak, of a successful career; he will have acquired a number of general principles which he can proceed to apply. In this handsome volume we at last have the accepted text-book of modern milling in good, sound English, which has little, if any, trace of the German idiom."—*The Miller.*

COTTON MANUFACTURE.

A Manual of Practical Instruction of the Processes of Opening, Carding, Combing, Drawing, Doubling and Spinning of Cotton, the Methods of Dyeing, &c. For the Use of Operatives Overlookers, and Manufacturers. By JOHN LISTER, Technical Instructor, Pendleton. 8vo, cloth . . **7/6**

"A distinct advance in the literature of cotton manufacture."—*Machinery.*

"It is thoroughly reliable, fulfilling nearly all the requirements desired."—*Glasgow Herald.*

MODERN CYCLES.

A Practical Handbook on their Construction and Repair. By A. J. WALLIS-TAYLER, A. M. Inst. C. E. Author of "Refrigerating Machinery," &c. With upwards of 300 Illustrations. Crown 8vo, cloth. [*Just Published.* **10/6**

"The large trade that is done in the component parts of bicycles has placed in the way of men mechanically inclined extraordinary facilities for building bicycles for their own use. . . . The book will prove a valuable guide for all those who aspire to the manufacture or repair of their own machines."—*The Field.*

"A most comprehensive and up-to-date treatise."—*The Cycle.*

"A very useful book, which is quite entitled to rank as a standard work for students of cycle construction. —*Wheeling.*

CEMENTS, PASTES, GLUES, AND GUMS.

A Practical Guide to the Manufacture and Application of the various Agglutinants required in the Building, Metal-Working, Wood-Working, and Leather-Working Trades, and for Workshop, Laboratory or Office Use. With upwards of 900 Recipes and Formulæ. By H. C. STANDAGE, Chemist. Third Edition. Crown 8vo, cloth. [*Just Published.* **2/0**

"We have pleasure in speaking favourably of this volume. So far as we have had experience, which is not inconsiderable, this manual is trustworthy."—*Athenæum.*

"As a revelation of what are considered trade secrets, this book will arouse an amount of curiosity among the large number of industries it touches."—*Daily Chronicle.*

THE ART OF SOAP-MAKING.

A Practical Handbook of the Manufacture of Hard and Soft Soaps, Toilet Soaps, &c. Including many New Processes, and a Chapter on the Recovery of Glycerine from Waste Leys. By ALX. WATT. Sixth Edition, including an Appendix on Modern Candlemaking. Crown 8vo, cloth. [*Just Published.* **7/6**

"The work will prove very useful, not merely to the technological student, but to the practical soap boiler who wishes to understand the theory of his art."—*Chemical News.*

"A thoroughly practical treatise on an art which has almost no literature in our language. We congratulate the author on the success of his endeavour to fill a void in English technical literature."—*Nature.*

PRACTICAL PAPER-MAKING.

A Manual for Paper-Makers and Owners and Managers of Paper-Mills. With Tables, Calculations, &c. By G. CLAPPERTON, Paper-Maker. With Illustrations of Fibres from Micro-Photographs. Crown 8vo, cloth . . **5/0**

"The author caters for the requirements of responsible mill hands, apprentices, &c., whilst his manual will be found of great service to students of technology, as well as to veteran paper-makers and mill owners. The illustrations form an excellent feature."—*The World's Paper Trade Review.*

"We recommend everybody interested in the trade to get a copy of this thoroughly practical book."—*Paper Making.*

THE ART OF PAPER-MAKING.

A Practical Handbook of the Manufacture of Paper from Rags, Esparto, Straw, and other Fibrous Materials. Including the Manufacture of Pulp from Wood Fibre, with a Description of the Machinery and Appliances used. To which are added Details of Processes for Recovering Soda from Waste Liquors. By ALEXANDER WATT, Author of "The Art of Soap-Making." With Illustrations. Crown 8vo, cloth **7/6**

"It may be regarded as the standard work on the subject. The book is full of valuable information. The 'Art of Paper-Making' is in every respect a model of a text-book, either for a technical class, or for the private student."—*Paper and Printing Trades Journal.*

A TREATISE ON PAPER.

For Printers and Stationers. With an Outline of Paper Manufacture; Complete Tables of Sizes, and Specimens of Different Kinds of Paper. By RICHARD PARKINSON, late of the Manchester Technical School. Demy 8vo, cloth. [*Just Published.* **3/6**

THE ART OF LEATHER MANUFACTURE.

Being a Practical Handbook, in which the Operations of Tanning, Currying, and Leather Dressing are fully Described, and the Principles of Tanning Explained, and many Recent Processes Introduced; as also Methods for the Estimation of Tannin, and a Description of the Arts of Glue Boiling, Gut Dressing, &c. By ALEXANDER WATT, Author of "Soap-Making," &c. Fourth Edition. Crown 8vo, cloth **9/0**

"A sound, comprehensive treatise on tanning and its accessories. The book is an eminently valuable production, which redounds to the credit of both author and publishers."—*Chemical Review.*

THE ART OF BOOT AND SHOE MAKING.

A Practical Handbook, including Measurement, Last-Fitting, Cutting-Out, Closing and Making, with a Description of the most approved Machinery Employed. By JOHN B. LENO, late Editor of *St. Crispin*, and *The Boot and Shoe-Maker.* 12mo, cloth. **2.0**

WOOD ENGRAVING.

A Practical and Easy Introduction to the Study of the Art. By W. N. Brown. 12mo, cloth **1/6**

"The book is clear and complete, and will be useful to any one wanting to understand the first elements of the beautiful art of wood engraving."—*Graphic.*

MODERN HOROLOGY, IN THEORY AND PRACTICE.

Translated from the French of Claudius Saunier, ex-Director of the School of Horology at Macon, by Julien Tripplin, F.R.A.S., Besancon Watch Manufacturer, and Edward Rigg, M.A., Assayer in the Royal Mint. With Seventy-eight Woodcuts and Twenty-two Coloured Copper Plates. Second Edition. Super-royal 8vo, cloth, **£2 2s.**; half-calf . . . **£2 10s.**

"There is no horological work in the English language at all to be compared to this production of M. Saunier's for clearness and completeness. It is alike good as a guide for the student and as a reference for the experienced horologist and skilled workman."—*Horological Journal.*

"The latest, the most complete, and the most reliable of those literary productions to which continental watchmakers are indebted for the mechanical superiority over their English brethren—in fact, the Book of Books, is M. Saunier's 'Treatise.'"—*Watchmaker, Jeweller, and Silversmith.*

THE WATCH ADJUSTER'S MANUAL.

A Practical Guide for the Watch and Chronometer Adjuster in Making, Springing, Timing and Adjusting for Isochronism, Positions and Temperatures. By C. E. Fritts. 370 pp., with Illustrations, 8vo, cloth . . . **16/0**

THE WATCHMAKER'S HANDBOOK.

Intended as a Workshop Companion for those engaged in Watchmaking and the Allied Mechanical Arts. Translated from the French of Claudius Saunier, and enlarged by Julien Tripplin, F.R.A.S., and Edward Rigg, M.A., Assayer in the Royal Mint. Third Edition. 8vo, cloth. **9/0**

"Each part is truly a treatise in itself. The arrangement is good and the language is clear and concise. It is an admirable guide for the young watchmaker."—*Engineering.*

"It is impossible to speak too highly of its excellence. It fulfils every requirement in a handbook intended for the use of a workman. Should be found in every workshop."—*Watch and Clockmaker.*

A HISTORY OF WATCHES & OTHER TIMEKEEPERS.

By James F. Kendal, M.B.H. Inst. Boards, **1/6**; or cloth, gilt . **2/6**

"The best which has yet appeared on this subject in the English language."—*Industries.*

"Open the book where you may, there is interesting matter in it concerning the ingenious devices of the ancient or modern horologer."—*Saturday Review.*

ELECTRO-DEPOSITION.

A Practical Treatise on the Electrolysis of Gold, Silver, Copper, Nickel, and other Metals and Alloys. With Descriptions of Voltaic Batteries, Magneto and Dynamo-Electric Machines, Thermopiles, and of the Materials and Processes used in every Department of the Art, and several Chapters on Electro-Metallurgy. By Alexander Watt, Author of "Electro-Metallurgy," &c. Third Edition, Revised. Crown 8vo, cloth . . **9/0**

"Eminently a book for the practical worker in electro-deposition. It contains practical descriptions of methods, processes and materials, as actually pursued and used in the workshop."—*Engineer.*

ELECTRO-METALLURGY.

Practically Treated. By Alexander Watt. Tenth Edition, including the most recent Processes. 12mo, cloth **3/6**

"From this book both amateur and artisan may learn everything necessary for the successful prosecution of electroplating."—*Iron.*

JEWELLER'S ASSISTANT IN WORKING IN GOLD.

A Practical Treatise for Masters and Workmen, Compiled from the Experience of Thirty Years' Workshop Practice. By George E. Gee, Author of "The Goldsmith's Handbook," &c. Crown 8vo, cloth **7/6**

"This manual of technical education is apparently destined to be a valuable auxiliary to a handicraft which is certainly capable of great improvement."—*The Times.*

ELECTROPLATING.

A Practical Handbook on the Deposition of Copper, Silver, Nickel, Gold, Aluminium, Brass, Platinum, &c., &c. By J. W. URQUHART, C.E. Fourth Edition, Revised. Crown 8vo, cloth. [*Just Published.* **5/0**

"An excellent practical manual."—*Engineering.*
"An excellent work, giving the newest information."—*Horological Journal.*

ELECTROTYPING.

The Reproduction and Multiplication of Printing Surfaces and Works of Art by the Electro-Deposition of Metals. By J. W. URQUHART, C.E. Crown 8vo, cloth **5/0**

"The book is thoroughly practical; the reader is, therefore, conducted through the leading laws of electricity, then through the metals used by electrotypers, the apparatus, and the depositing processes, up to the final preparation of the work."—*Art Journal.*

GOLDSMITH'S HANDBOOK.

By GEORGE E. GEE, Jeweller, &c. Fifth Edition. 12mo, cloth . . **3/0**

"A good, sound educator, and will be generally accepted as an authority."—*Horological Journal.*

SILVERSMITH'S HANDBOOK.

By GEORGE E. GEE, Jeweller, &c. Third Edition, with numerous Illustrations. 12mo, cloth **3/0**

"The chief merit of the work is its practical character. . . . The workers in the trade will speedily discover its merits when they sit down to study it."—*English Mechanic.*

⁂ *The above two works together, strongly half-bound, price 7s.*

SHEET METAL WORKER'S INSTRUCTOR.

Comprising a Selection of Geometrical Problems and Practical Rules for Describing the Various Patterns Required by Zinc, Sheet-Iron, Copper, and Tin-Plate Workers. By REUBEN HENRY WARN. New Edition, Revised and greatly Enlarged by JOSEPH G. HORNER, A.M.I.M.E. Crown 8vo, 254 pp., with 430 Illustrations, cloth. [*Just Published.* **7/6**

BREAD & BISCUIT BAKER'S & SUGAR-BOILER'S ASSISTANT.

Including a large variety of Modern Recipes. With Remarks on the Art of Bread-making. By ROBERT WELLS. Third Edition. Crown 8vo, cloth . **2/0**

"A large number of wrinkles for the ordinary cook, as well as the baker."—*Saturday Review.*

PASTRYCOOK & CONFECTIONER'S GUIDE.

For Hotels, Restaurants, and the Trade in general, adapted also for Family Use. By R. WELLS, Author of "The Bread and Biscuit Baker." Crown 8vo, cloth **2/0**

"We cannot speak too highly of this really excellent work. In these days of keen competition our readers cannot do better than purchase this book."—*Bakers' Times.*

ORNAMENTAL CONFECTIONERY.

A Guide for Bakers, Confectioners and Pastrycooks; including a variety of Modern Recipes, and Remarks on Decorative and Coloured Work. With 129 Original Designs. By ROBERT WELLS. Second Edition. Crown 8vo . **5/0**

"A valuable work, practical, and should be in the hands of every baker and confectioner. The illustrative designs are alone worth treble the amount charged for the whole work."—*Bakers' Times.*

THE MODERN FLOUR CONFECTIONER, WHOLESALE AND RETAIL.

Containing a large Collection of Recipes or Cheap Cakes, Biscuits, &c. With remarks on the Ingredients Used in their Manufacture. By ROBERT WELLS, Author of "The Bread and Biscuit Baker," &c. Crown 8vo, cloth . **2/0**

"The work is of a decidedly practical character, and in every recipe regard is had to economical working."—*North British Daily Mail.*

RUBBER HAND STAMPS

And the Manipulation of Rubber. A Practical Treatise on the Manufacture of Indiarubber Hand Stamps, Small Articles of Indiarubber, The Hektograph, Special Inks, Cements, and Allied Subjects. By T. O'CONOR SLOANE, A.M., Ph.D. With numerous Illustrations. Square 8vo, cloth . . . **5/0**

HANDYBOOKS FOR HANDICRAFTS.

BY PAUL N. HASLUCK.

Editor of "Work" (New Series), Author of "Lathe Work," "Milling Machines," &c.
Crown 8vo, 144 pp., price 1s. each.

These HANDYBOOKS *have been written to supply information for* WORKMEN, STUDENTS, *and* AMATEURS *in the several Handicrafts, on the actual* PRACTICE *of the* WORKSHOP, *and are intended to convey in plain language* TECHNICAL KNOWLEDGE *of the several* CRAFTS. *In describing the processes employed, and the manipulation of material, workshop terms are used; workshop practice is fully explained; and the text is freely illustrated with drawings of modern tools, appliances, and processes.*

THE METAL TURNER'S HANDYBOOK.

A Practical Manual for Workers at the Foot-Lathe. With over 100 Illustrations. **1/0**

"The book will be of service alike to the amateur and the artisan turner. It displays thorough knowledge of the subject."—*Scotsman.*

THE WOOD TURNER'S HANDYBOOK.

A Practical Manual for Workers at the Lathe. With over 100 Illustrations. **1/0**

"We recommend the book to young turners and amateurs. A multitude of workmen have hitherto sought in vain for a manual of this special industry."—*Mechanical World.*

THE WATCH JOBBER'S HANDYBOOK.

A Practical Manual on Cleaning, Repairing, and Adjusting. With upwards of 100 Illustrations **1/0**

"We strongly advise all young persons connected with the watch trade to acquire and study this inexpensive work."—*Clerkenwell Chronicle.*

THE PATTERN MAKER'S HANDYBOOK.

A Practical Manual on the Construction of Patterns for Founders. With upwards of 100 Illustrations **1/0**

"A most valuable, if not indispensable manual for the pattern maker."—*Knowledge.*

THE MECHANIC'S WORKSHOP HANDYBOOK.

A Practical Manual on Mechanical Manipulation, embracing Information on various Handicraft Processes. With Useful Notes and Miscellaneous Memoranda. Comprising about 200 Subjects **1/0**

"A very clever and useful book, which should be found in every workshop; and it should certainly find a place in all technical schools."—*Saturday Review.*

THE MODEL ENGINEER'S HANDYBOOK.

A Practical Manual on the Construction of Model Steam Engines. With upwards of 100 Illustrations. **1/0**

"Mr. Hasluck has produced a very good little book."—*Builder.*

THE CLOCK JOBBER'S HANDYBOOK.

A Practical Manual on Cleaning, Repairing, and Adjusting. With upwards of 100 Illustrations **1/0**

"It is of inestimable service to those commencing the trade."—*Coventry Standard.*

THE CABINET MAKER'S HANDYBOOK.

A Practical Manual on the Tools, Materials, Appliances, and Processes employed in Cabinet Work. With upwards of 100 Illustrations . . **1/0**

"Mr. Hasluck's thorough-going little Handybook is amongst the most practical guides we have seen for beginners in cabinet-work."—*Saturday Review.*

THE WOODWORKER'S HANDYBOOK OF MANUAL INSTRUCTION.

Embracing Information on the Tools, Materials, Appliances and Processes Employed in Woodworking. With 104 Illustrations. **1/0**

OPINIONS OF THE PRESS.

"Written by a man who knows, not only how work ought to be done, but how to do it, and how to convey his knowledge to others."—*Engineering.*

"Mr. Hasluck writes admirably, and gives complete instructions."—*Engineer.*

"Mr. Hasluck combines the experience of a practical teacher with the manipulative skill and scientific knowledge of processes of the trained mechanician, and the manuals are marvels of what can be produced at a popular price."—*Schoolmaster.*

"Helpful to workmen of all ages and degrees of experience."—*Daily Chronicle.*

"Practical, sensible, and remarkably cheap."—*Journal of Education.*

"Concise, clear, and practical."—*Saturday Review.*

COMMERCE, COUNTING-HOUSE WORK, TABLES, &c.

LESSONS IN COMMERCE.

By Professor R. GAMBARO, of the Royal High Commercial School at Genoa. Edited and Revised by JAMES GAULT, Professor of Commerce and Commercial Law in King's College, London. Second Edition, Revised. Crown 8vo . **3/6**

"The publishers of this work have rendered considerable service to the cause of commercial education by the opportune production of this volume. . . . The work is peculiarly acceptable to English readers and an admirable addition to existing class books. In a phrase, we think the work attains its object in furnishing a brief account of those laws and customs of British trade with which the commercial man interested therein should be familiar."—*Chamber of Commerce Journal.*

"An invaluable guide in the hands of those who are preparing for a commercial career, and in fact, the information it contains on matters of business should be impressed on every one."—*Counting House.*

THE FOREIGN COMMERCIAL CORRESPONDENT.

Being Aids to Commercial Correspondence in Five Languages—English, French, German, Italian, and Spanish. By CONRAD E. BAKER. Third Edition, Carefully Revised Throughout. Crown 8vo, cloth.

[*Just Published.* **4/6**

"Whoever wishes to correspond in all the languages mentioned by Mr. Baker cannot do better than study this work, the materials of which are excellent and conveniently arranged. They consist not of entire specimen letters, but—what are far more useful—short passages, sentences, or phrases expressing the same general idea in various forms."—*Athenæum.*

"A careful examination has convinced us that it is unusually complete, well arranged and reliable. The book is a thoroughly good one."—*Schoolmaster.*

FACTORY ACCOUNTS: their PRINCIPLES & PRACTICE.

A Handbook for Accountants and Manufacturers, with Appendices on the Nomenclature of Machine Details; the Income Tax Acts; the Rating of Factories; Fire and Boiler Insurance; the Factory and Workshop Acts, &c., including also a Glossary of Terms and a large number of Specimen Rulings. By EMILE GARCKE and J. M. FELLS. Fourth Edition, Revised and Enlarged. Demy 8vo, 250 pp., strongly bound **6/0**

"A very interesting description of the requirements of Factory Accounts. . . . The principle of assimilating the Factory Accounts to the general commercial books is one which we thoroughly agree with."—*Accountants' Journal.*

"Characterised by extreme thoroughness. There are few owners of factories who would not derive great benefit from the perusal of this most admirable work."—*Local Government Chronicle.*

MODERN METROLOGY.

A Manual of the Metrical Units and Systems of the present Century. With an Appendix containing a proposed English System. By LOWIS D. A. JACKSON, A. M. Inst. C. E., Author of "Aid to Survey Practice," &c. Large crown 8vo, cloth **12/6**

"We recommend the work to all interested in the practical reform of our weights and measures."—*Nature.*

A SERIES OF METRIC TABLES.

In which the British Standard Measures and Weights are compared with those of the Metric System at present in Use on the Continent. By C. H. DOWLING, C.E. 8vo, strongly bound **10/6**

"Mr. Dowling's Tables are well put together as a ready reckoner for the conversion of one system into the other."—*Athenæum.*

THE IRON AND METAL TRADES' COMPANION.

For Expeditiously Ascertaining the Value of any Goods bought or sold by Weight, from 1s. per cwt. to 112s. per cwt., and from one farthing per pound to one shilling per pound. By THOMAS DOWNIE. 396 pp., leather . . **9/0**

"A most useful set of tables, nothing like them before existed."—*Building News.*

"Although specially adapted to the iron and metal trades, the tables will be found useful in every other business in which merchandise is bought and sold by weight."—*Railway News.*

NUMBER, WEIGHT, AND FRACTIONAL CALCULATOR.

Containing upwards of 250,000 Separate Calculations, showing at a Glance the Value at 422 Different Rates, ranging from $\frac{1}{16}$th of a Penny to 20*s.* each, or per cwt., and £20 per ton, of any number of articles consecutively, from 1 to 470. Any number of cwts., qrs., and lbs., from 1 cwt. to 470 cwts. Any number of tons, cwts., qrs., and lbs., from 1 to 1,000 tons. By WILLIAM CHADWICK, Public Accountant. Third Edition, Revised. 8vo, strongly bound . **18/0**

"It is as easy of reference for any answer or any number of answers as a dictionary. For making up accounts or estimates the book must prove invaluable to all who have any considerable quantity of calculations involving price and measure in any combination to do."—*Engineer.*

"The most perfect work of the kind yet prepared."—*Glasgow Herald.*

THE WEIGHT CALCULATOR.

Being a Series of Tables upon a New and Comprehensive Plan, exhibiting at one Reference the exact Value of any Weight from 1 lb. to 15 tons, at 300 Progressive Rates, from 1*d.* to 168*s.* per cwt., and containing 186,000 Direct Answers, which, with their Combinations, consisting of a single addition (mostly to be performed at sight), will afford an aggregate of 10,266,000 Answers; the whole being calculated and designed to ensure correctness and promote despatch. By HENRY HARBEN, Accountant. Fifth Edition, carefully Corrected. Royal 8vo, strongly half-bound . . . . . . **£1 5s.**

"A practical and useful work of reference for men of business generally."—*Ironmonger.*

"Of priceless value to business men. It is a necessary book in all mercantile offices."—*Sheffield Independent.*

THE DISCOUNT GUIDE.

Comprising several Series of Tables for the Use of Merchants, Manufacturers, Ironmongers, and Others, by which may be ascertained the Exact Profit arising from any mode of using Discounts, either in the Purchase or Sale of Goods, and the method of either Altering a Rate of Discount, or Advancing a Price, so as to produce, by one operation, a sum that will realise any required Profit after allowing one or more Discounts: to which are added Tables of Profit or Advance from 1¼ to 90 per cent., Tables of Discount from 1¼ to 98¾ per cent., and Tables of Commission, &c., from ⅛ to 10 per cent. By HENRY HARBEN, Accountant. New Edition, Corrected. Demy 8vo, half-bound . **£1 5s.**

"A book such as this can only be appreciated by business men, to whom the saving of time means saving of money. The work must prove of great value to merchants, manufacturers, and general traders."—*British Trade Journal.*

TABLES OF WAGES.

At 54, 52, 50 and 48 Hours per Week. Showing the Amounts of Wages from One quarter of an hour to Sixty-four hours, in each case at Rates of Wages advancing by One Shilling from 4*s.* to 55*s.* per week. By THOS. GARBUTT, Accountant. Square crown 8vo, half-bound **6/0**

IRON-PLATE WEIGHT TABLES.

For Iron Shipbuilders, Engineers, and Iron Merchants. Containing the Calculated Weights of upwards of 150,000 different sizes of Iron Plates from 1 foot by 6 in. by ⅛ in. to 10 feet by 5 feet by 1 in. Worked out on the Basis of 40 lbs. to the square foot of Iron of 1 inch in thickness. By H. BURLINSON and W. H. SIMPSON. 4to, half-bound . . . . **£1 5s.**

MATHEMATICAL TABLES (ACTUARIAL).

Comprising Commutation and Conversion Tables, Logarithms, Cologarithms, Antilogarithms and Reciprocals. By J. W. GORDON. Royal 8vo, mounted on canvas, in cloth case. [*Just Published.* **5/0**

AGRICULTURE, FARMING, GARDENING, &c.

THE COMPLETE GRAZIER AND FARMER'S AND CATTLE BREEDER'S ASSISTANT.

A Compendium of Husbandry. Originally Written by WILLIAM YOUATT. Fourteenth Edition, entirely Re-written, considerably Enlarged, and brought up to Present Requirements, by WILLIAM FREAM, LL.D., Assistant Commissioner, Royal Commission on Agriculture, 1893, Author of "The Elements of Agriculture," &c. Royal 8vo, 1,100 pp., with over 450 Illustrations, handsomely bound. [*Just Published.* **£1 11s. 6d.**

SUMMARY OF CONTENTS.

BOOK I. ON THE VARIETIES, BREEDING, REARING, FATTENING AND MANAGEMENT OF CATTLE.
BOOK II. ON THE ECONOMY AND MANAGEMENT OF THE DAIRY.
BOOK III. ON THE BREEDING, REARING, AND MANAGEMENT OF HORSES.
BOOK IV. ON THE BREEDING, REARING, AND FATTENING OF SHEEP.
BOOK V. ON THE BREEDING, REARING, AND FATTENING OF SWINE.
BOOK VI. ON THE DISEASES OF LIVE STOCK.
BOOK VII. ON THE BREEDING, REARING, AND MANAGEMENT OF POULTRY.
BOOK VIII. ON FARM OFFICES AND IMPLEMENTS OF HUSBANDRY.
BOOK IX. ON THE CULTURE AND MANAGEMENT OF GRASS LANDS.
BOOK X. ON THE CULTIVATION AND APPLICATION OF GRASSES, PULSE AND ROOTS.
BOOK XI. ON MANURES AND THEIR APPLICATION TO GRASS LAND AND CROPS.
BOOK XII. MONTHLY CALENDARS OF FARMWORK.

⁂ OPINIONS OF THE PRESS ON THE NEW EDITION.

"Dr. Fream is to be congratulated on the successful attempt he has made to give us a work which will at once become the standard classic of the farm practice of the country. We believe that it will be found that it has no compeer among the many works at present in existence. . . . The illustrations are admirable, while the frontispiece, which represents the well-known bull, New Year's Gift, owned by the Queen, is a work of art."—*The Times.*

"The book must be recognised as occupying the proud position of the most exhaustive work of reference in the English language on the subject with which it deals."—*Athenæum.*

"The most comprehensive guide to modern farm practice that exists in the English language to-day. . . . The book is one that ought to be on every farm and in the library of every land owner."—*Mark Lane Express.*

"In point of exhaustiveness and accuracy the work will certainly hold a pre-eminent and unique position among books dealing with scientific agricultural practice. It is, in fact, an agricultural library of itself."—*North British Agriculturist.*

"A compendium of authoritative and well-ordered knowledge on every conceivable branch of the work of the live stock farmer; probably without an equal in this or any other country."—*Yorkshire Post.*

FARM LIVE STOCK OF GREAT BRITAIN.

BY ROBERT WALLACE, F.L.S., F.R.S.E., &c., Professor of Agriculture and Rural Economy in the University of Edinburgh. Third Edition, thoroughly Revised and considerably Enlarged. With over 120 Phototypes of Prize Stock. Demy 8vo, 384 pp., with 79 Plates and Maps, cloth. . . **12/6**

"A really complete work on the history, breeds, and management of the farm stock of Great Britain, and one which is likely to find its way to the shelves of every country gentleman's library."—*The Times.*

"The latest edition of 'Farm Live Stock of Great Britain' is a production to be proud of, and its issue not the least of the services which its author has rendered to agricultural science."—*Scottish Farmer.*

"The book is very attractive, . . . and we can scarcely imagine the existence of a farmer who would not like to have a copy of this beautiful and useful work."—*Mark Lane Express.*

NOTE-BOOK OF AGRICULTURAL FACTS & FIGURES FOR FARMERS AND FARM STUDENTS.

By PRIMROSE MCCONNELL, B.Sc., Fellow of the Highland and Agricultural Society, Author of "Elements of Farming." Sixth Edition, Re-written, Revised, and greatly Enlarged. Fcap. 8vo, 480 pp., leather. [*Just Published.* **6/0**

SUMMARY OF CONTENTS: SURVEYING AND LEVELLING.—WEIGHTS AND MEASURES.—MACHINERY AND BUILDINGS.—LABOUR.—OPERATIONS.—DRAINING.—EMBANKING.—GEOLOGICAL MEMORANDA.—SOILS.—MANURES.—CROPPING.—CROPS.—ROTATIONS.—WEEDS.—FEEDING.—DAIRYING.—LIVE STOCK.—HORSES.—CATTLE.—SHEEP.—PIGS.—POULTRY.—FORESTRY.—HORTICULTURE.—MISCELLANEOUS.

"No farmer, and certainly no agricultural student, ought to be without this *multum-in-parvo* manual of all subjects connected with the farm."—*North British Agriculturist.*

"This little pocket-book contains a large amount of useful information upon all kinds of agricultural subjects. Something of the kind has long been wanted."—*Mark Lane Express.*

"The amount of information it contains is most surprising; the arrangement of the matter is so methodical—although so compressed—as to be intelligible to everyone who takes a glance through its pages. They teem with information."—*Farm and Home.*

BRITISH DAIRYING.

A Handy Volume on the Work of the Dairy-Farm. For the Use of Technical Instruction Classes, Students in Agricultural Colleges and the Working Dairy-Farmer. By Prof. J. P. SHELDON. With Illustrations. Second Edition, Revised. Crown 8vo, cloth. [*Just Published.* **2/6**

"Confidently recommended as a useful text-book on dairy farming."—*Agricultural Gazette.*

"Probably the best half-crown manual on dairy work that has yet been produced."—*North British Agriculturist.*

"It is the soundest little work we have yet seen on the subject."—*The Times.*

MILK, CHEESE, AND BUTTER.

A Practical Handbook on their Properties and the Processes of their Production. Including a Chapter on Cream and the Methods of its Separation from Milk. By JOHN OLIVER, late Principal of the Western Dairy Institute, Berkeley. With Coloured Plates and 200 Illustrations. Crown 8vo, cloth. **7/6**

"An exhaustive and masterly production. It may be cordially recommended to all students and practitioners of dairy science."—*North British Agriculturist.*

"We recommend this very comprehensive and carefully-written book to dairy-farmers and students of dairying. It is a distinct acquisition to the library of the agriculturist."—*Agricultural Gazette.*

SYSTEMATIC SMALL FARMING.

Or, The Lessons of My Farm. Being an Introduction to Modern Farm Practice for Small Farmers. By R. SCOTT BURN, Author of "Outlines of Modern Farming," &c. Crown 8vo, cloth. **6/0**

"This is the completest book of its class we have seen, and one which every amateur farmer will read with pleasure, and accept as a guide."—*Field.*

OUTLINES OF MODERN FARMING.

By R. SCOTT BURN. Soils, Manures, and Crops—Farming and Farming Economy—Cattle, Sheep, and Horses—Management of Dairy, Pigs, and Poultry—Utilisation of Town-Sewage, Irrigation, &c. Sixth Edition. In One Vol., 1,250 pp., half-bound, profusely Illustrated **12/0**

FARM ENGINEERING, The COMPLETE TEXT-BOOK of.

Comprising Draining and Embanking; Irrigation and Water Supply; Farm Roads, Fences and Gates; Farm Buildings; Barn Implements and Machines; Field Implements and Machines; Agricultural Surveying, &c. By Professor JOHN SCOTT. In One Vol., 1,150 pp., half-bound, with over 600 Illustrations. **12/0**

"Written with great care, as well as with knowledge and ability. The author has done his work well; we have found him a very trustworthy guide wherever we have tested his statements. The volume will be of great value to agricultural students."—*Mark Lane Express.*

THE FIELDS OF GREAT BRITAIN.

A Text-Book of Agriculture. Adapted to the Syllabus of the Science and Art Department. For Elementary and Advanced Students. By HUGH CLEMENTS (Board of Trade). Second Edition, Revised, with Additions. 18mo, cloth **2/6**

"It is a long time since we have seen a book which has pleased us more, or which contains such a vast and useful fund of knowledge."—*Educational Times.*

TABLES and MEMORANDA for FARMERS, GRAZIERS, AGRICULTURAL STUDENTS, SURVEYORS, LAND AGENTS, AUCTIONEERS, &c.

With a New System of Farm Book-keeping. By SIDNEY FRANCIS. Fifth Edition. 272 pp., waistcoat-pocket size, limp leather **1/6**

"Weighing less than 1 oz., and occupying no more space than a match-box, it contains a mass of facts and calculations which has never before, in such handy form, been obtainable. Every operation on the farm is dealt with. The work may be taken as thoroughly accurate, the whole of the tables having been revised by Dr. Fream. We cordially recommend it."—*Bell's Weekly Messenger.*

THE ROTHAMSTED EXPERIMENTS AND THEIR PRACTICAL LESSONS FOR FARMERS.

Part I. STOCK. Part II. CROPS. By C. J. R. TIPPER. Crown 8vo, cloth. [*Just Published.* **3/6**

"We have no doubt that the book will be welcomed by a large class of farmers and others interested in agriculture."—*Standard.*

FERTILISERS AND FEEDING STUFFS.

A Handbook for the Practical Farmer. By Bernard Dyer, D.Sc. (Lond.) With the Text of the Fertilisers and Feeding Stuffs Act of 1893, &c. Third Edition, Revised. Crown 8vo, cloth. [*Just Published.* **1/0**

"This little book is precisely what it professes to be—'A Handbook for the Practical Farmer.' Dr. Dyer has done farmers good service in placing at their disposal so much useful information in so intelligible a form."—*The Times.*

BEES FOR PLEASURE AND PROFIT.

A Guide to the Manipulation of Bees, the Production of Honey, and the General Management of the Apiary. By G. Gordon Samson. With numerous Illustrations. Crown 8vo, cloth **1/0**

BOOK-KEEPING for FARMERS and ESTATE OWNERS.

A Practical Treatise, presenting, in Three Plans, a System adapted for all Classes of Farms. By Johnson M. Woodman, Chartered Accountant. Second Edition, Revised. Crown 8vo, cloth **2/6**

"The volume is a capital study of a most important subject."—*Agricultural Gazette.*

WOODMAN'S YEARLY FARM ACCOUNT BOOK.

Giving Weekly Labour Account and Diary, and showing the Income and Expenditure under each Department of Crops, Live Stock, Dairy, &c., &c. With Valuation, Profit and Loss Account, and Balance Sheet at the End of the Year. By Johnson M. Woodman, Chartered Accountant. Second Edition. Folio, half-bound . . . . *Net* **7/6**

"Contains every requisite form for keeping farm accounts readily and accurately."—*Agriculture.*

THE FORCING GARDEN.

Or, How to Grow Early Fruits, Flowers and Vegetables. With Plans and Estimates for Building Glasshouses, Pits and Frames. With Illustrations. By Samuel Wood. Crown 8vo, cloth **3/6**

"A good book, containing a great deal of valuable teaching."—*Gardeners' Magazine.*

A PLAIN GUIDE TO GOOD GARDENING.

Or, How to Grow Vegetables, Fruits, and Flowers. By S. Wood. Fourth Edition, with considerable Additions, and numerous Illustrations. Crown 8vo, cloth **3/6**

"A very good book, and one to be highly recommended as a practical guide. The practical directions are excellent."—*Athenæum.*

MULTUM-IN-PARVO GARDENING.

Or, How to Make One Acre of Land produce £620 a year, by the Cultivation of Fruits and Vegetables; also, How to Grow Flowers in Three Glass Houses, so as to realise £176 per annum clear Profit. By Samuel Wood, Author of "Good Gardening," &c. Sixth Edition, Crown 8vo, sewed . . . **1/0**

"We are bound to recommend it as not only suited to the case of the amateur and gentleman's gardener, but to the market grower."—*Gardeners' Magazine.*

THE LADIES' MULTUM-IN-PARVO FLOWER GARDEN.

And Amateur's Complete Guide. By S. Wood. Crown 8vo, cloth . **3/6**

"Full of shrewd hints and useful instructions, based on a lifetime of experience."—*Scotsman.*

POTATOES: HOW TO GROW AND SHOW THEM.

A Practical Guide to the Cultivation and General Treatment of the Potato. By J. Pink. Crown 8vo **2/0**

MARKET AND KITCHEN GARDENING.

By C. W. Shaw, late Editor of *Gardening Illustrated.* Cloth . . . **3/6**

"The most valuable compendium of kitchen and market-garden work published."—*Farmer.*

AUCTIONEERING, VALUING, LAND SURVEYING, ESTATE AGENCY, &c.

INWOOD'S TABLES FOR PURCHASING ESTATES AND FOR THE VALUATION OF PROPERTIES,

Including Advowsons, Assurance Policies, Copyholds, Deferred Annuities, Freeholds, Ground Rents, Immediate Annuities, Leaseholds, Life Interests, Mortgages, Perpetuities, Renewals of Leases, Reversions, Sinking Funds, &c., &c. 26th Edition, Revised and Extended by **William Schooling**, F.R.A.S., with Logarithms of Natural Numbers and **Thoman's** Logarithmic Interest and Annuity Tables. 360 pp., Demy 8vo, cloth.

[*Just Published. Net* **8/0**

"Those interested in the purchase and sale of estates, and in the adjustment of compensation cases, as well as in transactions in annuities, life insurances, &c., will find the present edition of eminent service."—*Engineering.*

"This valuable book has been considerably enlarged and improved by the labours of Mr. Schooling, and is now very complete indeed."—*Economist.*

"Altogether this edition will prove of extreme value to many classes of professional men in saving them many long and tedious calculations."—*Investors' Review.*

THE APPRAISER, AUCTIONEER, BROKER, HOUSE AND ESTATE AGENT AND VALUER'S POCKET ASSISTANT.

For the Valuation for Purchase, Sale, or Renewal of Leases, Annuities, and Reversions, and of Property generally; with Prices for Inventories, &c. By **John Wheeler**, Valuer, &c. Sixth Edition, Re-written and greatly Extended by **C. Norris**, Surveyor, Valuer, &c. Royal 32mo, cloth **5/0**

"A neat and concise book of reference, containing an admirable and clearly-arranged list of prices for inventories, and a very practical guide to determine the value of furniture, &c."—*Standard.*

"Contains a large quantity of varied and useful information as to the valuation for purchase, sale, or renewal of leases, annuities and reversions, and of property generally, with prices for inventories, and a guide to determine the value of interior fittings and other effects."—*Builder.*

AUCTIONEERS: THEIR DUTIES AND LIABILITIES.

A Manual of Instruction and Counsel for the Young Auctioneer. By **Robert Squibbs**, Auctioneer. Second Edition, Revised and partly Re-written. Demy 8vo, cloth **12/6**

"The standard text-book on the topics of which it treats."—*Athenæum.*

"The work is one of general excellent character, and gives much information in a compendious and satisfactory form."—*Builder.*

"May be recommended as giving a great deal of information on the law relating to auctioneers, in a very readable form."—*Law Journal.*

"Auctioneers may be congratulated on having so pleasing a writer to minister to their special needs."—*Solicitors' Journal.*

THE AGRICULTURAL VALUER'S ASSISTANT.

A Practical Handbook on the Valuation of Landed Estates; including Example of a Detailed Report on Management and Realisation; Forms of Valuations of Tenant Right; Lists of Local Agricultural Customs; Scales of Compensation under the Agricultural Holdings Act, and a Brief Treatise on Compensation under the Lands Clauses Acts, &c. By **Tom Bright**, Agricultural Valuer. Author of "The Agricultural Surveyor and Estate Agent's Handbook." Fourth Edition, with Appendix containing a Digest of the Agricultural Holdings Acts, 1883 and 1900. Crown 8vo, cloth.

[*Just Published. Net* **6/0**

"Full of tables and examples in connection with the valuation of tenant-right, estates, labour, contents and weights of timber, and farm produce of all kinds."—*Agricultural Gazette.*

"An eminently practical handbook, full of practical tables and data of undoubted interest and value to surveyors and auctioneers in preparing valuations of all kinds."—*Farmer.*

POLE PLANTATIONS AND UNDERWOODS.

A Practical Handbook on Estimating the Cost of Forming, Renovating, Improving, and Grubbing Plantations and Underwoods, their Valuation for Purposes of Transfer, Rental, Sale or Assessment. By **Tom Bright**. Crown 8vo, cloth **3/6**

"To valuers, foresters and agents it will be a welcome aid."—*North British Agriculturist.*

"Well calculated to assist the valuer in the discharge of his duties, and of undoubted interest and use both to surveyors and auctioneers in preparing valuations of all kinds "—*Kent Herald.*

AGRICULTURAL SURVEYOR AND ESTATE AGENT'S HANDBOOK.

Of Practical Rules, Formulæ, Tables, and Data. A Comprehensive Manual for the Use of Surveyors, Agents, Landowners, and others interested in the Equipment, the Management, or the Valuation of Landed Estates. By Tom Bright, Agricultural Surveyor and Valuer, Author of "The Agricultural Valuer's Assistant," &c. With Illustrations. Fcap. 8vo, Leather. [*Just Published. Net* **7/6**

"An exceedingly useful book, the contents of which are admirably chosen. The classes for whom the work is intended will find it convenient to have this comprehensive handbook accessible for reference."—*Live Stock Journal.*

"It is a singularly compact and well informed compendium of the facts and figures likely to be required in estate work, and is certain to prove of much service to those to whom it is addressed."—*Scotsman.*

THE LAND VALUER'S BEST ASSISTANT.

Being Tables on a very much Improved Plan, for Calculating the Value of Estates. With Tables for reducing Scotch, Irish, and Provincial Customary Acres to Statute Measure, &c. By R. Hudson, C.E. New Edition. Royal 32mo, leather, elastic band **4/0**

"Of incalculable value to the country gentleman and professional man."—*Farmers' Journal.*

THE LAND IMPROVER'S POCKET-BOOK.

Comprising Formulæ, Tables, and Memoranda required in any Computation relating to the Permanent Improvement of Landed Property. By John Ewart, Surveyor. Second Edition, Revised. Royal 32mo, oblong, leather . **4/0**

"A compendious and handy little volume."—*Spectator.*

THE LAND VALUER'S COMPLETE POCKET-BOOK.

Being the above Two Works bound together. Leather **7/6**

HANDBOOK OF HOUSE PROPERTY.

A Popular and Practical Guide to the Purchase, Mortgage, Tenancy, and Compulsory Sale of Houses and Land, including Dilapidations and Fixtures: with Examples of all kinds of Valuations, Information on Building and on the right use of Decorative Art. By E. L. Tarbuck, Architect and Surveyor. Sixth Edition. 12mo, cloth **5/0**

"The advice is thoroughly practical."—*Law Journal.*

"For all who have dealings with house property, this is an indispensable guide."—*Decoration.*

"Carefully brought up to date, and much improved by the addition of a division on Fine Art. A well-written and thoughtful work."—*Land Agent's Record.*

LAW AND MISCELLANEOUS.

MODERN JOURNALISM.

A Handbook of Instruction and Counsel for the Young Journalist. By John B. Mackie, Fellow of the Institute of Journalists. Crown 8vo, cloth . **2/0**

"This invaluable guide to journalism is a work which all aspirants to a journalistic career will read with advantage."—*Journalist.*

HANDBOOK FOR SOLICITORS AND ENGINEERS

Engaged in Promoting Private Acts of Parliament and Provisional Orders for the Authorisation of Railways, Tramways, Gas and Water Works, &c. By L. Livingstone Macassey, of the Middle Temple, Barrister-at-Law, M. Inst. C.E. 8vo, cloth . . . . **£1 5s.**

PATENTS for INVENTIONS, HOW to PROCURE THEM.

Compiled for the Use of Inventors, Patentees and others. By G. G. M. Hardingham, Assoc. Mem. Inst. C.E., &c. Demy 8vo, cloth . . . **1/6**

CONCILIATION & ARBITRATION in LABOUR DISPUTES.

A Historical Sketch and Brief Statement of the Present Position of the Question at Home and Abroad. By J. S. Jeans, Author of "England's Supremacy," &c. Crown 8vo, 200 pp., cloth **2/6**

EVERY MAN'S OWN LAWYER.

A Handy-Book of the Principles of Law and Equity. With a Concise Dictionary of Legal Terms. By A BARRISTER. Thirty-eighth Edition, carefully Revised, and including New Acts of Parliament of 1900. Comprising the *Companies Act, 1900*; the *Money-Lenders Act, 1900*; the *Agricultural Holdings Act, 1900*; the *Workmen's Compensation Act, 1900*; the *Wild Animals in Captivity Protection Act, 1900*; the *Finance Act, 1900*, and other enactments of the year. *Judicial Decisions during the year have also been duly noted.* Crown 8vo, 750 pp., strongly bound in cloth. [*Just Published.* **6/8**

⁂ *This Standard Work of Reference forms* A COMPLETE EPITOME OF THE LAWS OF ENGLAND, *comprising (amongst other matter)*:

THE RIGHTS AND WRONGS OF INDIVIDUALS—LANDLORD AND TENANT—VENDORS AND PURCHASERS—LEASES AND MORTGAGES—PRINCIPAL AND AGENT—PARTNERSHIP AND COMPANIES—MASTERS, SERVANTS AND WORKMEN—CONTRACTS AND AGREEMENTS—BORROWERS, LENDERS AND SURETIES—SALE AND PURCHASE OF GOODS—CHEQUES, BILLS AND NOTES—BILLS OF SALE—BANKRUPTCY—RAILWAY AND SHIPPING LAW—LIFE, FIRE, AND MARINE INSURANCE—ACCIDENT AND FIDELITY INSURANCE—CRIMINAL LAW—PARLIAMENTARY ELECTIONS—COUNTY COUNCILS—DISTRICT COUNCILS—PARISH COUNCILS—MUNICIPAL CORPORATIONS—LIBEL AND SLANDER—PUBLIC HEALTH AND NUISANCES—COPYRIGHT, PATENTS, TRADE MARKS—HUSBAND AND WIFE—DIVORCE—INFANCY—CUSTODY OF CHILDREN—TRUSTEES AND EXECUTORS—CLERGY, CHURCHWARDENS, &C.—GAME LAWS AND SPORTING—INNKEEPERS—HORSES AND DOGS—TAXES AND DEATH DUTIES—FORMS OF AGREEMENTS, WILLS, CODICILS, NOTICES, &C.

☞ *The object of this work is to enable those who consult it to help themselves to the law; and thereby to dispense, as far as possible, with professional assistance and advice. There are many wrongs and grievances which persons submit to from time to time through not knowing how or where to apply for redress; and many persons have as great a dread of a lawyer's office as of a lion's den. With this book at hand it is believed that many a* SIX-AND-EIGHTPENCE *may be saved; many a wrong redressed; many a right reclaimed; many a law suit avoided; and many an evil abated. The work has established itself as the standard legal adviser of all classes, and has also made a reputation for itself as a useful book of reference for lawyers residing at a distance from law libraries, who are glad to have at hand a work embodying recent decisions and enactments.*

OPINIONS OF THE PRESS.

"It is a complete code of English Law written in plain language, which all can understand. . . . Should be in the hands of every business man, and all who wish to abolish lawyers' bills."—*Weekly Times.*

"A useful and concise epitome of the law, compiled with considerable care."—*Law Magazine.*

"A complete digest of the most useful facts which constitute English law."—*Globe.*

"This excellent handbook. . . . Admirably done, admirably arranged, and admirably cheap."—*Leeds Mercury*

"A concise, cheap, and complete epitome of the English law. So plainly written that he who runs may read, and he who reads may understand."—*Figaro.*

"A dictionary of legal facts well put together. The book is a very useful one."—*Spectator.*

THE PAWNBROKER'S, FACTOR'S, AND MERCHANT'S GUIDE TO THE LAW OF LOANS AND PLEDGES.

With the Statutes and a Digest of Cases. By H. C. FOLKARD, Barrister-at-Law. Cloth **3/6**

LABOUR CONTRACTS.

A Popular Handbook on the Law of Contracts for Works and Services. By DAVID GIBBONS. Fourth Edition, with Appendix of Statutes by T. F. UTTLEY, Solicitor. Fcap. 8vo, cloth **3/6**

SUMMARY OF THE FACTORY AND WORKSHOP ACTS

(1878-1891). For the Use of Manufacturers and Managers. By EMILE GARCKE and J. M. FELLS. (Reprinted from "FACTORY ACCOUNTS.") Crown 8vo, sewed . . . . **6D.**

BRADBURY, AGNEW, & CO. LD., PRINTERS, LONDON AND TONBRIDGE.

WEALE'S SERIES

OF

SCIENTIFIC AND TECHNICAL WORKS.

"It is not too much to say that no books have ever proved more popular with or more useful to young engineers and others than the excellent treatises comprised in WEALE'S SERIES."—**Engineer.**

A New Classified List.

PAGE
CIVIL ENGINEERING AND SURVEYING 2
MINING AND METALLURGY 3
MECHANICAL ENGINEERING 4
NAVIGATION, SHIPBUILDING, ETC. . 5
PAGE
ARCHITECTURE AND BUILDING . . 6
INDUSTRIAL AND USEFUL ARTS . . 9
AGRICULTURE, GARDENING, ETC. . 10
MATHEMATICS, ARITHMETIC, ETC. . 12
BOOKS OF REFERENCE AND MISCELLANEOUS VOLUMES . . 14

CROSBY LOCKWOOD AND SON,
7, STATIONERS' HALL COURT, LONDON, E.C.
1901.

CIVIL ENGINEERING & SURVEYING.

Civil Engineering.
By Henry Law, M.Inst.C.E. Including a Treatise on Hydraulic Engineering by G. R. Burnell, M.I.C.E. Seventh Edition, revised, with Large Additions by D. K. Clark, M.I.C.E. . . . **6/6**

Pioneer Engineering:
A Treatise on the Engineering Operations connected with the Settlement of Waste Lands in New Countries. By Edward Dobson, M.Inst.C.E. With numerous Plates. Second Edition **4/6**

Iron Bridges of Moderate Span:
Their Construction and Erection. By Hamilton W. Pendred. With 40 Illustrations **2/0**

Iron and Steel Bridges and Viaducts.
A Practical Treatise upon their Construction for the use of Engineers, Draughtsmen, and Students. By Francis Campin, C.E. With numerous Illustrations **3/6**

Constructional Iron and Steel Work,
As applied to Public, Private, and Domestic Buildings. By Francis Campin, C.E. **3/6**

Tubular and other Iron Girder Bridges.
Describing the Britannia and Conway Tubular Bridges. By G. Drysdale Dempsey, C.E. Fourth Edition **2/0**

Materials and Construction:
A Theoretical and Practical Treatise on the Strains, Designing, and Erection of Works of Construction. By Francis Campin, C.E. . . . **3/0**

Sanitary Work in the Smaller Towns and in Villages.
By Charles Slagg, Assoc. M.Inst.C.E. Third Edition . . **3/0**

Roads and Streets (The Construction of).
In Two Parts: I. The Art of Constructing Common Roads, by H. Law, C.E., Revised by D. K. Clark, C.E.; II. Recent Practice: Including Pavements of Wood, Asphalte, &c. By D. K. Clark, C.E. **4/6**

Gas Works (The Construction of),
And the Manufacture and Distribution of Coal Gas. By S. Hughes, C.E. Re-written by William Richards, C.E. Eighth Edition . . **5/6**

Water Works
For the Supply of Cities and Towns. With a Description of the Principal Geological Formations of England as influencing Supplies of Water. By Samuel Hughes, F.G.S., C.E. Enlarged Edition **4/0**

The Power of Water,
As applied to drive Flour Mills, and to give motion to Turbines and other Hydrostatic Engines. By Joseph Glynn, F.R.S. New Edition . **2/0**

Wells and Well-Sinking.
By John Geo. Swindell, A.R.I.B.A., and G. R. Burnell, C.E. Revised Edition. With a New Appendix on the Qualities of Water. Illustrated **2/0**

The Drainage of Lands, Towns, and Buildings.
By G. D. Dempsey, C.E. Revised, with large Additions on Recent Practice, by D. K. Clark, M.I.C.E. Third Edition **4/6**

The Blasting and Quarrying of Stone,
For Building and other Purposes. With Remarks on the Blowing up of Bridges. By Gen. Sir J. Burgoyne, K.C.B. **1/6**

Foundations and Concrete Works.
With Practical Remarks on Footings, Planking, Sand, Concrete, Béton, Pile-driving, Caissons, and Cofferdams. By E. Dobson, M.R.I.B.A. Eighth Edition **1/6**

Pneumatics,
Including Acoustics and the Phenomena of Wind Currents, for the Use of Beginners. By CHARLES TOMLINSON, F.R.S. Fourth Edition . **1/6**

Land and Engineering Surveying.
For Students and Practical Use. By T. BAKER, C.E. Eighteenth Edition, Revised and Extended by F. E. DIXON, A.M. Inst. C.E., Professional Associate of the Institution of Surveyors. With numerous Illustrations and two Lithographic Plates . . . . [*Just published* **2/0**

Mensuration and Measuring.
For Students and Practical Use. With the Mensuration and Levelling of Land for the purposes of Modern Engineering. By T. BAKER, C.E. New Edition by E. NUGENT, C.E. **1/6**

MINING AND METALLURGY.

Mineralogy,
Rudiments of. By A. RAMSAY, F.G.S. Fourth Edition, revised and enlarged. Woodcuts and Plates **3/6**

Coal and Coal Mining,
A Rudimentary Treatise on. By the late Sir WARINGTON W. SMYTH, F.R.S. Eighth Edition, revised and extended by T. FORSTER BROWN. [*Just published* **3/6**

Metallurgy of Iron.
Containing Methods of Assay, Analyses of Iron Ores, Processes of Manufacture of Iron and Steel, &c. By H. BAUERMAN, F.G.S. With numerous Illustrations. Sixth Edition, revised and enlarged **5/0**

The Mineral Surveyor and Valuer's Complete Guide.
By W. LINTERN. Fourth Edition, with an Appendix on Magnetic and Angular Surveying **3/6**

Slate and Slate Quarrying:
Scientific, Practical, and Commercial. By D. C. DAVIES, F.G.S. With numerous Illustrations and Folding Plates. Fourth Edition . . **3/0**

A First Book of Mining and Quarrying,
With the Sciences connected therewith, for Primary Schools and Self Instruction. By J. H. COLLINS, F.G.S. Second Edition . . . **1/6**

Subterraneous Surveying,
With and without the Magnetic Needle. By T. FENWICK and T. BAKER, C.E. Illustrated **2/6**

Mining Tools.
Manual of. By WILLIAM MORGANS, Lecturer on Practical Mining at the Bristol School of Mines **2/6**

Mining Tools, Atlas
Of Engravings to Illustrate the above, containing 235 Illustrations of Mining Tools, drawn to Scale. 4to **4/6**

Physical Geology,
Partly based on Major-General PORTLOCK'S "Rudiments of Geology." By RALPH TATE, A.L.S., &c. Woodcuts **2/0**

Historical Geology,
Partly based on Major-General PORTLOCK'S "Rudiments." By RALPH TATE, A.L.S., &c. Woodcuts **2/6**

Geology, Physical and Historical.
Consisting of "Physical Geology," which sets forth the Leading Principles of the Science; and "Historical Geology," which treats of the Mineral and Organic Conditions of the Earth at each successive epoch. By RALPH TATE, F.G.S. **4/6**

Electro-Metallurgy,
Practically Treated. By ALEXANDER WATT. Tenth Edition, enlarged and revised, including the most Recent Processes **3/6**

MECHANICAL ENGINEERING.

The Workman's Manual of Engineering Drawing.
By JOHN MAXTON, Instructor in Engineering Drawing, Royal Naval College, Greenwich. Seventh Edition. 300 Plates and Diagrams . 3/6

Fuels: Solid, Liquid, and Gaseous.
Their Analysis and Valuation. For the Use of Chemists and Engineers. By H. J. PHILLIPS, F.C.S., formerly Analytical and Consulting Chemist to the Great Eastern Railway. Third Edition 2/0

Fuel, Its Combustion and Economy.
Consisting of an Abridgment of "A Treatise on the Combustion of Coal and the Prevention of Smoke." By C. W. WILLIAMS, A.I.C.E. With Extensive Additions by D. K. CLARK, M.Inst.C.E. Fourth Edition . 3/6

The Boilermaker's Assistant
In Drawing, Templating, and Calculating Boiler Work, &c. By J. COURTNEY, Practical Boilermaker. Edited by D. K. CLARK, C.E. . 2/0

The Boiler-Maker's Ready Reckoner,
With Examples of Practical Geometry and Templating for the Use of Platers, Smiths, and Riveters. By JOHN COURTNEY. Edited by D. K. CLARK, M.I.C.E. Fourth Edition 4/0

⁂ *The last two Works in One Volume, half-bound, entitled* "THE BOILER-MAKER'S READY-RECKONER AND ASSISTANT." By J. COURTNEY and D. K. CLARK. *Price* 7/0.

Steam Boilers:
Their Construction and Management. By R. ARMSTRONG, C.E. Illustrated 1/6

Steam and Machinery Management.
A Guide to the Arrangement and Economical Management of Machinery. By M. POWIS BALE, M.Inst.M.E. 2/6

Steam and the Steam Engine,
Stationary and Portable. Being an Extension of the Treatise on the Steam Engine of Mr. J. SEWELL. By D. K. CLARK, C.E. Fourth Edition 3/6

The Steam Engine,
A Treatise on the Mathematical Theory of, with Rules and Examples for Practical Men. By T. BAKER, C.E. 1/6

The Steam Engine.
By Dr. LARDNER. Illustrated 1/6

Locomotive Engines,
By G. D. DEMPSEY, C.E. With large Additions treating of the Modern Locomotive, by D. K. CLARK, M.Inst.C.E. 3/0

Locomotive Engine-Driving.
A Practical Manual for Engineers in charge of Locomotive Engines. By MICHAEL REYNOLDS. Tenth Edition. 3*s.* 6*d.* limp; cloth boards . 4/6

Stationary Engine-Driving.
A Practical Manual for Engineers in charge of Stationary Engines. By MICHAEL REYNOLDS. Sixth Edition. 3*s.* 6*d.* limp; cloth boards . 4/6

The Smithy and Forge.
Including the Farrier's Art and Coach Smithing. By W. J. E. CRANE. Fourth Edition 2/6

Modern Workshop Practice,
As applied to Marine, Land, and Locomotive Engines, Floating Docks, Dredging Machines, Bridges, Ship-building, &c. By J. G. WINTON Fourth Edition, Illustrated 3/6

Mechanical Engineering.
Comprising Metallurgy, Moulding, Casting, Forging, Tools, Workshop Machinery, Mechanical Manipulation, Manufacture of the Steam Engine, &c. By FRANCIS CAMPIN, C.E. Third Edition 2/6

Details of Machinery.
Comprising Instructions for the Execution of various Works in Iron in the Fitting-Shop, Foundry, and Boiler-Yard. By FRANCIS CAMPIN, C.E. 3/0

Elementary Engineering:
A Manual for Young Marine Engineers and Apprentices. In the Form of Questions and Answers on Metals, Alloys, Strength of Materials, &c. By J. S. Brewer. Fourth Edition **1/6**

Power in Motion:
Horse-power Motion, Toothed-Wheel Gearing, Long and Short Driving Bands, Angular Forces, &c. By James Armour, C.E. Third Edition **2/0**

Iron and Heat,
Exhibiting the Principles concerned in the Construction of Iron Beams, Pillars, and Girders. By J. Armour, C.E. **2/6**

Practical Mechanism,
And Machine Tools. By T. Baker, C.E. With Remarks on Tools and Machinery, by J. Nasmyth, C.E. **2/6**

Mechanics:
Being a concise Exposition of the General Principles of Mechanical Science, and their Applications. By Charles Tomlinson, F.R.S. . . . **1/6**

Cranes (The Construction of),
And other Machinery for Raising Heavy Bodies for the Erection of Buildings, &c. By Joseph Glynn, F.R.S. **1/6**

NAVIGATION, SHIPBUILDING, ETC.

The Sailor's Sea Book:
A Rudimentary Treatise on Navigation. By James Greenwood, B.A. With numerous Woodcuts and Coloured Plates. New and enlarged Edition. By W. H. Rosser **2/6**

Practical Navigation.
Consisting of The Sailor's Sea-Book, by James Greenwood and W. H. Rosser; together with Mathematical and Nautical Tables for the Working of the Problems, by Henry Law, C.E., and Prof. J. R. Young. **7/0**

Navigation and Nautical Astronomy,
In Theory and Practice. By Prof. J. R. Young. New Edition. **2/6**

Mathematical Tables,
For Trigonometrical, Astronomical, and Nautical Calculations; to which is prefixed a Treatise on Logarithms. By H. Law, C.E. Together with a Series of Tables for Navigation and Nautical Astronomy. By Professor J. R. Young. New Edition **4/0**

Masting, Mast-Making, and Rigging of Ships.
Also Tables of Spars, Rigging, Blocks; Chain, Wire, and Hemp Ropes, &c., relative to every class of vessels. By Robert Kipping, N.A. . **2/0**

Sails and Sail-Making.
With Draughting, and the Centre of Effort of the Sails. By Robert Kipping, N.A. **2/6**

Marine Engines and Steam Vessels.
By R. Murray, C.E. Eighth Edition, thoroughly revised, with Additions by the Author and by George Carlisle, C.E. **4/6**

Naval Architecture:
An Exposition of Elementary Principles. By James Peake . . **3/6**

Ships for Ocean and River Service,
Principles of the Construction of. By Hakon A. Sommerfeldt . **1/6**

Atlas of Engravings
To Illustrate the above. Twelve large folding Plates. Royal 4to, cloth **7/6**

The Forms of Ships and Boats.
By W. Bland. Ninth Edition, with numerous Illustrations and Models **1/6**

ARCHITECTURE AND THE BUILDING ARTS.

Constructional Iron and Steel Work,

As applied to Public, Private, and Domestic Buildings. By FRANCIS CAMPIN, C.E. 3/6

Building Estates:

A Treatise on the Development, Sale, Purchase, and Management of Building Land. By F. MAITLAND. Third Edition 2/0

The Science of Building:

An Elementary Treatise on the Principles of Construction. By E. WYNDHAM TARN, M.A. Lond. Fourth Edition 3/6

The Art of Building:

General Principles of Construction, Strength, and Use of Materials, Working Drawings, Specifications, &c. By EDWARD DOBSON, M.R.I.B.A. . 2/0

A Book on Building,

Civil and Ecclesiastical. By Sir EDMUND BECKETT, Q.C. (Lord GRIMTHORPE). Second Edition 4/6

Dwelling-Houses (The Erection of),

Illustrated by a Perspective View, Plans, and Sections of a Pair of Villas, with Specification, Quantities, and Estimates. By S. H. BROOKS, Architect 2/6

Cottage Building.

By C. BRUCE ALLEN. Eleventh Edition, with Chapter on Economic Cottages for Allotments, by E. E. ALLEN, C.E. 2/0

Acoustics in Relation to Architecture and Building:

The Laws of Sound as applied to the Arrangement of Buildings. By Professor T. ROGER SMITH, F.R.I.B.A. New Edition, Revised . . 1/6

The Rudiments of Practical Bricklaying.

General Principles of Bricklaying; Arch Drawing, Cutting, and Setting; Pointing; Paving, Tiling, &c. By ADAM HAMMOND. With 68 Woodcuts 1/6

The Art of Practical Brick Cutting and Setting.

By ADAM HAMMOND. With 90 Engravings 1/6

Brickwork:

A Practical Treatise, embodying the General and Higher Principles of Bricklaying, Cutting and Setting; with the Application of Geometry to Roof Tiling, &c. By F. WALKER 1/6

Bricks and Tiles,

Rudimentary Treatise on the Manufacture of; containing an Outline of the Principles of Brickmaking. By E. DOBSON, M.R.I.B.A. Additions by C. TOMLINSON, F.R.S. Illustrated 3/0

The Practical Brick and Tile Book.

Comprising: BRICK AND TILE MAKING, by E. DOBSON, M.INST.C.E.; Practical BRICKLAYING, by A. HAMMOND; BRICK-CUTTING AND SETTING, by A. HAMMOND. 550 pp. with 270 Illustrations, half-bound . . 6/0

Carpentry and Joinery—

THE ELEMENTARY PRINCIPLES OF CARPENTRY. Chiefly composed from the Standard Work of THOMAS TREDGOLD, C.E. With Additions, and TREATISE ON JOINERY, by E. W. TARN, M.A. Seventh Edition 3/6

Carpentry and Joinery—Atlas

Of 35 Plates to accompany and Illustrate the foregoing book. With Descriptive Letterpress. 4to 6/0

A Practical Treatise on Handrailing;
Showing New and Simple Methods. By GEO. COLLINGS. Second Edition, Revised, including a TREATISE ON STAIRBUILDING. With Plates . 2/6

Circular Work in Carpentry and Joinery.
A Practical Treatise on Circular Work of Single and Double Curvature. By GEORGE COLLINGS. Third Edition 2/6

Roof Carpentry:
Practical Lessons in the Framing of Wood Roofs. For the Use of Working Carpenters. By GEO. COLLINGS 2/6

The Construction of Roofs of Wood and Iron;
Deduced chiefly from the Works of Robison, Tredgold, and Humber. By E. WYNDHAM TARN, M.A., Architect. Third Edition 1/6

The Joints Made and Used by Builders.
By WYVILL J. CHRISTY, Architect. With 160 Woodcuts . . 3/0

Shoring
And its Application: A Handbook for the Use of Students. By GEORGE H. BLAGROVE. With 31 Illustrations 1/6

The Timber Importer's, Timber Merchant's, and Builder's Standard Guide.
By R. E. GRANDY 2/0

Plumbing:
A Text-Book to the Practice of the Art or Craft of the Plumber. With Chapters upon House Drainage and Ventilation. By WM. PATON BUCHAN. Eighth Edition, Re-written and Enlarged, with 500 Illustrations . 3/6

Ventilation:
A Text Book to the Practice of the Art of Ventilating Buildings. By W. P. BUCHAN, R.P., Author of "Plumbing," &c. With 170 Illustrations 3/6

The Practical Plasterer:
A Compendium of Plain and Ornamental Plaster Work. By W. KEMP 2/0

House Painting, Graining, Marbling, & Sign Writing.
With a Course of Elementary Drawing, and a Collection of Useful Receipts. By ELLIS A. DAVIDSON. Eighth Edition. Coloured Plates . . 5/0

⁂ *The above, in cloth boards, strongly bound,* 6/0

A Grammar of Colouring,
Applied to Decorative Painting and the Arts. By GEORGE FIELD. New Edition, enlarged, by ELLIS A. DAVIDSON. With Coloured Plates . 3/0

Elementary Decoration
As applied to Dwelling Houses, &c. By JAMES W. FACEY. Illustrated 2/0

Practical House Decoration.
A Guide to the Art of Ornamental Painting, the Arrangement of Colours in Apartments, and the Principles of Decorative Design. By JAMES W. FACEY. 2/6

⁂ *The last two Works in One handsome Vol., half-bound, entitled* "HOUSE DECORATION, ELEMENTARY AND PRACTICAL," *price* 5/0

Portland Cement for Users.
By HENRY FAIJA, A.M.Inst.C.E. Third Edition, Corrected . . 2/0

Limes, Cements, Mortars, Concretes, Mastics, Plastering, &c.
By G. R. BURNELL C.E. Fifteenth Edition 1/6

Masonry and Stone-Cutting.
The Principles of Masonic Projection and their application to Construction. By EDWARD DOBSON, M.R.I.B.A. 2/6

Arches, Piers, Buttresses, &c.:
Experimental Essays on the Principles of Construction. By W. BLAND. 1/6

Quantities and Measurements,
In Bricklayers', Masons', Plasterers', Plumbers', Painters', Paperhangers', Gilders', Smiths', Carpenters' and Joiners' Work. By A. C. BEATON 1/6

The Complete Measurer:
Setting forth the Measurement of Boards, Glass, Timber and Stone. By R. HORTON. Sixth Edition 4/0

⁂ *The above, strongly bound in leather, price* 5/0.

Light:
An Introduction to the Science of Optics. Designed for the Use of Students of Architecture, Engineering, and other Applied Sciences. By E. WYNDHAM TARN, M.A., Author of "The Science of Building," &c. . . 1/6

Hints to Young Architects.
By GEORGE WIGHTWICK, Architect. Sixth Edition, revised and enlarged by G. HUSKISSON GUILLAUME, Architect 3/6

Architecture—Orders:
The Orders and their Æsthetic Principles. By W. H. LEEDS. Illustrated. 1/6

Architecture—Styles:
The History and Description of the Styles of Architecture of Various Countries, from the Earliest to the Present Period. By T. TALBOT BURY, F.R.I.B.A. Illustrated 2/0

⁂ ORDERS AND STYLES OF ARCHITECTURE, *in One Vol.*, 3/6.

Architecture—Design:
The Principles of Design in Architecture, as deducible from Nature and exemplified in the Works of the Greek and Gothic Architects. By EDW. LACY GARBETT, Architect. Illustrated 2/6

⁂ *The three preceding Works in One handsome Vol., half bound, entitled* "MODERN ARCHITECTURE," *price* 6/0.

Perspective for Beginners.
Adapted to Young Students and Amateurs in Architecture, Painting, &c. By GEORGE PYNE 2/0

Architectural Modelling in Paper.
By T. A. RICHARDSON. With Illustrations, engraved by O. JEWITT 1/6

Glass Staining, and the Art of Painting on Glass.
From the German of Dr. GESSERT and EMANUEL OTTO FROMBERG. With an Appendix on THE ART OF ENAMELLING 2/6

Vitruvius—The Architecture of.
In Ten Books. Translated from the Latin by JOSEPH GWILT, F.S.A., F.R.A.S. With 23 Plates 5/0

N.B.—This is the only Edition of VITRUVIUS *procurable at a moderate price.*

Grecian Architecture,
An Inquiry into the Principles of Beauty in. With an Historical View of the Rise and Progress of the Art in Greece. By the EARL OF ABERDEEN 1/0

⁂ *The two preceding Works in One handsome Vol., half bound, entitled* "ANCIENT ARCHITECTURE," *price* 6/0.

INDUSTRIAL AND USEFUL ARTS.

Cements, Pastes, Glues, and Gums.

A Practical Guide to the Manufacture and Application of the various Agglutinants required for Workshop, Laboratory, or Office Use. With upwards of 900 Recipes and Formulæ. By H. C. Standage . . 2/0

Clocks and Watches, and Bells,

A Rudimentary Treatise on. By Sir Edmund Beckett, Q.C. (Lord Grimthorpe). Seventh Edition 4/6

The Goldsmith's Handbook.

Containing full Instructions in the Art of Alloying, Melting, Reducing, Colouring, Collecting and Refining, Recovery of Waste, Solders, Enamels, &c., &c. By George E. Gee. Fifth Edition 3/0

The Silversmith's Handbook,

On the same plan as the Goldsmith's Handbook. By G. E. Gee. 3/0

*** *The last two Works, in One handsome Vol., half-bound,* 7/0.

The Hall-Marking of Jewellery.

Comprising an account of all the different Assay Towns of the United Kingdom; with the Stamps and Laws relating to the Standards and Hall-Marks at the various Assay Offices. By George E. Gee . . . 3/0

French Polishing and Enamelling.

A Practical Work of Instruction, including numerous Recipes for making Polishes, Varnishes, Glaze-Lacquers, Revivers, &c. By R. Bitmead. [*Just Published.* 1/6

Practical Organ Building.

By W. E. Dickson, M.A. Second Edition, Revised, with Additions 2/6

Coach-Building:

A Practical Treatise. By James W. Burgess. With 57 Illustrations 2/6

The Cabinet-Maker's Guide

To the Entire Construction of Cabinet-Work. By R. Bitmead. [*Just Published.* 2/6

The Brass Founder's Manual:

Instructions for Modelling, Pattern Making, Moulding, Turning, &c. By W. Graham 2/0

The Sheet-Metal Worker's Guide.

A Practical Handbook for Tinsmiths, Coppersmiths, Zincworkers, &c., with 46 Diagrams. By W. J. E. Crane. Third Edition, revised . . 1/6

Sewing Machinery:

Its Construction, History, &c. With full Technical Directions for Adjusting, &c. By J. W. Urquhart, C.E. 2/0

Gas Fitting:

A Practical Handbook. By John Black. New Edition . . . 2/6

Construction of Door Locks.

From the Papers of A. C. Hobbs. Edited by C. Tomlinson, F.R.S. 2/6

The Model Locomotive Engineer, Fireman, and Engine-Boy.

By Michael Reynolds 3/6

The Art of Letter Painting made Easy.

By J. G. Badenoch. With 12 full-page Engravings of Examples . 1/6

The Art of Boot and Shoemaking.

Including Measurement, Last-fitting, Cutting-out, Closing and Making. By John Bedford Leno. With numerous Illustrations. Fourth Edition 2/0

Mechanical Dentistry:

A Practical Treatise on the Construction of the Various Kinds of Artificial Dentures. By Charles Hunter. Fourth Edition . . . 3/0

Wood Engraving:

A Practical and Easy Introduction to the Art. By W. N. Brown . 1/6

Laundry Management.

A Handbook for Use in Private and Public Laundries. By the Editor of "The Laundry Journal." 2/0

AGRICULTURE, GARDENING, ETC.

Draining and Embanking:
A Practical Treatise. By Prof. JOHN SCOTT. With 68 Illustrations 1/6

Irrigation and Water Supply:
A Practical Treatise on Water Meadows, Sewage Irrigation, Warping, &c.; on the Construction of Wells, Ponds, Reservoirs, &c. By Prof. JOHN SCOTT. With 34 Illustrations 1/6

Farm Roads, Fences, and Gates:
A Practical Treatise on the Roads, Tramways, and Waterways of the Farm; the Principles of Enclosures; and the different kinds of Fences, Gates, and Stiles. By Prof. JOHN SCOTT. With 75 Illustrations . 1/6

Farm Buildings:
A Practical Treatise on the Buildings necessary for various kinds of Farms, their Arrangement and Construction, with Plans and Estimates. By Prof. JOHN SCOTT. With 105 Illustrations 2/0

Barn Implements and Machines:
Treating of the Application of Power and Machines used in the Threshing-barn, Stockyard, Dairy, &c. By Prof. J. SCOTT. With 123 Illustrations. 2/0

Field Implements and Machines:
With Principles and Details of Construction and Points of Excellence, their Management, &c. By Prof. JOHN SCOTT. With 138 Illustrations 2/0

Agricultural Surveying:
A Treatise on Land Surveying, Levelling, and Setting-out; with Directions for Valuing Estates. By Prof. J. SCOTT. With 62 Illustrations . 1/6

Farm Engineering.
By Professor JOHN SCOTT. Comprising the above Seven Volumes in One, 1,150 pages, and over 600 Illustrations. Half-bound . . . 12/0

Outlines of Farm Management.
Treating of the General Work of the Farm; Stock; Contract Work; Labour, &c. By R. SCOTT BURN 2/6

Outlines of Landed Estates Management.
Treating of the Varieties of Lands, Methods of Farming, Setting-out of Farms, Roads, Fences, Gates, Drainage, &c. By R. SCOTT BURN . 2/6

⁂ *The above Two Vols. in One, handsomely half-bound, price* 6/0

Soils, Manures, and Crops.
(Vol. I. OUTLINES OF MODERN FARMING.) By R. SCOTT BURN . 2/0

Farming and Farming Economy.
(Vol. II. OUTLINES OF MODERN FARMING.) By R. SCOTT BURN 3/0

Stock: Cattle, Sheep, and Horses.
(Vol. III. OUTLINES OF MODERN FARMING.) By R. SCOTT BURN 2/6

Dairy, Pigs, and Poultry.
(Vol. IV. OUTLINES OF MODERN FARMING.) By R. SCOTT BURN 2/0

Utilization of Sewage, Irrigation, and Reclamation of Waste Land.
(Vol. V. OUTLINES OF MODERN FARMING.) By R. SCOTT BURN . 2/6

Outlines of Modern Farming.
By R. SCOTT BURN. Consisting of the above Five Volumes in One, 1,250 pp., profusely Illustrated, half-bound 12/0

Book-keeping for Farmers and Estate Owners.
A Practical Treatise, presenting, in Three Plans, a System adapted for all classes of Farms. By J. M. Woodman. Third Edition. revised . 2/6

Ready Reckoner for the Admeasurement of Land.
By A. Arman. Fourth Edition, revised and extended by C. Norris 2/0

Miller's, Corn Merchant's, and Farmer's Ready Reckoner.
Second Edition, revised, with a Price List of Modern Flour Mill Machinery. by W. S. Hutton, C.E. 2/0

The Hay and Straw Measurer.
New Tables for the Use of Auctioneers, Valuers, Farmers, Hay and Straw Dealers, &c. By John Steele 2/0

Meat Production.
A Manual for Producers, Distributors, and Consumers of Butchers' Meat By John Ewart 2/6

Sheep:
The History, Structure, Economy, and Diseases of. By W. C. Spooner, M.R.V.S. Fifth Edition, with fine Engravings. 3/6

Market and Kitchen Gardening.
By C. W. Shaw, late Editor of "Gardening Illustrated" . . . 3/0

Kitchen Gardening Made Easy.
Showing the best means of Cultivating every known Vegetable and Herb, &c., with directions for management all the year round. By George M. F. Glenny. Illustrated 1/6

Cottage Gardening:
Or Flowers, Fruits, and Vegetables for Small Gardens. By E. Hobday. 1/6

Garden Receipts.
Edited by Charles W. Quin 1/6

Fruit Trees,
The Scientific and Profitable Culture of. From the French of M. Du Breuil. Fifth Edition, carefully Revised by George Glenny. With 187 Woodcuts 3/6

The Tree Planter and Plant Propagator:
With numerous Illustrations of Grafting, Layering, Budding, Implements, Houses, Pits, &c. By Samuel Wood 2/0

The Tree Pruner:
A Practical Manual on the Pruning of Fruit Trees, Shrubs, Climbers, and Flowering Plants. With numerous Illustrations. By Samuel Wood 1/6

⁂ *The above Two Vols. in One, handsomely half-bound, price* 3/6

The Art of Grafting and Budding.
By Charles Baltet. With Illustrations 2/6

MATHEMATICS, ARITHMETIC, ETC.

Descriptive Geometry,
An Elementary Treatise on; with a Theory of Shadows and of Perspective, extracted from the French of G. MONGE. To which is added a Description of the Principles and Practice of Isometrical Projection. By J. F. HEATHER, M.A. With 14 Plates 2/0

Practical Plane Geometry:
Giving the Simplest Modes of Constructing Figures contained in one Plane and Geometrical Construction of the Ground. By J. F. HEATHER, M.A. With 215 Woodcuts 2/0

Analytical Geometry and Conic Sections,
A Rudimentary Treatise on. By JAMES HANN. A New Edition, rewritten and enlarged by Professor J. R. YOUNG 2/0

Euclid (The Elements of).
With many Additional Propositions and Explanatory Notes; to which is prefixed an Introductory Essay on Logic. By HENRY LAW, C.E. . 2/6

*** *Sold also separately, viz:—*

Euclid. The First Three Books. By HENRY LAW, C.E. 1/6
Euclid. Books 4, 5, 6, 11, 12. By HENRY LAW, C.E. 1/6

Plane Trigonometry,
The Elements of. By JAMES HANN. 1/6

Spherical Trigonometry,
The Elements of. By JAMES HANN. Revised by CHARLES H. DOWLING, C.E. 1/0

*** *Or with "The Elements of Plane Trigonometry," in One Volume,* 2/6

Differential Calculus,
Elements of the. By W. S. B. WOOLHOUSE, F.R.A.S., &c. . . . 1/6

Integral Calculus.
By HOMERSHAM COX, B.A. 1/6

Algebra,
The Elements of. By JAMES HADDON, M.A. With Appendix, containing Miscellaneous Investigations, and a Collection of Problems . . 2/0

A Key and Companion to the Above.
An extensive Repository of Solved Examples and Problems in Algebra. By J. R. YOUNG 1/6

Commercial Book-keeping.
With Commercial Phrases and Forms in English, French, Italian, and German. By JAMES HADDON, M.A.. . . . . 1/6

Arithmetic,
A Rudimentary Treatise on. With full Explanations of its Theoretical Principles, and numerous Examples for Practice. For the Use of Schools and for Self-Instruction. By J. R. YOUNG, late Professor of Mathematics in Belfast College. Thirteenth Edition 1/6

A Key to the Above.
By J. R. YOUNG 1/6

Equational Arithmetic,
Applied to Questions of Interest, Annuities, Life Assurance, and General Commerce; with various Tables by which all Calculations may be greatly facilitated. By W. HIPSLEY 1/6

Arithmetic,
Rudimentary, for the Use of Schools and Self-Instruction. By JAMES HADDON, M.A. Revised by ABRAHAM ARMAN 1/6

A Key to the Above.
By A. ARMAN 1/6

Mathematical Instruments:

Their Construction, Adjustment, Testing, and Use concisely Explained. By J. F. HEATHER, M.A., of the Royal Military Academy, Woolwich. Fourteenth Edition, Revised, with Additions, by A. T. WALMISLEY, M.I.C.E. Original Edition, in 1 vol., Illustrated 2/0

*** *In ordering the above, be careful to say "Original Edition," or give the number in the Series* (32), *to distinguish it from the Enlarged Edition in* 3 *vols.* (*as follows*)—

Drawing and Measuring Instruments.

Including—I. Instruments employed in Geometrical and Mechanical Drawing, and in the Construction, Copying, and Measurement of Maps and Plans. II. Instruments used for the purposes of Accurate Measurement, and for Arithmetical Computations. By J. F. HEATHER, M.A. . 1/6

Optical Instruments.

Including (more especially) Telescopes, Microscopes, and Apparatus for producing copies of Maps and Plans by Photography. By J. F. HEATHER, M.A. Illustrated 1/6

Surveying and Astronomical Instruments.

Including—I. Instruments used for Determining the Geometrical Features of a portion of Ground. II. Instruments employed in Astronomical Observations. By J. F. HEATHER, M.A. Illustrated. . . . 1/6

*** *The above three volumes form an enlargement of the Author's original work, "Mathematical Instruments," price* 2/0. (*Described at top of page.*)

Mathematical Instruments:

Their Construction, Adjustment, Testing and Use. Comprising Drawing, Measuring, Optical, Surveying, and Astronomical Instruments. By J. F. HEATHER, M.A. Enlarged Edition, for the most part entirely re-written. The Three Parts as above, in One thick Volume. 4/6

The Slide Rule, and How to Use It.

Containing full, easy, and simple Instructions to perform all Business Calculations with unexampled rapidity and accuracy. By CHARLES HOARE, C.E. With a Slide Rule, in tuck of cover. Seventh Edition . . 2/6

Logarithms.

With Mathematical Tables for Trigonometrical, Astronomical, and Nautical Calculations. By HENRY LAW, C.E. Revised Edition 3/0

Compound Interest and Annuities (Theory of).

With Tables of Logarithms for the more Difficult Computations of Interest, Discount, Annuities, &c., in all their Applications and Uses for Mercantile and State Purposes. By FEDOR THOMAN, Paris. Fourth Edition . 4/0

Mathematical Tables,

For Trigonometrical, Astronomical, and Nautical Calculations; to which is prefixed a Treatise on Logarithms. By H. LAW, C.E. Together with a Series of Tables for Navigation and Nautical Astronomy. By Professor J. R. YOUNG. New Edition 4/0

Mathematics,

As applied to the Constructive Arts. By FRANCIS CAMPIN, C.E., &c. Third Edition 3/0

Astronomy.

By the late Rev. ROBERT MAIN, F.R.S. Third Edition, revised and corrected to the Present Time. By W. T. LYNN, F.R.A.S. 2/0

Statics and Dynamics.

The Principles and Practice of. Embracing also a clear development of Hydrostatics, Hydrodynamics, and Central Forces. By T. BAKER, C.E. Fourth Edition 1/6

BOOKS OF REFERENCE AND MISCELLANEOUS VOLUMES.

A Dictionary of Painters, and Handbook for Picture Amateurs.

Being a Guide for Visitors to Public and Private Picture Galleries, and for Art-Students, including Glossary of Terms, Sketch of Principal Schools of Painting, &c. By PHILIPPE DARYL, B.A. 2/6

Painting Popularly Explained.

By T. J. GULLICK, Painter, and JOHN TIMBS, F.S.A. Including Fresco, Oil, Mosaic, Water Colour, Water-Glass, Tempera Encaustic, Miniature, Painting on Ivory, Vellum, Pottery, Enamel, Glass, &c. Sixth Edition 5/0

A Dictionary of Terms used in Architecture, Building, Engineering, Mining, Metallurgy, Archæology, the Fine Arts, &c.

By JOHN WEALE. Sixth Edition. Edited by R. HUNT, F.R.S. . 5/0

Music:

A Rudimentary and Practical Treatise. With numerous Examples. By CHARLES CHILD SPENCER 2/6

Pianoforte,

The Art of Playing the. With numerous Exercises and Lessons. By CHARLES CHILD SPENCER 1/6

The House Manager.

A Guide to Housekeeping, Cookery, Pickling and Preserving, Household Work, Dairy Management, Cellarage of Wines, Home-brewing and Wine-making, Gardening, &c. By AN OLD HOUSEKEEPER . . 3/6

Manual of Domestic Medicine.

By R. GOODING, M.D. Intended as a Family Guide in all cases of Accident and Emergency. Third Edition, carefully revised . . 2/0

Management of Health.

A Manual of Home and Personal Hygiene. By Rev. JAMES BAIRD 1/0

Natural Philosophy,

For the Use of Beginners. By CHARLES TOMLINSON, F.R.S. . . 1/6

The Elementary Principles of Electric Lighting.

By ALAN A. CAMPBELL SWINTON, M.INST.C.E., M.I.E.E. Fourth Edition, Revised . . . . [*Just Published* 1/6

The Electric Telegraph,

Its History and Progress. By R. SABINE, C.E., F.S.A., &c. . . 3/0

Handbook of Field Fortification.

By Major W. W. KNOLLYS, F.R.G.S. With 163 Woodcuts . . 3/0

Logic,

Pure and Applied. By S. H EMMENS. Third Edition . . . 1/6

Locke on the Human Understanding,

Selections from. With Notes by S. H. EMMENS 1/6

The Compendious Calculator

(*Intuitive Calculations*). Or Easy and Concise Methods of Performing the various Arithmetical Operations required in Commercial and Business Transactions; together with Useful Tables, &c. By DANIEL O'GORMAN. Twenty-seventh Edition, carefully revised by C. NORRIS . . . 2/6

Measures, Weights, and Moneys of all Nations.

With an Analysis of the Christian, Hebrew, and Mahometan Calendars. By W. S. B. WOOLHOUSE, F.R.A.S., F.S.S. Seventh Edition . 2/6

Grammar of the English Tongue,

Spoken and Written. With an Introduction to the Study of Comparative Philology. By HYDE CLARKE, D.C.L. Fifth Edition. 1/6

Dictionary of the English Language.

As Spoken and Written. Containing above 100,000 Words. By HYDE CLARKE, D.C.L. 3/6

Complete with the GRAMMAR, 5/6

Composition and Punctuation,

Familiarly Explained for those who have neglected the Study of Grammar. By JUSTIN BRENAN. 18th Edition. 1/6

French Grammar.

With Complete and Concise Rules on the Genders of French Nouns. By G. L. STRAUSS, Ph.D. 1/6

English-French Dictionary.

Comprising a large number of Terms used in Engineering, Mining, &c. By ALFRED ELWES 2/0

French Dictionary.

In two Parts—I. French-English. II. English-French, complete in One Vol. 3/0

*** *Or with the* GRAMMAR, 4/6.

French and English Phrase Book.

Containing Introductory Lessons, with Translations, Vocabularies of Words, Collection of Phrases, and Easy Familiar Dialogues 1/6

German Grammar.

Adapted for English Students, from Heyse's Theoretical and Practical Grammar, by Dr. G. L. STRAUSS 1/6

German Triglot Dictionary.

By N. E. S. A. HAMILTON. Part I. German-French-English. Part II. English-German-French. Part III. French-German-English . . 3/0

German Triglot Dictionary.

(As above). Together with German Grammar, in One Volume . 5/0

Italian Grammar.

Arranged in Twenty Lessons, with Exercises. By ALFRED ELWES. 1/6

Italian Triglot Dictionary,

Wherein the Genders of all the Italian and French Nouns are carefully noted down. By ALFRED ELWES. Vol. I. Italian-English-French. 2/6

Italian Triglot Dictionary.

By ALFRED ELWES. Vol. II. English-French-Italian 2/6

Italian Triglot Dictionary.

By ALFRED ELWES. Vol. III. French-Italian-English 2/6

Italian Triglot Dictionary.

(As above). In One Vol. 7/6

Spanish Grammar.

In a Simple and Practical Form. With Exercises. By ALFRED ELWES 1/6

Spanish-English and English-Spanish Dictionary.

Including a large number of Technical Terms used in Mining, Engineering, &c., with the proper Accents and the Gender of every Noun. By ALFRED ELWES 4/0

*** *Or with the* GRAMMAR, 6/0.

Portuguese Grammar,
In a Simple and Practical Form. With Exercises. By ALFRED ELWES **1/6**

Portuguese-English and English-Portuguese Dictionary.
Including a large number of Technical Terms used in Mining, Engineering, &c., with the proper Accents and the Gender of every Noun. By ALFRED ELWES. Third Edition, revised **5/0**

*** *Or with the* GRAMMAR, **7/0**.

Animal Physics,
Handbook of. By DIONYSIUS LARDNER, D.C.L. With 520 Illustrations. In One Vol. (732 pages), cloth boards **7/6**

*** *Sold also in Two Parts, as follows:—*

ANIMAL PHYSICS. By Dr. LARDNER. Part I., Chapters I.—VII. **4/0**
ANIMAL PHYSICS. By Dr. LARDNER. Part II., Chapters VIII.—XVIII. **3/0**

HALLIDIE LIBRARY OF THE UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

BRADBURY, AGNEW & CO., LD., PRINTERS, LONDON AND TONBRIDGE.

THIS BOOK IS DUE ON THE LAST DATE STAMPED BELOW

AN INITIAL FINE OF 25 CENTS WILL BE ASSESSED FOR FAILURE TO RETURN THIS BOOK ON THE DATE DUE. THE PENALTY WILL INCREASE TO 50 CENTS ON THE FOURTH DAY AND TO $1.00 ON THE SEVENTH DAY OVERDUE.

OCT 1 1932
SEP 11 1933
OCT 8 1935
NOV 24 1939
NOV 21 1947

LD 21-50m-8,'32

YB 11174

TS240
H6
109254
Horner